

FORD **Transit & E-Transit**

Body and Equipment Mounting Manual



Date of Publication: 08/2024



The information contained in this publication was correct at the time of going to print. In the interest of development the right is reserved to change specifications, design or equipment at any time without notice and without incurring any obligations. This publication, or part thereof, may not be reproduced nor translated without our approval. Errors and omissions excepted.

© Ford Motor Company 2024

All rights reserved.

1 General Information

1.1 About this Publication.....	8
1.1.1 EV Training.....	8
1.1.2 Colour Coded Content	9
1.2 About this Manual.....	10
1.2.1 Introduction	10
1.2.2 How to Use This Manual.....	10
1.2.3 Important Safety Instructions	10
1.2.4 CAD Models	11
1.3 Commercial and Legal Aspects	12
1.3.1 Terminology	12
1.3.2 Warranty on Ford Vehicles	12
1.3.3 WLTP	12
1.3.4 Emissions Performance & In-Service Comp	12
1.3.5 Whole Vehicle Type Approval Reg - EU	12
1.3.6 Compliance and Vehicle Type Approval	13
1.3.7 Multi Stage Type Approval	13
1.3.8 Legal Obligations and Liabilities	13
1.3.9 General Product Safety Requirement	13
1.3.10 Product Liability	14
1.3.11 Restraints System.....	14
1.3.12 Drilling and Welding	14
1.3.13 Minimum Requirements for Braking System.....	14
1.3.14 Road Safety.....	14
1.3.15 Acoustic Vehicle Alerting System	15
1.3.16 High Voltage Vehicle Systems	15
1.4 Contact Information	16
1.5 Conversion Type.....	18
1.5.1 Order Codes.....	18
1.5.2 Conversion Type - Reference Tables.....	22
1.6 Conversion Homologation.....	26
1.7 Electromagnetic Compatibility (EMC)	27
1.8 Vehicle Duty Cycle Guidelines	28
1.8.1 Vehicle Ride and Handling Attributes.....	28
1.9 End of Life Vehicle (ELV) Directive.....	29
1.10 Jacking	30
1.11 Lifting	32
1.11.1 ICE (Diesel) Vehicles.....	32
1.11.2 E-Transit BEV Vehicles	34
1.12 Noise, Vibration and Harshness	37
1.13 Vehicle Transport, Aids & Storage	38
1.14 Package and Ergonomics	40
1.14.1 General Component Package Guidelines	40
1.14.2 Driver Reach Zones	40
1.14.3 Driver Field of View	40
1.14.4 Conversion Effects on Parking Aids	40
1.14.5 Aids for Vehicle Entry and Exit	40
1.14.6 Front, Rear and Side Under-Run Protection...	40
1.14.7 WLTP Calculation Inputs	41
1.14.8 Vehicle Dimensions Key	44
1.14.9 Recommended Main Load Area Dimensions	45
1.14.10 Vehicles with Roof Mounted Units	51
1.14.11 Chassis Cab Body for Diesel and E-Transit	51

1.14.12 Skeletal Chassis for Non Camper Body	53
1.14.13 Skeletal Chassis for Camper Body.....	55

1.15 Hardware..... **57**

1.16 Load Distribution

1.16.1 Load Distribution	58
1.16.2 Centre of Gravity Position	58
1.16.3 Centre of Gravity Height Test Procedure	59
1.16.4 Centre of Gravity Height Calculation.....	61
1.16.5 Formulas	61

1.17 Towing

1.17.1 Tow Bar Requirements	63
1.17.2 Tow Bar Types (for EU)	63
1.17.3 Tow Bar Types (for AUS and NZL).....	69

2 Chassis

2.1 Suspension System

2.2 Front Suspension

2.2.1 Springs and Spring Mounting	75
---	----

2.3 Rear Suspension

2.3.1 Springs and Spring Mounting	76
---	----

2.4 Wheels and Tyres

2.4.1 Wheel Clearance	77
2.4.2 Tyre Manufacturers	77
2.4.3 Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)	77
2.4.4 Spare Wheel	77
2.4.5 Tyre Repair Kit	77
2.4.6 Jacking Kit	77
2.4.7 Painting Road Wheels	77

2.5 Driveshaft

2.5.1 Power Take Off (PTO)	78
----------------------------------	----

2.6 Brake System

2.6.1 General	79
2.6.2 Kerb Mass Data	79
2.6.3 Brake Hoses General	79
2.6.4 Parking Brake	79
2.6.5 Hydraulic Brake - Front and Rear Brakes	79
2.6.6 Anti-Lock Control — Stability Assist	79

3 Powertrain

3.1 Engine / E-Drive

3.1.1 Engine/E Drive Selection for Conversions	80
3.1.2 Engine/E-Drive Types	81

3.2 Engine Cooling

3.2.1 Auxiliary Heater Systems	82
3.2.2 Fuel Fired Auxillary Heaters	82
3.2.3 Air Flow Restrictions	82

3.3 Front End Accessory Drives

3.4 Automatic Transmission

3.5 Clutch

3.6 Manual Transmission

3.7 Exhaust System

3.7.1 Extensions and Optional Exhausts	89
--	----

3.7.2 Exhaust Pipes and Supports	89
3.7.3 Exhaust Heat Shields	90
3.7.4 Diesel Particulate Filter (DPF)	90
3.7.5 Manual Regeneration Initiation (A6YAB)	90
3.8 Fuel System	91
3.9 HV System & Electrified Drivetrain.....	94
3.9.1 High Voltage Health & Safety Precautions	94
3.9.2 High Voltage System Overview	96
3.9.3 HV System De-Energising	98
3.9.4 HV System Cooling	98
3.9.5 High Voltage Battery	98
3.9.6 EV Charging	100

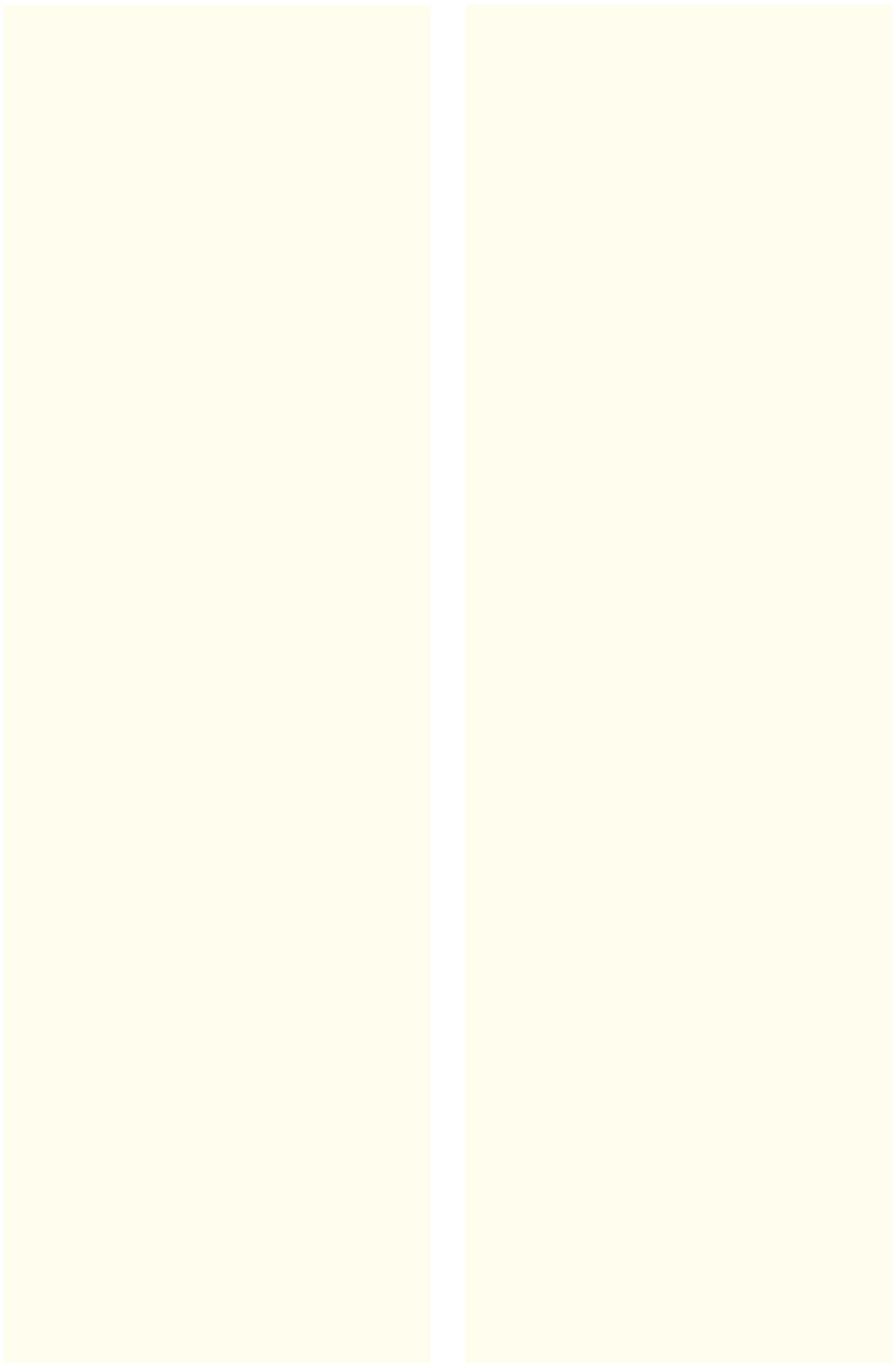
4 Electrical

4.1 Electrical System Overview	102
4.2 Wiring Installation & Routing Guides 103	
4.2.1 Wiring Harness Information	103
4.2.2 General Wiring and Routing	103
4.2.3 Connector Pin Out Practices	103
4.2.4 Unused Connectors	104
4.2.5 Grounding	104
4.2.6 Prevention of Squeaks and Rattles	104
4.2.7 Water Leakage Prevention	104
4.2.8 Wiring Splicing Procedures	104
4.2.9 EMC Awareness	104
4.2.10 Wiring Specification.....	105
4.2.11 Wiring through Sheet Metal	106
4.2.12 Precautionary Drill Zones - HV Cables.....	107
4.2.13 Precautionary Drill Zones - HV Modules	108
4.2.14 Precautionary Drill Zones - Cable Ground....	109
4.2.15 Precautionary Drill Zones - Chassis Ground...111	111
4.2.16 Precautionary Drill Zones - Rear Cargo Area	112
4.2.17 Trailer Tow Electric Wiring Kit (C1DAD)	113
4.2.18 Electrics for Tow Bar	113
4.2.19 Trailer Tow Connectivity	116
4.3 Communications Network	119
4.3.1 CAN-Bus System Description and Interface ...119	
4.3.2 Body Control Module (BCM)	123
4.4 LV Charging System (12 V)	126
4.4.1 General Information	126
4.4.2 LV Charging System Layout.....	126
4.4.3 Smart Regenerative Charging (SRC)	128
4.4.4 SRC Override	128
4.4.5 Third Party High Power Mode	128
4.4.6 Test Functionality	129
4.4.7 Charge Balance Guidelines	130
4.4.8 Circuit Diagrams	130
4.4.9 Alternator Characteristics	130
4.5 Battery Systems	132
4.5.1 Power and Connectivity Usage	132
4.5.2 Guidelines When Converting Vehicles	134
4.5.3 Battery Options	138
4.5.4 Battery Rules	138
4.5.5 Battery Configurations	139
4.5.6 Convertor Fit Additional Batteries	139
4.5.7 Third Party +12V PTO for Loads	141
4.5.8 Battery Monitoring Sensor (BMS)	143
4.5.9 Single and Twin Battery Systems	143
4.5.10 Additional Loads and Charging Systems143	
4.6 Battery Protection	146
4.6.1 Interior Lights and 12V Sockets	146
4.6.2 Standard Battery Guard & Load-Shedding ..	146
4.6.3 Power Connections	146
4.6.4 SBG and Load Shedding - Functionality	147
4.7 Climate Control System	149
4.7.1 Front Climate Control System.....	149
4.7.2 Rear Climate Control System	151
4.8 Instrument Panel Cluster	152
4.9 Horn	153
4.10 Electronic Engine Controls.....	154
4.10.1 Cranking and Warm Cranking	154
4.10.2 Start-Stop	154
4.10.2 Start-Stop Logic	154
4.10.3 Engine RPM Speed Controller (DCNAB)	156
4.10.4 DPF & RPM Speed Control	160
4.10.5 Changing Vehicle Speed Max. Setting	160
4.11 Tachograph	161
4.11.1 Legislation	162
4.11.2 Tacho & DSRC Harness Mounting.....	162
4.11.3 Retrofitting a Digital Tachograph.....	162
4.11.4 Calibration and Tachograph Retrofitting	165
4.12.1 Audio Head Unit (AHU)	168
4.12 Information & Entertainment Sys	168
4.12.2 SYNC Radio and SYNC Radio with DAB	169
4.12.3 Additional Speakers.....	170
4.13 Cellular Phone	171
4.14 Exterior Lighting	172
4.14.1 Reversing Lamps	172
4.14.2 Lamps – Front and Rear Fog Lamps	172
4.14.3 Lighting Loads	172
4.14.4 Lamps – Hazard / Direction Indication	172
4.14.5 Lamps for Wide Vehicles	173
4.14.6 Electrically Operated Door Mirrors	173
4.14.7 Additional External Lamps	173
4.14.8 Side Marker Lamps	179
4.15 Interior Lighting	180
4.15.1 Additional Internal Lamps	180
4.15.2 Additional Lighting for Rear of Vehicle Int....	180
4.16 Relocation of GNSS/5G Antenna	181
4.17 Adaptive Cruise Control.....	184
4.18 Front Windscreen Camera.....	185
4.19 Auto Wipe and Auto Lamp.....	186
4.20 Acoustic Vehicle Alerting System	187
4.21 Handles, Locks, Latches and Entry ..	188
4.21.1 Door Removal or Modification	188
4.21.2 Central Locking	188
4.21.3 Third Button on Key Fob	189
4.21.4 Remote Keyless Entry/TPMS Receiver.....	189
4.22 Fuses and Relays.....	191
4.23 SVO Options & Aftermarket Kits	192
4.24 Electrical Connectors and Conn	193

4.24.1 General Information	193	5.5.3 Partitions: Thatcham Alarm.....	277
4.24.2 Customer Connection Points (CCP)	193	5.6 Body Closures	278
4.24.3 High Current Supply & Ground Connection	195	5.6.1 Sliding Door Gap Reduction on M1 Vehicles .	278
4.24.4 Camper Central Connectors	196	5.6.2 Security, Anti-Theft and Locking System	278
4.24.5 Vehicle Interface Connector	198	5.7 Interior Trim	281
4.24.6 Vehicle Integration System (JRSAB)	200	5.7.1 Load Compartment Interior Lining	281
4.24.7 Additional Vehicle Signals/Features	205	5.7.2 Plywood Lining/Cladding	281
4.24.8 Adding Connectors	206	5.7.3 Body Side Vents	281
4.25 Pro Power Onboard Chassis Cab	207	5.8 Rear View Mirrors	282
4.26 Grounding	210	5.8.1 Door Mirrors	282
4.26.1 Ground Points - ICE.....	210	5.9 Seats	283
4.26.2 Ground Points - BEV.....	217	5.9.1 Van	283
4.27 Blind Spot Information System	225	5.9.2 Windowed Van	283
4.27.1 Blind Spot Information (BLIS) & Park Aid....	225	5.9.3 Heated Seats	283
4.27.2 Disassembly InstructionS -BLIS & Park Aid	226	5.9.4 Rear Seat Fixing Positions	283
4.27.3 BLIS Installation Instructions.....	226	5.9.5 Fabricless Front Swivel Seats.....	283
4.27.4 BLIS Check After Retrofit.....	229	5.10 Glass, Frames and Mechanisms.....	285
4.28 Park Aid Sensor Installation Guide.	230	5.10.1 Heated Windscreen and Heated Rear Wind	285
4.28.1 General Requirements.....	230	5.10.2 Rear and Side Windows	285
4.28.2 Sensor Positions and Tolerances.....	230	5.11 Airbag Supplemental Restraint Sys	286
4.28.3 Sensor and Sensor Holder Painting Req.....	230	5.11.1 Airbags Deployment Zones.....	286
4.28.4 Park Aid System Check After Retrofitting	231	5.11.2 Restraints Control Module (RCM)	286
4.29 Cameras	232	5.11.3 Front, Side and Door Sensors.....	287
4.29.1 Rear View Camera Connector Changes.....	232	5.12 Seatbelt Systems	288
4.29.2 General Information for Rear View Camera	232	5.12.1 Seatbelts	288
4.29.4 Rear View Camera Coax Cable Routing.....	233	5.12.2 B Pillar No Drill Zone	288
4.29.5 Rear View Camera Interior Mount.....	233	5.12.3 Seat Belt Reminder	289
4.29.6 Rear View Camera Exterior Mount.....	234	5.12.4 Wireless Beltminder.....	289
4.29.7 Reverse Brake Assist	234	5.13 Roof	290
4.29.8 360° Camera	235	5.13.1 Roof Ventilation	290
5 Body & Paint		5.13.2 Roof Cut Out - Camper Based Vehicles	290
5.1 Body	236	5.13.3 Roof Racks and Load Carriers	291
5.1.1 Body Structures - General Information	236	5.14 Corrosion Prevention	293
5.1.3 Boron Steel Parts	238	5.14.1 General	293
5.1.4 Floor Precautionary Drill Zones: Diesel Vans	239	5.14.2 Repairing Damaged Paint	293
5.1.5 No Drill/No Weld Zones - BEV.....	243	5.14.3 Under Body Protection and Material	293
5.1.6 BEV Van Floor Drilling.....	245	5.14.4 Contact Corrosion	293
5.1.7 BEV Side Step	248	5.15 Frame and Body Mounting.....	294
5.1.8 Integrated Bodies and Conversions	249	5.15.1 Mounting Points and Tubing	294
5.1.9 Chassis Cab	251	5.15.2 Self-Supporting Body Structure	295
5.1.10 Skeletal Chassis for Camper & Non Camper	261	5.15.3 Extended Chassis Frame	296
5.1.11 Front End Integrity for Cooling, Crash	265	5.15.4 Non Standard Rear Chassis Frame Extens.	296
5.1.12 Tipper Bodies	266	5.15.5 Frame Drilling and Tube Reinforcing	298
5.1.13 Dropside Bodies.....	266	5.15.6 Ancillary Equipment - Subframe Mount.....	299
5.1.14 Tank and Dry Bulk Carriers	266	5.15.7 Water Tank on Camper Vehicles	299
5.2 Hydraulic Lifting Equipment.....	267		
5.2.1 General Information	267		
5.3 Racking Systems	271		
5.3.1 Racking Systems	271		
5.4 Loadspace	273		
5.4.1 Load Compartment Tie Downs	273		
5.5 Internal Partitions	274		
5.5.1 Partitions (Bulkhead) - Driver and Front	274		
5.5.2 Polymer Bulkhead	276		

Table of Contents

Abc = BEV Only Abc = ICE Only



1.1 About this Publication

This Body and Equipment Mounting Manual (BEMM) is the publication for the 2024.75 MY Transit/E Transit (available from 16th May 2024).

The main changes in this version are:

August 2024:

[1.3.7 Multi Stage Type Approval](#) Section name updated from 'Alternative' to 'Multi Stage' Type approval, content text updated
[1.3.9 General Product Safety Requirement](#) New Warning added regarding reference to workshop manual for refitting instructions
[1.4 Contact Information](#) Contacts updated for Belgium, Spain, Czech Republic and France
[1.14.9 Recommended Main Load Area Dimensions](#) Footnote regarding compliance to EN R 153 for rear overhang extensions added, D height information updated in the table
[1.15 Hardware](#) Table removed, new statement added
[4.5.2 Guidelines When Converting Vehicles](#) Transport mode related notes updated
[4.14.7 Additional External Lamps](#) Rear Lamp and Trailer Tow connections and images are corrected for Skeletal and Chassis Cabs
[4.22 Fuses and Relays](#) Content updated with less Fuse and Relay Tables, reference to Owner Manual for further information added
[4.23 Special Vehicle Options \(SVO\) Harnesses and Aftermarket Kits](#) FINIS codes added
[4.24.3 High Current Supply and Ground Connections](#) Hexagonal nut and stud related content in 4.5 Battery Systems now moved to this section
[4.24.4 Camper Central Connectors](#) C2-115-way connector pin layout corrected
[4.27 Blind Spot Information System \(BLIS\) installation for Skeletal](#) Chassis Cabs removed from the section name
[4.29 Cameras](#) Camera fitting area updated for skeletal /chassis cab Stage2 conversions. Stage 1 Chassis Cab camera fitting guidance added, RVC Calibration subsection removed
[5.1.8 Integrated Bodies and Conversions](#) BEV Chassis Cab Single Rear Wheel RWD Vehicles wheelhouse dimensions updated (D, G)

April 2024:

[4.24.6 Vehicle Integration System](#) Section name updated
[5.1.9 Chassis Cab](#) FINIS codes added
[1.2.4 CAD Models](#) Updated
[1.4 Contact Information](#) Updated
[1.5.1 Order Codes Table](#) Updated
[1.13 Vehicle Transportation Aids](#) Updated
[1.14.8 Vehicle Dimensions](#) Updated
[1.16.2 Centre of Gravity Position](#) Table updated
[1.17.2 Tow Bar Types](#) Trailer Sway Control table added
[3.1.2 Engine/E-Drive Types](#) Lineup updated
[3.4 Automatic Transmission](#) 6sp replaced by 8sp Auto Transmission content
[3.7.1 Extensions and Optional Exhausts](#) Updated
[4.2.18 Electrics for Tow Bar](#) Parts and images updated
[4.2.19 Trailer Tow Connectivity](#) Connector table updated
[4.3 Communications Network](#) Network diagrams and

BCM content updated

[4.4.5 Test Functionality \(LV Charging Systems\)](#)

Updated

[4.5.1 Power and Connectivity Usage Recommendations](#) Updated

[4.5.4 Battery Options](#) Battery complexity updated

[4.5.5 Battery Rules](#) Feature codes updated for battery complexity

[4.7 Climate Control System](#) Warning added and pin-out tables updated

[4.10.2 Start-Stop](#) Updated

[4.11.3 Retrofitting a Digital Tachograph, DSRC and Speed Sensor](#) Updated, AWD illustration added

[4.12.2 SYNC Radio and SYNC Radio with DAB Pins](#) updated

[4.12.3 Additional Speakers](#) Updated

[4.14.8 Side Marker Lamps](#) JDCAH part number updated

[4.16 Relocation of GNSS/4G Antenna](#) Updated

[4.17 Adaptive Cruise Control](#) Illustration updated

[4.21 Handles, Lock, Latches and Entry Systems](#)

Connector pin information updated

[4.23 Special Vehicle Options \(SVO\) Harnesses and Aftermarket Kits](#) Part table updated

[4.24.5 Vehicle Interface Connector](#) 10-way connector replaced by 12-way connector

[4.24.6 Vehicle Integration System](#) New content

[4.27 BLIS Installation for Chassis Cabs/Skeletal](#) New content

[4.28 Park Aid Installation for Chassis Cabs/Skeletal](#) New Content

[4.29 Cameras](#) New content

[5.2.1 Hydraulic Lifting Equipment](#) Warning added for Cranes and Platforms

[5.5.3 Partitions - Thatcham Alarm](#) New content

[5.7.3 Body Side Vents](#) New content

[5.9.5 Fabricless Front Swivel Seats](#) Text updated

[5.11.3 Front, Side and Door Sensors](#) Door sensor updated

[5.12.4 Wireless Beltminder](#) New Content

It is recommended to review this manual in full.

It is the vehicle Convertor's responsibility to review the online version for the most current information prior to starting any conversion.

This BEMM is for European and related markets sourced vehicles.

For further information please contact your National Sales Company representative, or local Ford dealer. If they are unable to help you then please contact FPSV Technical Support at FPSVHelp@ford.com

1.1.1 EV Training

Ford Customer Service Division (FCSD) develops the training and deploys it to the Ford Dealer Network. We will forward and/or provide our upfitter partners the information to obtain training through links in Ford Service Info <https://www.fordserviceinfo.com>

1.1.2 Colour Coded Content

A colour coding system is in place to identify different content:

Abc = Common to ICE/BEV/PHEV

Black text and illustrations bordered in black are common to ICE (Diesel) engined versions, Plug-In Hybrid (PHEV) and E-Transit Battery Electric Vehicle (BEV).

Abc = ICE Only

Blue boxes behind text and illustrations bordered in blue indicate content specific to Transit Internal Combustion Engine (ICE) vehicles only.

Abc = BEV Only

Green boxes behind text and illustrations bordered in green indicate content specific to E-Transit Battery Electric Vehicle (BEV) only.

Abc = PHEV Only

Orange boxes behind text and illustrations bordered in orange indicate content specific to Transit Plug In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV) only.



/ ! = Updated/New content

1.2 About this Manual

1.2.1 Introduction

This manual has been written in a format that is designed to meet the needs of Vehicle Convertors. The objective is to use common formats with the workshop manual which is used by technicians worldwide.

This guide is published by Ford and provides general descriptions and advice for converting vehicles.

It must be emphasised that any change to the basic vehicle, which does not meet the enclosed guideline standards, may severely inhibit the ability of the vehicle to perform its function. Mechanical failures, structural failure, component unreliability or vehicle instability will lead to customer dissatisfaction. Appropriate design and application of body, equipment and/or accessories is key to ensuring that customer satisfaction is not adversely affected.

The information contained within this publication takes the form of recommendations to be followed when vehicle modifications are undertaken. It must be remembered that certain modifications may invalidate legal approvals and application for re-certification may be necessary.

Ford cannot guarantee the operation of the vehicle if non-Ford approved electrical systems are installed. Ford electrical systems are designed and tested to function under operational extremes and have been subjected to the equivalent of ten years of driving under such conditions.

This manual may contain references to features and options that have not been fitted to your particular vehicle. Variations occur across territories and can also be affected by external factors. For availability of features and options, please contact your National Sales Company representative or local Ford dealer. If they are unable to help you then please contact FPSV Technical Support at FPSVHelp@ford.com

1.2.2 How to Use This Manual

This manual covers vehicle conversion procedures.

The pages at the start of this manual list the content, by group. A group covers a specific portion of the vehicle. The manual is divided into five groups:

- General Information
- Chassis
- Powertrain
- Electrical
- Body and Paint

The number of the group is the first number of a section number. Each title listed in the contents, links to the relevant section of the manual.

In some sections of the book it may refer you to see additional sections for information. The links have

been provided in blue text. Page numbers have also been provided. There is also an alphabetical index at the back of the manual. As with the contents pages, you will be able to link to sections. To do this just click on the page number.

All left and right handed references to the vehicle are taken from a position sitting in the driver's seat looking forward unless otherwise stated.

All references to ADR vehicle standards are only applicable to the Australian and New Zealand markets. Where no ADR is specified, the EU standard is recommended.

1.2.3 Important Safety Instructions

Appropriate conversion procedures are essential for the safe, reliable operation of all vehicles as well as the personal safety of the individual carrying out the work.

This manual cannot possibly anticipate all such variations and provide advice or cautions as to each. Anyone who does not follow the instructions provided in this manual must first establish that they compromise neither their personal safety nor the vehicle integrity by their choice of methods, tools or components.

As you read through this manual, you will come across: **WARNINGS**, **CAUTIONS** and **NOTES**.

If a warning, caution or note is placed at the beginning of a series of steps, it applies to multiple steps. If the warning, caution or note only applies to one step, it is placed at the beginning of the specific step (after the step number).



WARNING: Warnings are used to indicate that failure to follow a procedure correctly may result in death or personal injury.



CAUTION: Cautions are used to indicate that failure to follow a procedure correctly may result in damage to the vehicle or equipment being used.

NOTE: Notes are used to provide additional essential information required to carry out a complete and satisfactory conversion.



WARNING: Any personnel working with or undertaking any modifications to the E-Transit Battery Electric Vehicle (BEV) must receive training for High Voltage (HV) vehicle systems prior to starting any work.

Working on a High Voltage Electrical Vehicles is only allowed after completion of the appropriate training(s):

"Working on Electrical Vehicles" includes performing mechanical works, performing electrical work and switching activities on these vehicles.

"Electrical Vehicle" includes all possible types such

as HEV (Full Hybrids), PHEV (Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle), BEV (Battery Electric Vehicle) or other versions.

"Appropriate Training" means that you as a person who followed the training, has sufficient knowledge about the risks and that you have knowledge about the required safety measures to perform the work in a safe way. The competencies granted by this training are still up-to-date and have not expired.



WARNING: Orange coloured cables are HV system (approximately 400V DC) parts and must not be modified nor rerouted.



CAUTION: There are limitations when adding additional electrical devices. Any power take-off consumption needs to be controlled within the guidelines. Extra equipment and usage may have an impact to weight and vehicle driving range.

1.2.4 CAD Models

To enable the virtual development of your vehicle, 3D data models in STEP and JT formats can be provided via Colab upon request to FPSVhelp@ford.com

2D vector drawings in DWG format can be found on the Convertor Portal, under the section 'BEMM & CAD'.

1.3 Commercial and Legal Aspects

NOTE: For further information please contact your National Sales Company representative, or local Ford dealer. If they are unable to help you then please contact FPSV Technical Support at FPSVHelp@ford.com

1.3.1 Terminology

NOTE: Any modifications to the vehicle must be noted in the owner's handbook or new descriptive literature included with the owner's documentation.

Vehicle Convertor refers to any party altering the vehicle by converting the body and adding or modifying any equipment not originally specified and/or supplied by Ford.

Unique component or similar wording refers to non-Ford specified or after sale fitment not covered by Ford warranty.

1.3.2 Warranty on Ford Vehicles

Please contact the National Sales Company in the country where the vehicle will be registered for details of the terms of any applicable Ford warranty.

The Vehicle Convertor should warrant its design, materials and construction for a period at least equal to any applicable Ford warranty.

The Vehicle Convertor must ensure that any alteration made to a Ford vehicle or component does not reduce the safety, function, or durability of the vehicle or any component.

The Vehicle Convertor shall be solely responsible for any damage resulting from any alteration made by the Vehicle Convertor or any of its agents to a Ford vehicle component.

The Vehicle Convertor releases Ford from all claims by any third party for any cost or loss (including any consequential damages) arising from work performed by a Vehicle Convertor, unless Ford has given its prior written consent to such liability.

1.3.3 Worldwide Harmonised Light-Duty Vehicle Test Procedures (WLTP)

WLTP takes into account individual optional equipment for weight, aerodynamics and rolling resistance, which have an impact on the fuel consumption, exhaust emissions and electric vehicle range.

For incomplete and complete conversions, WLTP will now take into account the completed option equipment. Vehicle Convertors now have a new responsibility to recalculate the CO₂, fuel consumption and electric vehicle range for any completed vehicle by either using a tool provided by the OEM or contacting the OEM to obtain new values. To determine the new values in line with WLTP,

registered customers will now be able to access Ford's multi stage WLTP calculation tool via Ford Service Info at <https://www.fordserviceinfo.com/>. You will need to register or login to use it.

It is advisable to control the weight, but without deteriorating other vehicle attributes and functions, (especially those related to safety and durability). It is also advisable for you to contact your local type approval authority for any questions related to the application of WLTP to multi stage conversions under Directive 2007/46/EC and single vehicle approvals.

For additional information:

- [Refer to: 1.8 Vehicle Duty Cycle Guidelines](#)
- [Refer to: 1.14 Package and Ergonomics](#)
- Contact FPSVHelp@ford.com

1.3.4 Emissions Performance & In-Service Compliance

The emissions Regulation (EC) No 715/2007, as amended by Commission Regulation (EU) 2018/1832, now includes new requirements for completed vehicles with regards to emissions performance and in service compliance. Ford has developed an emissions envelope that the Vehicle Convertor must stay within.

For further information please contact FPSVHelp@ford.com. It is advisable for you to contact your local type approval authority for any questions related to the application of WLTP to multi stage conversions under Directive 2007/46/EC and single vehicle approvals.

1.3.5 Whole Vehicle Type Approval Regulations - EU Markets only



WARNING: For non-European Union territories, please refer to local legislation.

Fitment of Parts and Accessories

NOTE: Ford parts fitted in the plant are covered by the Certificate of Conformity (CoC). The objective of the Regulation (EU) 2018/858 or applicable local legislation is to ensure that new vehicles, components and separate technical units put on the market provide a high level of safety and environmental protection. This will help to ensure that all vehicles are not damaged by the fitting or converting of certain parts or equipment, after they have been placed on the market or have entered service. Vehicle Convertors are advised to check whether the fitment of parts require either type approval or Individual Vehicle Approval (IVA) before the vehicle is registered.

- Type Approval requires a Conformity of Production (CoP) inspection to be carried out at the conversion location to demonstrate that all vehicles of the same type will conform to the type approved specification.

- IVA requires inspection of an individual vehicle to establish compliance.

Conversions from Commercial Vehicle N1, N2 to Passenger Car M1

Vehicle Convertors of passenger car M1 vehicles need to be aware of the latest Whole Vehicle Type Approval (Regulation (EU) 2018/858) regulations or applicable local legislation, especially when the base vehicle is a commercial vehicle N1. This affects vehicles which are homologated to meet passenger car M1 regulations.

Guidance to Vehicle Convertors for M1 registered vehicles:

- The Vehicle Convertor is responsible for checking the vehicle ordered can meet all the regulations for type approval
- Exemptions for certain regulations should be checked with latest regulation and approval authority
- Where possible, order a Passenger Car M1 base vehicle such as Kombi M1
- If specifying Air Conditioning, check that the base commercial vehicle refrigerant meets the latest completed vehicle regulations
- If Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) is required, specify this when ordering
- If seat belt warning is required, specify passenger airbag which includes the belt minder function for the driver and passenger
- [Refer to: 5.6 Body Closures](#) For information on sliding door gap reduction on M1 vehicles
- Special Purpose Vehicles such as ambulances, motor caravans, hearses and wheelchair accessible vehicles may be allowed to use the base vehicle homologation for some regulations

For additional information

[Refer to: 1.6 Conversion Homologation](#)

1.3.6 Compliance and Vehicle Type Approval

- All components embodied on Ford vehicles are approved to the applicable legal requirements. Ford vehicles have Type Approval for the intended marketing territories

 **WARNING: Exception - Incomplete vehicles require further approval when completed by the Vehicle Convertor.**

- The Transit range has Type Approval for many territories, although the full range of vehicles shown in this manual are not necessarily released in all territories. Check with your National Sales Company representative
- Significant changes to the vehicle may affect its regulatory compliance. Strict adherence to the original design intent for brakes, weight distribution, lighting, occupant safety and

hazardous materials compliance, in particular, is mandatory



1.3.7 Multi Stage Type Approval

The Vehicle Convertor must agree all modifications and impacted regulatory requirements with the relevant approval authority and technical service. Any changes to the vehicle operating conditions must be advised to the customer.

1.3.8 Legal Obligations and Liabilities

The Vehicle Convertor should consult with its legal advisor on any questions concerning its legal obligations and liabilities.



1.3.9 General Product Safety Requirement

WARNINGS:

 **Do not exceed the gross vehicle mass, gross train mass, axle plates and trailer plate.**

 **Do not change the tyre size or load rating.**

 **Do not modify the steering system.**

 **Excessive heat can build up from the exhaust system, in particular from the catalytic convertor and from the Diesel particulate filter (DPF). Ensure adequate heat shields are maintained. Maintain sufficient clearance to hot parts.**



The travel and function of pedals must not be restricted.



Do not modify or remove heat protection shields.



Do not remove labels provided with the base vehicle. Ensure appropriate visibility.



Do not route any electrical cables with the Anti-Lock Braking System and Traction Control System cables because of extraneous signal risk. It is generally not recommended to hang electrical cables from existing harnesses or pipes.



Do not change original location or remove warning labels provided with the base vehicle in view of the driver. Ensure that labels remain in full view.



Make sure that components removed during conversion are refitted to the same vehicle by following the procedures in the Ford workshop manual.

The Vehicle Convertor shall ensure that any vehicle it places in the market complies with the European General Product Safety Directive 2001/95/EC (as amended periodically) or applicable local legislation. The Vehicle Convertor shall also ensure that any alteration it makes to a Ford vehicle or component does not reduce its compliance with the European General Product Safety directive or applicable local legislation directive.

NOTE: Directive 2001/95/EC will be replaced by Regulation (EU) 2023/988 ("General Product Safety Regulation (GPSR)") from 13 December 2024.

The Vehicle Convertor shall release Ford from all liability for damages resulting from:

- Failure to comply with these Body Equipment and Mounting directives, in particular warnings.
- Faulty design, production, installation, assembly or alteration not originally specified by Ford.
- Failure to comply with the basic fit for purpose principles inherent in the original product.

[Refer to: 1.4 Contact Information](#)

1.3.10 Product Liability

The Vehicle Convertor shall be liable for any product liability (whether for death, personal injury, or property damage) arising from any alteration to a Ford vehicle or component made by the Vehicle Convertor or any of its agents. Ford shall not be liable for any such liability (except as provided by law).

The Vehicle Convertor or equipment manufacturer is liable for the:

- Operational reliability and road-worthiness of the vehicle to its original intent
- Operational reliability and road-worthiness of any component or conversion, not listed in original Ford documentation
- Operational reliability and road-worthiness of the vehicle as a whole (for example the body changes and/or additional equipment must not have a negative effect on the driving, braking or steering characteristics of the vehicle)
- Subsequent damage resulting from the conversion or attachment and installation of unique components, including unique electrical or electronic systems
- Functional safety and freedom of movement of all moving parts (for example axles, springs, shafts, steering mechanisms, brake and transmission linkage, retarders)
- Functional safety and freedom of the tested and approved flexibility of the body and integral chassis structure

1.3.11 Restraints System

WARNINGS:

 **Modifications to the restraints system are not allowed.**

 **Airbags are explosive. For safe removal and storage during conversion follow the procedures in the Ford workshop manual.**

 **Do not alter, modify or relocate the airbags, sensors and modules of the restraints system or any of its components.**

 **Attachments or modifications to the front end or B Pillar of the vehicle may affect the airbag deployment timing and result in uncontrolled deployment.**

For additional information:

[Refer to: 5.11 Airbag Supplemental Restraint System \(SRS\)](#)

1.3.12 Drilling and Welding



WARNING: Do not Drill or Weld Boron Steel parts, see figure E167660 in the welding section of this manual.

Drilling and welding of frames and body structure have to be conducted following the guidelines in Welding and Frame Drilling and Tube Reinforcing sections.

[Refer to: 5.15 Frame and Body Mounting](#)

1.3.13 Minimum Requirements for Braking System

It is not recommended to modify the braking system. If a special conversion should require modifications:

- Maintain original settings
- Maintain brake certification load distribution

Changes to the Anti-lock Braking System (ABS), Traction Control System (TCS) and Electronic Stability Control ESC (also known as ESP) system are not permitted.

1.3.14 Road Safety

The respective instructions should be strictly observed to maintain operational and road safety of the vehicle.

1.3.15 Acoustic Vehicle Alerting System



WARNING: Do not move or modify the components of the AVAS system. The Acoustic Vehicle Alerting System warning is a legal requirement.

Refer to: 4.20 Acoustic Vehicle Alerting System

1.3.16 High Voltage Vehicle Systems



WARNING: Any personnel working with or undertaking any modifications to the E-Transit Battery Electric Vehicle (BEV) must receive training for High Voltage (HV) vehicle systems prior to starting any work.

Working on a High Voltage Electrical Vehicles is only allowed after completion of the appropriate training(s):

“Working on Electrical Vehicles” includes performing mechanical works, performing electrical work and switching activities on these vehicles.

“Electrical Vehicle” includes all possible types such as HEV (Full Hybrids), PHEV (Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle), BEV (Battery Electric Vehicle) or other versions.

“Appropriate Training” means that you as a person who followed the training, has sufficient knowledge about the risks and that you have knowledge about the required safety measures to perform the work in a safe way. The competencies granted by this training are still up-to-date and have not expired.



WARNING: Orange coloured cables are HV system (400V) parts and must not be modified nor rerouted.



CAUTION: There are limitations when adding additional electrical devices. Any power take-off consumption needs to be controlled within the guidelines. Extra equipment and usage may have an impact to weight and vehicle driving range.

1.4 Contact Information

As a manufacturer, we want to provide you with the information you need for your vehicle conversion/modification. If the information you require is not in this manual or you have further questions, please contact your National Sales Company representative, or local Ford dealer. If they are unable to help you then please contact FPSV Technical Support at FPSVHelp@ford.com

Ford of Britain	
Contact:	Keith Doxey kdoxey@ford.com
Contact:	Mark Brierly mbrierl7@ford.com
Contact:	Robert Jinks rjinks1@ford.com

Ford of Germany	
Contact:	Juergen Pesch jpesch@ford.com
Contact:	Christian Jungmann cjungma2@ford.com

Ford of France	
Contact:	Franck Richard fricha19@ford.com
Contact:	Abdessamad Fritah afritah1@ford.com

Ford of Italy	
Contact:	Cristiano Giusto cgiusto1@ford.com
Contact:	Mauro Cavallaro mcaval13@ford.com

Ford of Ireland	
Contact:	Paul O'Sullivan posulli9@ford.com

Ford of Spain/Portugal	
Contact:	Miguel Lara mlaaral1@ford.com
Contact:	Juan Huergo De Salas jhuergod@ford.com

Ford of Belgium	
Contact:	Luc Vanneste lvannes4@ford.com

Ford of Netherlands	
Contact:	Daan Koppert dkoppert@ford.com

Ford of Austria	
Contact:	Gerhard Konrad gkonrad1@ford.com

Ford of Denmark	
Contact:	Jan Olsen jolsen24@ford.com

Ford of Finland	
Contact:	Sami Jaaskelainen sjaaskel@ford.com

Ford of Norway	
Contact:	Roar Kvernhusengen rkvernha2@ford.com

Ford of Sweden	
Contact:	Martin Tenggren Martin.Tenggren@hedinmotorcompany.com

Ford of Hungary	
Contact:	Gabor Dorogi gdorogi@ford.com

Ford of Greece	
Contact:	John Amarantos jamaran1@ford.com

Ford of Poland	
Contact:	Piotr Nowosadzki pnowosal@ford.com

Ford of Czech Republic	
Contact:	Jan Hejnic jhejnic@ford.com

Ford of Switzerland	
Contact:	Simon Baer sbaer4@ford.com

Ford of Romania	
Contact:	Constantin Moldoveanu cmoldove@ford.com

Ford Otosan - Turkey	
Contact:	Ford Otosan Call Centre
Phone:	+90-216-4443673
E-Mail:	iletisim@ford.com.tr

Ford of Australia	
Contact:	FoA Customer Team
Phone:	13 FORD or 13 36 73
E-Mail:	foacust1@ford.com
Fax:	03 8301 2582
Postal Address:	Ford Customer Relationship Centre Private Mail Bag 5 Campbellfield VIC 3061

Ford of New Zealand	
Contact:	FoNZ Customer Team
Phone:	+64-9-2718500
E-Mail:	nzinfo@ford.com
Fax:	+64-9-2718573
Postal Address:	Private bag 76912 Manukau City NZ - 2241

1.5 Conversion Type

1.5.1 Order Codes

The following tables show overviews of the available options which will assist in your conversion. It is necessary to take into account the anticipated usage of the modified vehicle in order to choose the appropriate specification of the base vehicle.

Electrical

Feature Code	Special Vehicle Option (SVO)	Description
C1DAD	Trailer Tow Electrics	Includes Towing Electrics (connector and wiring) without the physical Tow-Bar.
DCNAB	Engine RPM Controller	Enables the engine to be run at an elevated idle speed.
A6YAB	Operator Command DPF Regeneration	The system is designed to clean diesel exhausts automatically when the engine reaches full operating temperature for a sustained period of time
BEBAC	Transit Skeletal Chassis Rear Lights Pack	Rear Lights Pack provided inside the vehicle to fit them after
HLDAB	Transit Skeletal Chassis Reverse Gear Buzzer	Buzzer part and its harness comes as a disassembled unit within a plastic bag for skeletal chassis.
JRSAB	Vehicle Integration System	Programmable input/output controller system which communicates on the vehicle CAN network and provides integration of electrical and digital systems to control equipment and various vehicle functions via Upfitter Configuration.
J3EAJ	Pro Power on Board	Connection points in cab, plus cargo area for van
JCFAL	LED Cabin Lighting	The enhanced LED cabin light of around 500 lumens greatly benefits any operator who uses their cabin as a mobile office
JCMAD	LED Load compartment Light	Upgrade to a LED cabin light - incorporated within the LED load space lighting option
JDCAH	Side Marker Preparation Pack	Provides wiring and side marker LED lamps for Chassis Cab
J3KAQ	Rear View Camera Pack	Available for Transit Chassis Cab & Skeletal Chassis for the addition of a rear facing camera with no aids. The camera comes as a kit stored in the glovebox ready to be installed. This includes a 3.4m length wire.
HTAAB	Single H7 AGM Battery	80AH H7 AGM Battery which is located in the driver's seat pedestal
HTAAC	Dual H7 AGM Batteries	2 x 80AH H7 AGM Batteries which are located in the driver's seat pedestal
HTAAZ	Dual H8 AGM Batteries	High Performance H8 AGM batteries for electrical Power Take Off (PTO) that requires deep discharge and cycling from third party systems at engine-off condition.

Please ensure that the base vehicle is ordered with all required options by your Ford dealer. Availability of options vary by territory. For availability please contact your National Sales Company representative, or local Ford dealer. If they are unable to help you then please contact FPSV Technical Support at FPSVHelp@ford.com

Feature Code	Special Vehicle Option (SVO)	Description
HTABG	Single H8 AGM Battery	95AH H8 AGM Battery which is located in the driver's seat pedestal
GB2AB	Auxiliary Fuel Port	Provides a fuel line and connector for easier attachment to auxiliary equipment such as aftermarket heaters.
A59AA	Chassis Cab Cutaway	Removes the back panel of the Transit Chassis Cab and replaces it with a temporary plastic back panel.

Interior

Feature Code	Special Vehicle Option (SVO)	Description
BVFDA	Front Seat Pack (SVO Seat Pack 1)	The passenger seat and seat pedestal are removed, (passenger seat belt is retained). Driver seat is 4-way adjustable with base cloth trim
BVFDB	Front Seat Pack (SVO Seat Pack 2)	The passenger seat and seat pedestal are removed, (passenger seat belt is retained) 6-way driver's seat with lumbar support and Trend Trim.
BVFDC	High Contrast Orange Seat Belts	Single passenger seat configuration with added orange seat belts for passenger and driver
BVFDE	High Contrast Orange Seat Belts	Driver only seat configuration with added orange seat belt
BVFBC	Front Swivel Seats (Seat Pack 58)	Front Swivel Seats for camper conversions.
BVFCC	Camper Swivel Seats Less Fabric (SVO Seat Pack 59)	Removes the fabric from Camper seats, retains Seat Belt Reminder (SBR).
A5DAB	Double Cab Equipment Storage	Rear seats and glazing are removed allowing for storage
AALJJ	People Carrier Glazed Prep Pack	For conversions into specialist people carriers (e.g. Wheelchair Accessible Vehicles)
HDKAD	Tachograph - Digital	Smart tachograph system including Dedicated Short Range Communication (DSRC) sensor.

Exterior

Feature Code	Special Vehicle Option (SVO)	Description
AAKBA	Enhanced Security Replock™ TVL™	TVL Replock – Drivers' door
AAKAC	Slam Handle TVL Security Pack	Lock Group 1: Includes Factory Fit RepLock (driver door), latch shields (RCD & SLD) & slam handles (RCD & SLD) – auto lock, key unlock (MFC: AAKAC)
AAKAD	Hook Lock TVL Security Pack	Lock Group 2: Includes factory fit RepLock (driver door), front door loom guard, dead locks on driver & passenger front doors, plus hook lock on side/rear. (MFC: AAKAD)
AAKAE	Armourshell TVL Security Pack	Lock Group 3: Includes factory fit RepLock (driver door), front door loom guard, dead locks on driver and front passenger door, plus armourshell lock on side and rear doors (MFC: AAKAE)

Feature Code	Special Vehicle Option (SVO)	Description
AAKAF	Cabin Deadlock Security Pack TVL™	The Cabin Protection pack provides additional protection and mechanical locks in the cabin area.
AAKAG	Loadspace Hooklock Security Pack TVL™	The Hook Lock rear load space pack provides additional protection and mechanical locks just in the load space area.
AAKAH	Loadspace Armourshell Security Pack TVL™	The Armourshell rear load space pack provides additional protection and mechanical locking in the load space area.
CSGAB	Tyre Carrier Drop Door Closed	Provides spare wheel access from the outer side of the vehicle without need to open the rear doors.
A6KAP	Cargo Door 250 Hinge	Increases cargo door opening to 250° angle
A59AA	Chassis Cab Cutaway	Chassis Cab without a back panel allowing for walk through. There are 15 fixing points at the B-pillar to support fixing of convertor body.
AALQQ	Double Chassis Cab Tarpaulin Conversion	Tarpaulin kit on a Transit Double Chassis Cab float. The Tarpaulin encloses the entire cargo area
C2CBN	Skeletal Narrow Rear Track	This option uses a narrower rear axle on a skeletal chassis replacing the existing standard wider axle. This solution is ideal for conversions with narrower boxes such as motorhomes and horse boxes.
B2GAE	Privacy Glazed Rear Windows	"This option replaces the rear cargo door tinted glass on camper van donor vehicles with privacy glass. NOTE: Selecting privacy glass removes the rear wash wipers."

Delivery Van Options

Feature Code	Special Vehicle Option (SVO)	Description
A1GAJ	Skeletal Closed Roof	Low-floor Transit Skeletal chassis cab with the additional Closed Roof and B-Pillar cappings. Ideal for conversions such as refrigeration and box vans.
AALBP	Express Delivery Pack	The Express Delivery Pack provides customers with a vehicle that is already protected and ready for use or fitment of racking and further conversion. The pack allows goods to be secured safely and adds some protection to the sidewalls.
AALQH	Express Delivery Van Pack Premium	The Express Delivery Van Pack Premium offers factory-fitted integrated rails and fixing points for racking systems and securing loads
CYWAB	Chassis Cab Headliner (Without Shelf)	This option removes the existing overhead console and headliner with DIN slot, replacing it with a new higher headliner without a shelf. This allows the driver to walk through to the rear of the vehicle as it is only available without a bulkhead. Suitable for delivery vehicles where there is a requirement to move freely through the cabin.

Blue Light

Feature Code	Special Vehicle Option (SVO)	Description
AALH4	Ambulance Donor Pack	Donor vehicle for an Ambulance conversion

Utility Options

Feature Code	Special Vehicle Option (SVO)	Description
A5DAB	Double Cab Equipment Storage	For operators who require an internal storage area for equipment in the second row. The rear seats of the double cab are removed, rear doors and back panel are unglazed.

1.5.2 Conversion Type - Reference Tables

The BEMM contains general and specific recommendations covering conversions to the new Transit range of vehicles. To assist users locate information by conversion type the following tables contain the relevant links within this Manual.

NOTE: The following tables are for guidance only. Full reference to the Body and Equipment Mounting Manual (BEMM) should be made prior to starting any conversion.

NOTE: For any conversions requiring electrical power:

[Refer to: 4.3 Communications Network](#)

[Refer to: 4.22 Fuses and Relays](#)

Chassis Cab Conversion	
Van Conversion/ Multi-Purpose Vehicle Conversions	Refer to: 1.14 Package and Ergonomics
	Refer to: 1.17 Towing
	Refer to: 3.8 Fuel System
	Refer to: 4.5 Battery Systems
	Refer to: 4.6 Battery Protection
	Refer to: 4.23 Special Vehicle Options (SVO) Harnesses and Aftermarket Kits
	Refer to: 4.24 Electrical Connectors and Connections
	Refer to: 4.26 Grounding
	Refer to: 4.27 Blind Spot Information System (BLIS)
	Refer to: 4.28 Park Aid Sensor Installation Guidance
	Refer to: 4.29 Cameras
	Refer to: 5.13 Roof Roof Racks
Refer to: 5.15 Frame and Body Mounting Rear Seat Fixings Positions	

Skeletal Chassis	
Camper	Refer to: 1.17 Towing Tow Bar Skeletal Chassis for camper
	Refer to: 3.7 Exhaust System Exhaust Heat Shields
	Refer to: 3.8 Fuel System Auxiliary Fuel Line
	Refer to: 4.19 Auto Wipe and Auto Light for Vehicles with Large Overhang
	Refer to: 4.24 Electrical Connectors and Connections Driver Swivel Seat
	Refer to: 5.1 Body Integrated Bodies and Conversions (Skeletal Chassis for camper)
	Refer to: 5.8 Rear View Mirrors Door Mirrors
	Refer to: 5.11 Airbag Supplemental Restraint System (SRS)
	Refer to: 5.13 Roof Roof Cut Out - Camper Based Vehicles Only
	Refer to: 5.15 Frame and Body Mounting Self-supporting Body Structure & Water Tank on Skeletal Chassis for camper
Non-Camper Conversion	Refer to: 1.17 Towing Tow Bar Transit Skeletal Chassis for non-camper
	Refer to: 3.7 Exhaust System Exhaust Heat Shields
	Refer to: 3.8 Fuel System Auxiliary Fuel Line
	Refer to: 4.19 Auto Wipe and Auto Light for Vehicles with Large Overhang
	Refer to: 4.24 Electrical Connectors and Connections Driver Swivel Seat
	Refer to: 5.1 Body Integrated Bodies and Conversions (Skeletal Chassis for camper)
	Refer to: 5.8 Rear View Mirrors Door Mirrors
	Refer to: 5.11 Airbag Supplemental Restraint System (SRS)

Refrigerated Vehicles	
Van Conversion	Refer to: 1.9 End of Life Vehicle (ELV) Directive
	Refer to: 4.4 LV Charging System (12 V) Generator and Alternator
	Refer to: 4.7 Climate Control System
	Refer to: 4.22 Fuses and Relays
	Refer to: 4.24 Electrical Connectors and Connections
	Refer to: 5.13 Roof Roof Racks
Compressor Installation	Refer to: 3.3 Front End Accessory Drives

Dry Freight	
Box/Luton Van	Refer to: 4.4 LV Charging System (12 V) Generator and Alternator
	Refer to: 4.11 Tachograph
	Refer to: 4.14 Exterior Lighting
	Refer to: 4.19 Auto Wipe and Auto Light for Vehicles with Large Overhang
	Refer to: 4.27 Blind Spot Information System (BLIS) Installation for Chassis Cab/Skeletals
	Refer to: 4.28 Park Aid Sensor Installation Guidance
	Refer to: 4.29 Cameras
	Refer to: 5.2 Hydraulic Lifting Equipment
Money Carriers	Refer to: 4.4 LV Charging System (12 V) Generator and Alternator
	Refer to: 4.11 Tachograph
	Refer to: 4.14 Exterior Lighting
	Refer to: 5.13 Roof
Refuse Collection	Refer to: 4.4 LV Charging System (12 V) Generator and Alternator
	Refer to: 4.11 Tachograph
	Refer to: 4.15 Interior Lighting

Emergency Services	
Ambulance (Front Line)/Fire Brigade/ Armed Forces / Police	Refer to: 3.2 Engine Cooling Airflow Restrictions
	Refer to: 4.4 LV Charging System (12 V) Generator and Alternator
	Refer to: 4.14 Exterior Lighting
	Refer to: 4.15 Interior Lighting
	Refer to: 4.22 Fuses and Relays
	Refer to: 4.19 Auto Wipe and Auto Light for Vehicles with Large Overhang
	Refer to: 4.27 Blind Spot Information System (BLIS) Installation for Chassis Cab/Skeletals
	Refer to: 4.28 Park Aid Sensor Installation Guidance
	Refer to: 4.29 Cameras
	Refer to: 5.2 Hydraulic Lifting Equipment
	Refer to: 5.9 Seats
	Refer to: 5.11 Airbag Supplemental Restraint System (SRS)

Passenger Carrying	
Taxi	Refer to: 1.3 Commercial and Legal Aspects Restraints System
	Refer to: 4.14 Exterior Lighting
	Refer to: 4.15 Interior Lighting
	Refer to: 5.9 Seats
	Refer to: 5.10 Glass, Frames and Mechanisms
	Refer to: 5.11 Airbag Supplemental Restraint System (SRS)
	Refer to: 5.13 Roof
Mobility	Refer to: 4.14 Exterior Lighting
	Refer to: 4.15 Interior Lighting
	Refer to: 5.2 Hydraulic Lifting Equipment
	Refer to: 5.9 Seats
	Refer to: 5.10 Glass, Frames and Mechanisms
	Refer to: 5.11 Airbag Supplemental Restraint System (SRS)
	Refer to: 5.13 Roof
Coach Built	Refer to: 4.11 Tachograph
	Refer to: 4.14 Exterior Lighting
	Refer to: 4.15 Interior Lighting
	Refer to: 5.2 Hydraulic Lifting Equipment
	Refer to: 5.9 Seats
	Refer to: 5.10 Glass, Frames and Mechanisms
	Refer to: 5.11 Airbag Supplemental Restraint System (SRS)
Wheelchair Accessible	Refer to: 5.13 Roof
	Refer to: 4.14 Exterior Lighting
	Refer to: 4.15 Interior Lighting
	Refer to: 5.2 Hydraulic Lifting Equipment
	Refer to: 5.9 Seats
	Refer to: 5.10 Glass, Frames and Mechanisms
	Refer to: 5.11 Airbag Supplemental Restraint System (SRS)
Mini Bus	Refer to: 5.13 Roof
	Refer to: 4.14 Exterior Lighting
	Refer to: 4.15 Interior Lighting
	Refer to: 5.2 Hydraulic Lifting Equipment
	Refer to: 5.9 Seats
	Refer to: 5.10 Glass, Frames and Mechanisms
	Refer to: 5.11 Airbag Supplemental Restraint System (SRS)

Vocational Conversion	
Mobile Workshops	Refer to: 4.4 LV Charging System (12 V) Generator and Alternator
	Refer to: 4.11 Tachograph
	Refer to: 4.19 Auto Wipe and Auto Light for Vehicles with Large Overhang
	Refer to: 5.2 Hydraulic Lifting Equipment
	Refer to: 5.3 Racking Systems
	Refer to: 5.13 Roof Roof Racks
Mobile Shops / Offices	Refer to: 4.4 LV Charging System (12 V) Generator and Alternator
	Refer to: 4.11 Tachograph
	Refer to: 4.19 Auto Wipe and Auto Light for Vehicles with Large Overhang
	Refer to: 5.2 Hydraulic Lifting Equipment
	Refer to: 5.3 Racking Systems
	Refer to: 5.13 Roof Roof Racks
Glass Carrying	Refer to: 4.4 LV Charging System (12 V) Generator and Alternator
	Refer to: 4.11 Tachograph
	Refer to: 5.1 Body Racking System
Racking Conversions	Refer to: 4.4 LV Charging System (12 V) Generator and Alternator
	Refer to: 4.11 Tachograph
	Refer to: 5.3 Racking Systems
Recovery Vehicles	Refer to: 4.4 LV Charging System (12 V) Generator and Alternator
	Refer to: 4.11 Tachograph
	Refer to: 4.19 Auto Wipe and Auto Light for Vehicles with Large Overhang
	Refer to: 5.15 Frame and Body Mounting

1.6 Conversion Homologation

NOTE: For further information please contact your National Sales Company representative, or local Ford dealer. If they are unable to help you then please contact FPSV Technical Support at FPSVHelp@ford.com.

The Vehicle Convertor must observe any statutory rules and regulations. When the conversion needs a new approval the following information must be quoted.

- All dimensional, weight and centre of gravity data
- The fixing of the body to the donor vehicle
- Operating conditions

The responsible Technical Service may require additional information and/or testing.

For additional information on vehicle type approval

[Refer to: 1.3 Commercial and Legal Aspects](#)

1.7 Electromagnetic Compatibility (EMC)

WARNINGS:

 **Do not mount any transceiver, microphones, speakers, or any other item on or near the airbag cover, on the side of the seatbacks (of the front seats), or in front seat areas that may come into contact with a deploying airbag.**

 **Do not fasten antenna cables to original vehicle wiring, fuel pipes and brake pipes.**

 **Keep antenna and power cables at least 100mm from any electronic modules and airbags.**

NOTE: Your vehicle has been tested and certified to electromagnetic compatibility legislation (UNECE Regulation 10 or applicable local legislation). Ensure that any additional equipment installed on your vehicle complies with applicable local legislation and other requirements.

NOTE: Radio Frequency (RF) transmitter equipment (for example: cellular telephones, amateur radio transmitters) may only be fitted to your vehicle if they comply with the parameters shown in the following 'Frequency Overview' table. There are no special provisions or conditions for installations or use.

NOTE: Only fit one antenna in the positions shown to the roof of your vehicle.

Refer to Section [4.16 Relocation of GNSS/5G Antenna](#)

NOTE: For EMC on Police conversions with rear view cameras please contact your National Sales Company representative, or local Ford dealer. If they are unable to help you then please contact FPSV Technical Support at FPSVHelp@ford.com

NOTE: After the installation of RF transmitters, check for disturbances from and to all electrical equipment in the vehicle, both in the standby and transmit modes.

Check all electrical equipment:

- With ignition ON
- With the engine running/vehicle ready-to-drive
- During a road test at various speeds

Check that electromagnetic fields generated inside the vehicle cabin by the transmitter installed do not exceed applicable human exposure requirements.

Frequency Overview

Frequency Band MHz	Maximum Output Power Watts (Peak RMS)	Antenna Position
1-30	50W	1
50-54	50W	2, 3
68-88	50W	2, 3
142-176	50W	2, 3
380-512	50W	2, 3
806-870	10W	2, 3

1.8 Vehicle Duty Cycle Guidelines

NOTE: For further information contact your National Sales Company representative, or local Ford dealer. If they are unable to help you then please contact FPSV Technical Support at FPSVHelp@ford.com

It is necessary to take into account the customer usage profile and the anticipated vehicle duty cycles of the modified vehicle in order to choose the appropriate specification of the base vehicle.

It is necessary to select the appropriate drive, engine, gear ratio, gross vehicle mass, gross train mass, axle plates and payloads of the base vehicle to match the customer requirements.

Where possible make sure that the base vehicle is ordered with any necessary plant fit options.

A high numeric gear ratio is recommended for vehicles with customer requirements for:

- High payload
- Trailer tow
- Frequent stop-go cycles
- High altitude and gradients
- Terrain conditions such as found on building and construction sites

1.8.1 Vehicle Ride and Handling Attributes

 **CAUTION: Do not exceed the axle plate, gross vehicle mass, trailer plate and gross trailer mass limits.**

NOTE: Raising the centre of gravity will affect ride and handling.

NOTE: The vehicle should be evaluated for safe operation prior to sale.

1.9 End of Life Vehicle (ELV) Directive

NOTE: For further information please contact your National Sales Company representative, or local Ford dealer. If they are unable to help you then please contact FPSV Technical Support at FPSVHelp@ford.com

The European End-of-Life Vehicle (ELV) directive requires that environmental and recycling aspects are integrated in the development process of new components and vehicles. This includes requirements with respect to:

- The overall recyclability (85%)/recoverability (95%) of vehicles
- Limited use of hazardous substances including the elimination of prohibited substances such as lead, hexavalent chromium, cadmium and mercury
- Publication of dismantling information
- Parts Marking according to the corresponding ISO Standards: ISO 1043-1, 1043-2 and 11469 for plastics and ISO 1629 for rubber materials
- Increasing use of recycled materials
- Producers meet all, or a significant part of, the costs to take back End-of-Life Vehicles

In addition to the requirements resulting from the End-of-Life directive other environmental targets should be taken into consideration such as:

- Minimising costs and environmental burden along the product lifecycle
- Maximising use of renewable materials e.g. natural fibres
- Minimising the presence of substances impacting vehicle interior air quality/clean compartment or allergenic reactions. This refers to aspects like smell, fogging, toxicity and allergy coming from material in the interior
- Eliminate use of prohibited substances which are listed in the Global Automotive Declarable Substance List (GADSL) at <http://www.gadsl.org>

For continued legal compliance and environmental performance of all Ford products it is essential that any conversion of the vehicle is in compliance with the requirements listed above.

This is not a complete list of all legal requirements to be met by every converted vehicle.

1.10 Jacking

WARNINGS:

 **Always position the vehicle on a hard level surface. If the vehicle must be jacked up on a soft surface use load spreading blocks under the jack. Always chock the wheel diagonally opposite the jacking point. Failure to follow these instructions may result in personal injury.**

 **You must use the specific jacking points.**

 **When jacking the E-Transit BEV, the Jack must NOT be placed under the High Voltage Battery, the Battery Cradle, the Side Impact Protection Bars or the Electric Drive Assembly. The vehicle must only be jacked using the correct jacking locations identified in the Owners Manual**

CAUTIONS:

 **It is important that only the correct jacking and support locations are used at all times. Other positions, you may damage the body, steering, suspension, engine, braking system or the fuel lines.**

 **Make sure that access to the spare wheel is maintained when converting the vehicle or relocating the spare wheel.**



Ensure there is sufficient clearance when positioning the jacking equipment to prevent damage of any underfloor components.

NOTE: When using the vehicle jack, refer to the owner guide for correct operating instructions.

NOTE: For Rear Wheel Drive ICE vehicles (gasoline/diesel), please ensure that the jack is ONLY placed beneath the rear axle tube and NOT under the rear damper bracket.

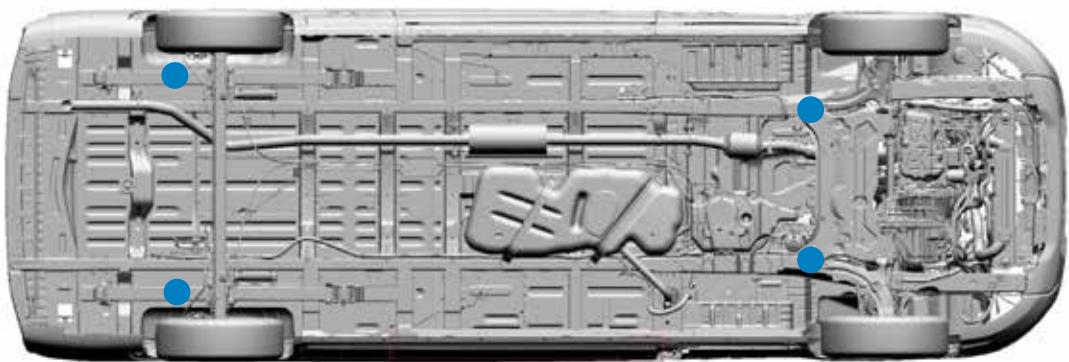
NOTE: Make sure that reinforcements are installed to maintain the integrity of the original body structure for/at jacking points.

NOTE: Any modifications to the vehicle must be noted in the owner's handbook or new descriptive literature included with the owner's documentation.

NOTE: Make sure that for rear wheel drive vehicles the jack is only placed underneath the rear axle tube and not under the rear damper bracket.

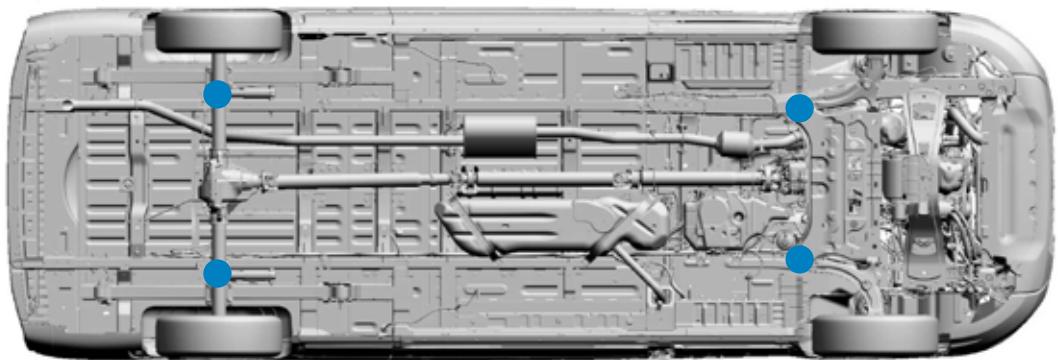
NOTE: If the vehicle has rear air conditioning make sure the vehicle jack does not come in contact with the air conditioning lines.

Front Wheel Drive - Van, Bus, Kombi



E290195

Rear Wheel Drive - Van, Bus, Kombi



E290194

1.11 Lifting

WARNINGS:

When lifting the vehicle with a two post lift for the removal of the engine/transmission or rear axle, make sure the vehicle is secured to the lift using vehicle retention straps to prevent tilting. Failure to follow these instructions may result in personal injury.

CAUTIONS:

! When lifting the vehicle with two post lift, vehicle lift arm adapters must be used under the lifting points.

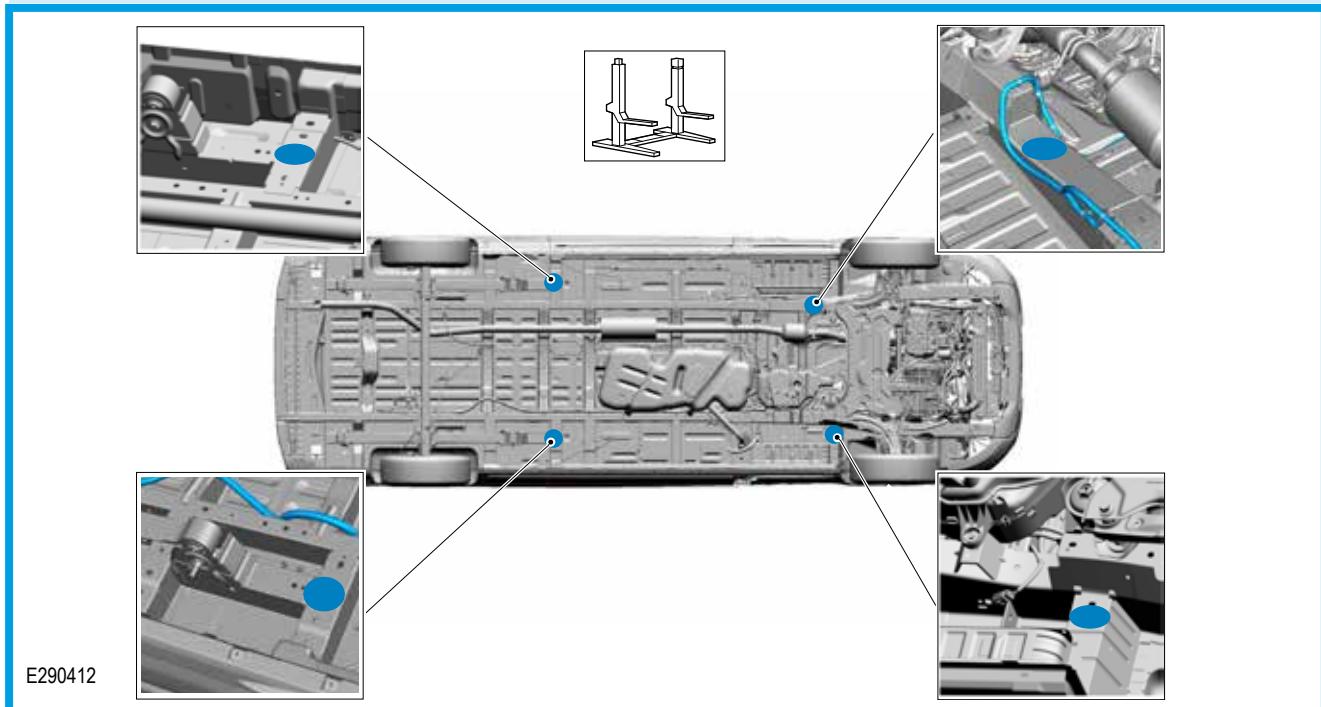
! When lifting the vehicle with a two post lift, the maximum kerb weight must not be exceeded.

! It is important that only the correct lifting and support locations are used at all times.

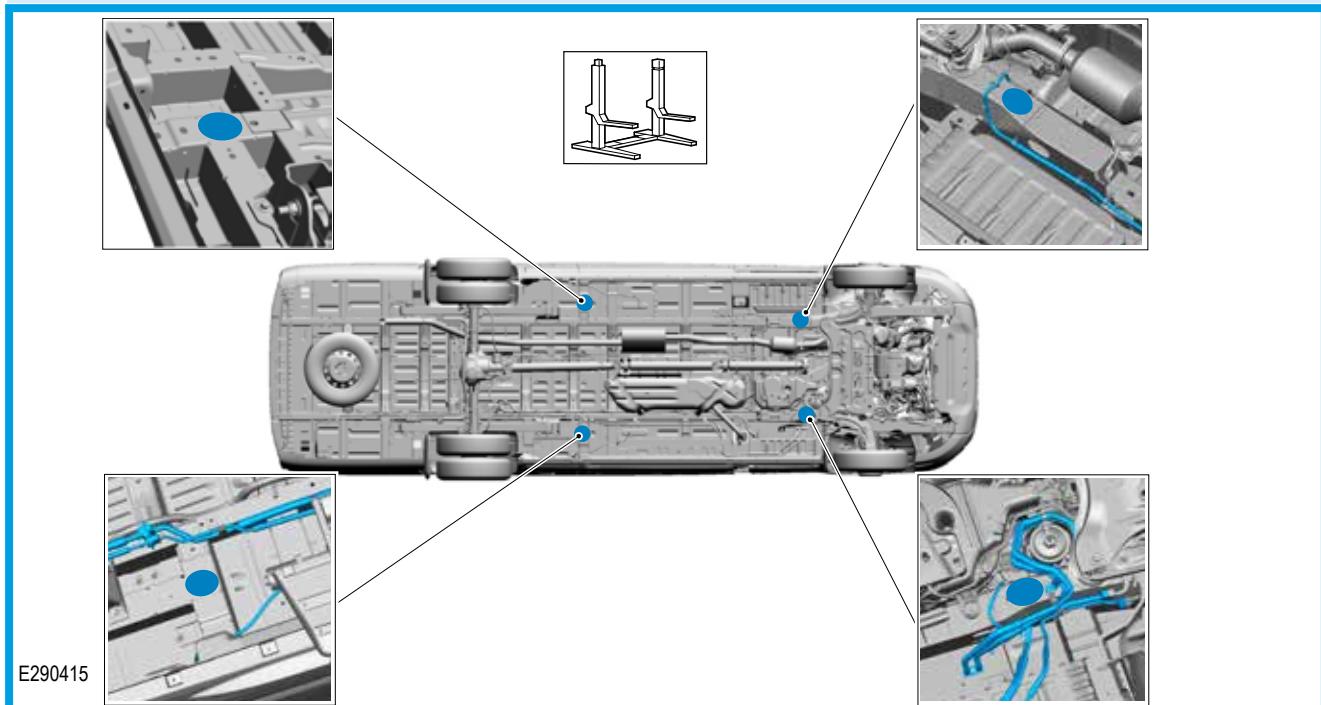
! Ensure there is sufficient clearance when positioning the lifting equipment to prevent damage of any underfloor components.

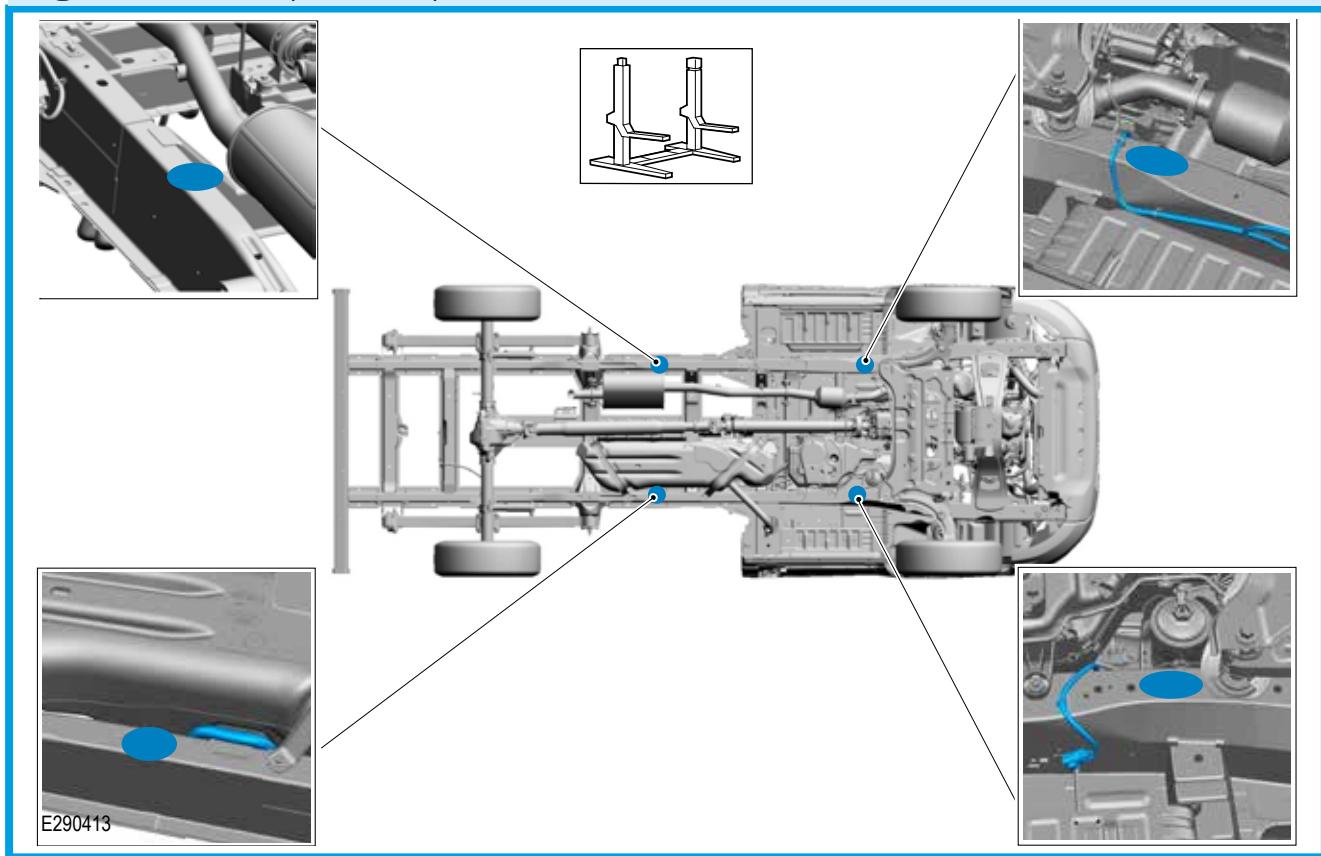
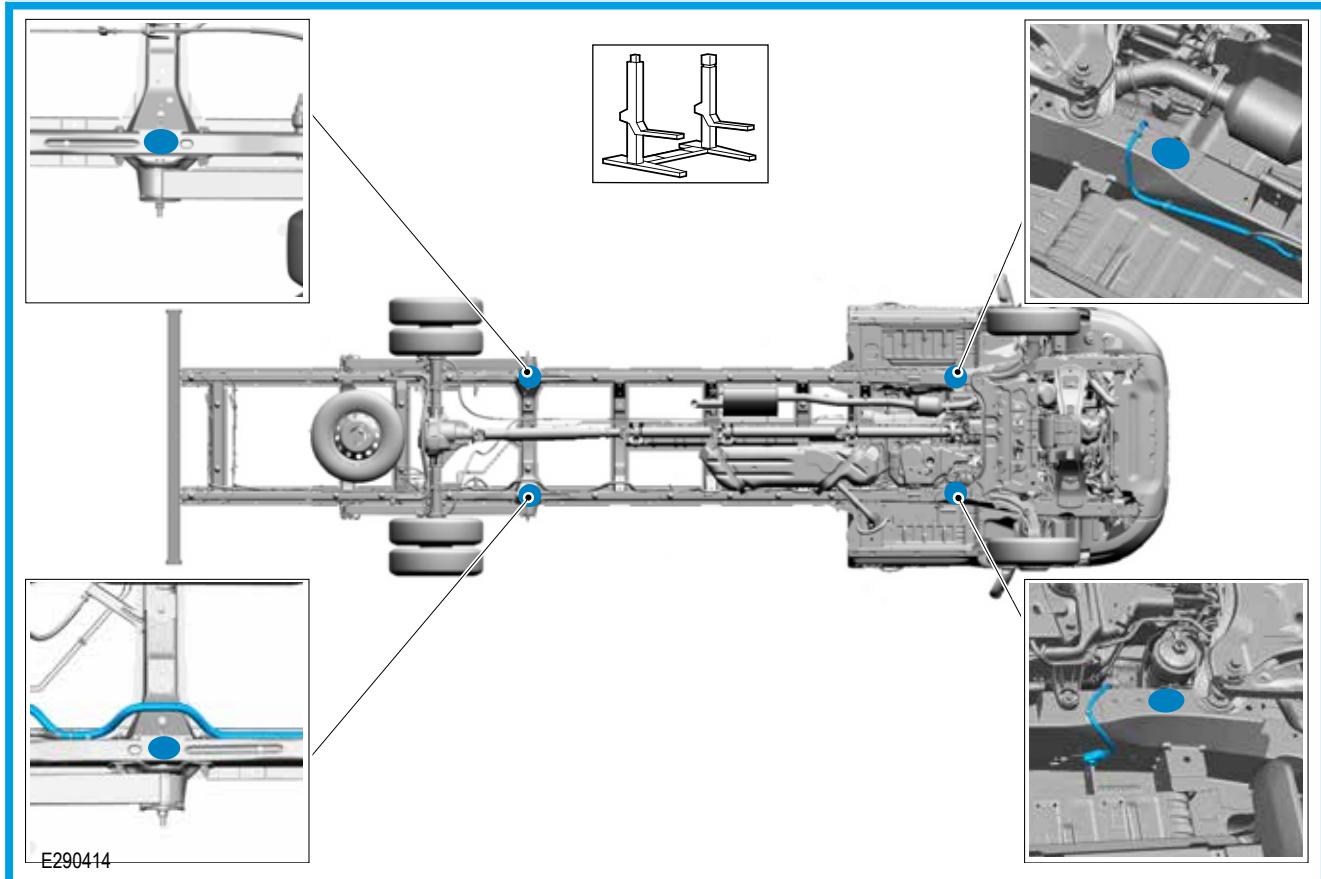
1.11.1 ICE (Diesel) Vehicles

Front Wheel Drive - Kombi (L3 shown)



Rear Wheel Drive - Bus (L4 shown)



Single Chassis Cab (L1 shown)**Single Chassis Cab (L5 shown)**

1.11.2 E-Transit BEV Vehicles

WARNING: The E-Transit BEV must NOT be lifted using the Battery, Battery Cradle, Side Impact Protection, Megabrace or Electric Drive Assembly as a lifting point

Front Hoist Locations

- Common for all variants
- Use of the "front step" body location either side
- Dependent on pad used, a block may need to be employed to avoid wheel arch liner damage

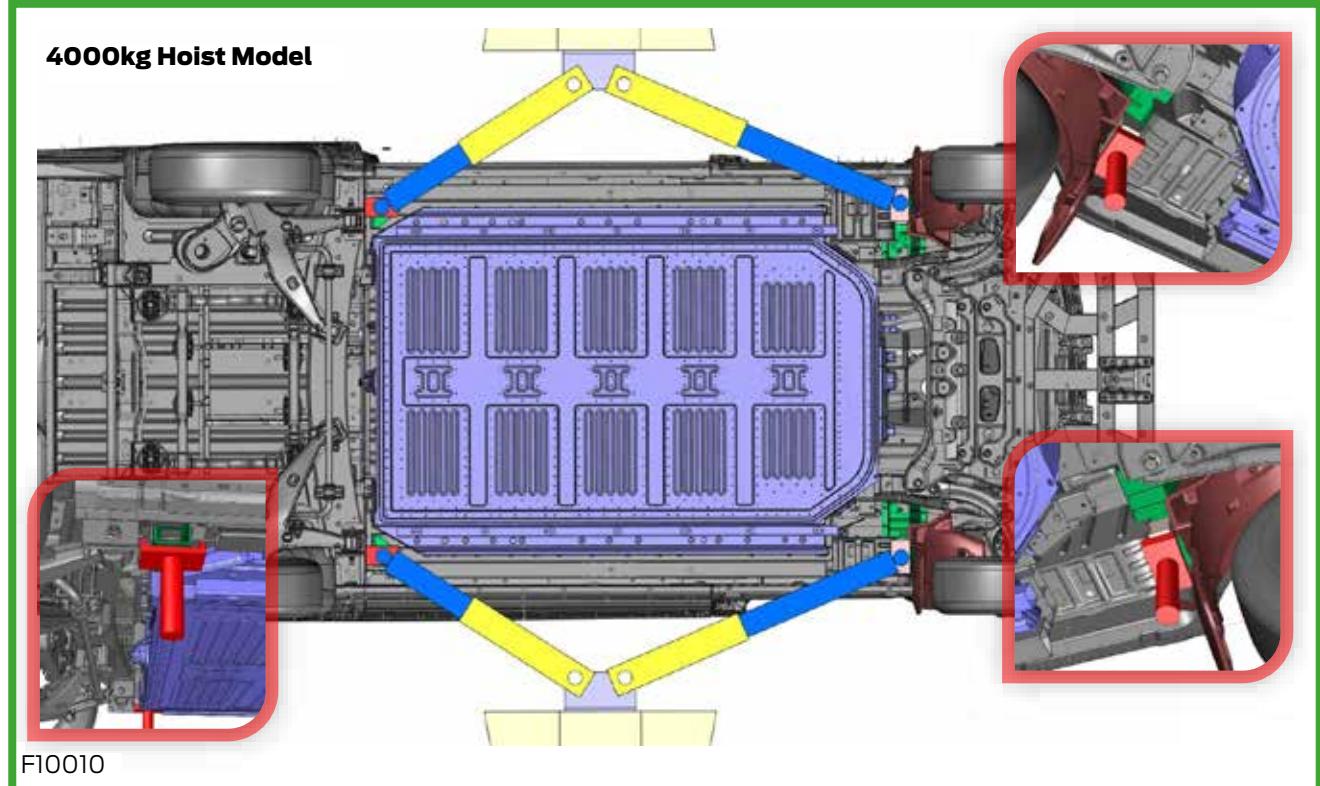
Rear Hoist Locations

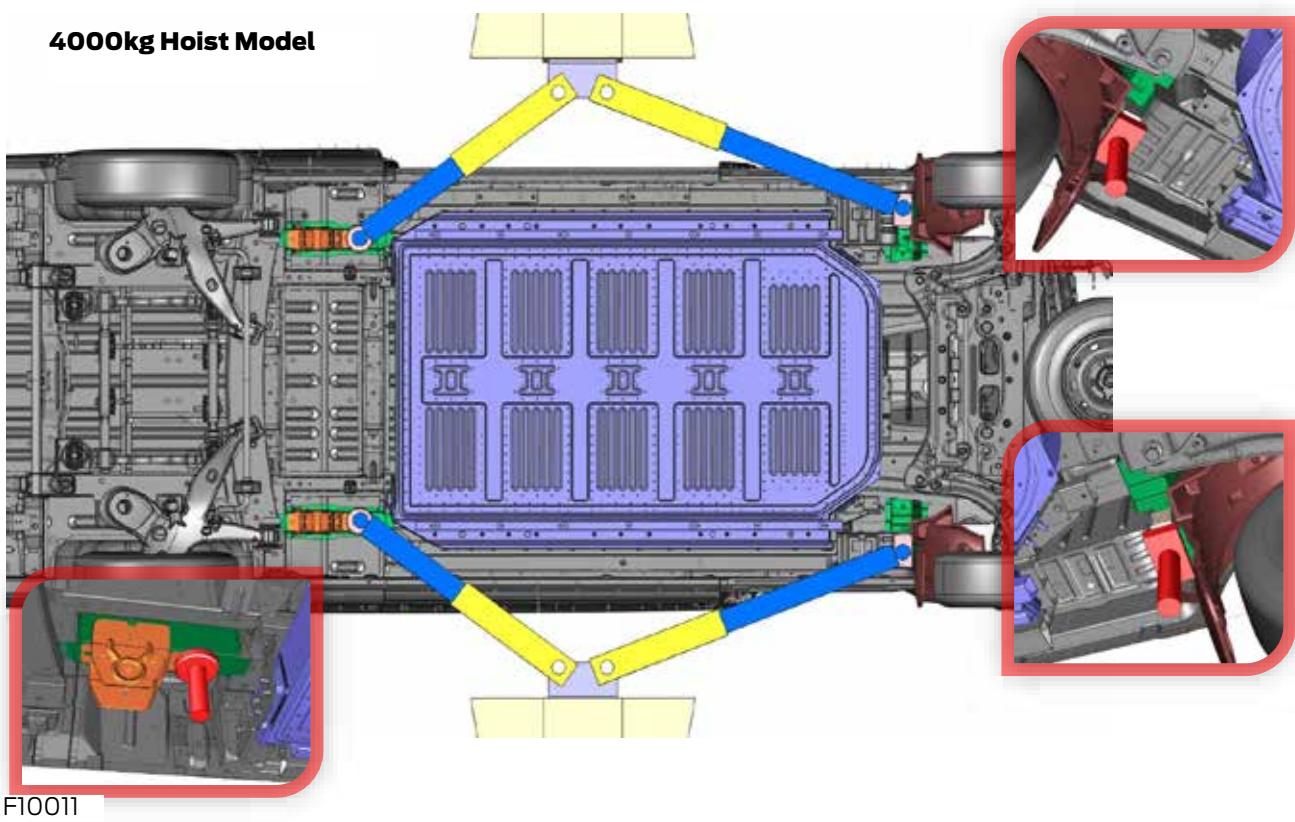
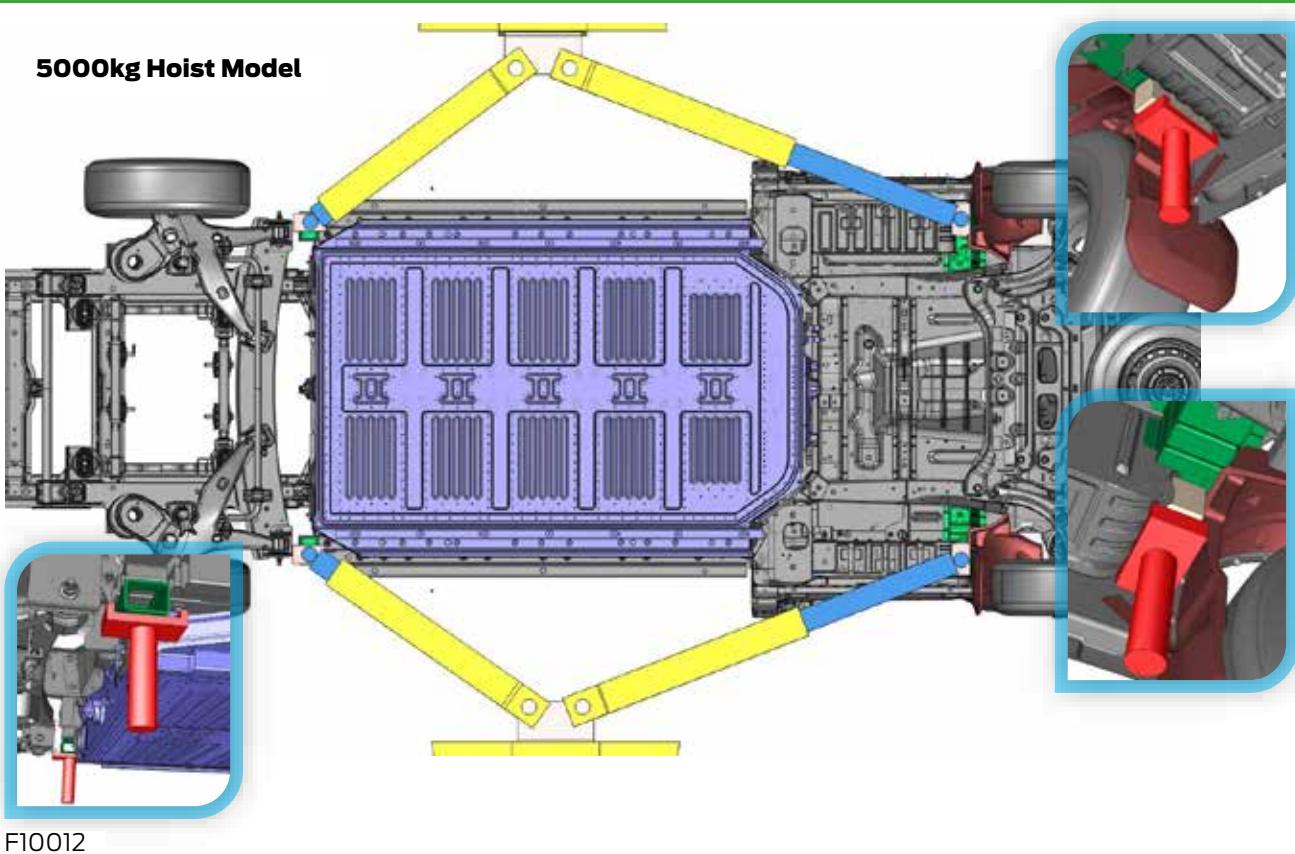
- Specific to variant
- L2 Van/Bus/Kombi - dedicated cradle lift pad
- L3/L4 Van/Bus/Kombi rail location
- L3/L4 Single Chassis Cab dedicated cradle lift pad
- All other Single Chassis Cab variants use rail location

Lift Pad and Dedicated Lift Cradle Pad

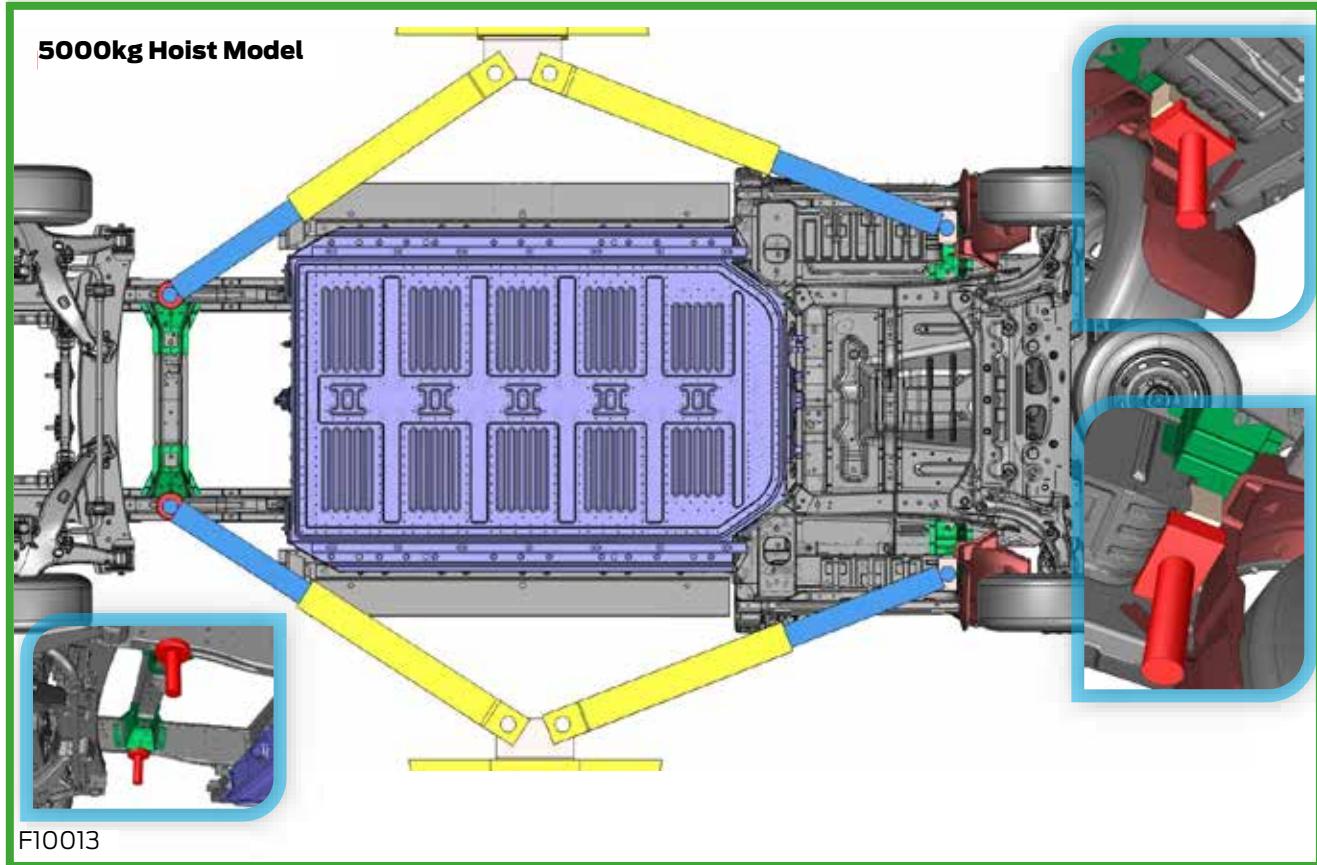


L2 Van, Bus, Kombi



L3/L4 Van, Bus, Kombi**4000kg Hoist Model****L3/L4 Single Chassis Cab****5000kg Hoist Model**

L5 Single Chassis Cab



1.12 Noise, Vibration and Harshness (NVH)

 **WARNING: Make sure that the modified vehicle complies with all relevant legal requirements.**

Changes to the powertrain, engine, transmission, exhaust, air intake system or tyres may influence the exterior noise emissions. Therefore the exterior noise level of the converted vehicle has to be verified.

The interior noise levels should not be deteriorated by the conversion. Reinforce panels and structures as appropriate to avoid vibrations. Consider the usage of sound deadening material on panels.

1.13 Vehicle Transportation Aids and Vehicle Storage

⚠ WARNING: Transport Mode will reduce the risk of Powertrain System damage from multiple starts without sufficient engine run time to warm the vehicle up to normal operating temperatures. There is a maximum number of starts allowed in Transport mode. Exiting Transport Mode prior to upfitting/conversion increases the risk of Powertrain System damage

CAUTIONS:

- ⚠ Make sure that the protective covers are not removed from an incomplete vehicle until the conversion is started.**
- ⚠ Make sure that components removed during conversion are kept clean and dry.**
- ⚠ Make sure that components removed during conversion are refitted to the same vehicle.**

In addition:

- The windscreen wipers should be lifted off the glass and set right upAll air intakes should be closed
- To avoid flat-spotting, tyre pressures should be increased but MUST NOT exceed the maximum tyre pressure marked on the tyre's side wall
- The brakes and parking brake release fully
- Apply suitable wheel chocks to prevent roll away

A significant risk during storage is deterioration of vehicle bodywork, therefore, appropriate storage procedures must be observed, including periodic inspection and maintenance.

Claims arising from deterioration caused by incorrect storage, maintenance or handling are not the responsibility of Ford.

Vehicle Convertors must determine their own procedures and precautions, particularly where vehicles are stored in the open, as they are exposed to any number of airborne contaminants.

The following may be considered a sensible approach to storage:

Short term storage (up to 14 days):

- Wherever possible, vehicles should be stored in an enclosed, dry, well-ventilated area. This area must be on firm, well drained ground which is free of long grass or weeds and where possible, protected from direct sunlight
- Vehicles must not be parked near/under foliage or close to water as additional protection may be necessary for certain areas of the vehicle

Long term storage (over 14 days):

- The battery should remain disconnected (initially disconnected after 7 days) but not removed from the vehicle
- The wiper blades should be removed and placed inside the vehicle. Make sure the wiper arms are suitably prevented from resting on the windscreen
- Wheel trims (where fitted) should be removed and stored in the luggage compartment
- Engage first gear (manual transmission) or place in park position 'P' (automatic transmission) and release the parking brake completely. Chock the wheels first if the vehicle is not on level ground
- Set climate controls to the 'open' position to provide ventilation, where possible
- Where protective film has been applied at manufacturing it must be left on the vehicle until prepared for delivery but must be removed after a maximum storage period of six months (film is date stamped to indicate required removal date)
- Make sure that all windows, doors, bonnet, lift gate, tailgate, luggage compartment lid, convertible top and roof opening panel are completely closed and the vehicle is locked

The Pre-Delivery Inspection (PDI) is the final opportunity to make sure a battery is fit for purpose prior the customer taking delivery of their new vehicle. The battery must be checked and appropriate action taken prior to the vehicle being handed over to the customer. Test results must be recorded on the PDI repair order.

Batteries: To make sure the battery is maintained correctly and to assist in preventing premature failure, it is necessary to check and recharge the battery monthly while a vehicle is not in use. Where a battery is left below its optimum charge level for any length of time, it may result in premature failure of the battery.

Battery Drain Prevention: As part of the Vehicle Convertor process and to maximise battery life and prevent premature failure of the Ford batteries, protect and prevent battery discharge during any conversion or whilst the vehicle is in storage. This may include leaving the vehicle in Transport mode as long as possible, reducing the amount of crank cycling around the facility, door ajar events and duration. The voltage MUST be checked when receiving and before shipping. Recharge with an appropriate proprietary battery charger if the vehicle battery voltage is below 12.4V for Standard and Enhanced flooded or AGM. Measure connected to the vehicle at ignition off and no loads active including interior or exterior lights in Off status.

Refer to: [4.5 Battery Systems](#)

Subsequent stage manufacturers and vehicle alterers who will be working with BEV vehicles should develop a plan to potentially charge these vehicles.

Charging stations may be particularly important at vehicle receiving locations in case vehicles arrive with insufficient charge to maneuver through the manufacturing process.

Charging stations are recommended at vehicle storage locations

Convertors should also consider the vehicle state of charge as it leaves their facility:

- BEV vehicles upfit as ship-throughs should enter the Ford transportation system with the same state of charge they had leaving the Ford assembly plant.
- In other cases, upfitters should consider their customer's expectations and transportation arrangements when determining any state of charge requirements.
- If the high voltage battery state of charge is less than 20%, charge vehicle to 40%. This is to ensure the High Voltage Battery state of charge is maintained between 20% and 40%

Action/Time in Storage	Monthly	Every 3 Months
Check vehicle is clean	X	-
Remove external contamination	X	-
Check battery condition — Recharge if necessary	X	-
Visually check tyres	X	-
Check interior for condensation	-	X
Run engine until coolant guage reaches temperature (60 °C) with aircon switched on, where applicable	-	X

1.14 Package and Ergonomics

NOTE: For further information please contact your National Sales Company representative, or local Ford dealer. If they are unable to help you then please contact FPSV Technical Support at FPSVHelp@ford.com

1.14.1 General Component Package Guidelines

 **WARNING: Do not modify, drill, cut or weld any suspension components, specifically the steering gear system, subframe or anti-roll bars, springs or shock absorbers including mounting brackets.**

The Vehicle Convertor has to ensure that sufficient clearance is maintained, under all drive conditions, to moving components such as axles, fans, steering, braking system etc.

The Vehicle Convertor is responsible for all installed components during the conversion. The durability has to be confirmed by appropriate test procedures.

1.14.2 Driver Reach Zones

Controls and/or equipment required to be used while driving should be located within easy reach of the driver so as not to impair driver control.

1.14.3 Driver Field of View

 **WARNING: Make sure that the modified vehicle complies with all relevant legal requirements.**

1.14.4 Conversion Effects on Parking Aids

 **WARNING: Ensure that monitors mounted in the cabin meet the interior package and safety requirements.**

 **System will not function if an aftermarket rear step or other rear mounted equipment is installed. Reverse Brake Assist feature will not automatically brake when a collision is imminent**

On conversions requiring a rear camera, the reverse signal may be taken as detailed in the electrical section, described in 'reversing lamps'.

[Refer to: 4.14 Exterior Lighting](#)

1.14.5 Aids for Vehicle Entry and Exit

Steps

WARNINGS:

 **Make sure that the modified vehicle complies with all relevant legal requirements.**

 **If this modification alters the homologated dimensions, a new approval may be necessary.**

 **CAUTION: Make sure that reinforcements are installed to maintain the integrity of the original body structure.**

Power side steps can be ordered as an option on the base vehicle. Please check for availability.

Where additional steps are installed, the required ground clearance line is to be maintained.

The Vehicle Convertor must make sure that a movable step is set in the stored position when the vehicle is running. The step surface must be non-slip.

Grab Handles

 **WARNING: Make sure that the location of the no-drill zones are checked before drilling.**

 **CAUTION: Make sure that reinforcements are installed to maintain the integrity of the original body structure.**

Grab handles can be ordered as an option on the base vehicle. Please check for availability.

1.14.6 Front, Rear and Side Under-Run Protection, Wheel Guards and Rear Registration Plate

 **WARNING: Check local legislation for legal requirements.**

Front Under run Protection must be designed to directive ECE 93⁽¹⁾ or applicable local legislation.

Rear Under run Protection must be designed to directive ECE 58⁽¹⁾ or applicable local legislation.

Side Under run Protection must be designed to directive ECE 73⁽¹⁾ or applicable local legislation.

⁽¹⁾ As amended periodically

Australian Government Approval for Chassis Cab Variants:

Rearmost Wheel Guards per ADR 42

Provision for Rear Registration Plate per ADR 61

1.14.7 Worldwide Harmonised Light-Duty Vehicle Test Procedures (WLTP) Calculation Inputs



The following attributes are required as part of the WLTP calculation for completed vehicles

Mass of the Completed Vehicle

All modifications and changes that affect the actual mass of the vehicle must be taken into account. The definition of actual mass is described under the provisions of regulation 2017/1151 Annex XXI. The actual mass of the completed vehicle needs to be provided for the front and rear axle. This weight split will be important where the completed vehicle has mixed tyres between the front and rear.

Frontal Surface Area

All modifications and changes that affect the frontal surface area of the completed vehicle must be taken into account. For further information please see information later in this section.

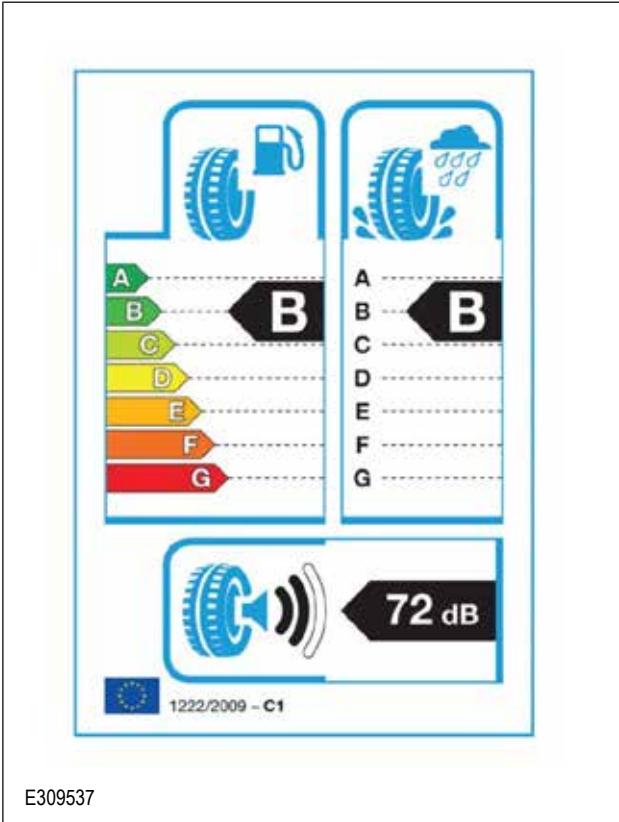
Tyre Rolling Resistance

Any changes in tyres fitted to the completed vehicle must be taken into account. The efficiency class and tyre class is needed to determine the correct calculation. This can be found on the tyre label as per the example below.

Exceeding Attribute Limits

As a requirement of the Vehicle Convertor to use the base vehicle approval, the Vehicle Convertor must stay within the defined limits of the BEMM and the Emissions Type Approval applicable to the vehicle.

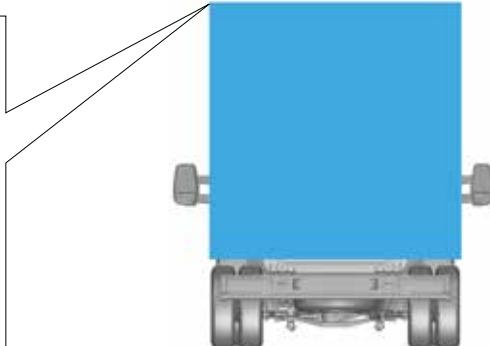
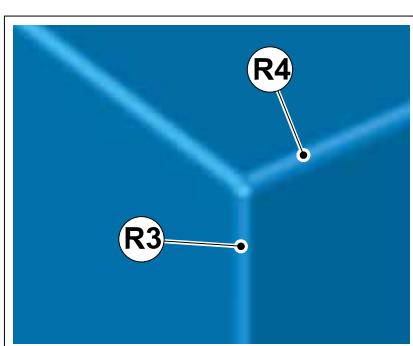
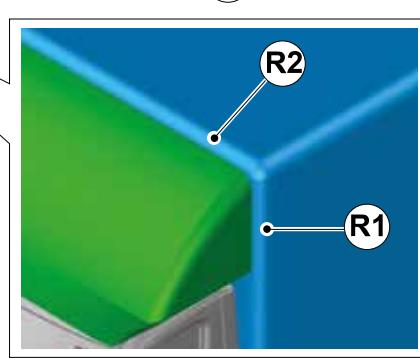
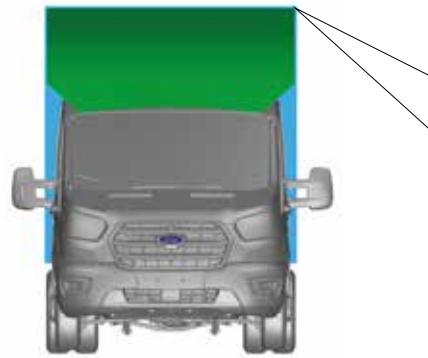
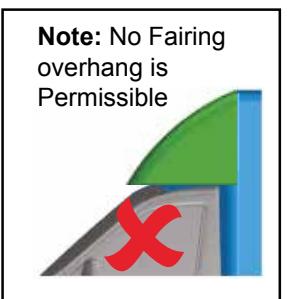
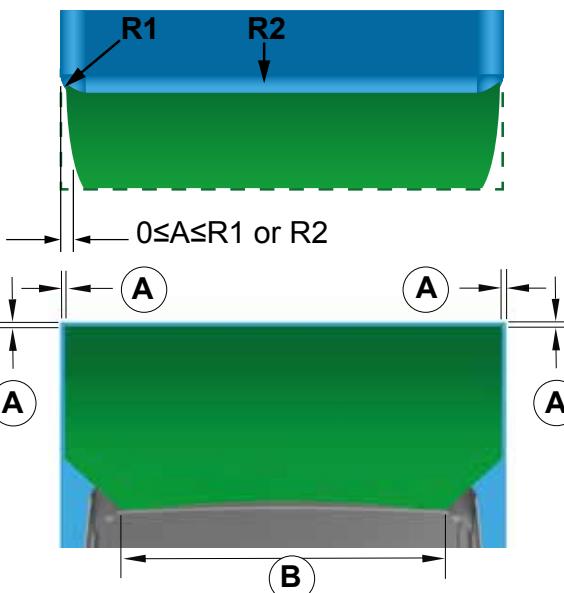
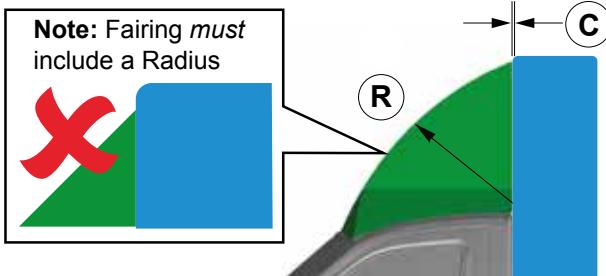
It is the responsibility of the Vehicle Convertor to ensure they stay within these defined limits to remain compliant with the vehicle performance. If the Vehicle Convertor wishes to exceed the limits they must seek clarification with the relevant technical service or type approval authority. In this case, the base approval may become invalid and the Vehicle Convertor may need to re-certify the vehicle against the exceeded limits.



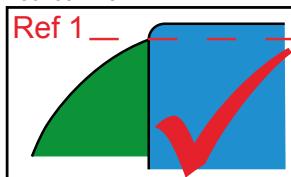
WLTP Constraints

Please Note: If the front/top edge of the box body (R2) has a radius between 60-200mm, the fairing top edge should be placed at the lowest point of that radius - see Ref 1 image (bottom)

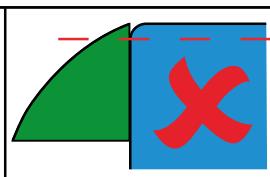
Gap between fairing and body (C) should limited to a maximum of 20mm



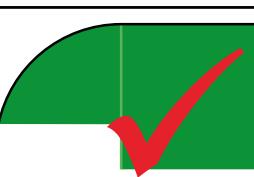
E302537 Rev D



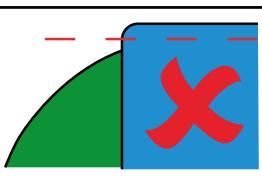
Fairing aligned to lower point of radius (R2)



Fairing with sharp edge above radius (R2)



Fairing tangential to top of box. No raised edge. Applicable to integrated fairing/box only



Fairing below lowest point of radius (R2)

F10015

Item	Description	Item	Description
A	Distance between Fairing/Edge of Box Body: $0 \leq A \leq R1$ or $R2$	R1	Front Box Body Edge - Radius LHS/RHS
B	Fairing Width (Min: 850mm/Max: Width of Box body)	R2	Front Box Body Edge - Radius Top
C	Gap between Fairing and Body: Max 20mm	R3	Rear Box Body Edge - Radius LHS/RHS
R	Radius of Fairing Range 1000mm - 3000mm	R4	Rear Box Body Edge - Radius Top

Frontal Area Calculation

NOTE: The WLTP calculator can be accessed at <https://www.fordserviceinfo.com/>. You will need to register or login to use it.

Recognised options of calculating Frontal area are by CAD, pixel counting or a certified laboratory wind tunnel test.

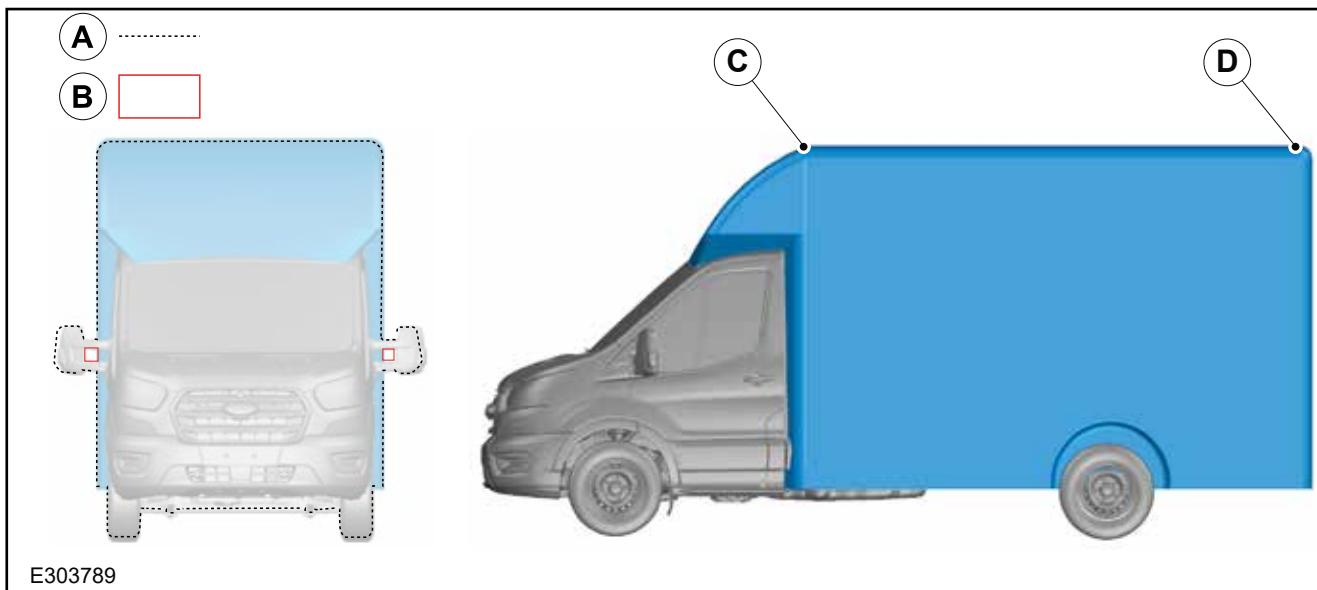
*The front surface area must be taken from the

highest point of the conversion. This point can either be at the front (C), the rear (D) or anywhere in between on the Box Body.

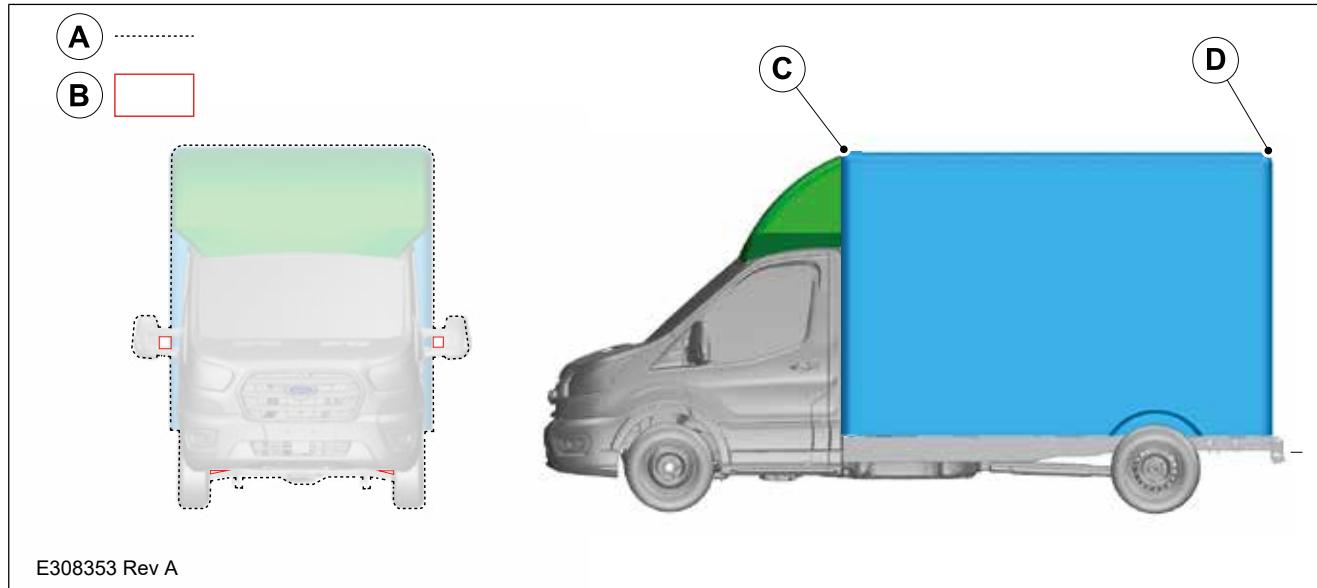
To find the front surface area use calculation (m²):

A - B

Total Frontal Area Calculation FWD



Total Frontal Area Calculation RWD



Item	Description
A	Total frontal area to be calculated*
B	Example areas to exclude in calculation
C	The highest point of conversion in front
D	The highest point of conversion in rear

1.14.8 Vehicle Dimensions Key

Van, Bus, Kombi			
Wheelbase	Overall Length (mm)	Overall Height (mm)	
		H2	H3
L2 - 3300	5531	2471-2584 (ICE) 2548-2554 (BEV)	2711-2823 (ICE) 2788-2793 (BEV)
L3 - 3750	5981	2459-2579 (ICE) 2532-2553 (BEV)	2698-2818 (ICE) 2772-2792 (BEV)
L4 - 3750	6704	-	2675-2760 (ICE) 2774-2785 (BEV)

Skeletal for Camper and Non Camper	
Wheelbase	Overall Height (mm)
L2 - 3300	2224-2235
L3 - 3750	2216-2227
L4 - 3750	2215-2226
L5 - 4528	2207-2218

Chassis Cab			
Wheelbase	Overall Length (mm)		Overall Height (mm)
	Without Float	With Float	
Single Chassis Cab - H1			
L1 - 3134	5205	5357	2250-2268
L2 - 3504	5572	5767	2228-2272
L3 - 3954	6022	6204	2235-2268 (ICE) 2247-2271 (BEV)
L4 - 3954	6579	6797	2236-2264 (ICE) 2247-2271 (BEV)
L5 - 4522	7577	7797	2222-2263
Double Chassis Cab - H1			
L2 - 3504	5572	5767	2225-2260
L3 - 3954	6022	6204	2230-2259
L4 - 3954	6404	6587	2233-2254
L5 - 4522	7394	7612	2222-2253

All dimensions are subject to manufacturing tolerances and refer to minimum specification models and do not include additional equipment.

Height dimensions show the range for the minimum to maximum weight range and are for guidance only.

Depending on the body style, Transit is available in 3 Roof Heights and 5 Wheelbases.

Roof Heights:

- Low (H1)
- Medium (H2)
- High (H3)

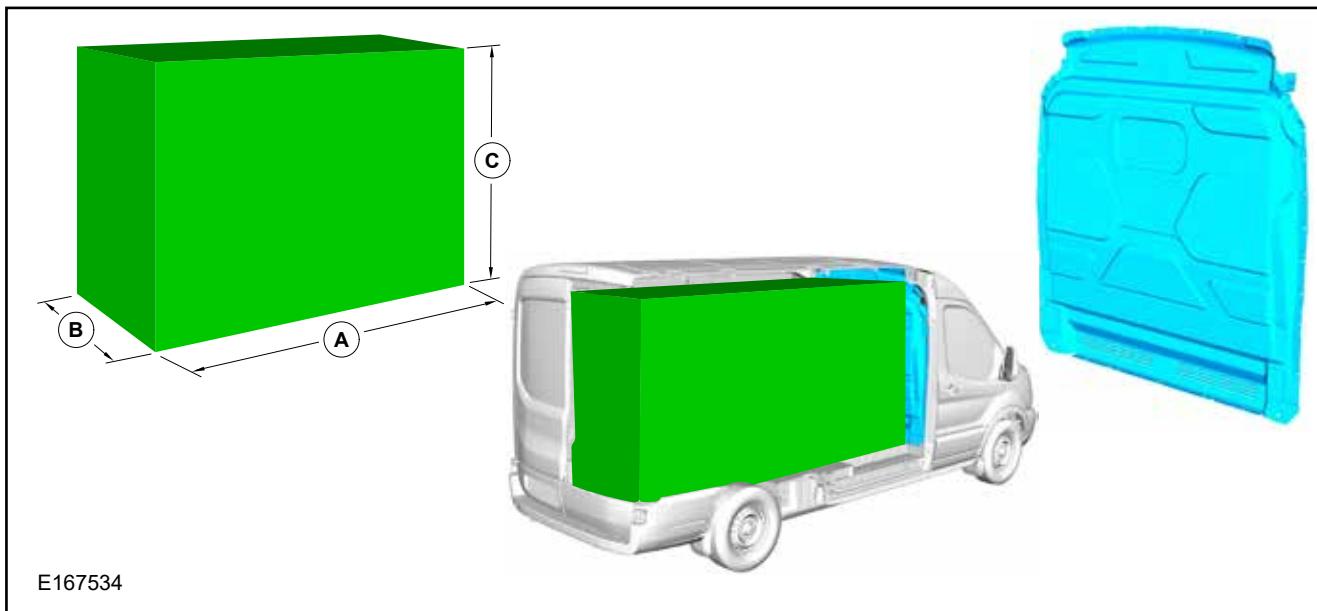
Wheelbases:

- Short Wheelbase (L1)
- Medium Wheelbase (L2)
- Long Wheelbase (L3)
- Long Wheelbase Extended Frame (L4)
- Extra Long Wheelbase Extended Frame (L5)



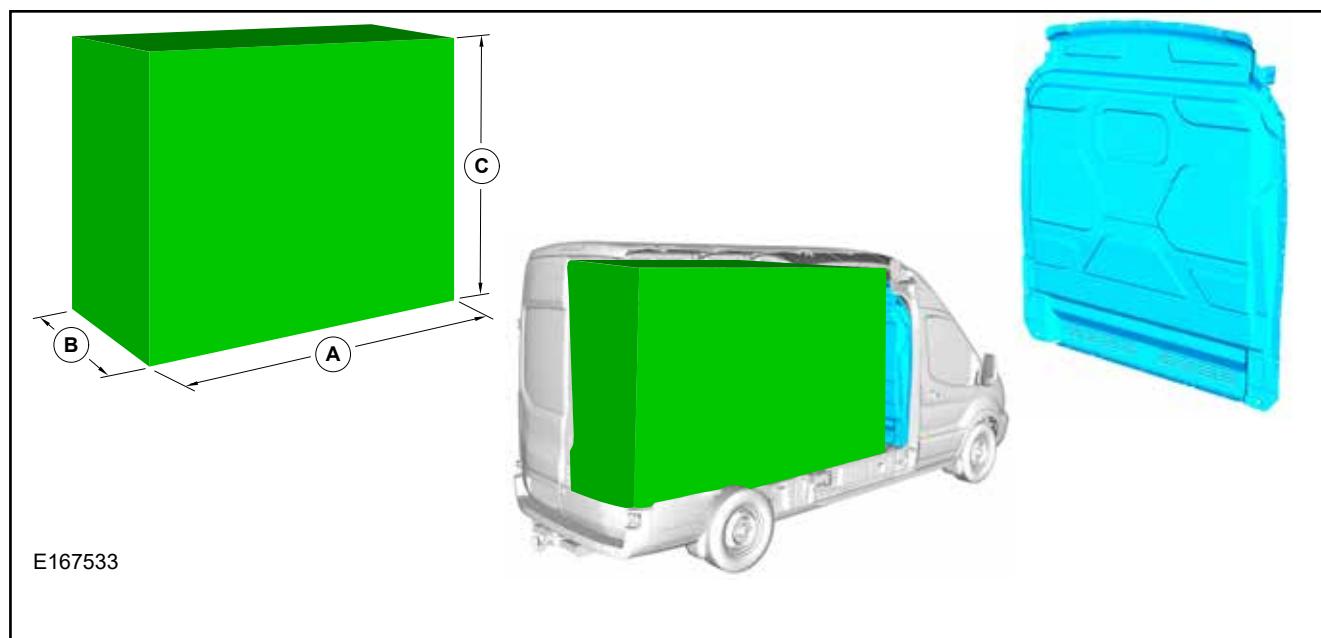
1.14.9 Recommended Main Load Area Dimensions

H2 - Medium Roof Height - Full Bulkhead - Fixed/Glazed



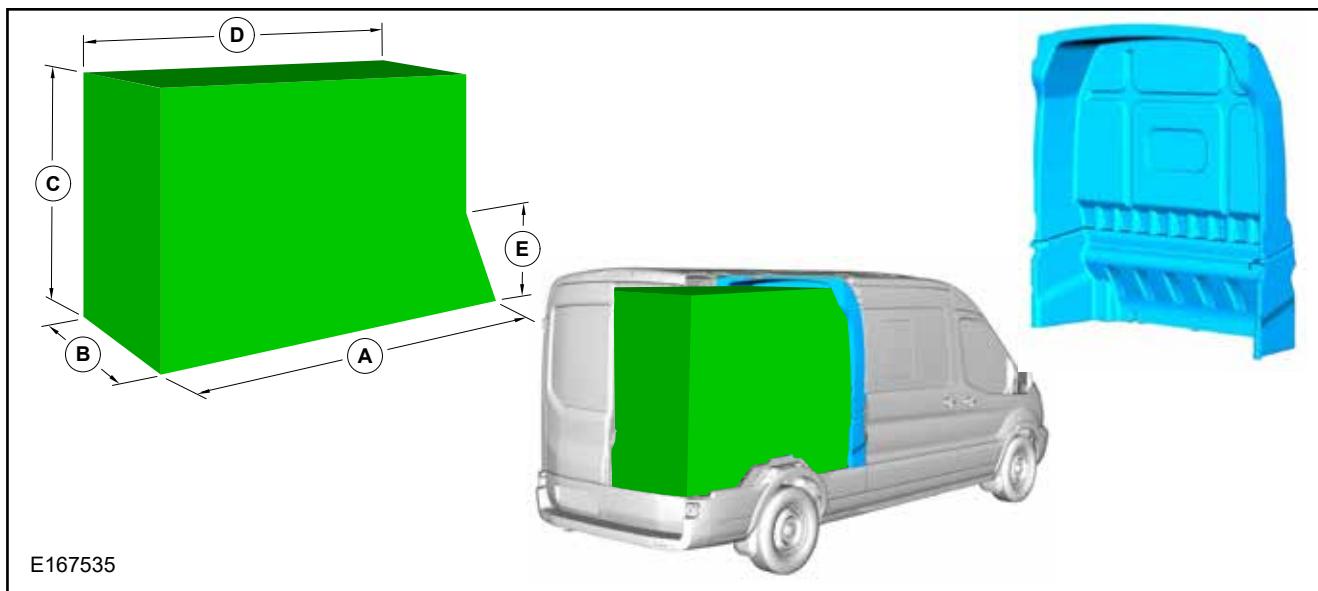
Vehicle	A (mm)	B (mm)	C (mm)
L2 - H2 FWD SRW	2872	1392	1700
L2 - H2 RWD SRW	2872	1392	1600
L3 - H2 FWD SRW	3322	1392	1700
L3 - H2 RWD SRW	3322	1392	1600

For vehicle heights see 'Vehicle Dimension Key' table in this section of this manual

H3 - High Roof Height - Full Bulkhead - Fixed/Glazed

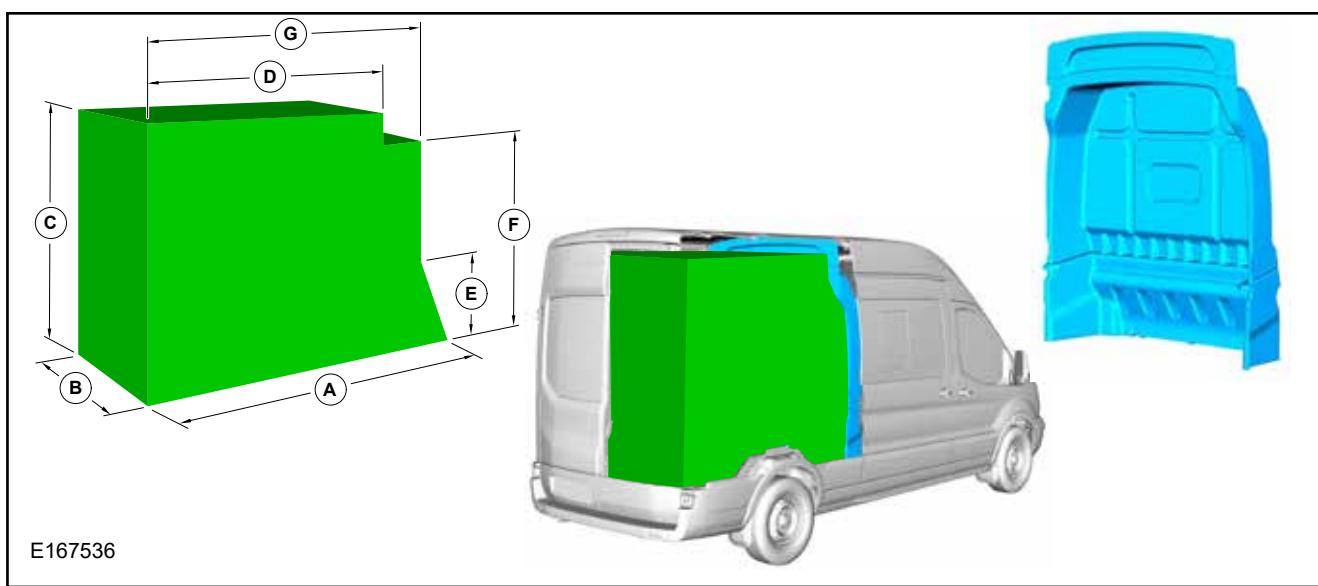
Vehicle	A (mm)	B (mm)	C (mm)
L2 - H3 FWD SRW	2877	1386	1925
L2 - H3 RWD SRW	2877	1386	1825
L3 - H3 FWD SRW	3327	1386	1925
L3 - H3 RWD SRW	3327	1386	1825
L4 - H3 RWD SRW	4050	1386	1825
L4 - H3 RWD DRW	4064	1154	1868

For vehicle heights see 'Vehicle Dimension Key' table in this section of this manual

H2 - Medium Roof Height - Double Cab in Van Full Bulkhead - Fixed/Glazed


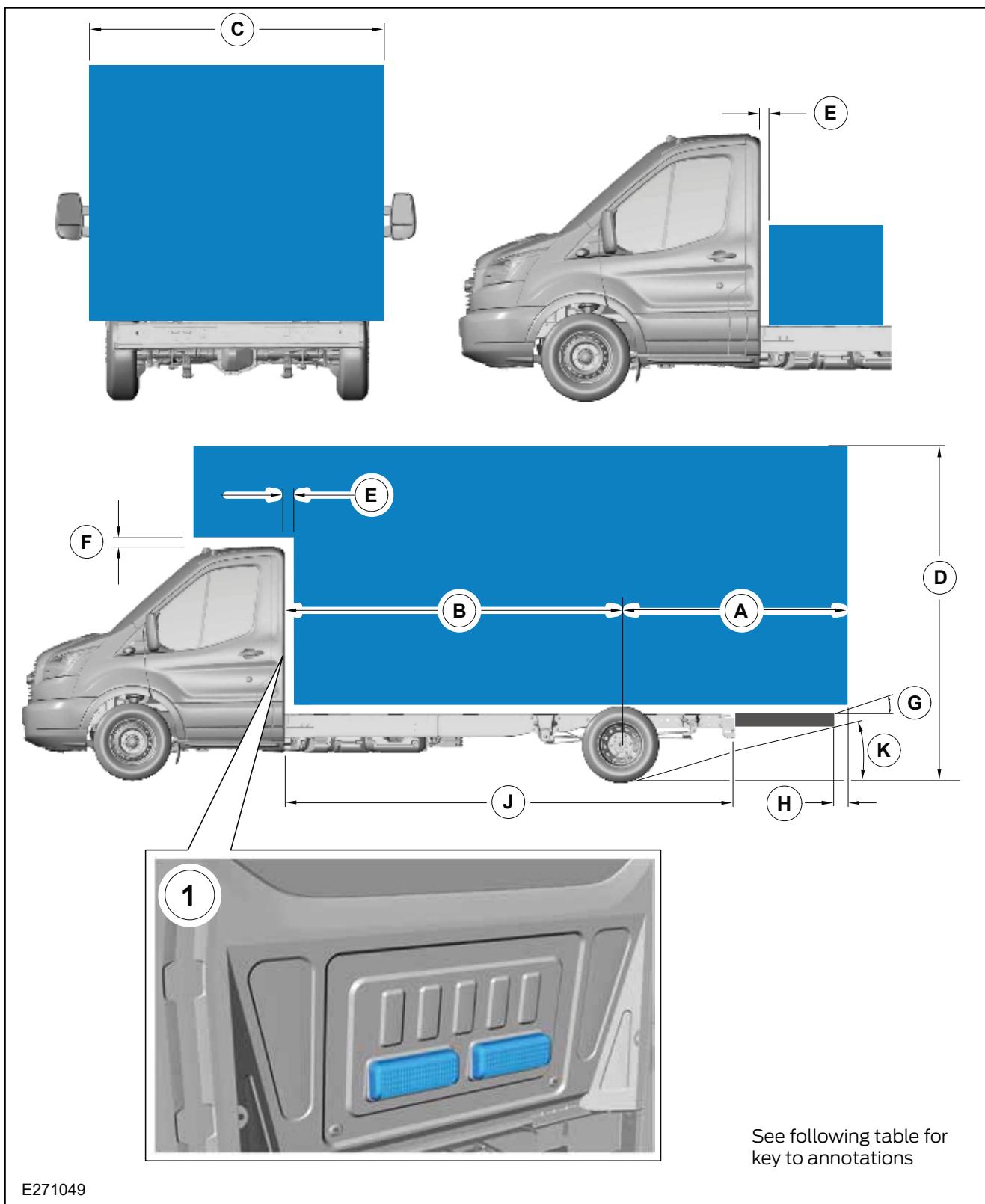
Vehicle	A (mm)	B (mm)	C (mm)	D (mm)	E (mm)
L2 - H2 FWD	2038	1392	1818	1789	520
L2 - H2 RWD	2038	1392	1718	1789	520
L3 - H2 FWD	2488	1392	1818	2239	520
L3 - H2 RWD	2488	1392	1718	2239	520

For vehicle heights see 'Vehicle Dimension Key' table in this section of this manual

H3 - High Roof Height - Double Cab in Van Full Bulkhead - Fixed/Glazed


Vehicle	Dimensions (mm)						
	A	B	C	D	E	F	G
L2 - H3 FWD	2038	1392	2055	1439	520	1798	1788
L2 - H3 RWD	2038	1392	1955	1439	520	1698	1788
L3 - H3 FWD	2488	1392	2055	1889	520	1798	2238
L3 - H3 RWD	2488	1392	1955	1889	520	1698	2238
L4 - H3 RWD SRW	3211	1392	1955	2612	520	1698	2961
L4 - H3 RWD DRW	3211	1154	1955	2612	520	1698	2961

For vehicle heights see 'Vehicle Dimension Key' table in this section of this manual



E271049

Description		L1	L2	L3	L4	L5	
I A	Maximum recommended rear overhang ⁽¹⁾			Maximum 50% of the wheelbase considering CoG of (second unit) body and payload is not rearwards of rear axle centre line and considering the requirements of masses and dimensions regulation			
B	Back of cab to rear axle	Single Cab	1730 mm	2097 mm	2547 mm	2547 mm	
		Double Cab	-	1282	1732	1732	
C	Maximum external body width	Short Mirror Arms	2200 mm				
		Long Mirror Arms	Maximum widths of up to 2400 mm ⁽²⁾				
I D	Maximum allowable height without exceeding the maximum centre of gravity height						
E	30 mm minimum clearance between the back of the cab and the second unit body						
F	30 mm						
G	Ensure local lighting legislation is maintained						
H	Under run bar and towing attachment legislation to be maintained						
J	Frame length behind back of cab (not including rear light cross member)	Single Cab	2775 mm	3142 mm	3592 mm	4149 mm	
		Double Cab	-	2327 mm	2777 mm	3159 mm	
		Stripped Chassis	-	2939 mm	3389 mm	3593 mm	
K	Departure angle		It is recommended to ensure that a minimum departure angle of 14° at RGAWR of the converted vehicle and for any additional part of the conversion is maintained.				
1	Vents to be free from obstruction						



⁽¹⁾ Convertors of a completed vehicle with a secondary body are responsible for ECE R 153 compliance. Should the converters secondary body frame strength, overhang and attachment specification replicate that of the Ford Transit homologation compliant vehicle, then ECE R 153 compliance can be assumed also for the converted vehicle. Any deviation to these characteristics would require the converter to demonstrate regulatory compliance as appropriate with the authorities. For clarification and help, please contact FPSV Technical Support at FPSVHelp@ford.com"

⁽²⁾ The maximum width of a vehicle conversion may be restricted below 2400 mm in order to comply with installation of Lighting Regulation ECE R48 which specifies widths restrictions for mandatory light components. Fitting optional Front Fog Lamps restricts the vehicle width to 2375 mm. For non-European Union territories, please refer to local legislation. For Australia and New Zealand, please refer to ADR43 vehicle regulations.

1.14.10 Vehicles with Roof Mounted Units for Transit and E-Transit

Vehicle with Roof Mounted Units Frontal Area Calculation

NOTE: The WLTP calculator can be accessed at <https://www.fordserviceinfo.com/> You will need to register or log in to use it.

NOTE: LDT/HDT Transit and E-Transit variants are covered.

NOTE: All standard/optional equipment have already been taken into account, i.e. base vehicle frontal area including mirrors.

To minimise the effect on frontal area, roof mounted systems can be recessed into/below the original roof line of the vehicle. For the height measurement (B), only measure the part of the unit that protrudes above the roof line.

The Vehicle Converter only needs to calculate the frontal area of the mounted unit (AxB) in m². This additional frontal area needs to be added to the WLTP calculator.

Roof unit must be aerodynamic.

Vehicle Type	Vehicle Class	Max Additional Frontal Area. (FxG) m ²	Tyre Class
Transit Van Bus Kombi Med Roof	M1/N1	2.2	No Restriction
Transit Van Bus Kombi High Roof	M1/N1	1.8	No Restriction

Max Frontal Area will depend on the roof height of the vehicle. Higher roof line will reduce frontal area allowance.

1.14.11 Chassis Cab Body for Diesel and E-Transit

General Information

WARNINGS:

 **Do not modify the wheelbase or add any type of frame extension.**

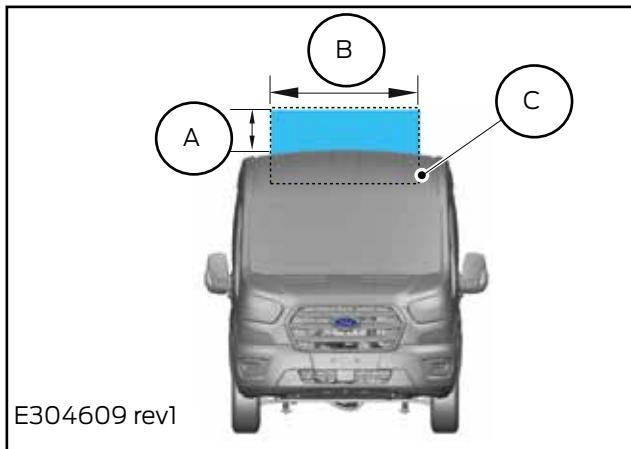
 **Do not allow Centre of Gravity of the body payload to fall behind the rear axle centre line.**

NOTE: The maximum front surface area for incomplete Chassis Cab is shown in frontal area table (only applicable to Light Duty WLTP).

NOTE: Extreme rear overhang may encourage unacceptable loading conditions, which could unload the front axle producing unacceptable handling and braking characteristics.

All dimensions are subject to manufacturing tolerances and refer to minimum specification models and do not include additional equipment. The illustrations are for guidance only.

Frontal Area Calculation



Item	Description
A	Roof Mounted Unit Height
B	Roof Mounted Unit Width
C	Integrated Roof Mounted Unit

Chassis Cab Body WLTP Constraints

 **CAUTION: For WLTP compliance, Vehicle Convertors must use the highest efficiency class tyre available that meets local legislation. Any tyre with a category F or G risks not being in the WLTP energy range.**

NOTE: The WLTP calculator can be accessed at <https://www.fordserviceinfo.com/> You will need to register or login to use it.

NOTE: The maximum front surface area for incomplete Chassis Cab is shown in WLTP Constraints Table (Applicable to Light Duty and Heavy Duty WLTP).

To meet WLTP requirements depending upon the frontal area, aerodynamic measures are required for the box body as specified by the following tables.

To be compliant with emissions homologation E-Transit reference mass must be equal to or above 2610 kg reference mass.

For list of engines and powers
[Refer to 3.1 Engine/E Drive](#)

WLTP Constraints Table Diesel Engines - Chassis Cab
Light Duty and WLTP Heavy Duty Engines

Max Af (m ²)	Fairing	Minimum Radius (mm)			
		R1	R2	R3	R4
SRW					
5.9	No	25	25	25	25
6.4	No	60	60	25	25
6.6	Yes	25	25	25	25
6.8	Yes	60	60	25	25
7.0	Yes	100	100	25	25
7.1	Yes	100	100	100	100
7.3	Yes	200	200	25	25
7.4	Yes	200	200	25	100
7.6	Yes	100	300	25	25
7.8	Yes	100	400	25	25
8.0	Yes	100	500	25	25
DRW					
5.8	No	25	25	25	25
6.2	No	60	60	25	25
6.5	Yes	25	25	25	25
6.7	Yes	60	60	25	25
6.8	Yes	100	100	25	25
6.9	Yes	100	100	100	100
7.1	Yes	200	200	25	25
7.2	Yes	200	200	25	100
7.4	Yes	200	300	25	25
7.6	Yes	100	400	25	25
7.8	Yes	100	500	25	25

Max Af (m²) applies until next minimum radius/fairing requirement is met, eg If frontal area 6.5 m² use max Af of 6.6 m².
 For SRW it must comply the defined design requirement (Fairing, R1&R2, R3&R4≥25mm).

WLTP Constraints Table E-Transit - Chassis Cab SRW

Max Af [m ²]	Fairing	Minimum Radius (mm)			
		R1	R2	R3	R4
SRW					
5.9	No	25	25	25	25
6.4	No	60	60	25	25
6.6	Yes	25	25	25	25

1.14.12 Skeletal Chassis for Non Camper Body, Diesel Engines

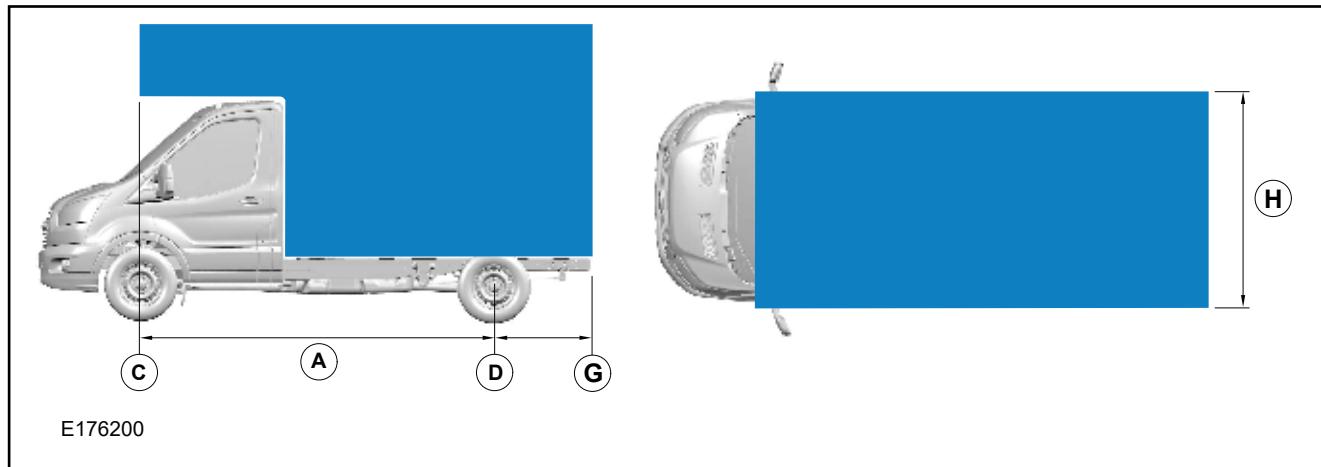
General Information

NOTE: The Maximum front surface area for incomplete Skeletal Chassis cab is shown in the frontal area table for both Light Duty and Heavy Duty WLTP. See WLTP constraints table.

For WLTP Heavy Duty Incomplete Chassis cab (SRW) that fall within a reference mass of 2380-2610 kg, Fairing and radii detail are required. See WLTP constraints table.

For list of engines and powers please refer to: [Section 3.1.2 Engine / E-Drive Types](#)

Basic Dimensions and Weights



Description		L2	L3	L4	L5
A	Wheelbase (mm)	3300	3750	3954	4522
B	Gross Vehicle Mass GVM (kg)	3500	3500/4100	3500/4100	3500/4100
C	Max. Axle load front (kg)	1750/1850	1750/1850	1750/1850	1750/1850
D	Max. Axle load rear (kg)	2150	2250/2500	2250/2500	2250/2500
E	Max. Trailer load (kg)	1400/2000	1400/2000	1400/2000	1400/2000
F	Max. Towing nose mass (kg)	112	112	112	112
G	Max. Rear Overhang/ Extension	60% of the wheelbase or the donor vehicle for Skeletal Chassis for camper			
		50% of the wheelbase or the donor vehicle for Skeletal Chassis for non camper			
H	Max Body Width (mm)	2400 ⁽¹⁾			

⁽¹⁾ The maximum width of a vehicle conversion may be restricted below 2400 mm in order to comply with installation of Lighting Regulation ECE R48 which specifies widths restrictions for mandatory light components. Fitting optional Front Fog Lamps restricts the vehicle width to 2375 mm.

The maximum overall height is limited to 3300 mm.

It is recommended to ensure that a minimum departure angle of 14° at RGAWR (Rear Gross Axle Weight Rating) of the converted vehicle and for any additional part of the conversion is maintained. Rear track widths 1759 mm and 1980 mm are available pending markets.

For non-European Union territories, please refer to local legislation.

For Australia and New Zealand, please refer to ADR43 Vehicle regulations.

For availability please contact your National Sales Company representative, or local Ford dealer. If they are unable to help you then please contact FPSV Technical Support at FPSVHelp@ford.com.

Skeletal Chassis for Non Camper Body WLTP Constraints

CAUTION: For emission compliance, Vehicle Convertors must use the highest efficiency class tyre available that meets local legislation. Any tyre with a category F or G risks not being in the WLTP energy range.

NOTE: The WLTP calculator can be accessed at <https://www.fordserviceinfo.com/> You will need to register or login to use it.

To meet WLTP requirements depending upon the frontal area, aerodynamic measures are required for the second unit body as specified by the following tables.

WLTP Constraints Table - Skeletal Chassis for Non Camper Body Light Duty Engine and WLTP Heavy Duty Engines

Max Af (m ²)	Fairing	Minimum Radius (mm)			
		R1	R2	R3	R4
SRW					
5.9	No	25	25	25	25
6.4	No	60	60	25	25
6.6	Yes	25	25	25	25
6.8	Yes	60	60	25	25
7.0	Yes	100	100	25	25
7.1	Yes	100	100	100	100
7.3	Yes	200	200	25	25
7.4	Yes	200	200	25	100
7.6	Yes	100	300	25	25
7.8	Yes	100	400	25	25
8.0	Yes	100	500	25	25

Max Af (m²) applies until next minimum radius/ fairing requirement is met, eg if Frontal area 6.5 use max Af of 6.6 m². For SRW it must comply the defined requirement (Fairing, R1, R2, R3, R4 ≥ 25 mm).

1.14.13 Skeletal Chassis for Camper Body, Diesel Engines

General Information

NOTE: The Maximum front surface area for incomplete Skeletal Chassis cab is shown in the frontal area table for both Light Duty and Heavy Duty WLTP. See WLTP constraints table.

For WLTP Heavy Duty Incomplete Chassis Cab (SRW) that fall within a reference mass of 2380–2610 kg, a maximum frontal area of 8 m² is applicable to comply with WLTP CO₂ Requirements. Fairing and radii detail are not required. No WLTP constraints table required.

For list of engines and powers

[Refer to 3.1 Engine/E Drive](#)

It is recommended to ensure that a minimum departure angle of 14° at RGAWR (Rear Gross Axle Weight Rating) of the converted vehicle and for any additional part of the conversion is maintained. Rear track widths 1759 mm and 1980 mm are available pending markets.

For non-European Union territories, please refer to local legislation.

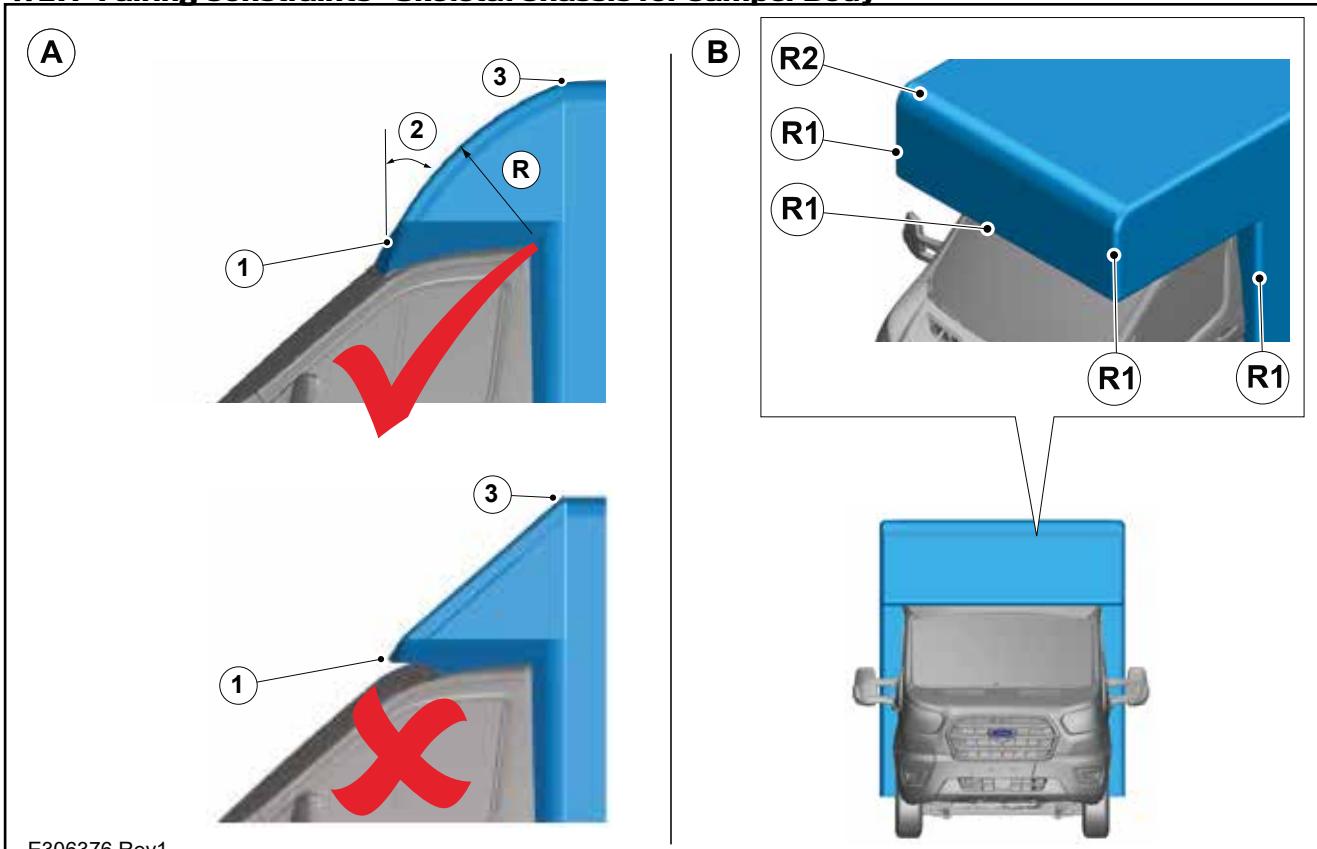
For Australia and New Zealand, please refer to ADR43 Vehicle regulations.

For availability please contact your National Sales Company representative, or local Ford dealer. If they are unable to help you then please contact FPSV Technical Support at FPSVHelp@ford.com

WLTP Constraints table - Skeletal Chassis for Camper Body Light Duty Engine and WLTP Heavy Duty

Max Af [m ²]	Integrated (A)		Over Cab (B)	
	Min Radius (mm)	Min Angle	R1	R2
6.6	-	-	60	170
6.9	1000-3000	20°	-	-

WLTP Fairing Constraints - Skeletal Chassis for Camper Body



E306376 Rev1

Item	Description
A	No overhang
1	No overhang to meet WLTP requirements
2	Angle: min 20°
3	Tangential transition ie must blend smoothly, with no sharp 'corners'
R	Radius of Fairing Range 1000 mm - 3000 mm
B	Option with cab overhang
R1	Radius - Front LHS/RHS edge of body and Overhang LHS/RHS/Bottom edge
R2	Top Overhang Edge - Radius

1.15 Hardware

For hardware material and strength specification, refer to ISO 898-1, Nuts: ISE 898-2. For torque information, follow the procedures in the Ford Workshop Manual which can be accessed via Ford Service Info <https://www.fordserviceinfo.com/Home>.

1.16 Load Distribution

NOTE: For further information please contact your National Sales Company representative, or local Ford dealer. If they are unable to help you then please contact FPSV Technical Support at FPSVHelp@ford.com

1.16.1 Load Distribution

CAUTIONS:

-  **Do not exceed the axle plated weights.**
-  **Do not exceed the gross vehicle weight.**
-  **In front wheel drive (FWD) vehicles, the front axle load must, in all load cases, exceed 38% of the actual vehicle weight.**
-  **In rear wheel drive (RWD) single rear wheel (SRW) vehicles, the front axle load must, in all load cases, exceed 36% of the actual vehicle weight.**
-  **In RWD dual rear wheel (DRW) vehicles, the front axle load must, in all load cases, exceed 30% of the actual vehicle weight.**
-  **On Skeletal Chassis for camper conversions the front axle load must exceed 40% of the actual vehicle weight in all load cases.**

NOTE: Overloading of the vehicle could result in unacceptable ground clearance.

NOTE: The centre of mass of the payload should be located within the wheelbase of the vehicle.

NOTE: Avoid one-sided load distribution.

NOTE: Uneven load distribution could result in unacceptable handling and braking characteristics.

NOTE: Load distribution outside of the permitted range may result in unacceptable steering, handling and braking characteristics.

Only for conversions based on Skeletal Chassis for camper. The minimum kerb weight of the converted vehicle is 2700 kg for 350 and 3000 kg for 410.

1.16.2 Centre of Gravity Position

The position of the centre of gravity is changed when masses are added or removed from the vehicle. This may influence the steering characteristics, handling behaviour and the brake performance.

Lateral Position

 **WARNING: The difference right to left must not exceed 4% (absolute difference right to left/total weight in per cent).**

It is important to keep the Centre of Gravity laterally within given limits.

Lateral Centre of Gravity is determined by the vertical

wheel forces difference, right (front right mass added to rear right mass) to left (front left mass added to rear left mass).

Vertical Position - Centre of Gravity Height

The Centre of Gravity Height of the vehicle is determined by the mass of the base delivered vehicle and the added and removed masses. In physics this relation is described by the Steiner's theorem.

The Centre of Gravity Height influences axle weights while braking. Centre of Gravity height influences roll stability. Safety systems will work properly within the centre of gravity boundaries specified in the following warnings:

WARNINGS:

 **The following table shows maximum vertical centre of gravity (CG_v) heights by vehicle type. If the CG_v is equal to or less than the values stated and no modifications have been made to the components of the braking system, suspension and/or wheels and tyres, the converted vehicle complies with ECE R140 Standard or ADR 35 or applicable local legislation.**

 **If the CG_v of the converted vehicle is above the values stated, Ford Motor Company makes no representation as to conformity with ECE R140 standard or ADR 35 or applicable local legislation.**

Vehicle ICE = Diesel Engine BEV= Battery Electric Vehicle	Drive	Wheelbase	Maximum Vertical Centre of Gravity (CG_v) Height (mm)
eTransit BEV All Variants up to 3.5t	RWD	All	950
eTransit BEV All Variants over 3.5t	RWD	All	870
Van/Kombi ICE	FWD	All ⁽¹⁾	850
Van/Kombi ICE	RWD/AWD	L2	850
Van/Kombi ICE	RWD/AWD	L3 and L4	1000
M2 Bus ICE	RWD	All ⁽²⁾	1000
Single Chassis Cab ICE	FWD	All ⁽³⁾	850
Single Chassis Cab ICE	RWD/AWD	All	1000
Double Chassis Cab ICE	FWD	All	850
Double Chassis Cab ICE	RWD/AWD	All	1000
Van Camper ICE	AWD	L2	1030
Van Camper ICE	AWD	L3/L4	1080
Van Camper ICE	FWD	L2	1030
Van Camper ICE	FWD	L3	1060
Skeletal Chassis for Camper ICE	FWD	L2	1030
Skeletal Chassis for Camper ICE	FWD	L3/L4/L5	1060
Skeletal Chassis for non Camper ICE	FWD	All	850

⁽¹⁾ When converted a Van, Kombi N1, Kombi M1, Kombi Van N1, Kombi Van M1 and Double Cab in Van vehicles with a gross vehicle mass of less than 3300 kg are excluded from conformity with ECE R140 Standard.

⁽²⁾ Except M2 Bus RWD SRW 440 LWB EL (L4) which has a Maximum Vertical Centre of Gravity Height of 950 mm

⁽³⁾ Except 3.5t L5 Extended Length chassis, HD engined variant which has a Maximum Vertical Centre of Gravity Height of 1000 mm

The camper convertor as the final stage manufacturer is fully responsible for the converted vehicle and may apply the following part of (EU) 2018/858 shown below.

In line with Regulation (EU) 2018/858, the convertor of Motor-Caravans, Ambulances, Hearses or Armoured Vehicles can opt to apply Note A1 from Annex II, Part III, Appendix 1.

1.16.3 Centre of Gravity Height Test Procedure

Measurement

Vehicle shall be loaded according to test specifications specified in ECE R140 Standard or ADR 35 or applicable local legislation.

In order to check the centre of gravity height, the following described method is proposed:

For this test four scales are required. The test is possible with two scales but this requires more preparation and it results in lower accuracy.

Initially the vehicle weights needs to be measured in a horizontal position. Afterwards the front is lifted and weights measured again. The higher it is lifted

the more accurate the results will be. The height is restricted by different possible touch conditions: between vehicle parts and roof, ground and environment.

In order to improve measurements, following preparations need to be done:

- Fix wheel travel, for example: solid shocks, or spring fixes
- Increase tyre pressure to maximum allowed value
- It is important to remove all load - for example, moving items - from the vehicle or it should be properly fixed
- Doors should be closed

Before measuring the vehicle, the engine must be switched off. After lifting, it should be rolled freely in order to release tension in the tyres and suspension.

Calculation

In order to estimate the resulting Centre of Gravity (CG_v) the axle load needs to be measured twice. The first measurement is in the horizontal plane and the

second measurement is after the front is lifted. To get a consistent result, this test should be done 3 times independently with different heights.

To improve accuracy, repeat the test the other way around, where the rear end is lifted.

Inclination Angle:

$$\alpha = \arcsin \left[\frac{H}{WB} \right].$$

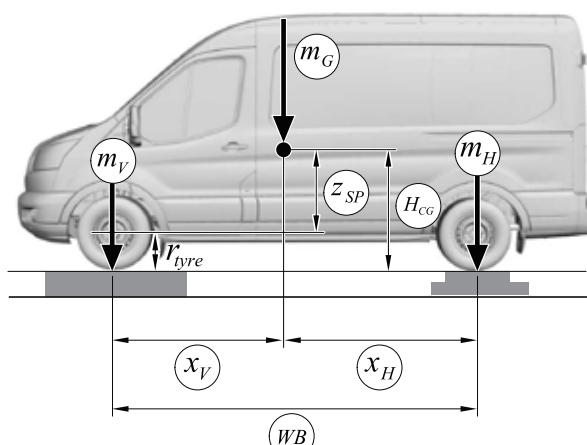
E146623

Centre of Gravity Height Z:

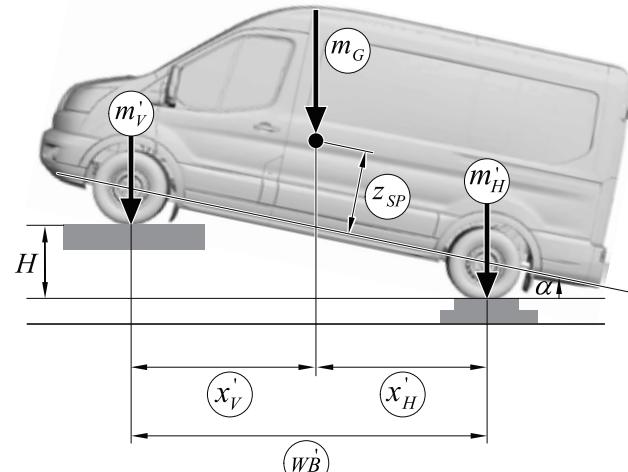
$$z_{SP} = \frac{m_H - m'_H}{m_G \cdot H} \cdot WB^2 \cdot \cos \alpha$$

$$z = H_{CG} = z_{SP} + r_{tyre}$$

E146624



E167537



Variables, to be measured, calculated or known			Measurement		
			1st	2nd	3rd
Wheelbase	WB	mm			
Front Axle Weight	m _v	kg			
Rear Axle Weight	m _H	kg			
Total Mass	m _G = m _v + m _H	kg			
Inclined Vehicle					
Front Axle Weight	m' _v	kg			
Rear Axle Weight	m' _H	kg			
Height (Lift)	H	mm			
Inclination Angle		deg			
Centre of Gravity Height Z		mm			

1.16.4 Centre of Gravity Height Calculation

Given or measured parameter	
Wheelbase	WB
Front axle weight	m_v
Rear axle weight	m_h
Front height	H
Calculated and auxiliary parameter	
Centre of Gravity (CoG) height	Z_{sp}
Total vehicle mass	m_g
Distance front axle to CoG (horizontal)	X_v
Distance rear axle to CoG (horizontal)	X_h
Wheelbase (projected in horizontal)	WB'
Front axle weight	m'_v
Rear axle weight	m'_h
Distance front axle to CoG (projected in horizontal direction)	X'_v
Distance rear axle to CoG (projected in horizontal direction)	X'_h
Inclination angle	arc sin
Front part of 'distance rear axle to CoG (horizontal)'	X_{h1}
Rear part of 'distance rear axle to CoG (horizontal)'	X_{h2}

1.16.5 Formulas

- Masses and lengths. Total vehicle mass is the sum of front and rear axle weights:
- $m_g = m_v + m_h$

The longitudinal distances between the Centre of Gravity and the centres of wheels equal:

$$x_v = \frac{m_h}{m_g} WB$$

$$x_h = \frac{m_v}{m_g} WB$$

E146626

In inclined system, the main variable is the inclination angle, which is the quotient of the lifting height and the wheelbase:

$$\sin \alpha = \frac{H}{WB}$$

E146627

Similar to the equation for the horizontal system, the distance projected in to the ground plane can be determined using the sum of moments around front and rear wheel centre:

$$x_V' = \frac{m_H}{m_G} WB'$$

$$x_H' = \frac{m_V}{m_G} WB'$$

E146628

The following equations apply:

$$WB' = WB \cos \alpha$$

$$x_{H2} = \frac{x_H'}{\cos \alpha}$$

$$x_{H1} = x_H - x_{H2}$$

E146629

Using the rule of proportion leads to the Centre of Gravity height formula:

$$\frac{x_{H1}}{z_{SP}} = \frac{H}{WB'}$$

$$z_{SP} = \frac{m_V - m_V'}{m_G \cdot H} \cdot WB^2 \cdot \cos \alpha, \quad \alpha = \arcsin \left[\frac{H}{WB} \right]$$

or

$$z_{SP} = \frac{m_H - m_H'}{m_G \cdot H} \cdot WB^2 \cdot \cos \alpha, \quad \alpha = \arcsin \left[\frac{H}{WB} \right]$$

E146630

1.17 Towing

NOTE: For further information please contact your National Sales Company representative, or local Ford dealer. If they are unable to help you then please contact FPSV Technical Support at FPSVHelp@ford.com.

1.17.1 Tow Bar Requirements

When a tow bar device is required, the Vehicle Convertor should use a Ford approved tow bar.

CAUTION: **Rear cargo doors may not be compatible with all tow bars and tow couplers, check before fitting.**

NOTE: For base vehicles ordered without a tow bar or under run, bar reinforcements and hardware need to be ordered and fitted. Contact your local Ford dealer for details.

NOTE: Not all vehicles are suitable or approved to have tow bars fitted. See an authorised dealer for further information.

NOTE: It is not recommended to retrofit a tow bar to vehicles equipped with rear air suspension.

For further information on Towing a Trailer and Trailer Sway Control (TSC) refer to the Owner's Manual.

Trailer Tow Electrics (C1DAD) can be ordered with the base vehicle and is fitted in the plant. C1DAD does not contain any tow bar, reinforcements or tow bar hardware.

For additional information in this manual:

[Refer to: 1.10 Jacking](#)

[Refer to: 4.2 Wiring Installation and Routing Guides](#)
Electrics for Tow bar.

1.17.2 Tow Bar Types (for EU specification vehicles)

NOTE: When attaching a tow bar to the side rails, the top two holes on either side are to be used with new bolts and nuts, plus the re-use of two bolts on the bottom holes each side which attach the Rear Crash Beam, as shown in figure E175744.

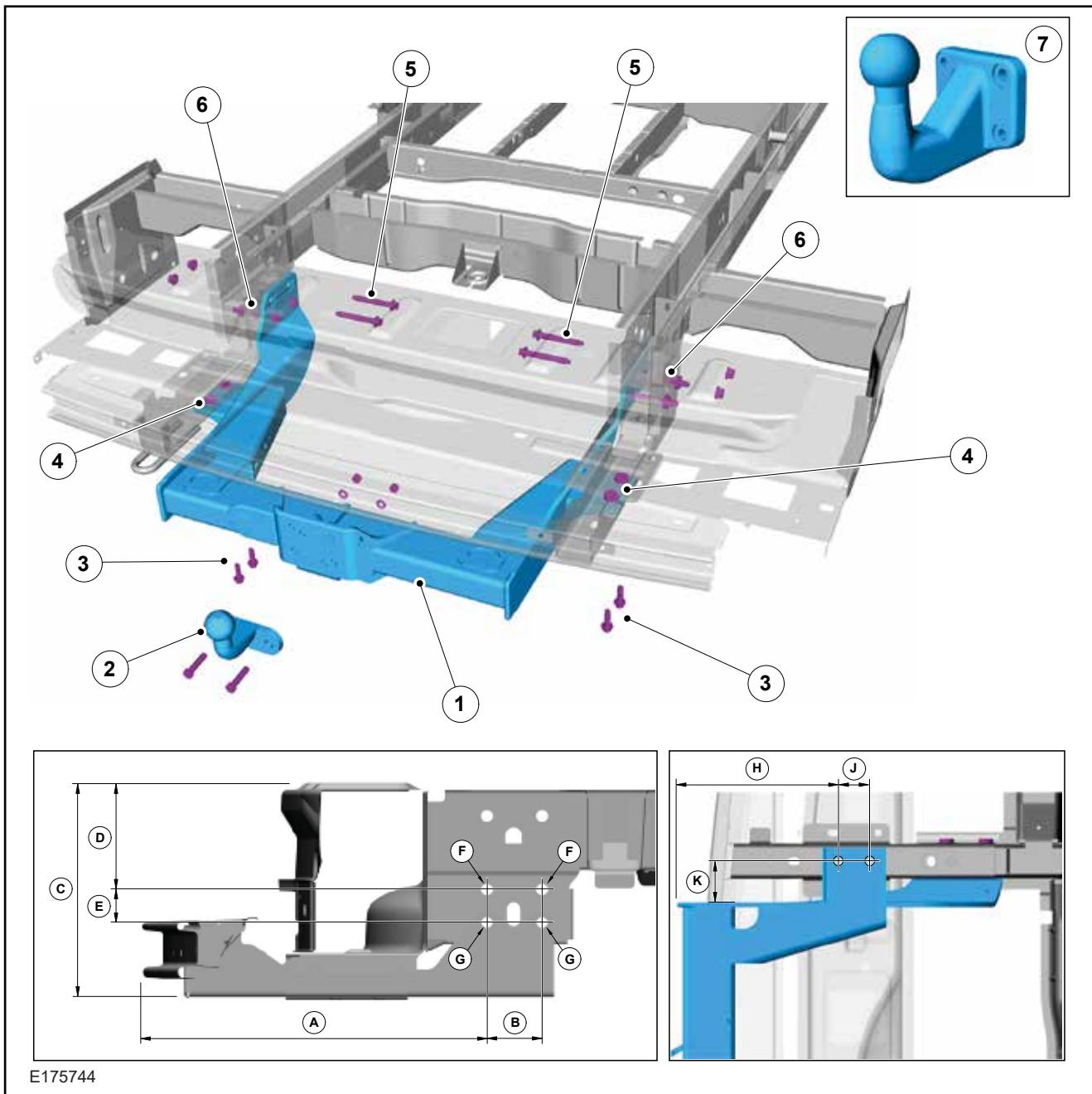
NOTE: When attaching the tow ball to the tow bar use the top two fixing holes.

For tow bar devices fitted by the Vehicle Convertor the following applies:

- Tow bar allowances must not exceed those of the standard vehicle
- For attachment of the tow bar, under run bar and step see the following figures E175744, E167538, E167539 and E167540
- Any modifications to the vehicle must be noted in the owner's handbook or new descriptive literature included with the owner's documentation
- The maximum allowable tow ball static load is 112 kg on a Van, Bus, Kombi and Chassis Cab with GVM up to 3.5 tonne **ICE only**
- The maximum allowable tow ball static load is 140 kg on Van and Chassis Cab with GVM of 4.7 tonne and 3.5 tonne HD (derated) **ICE only**
- The maximum allowable tow ball static load is 60 kg on a Van, Bus, Kombi and Chassis Cab* with GVM up to 3.5 tonne. For towing, there is a maximum trailer mass of 750 kg. **BEV only**.
- *A trailer tow bar can not be applied to Single Chassis Cab vehicles that are fitted with a platform/float style body. This is due to the attachment holes being already occupied by the REQUIRED Tuned Mass Damper. The Tuned Mass Damper must NOT be removed from the vehicle.

- Tow bar installations must meet the requirements of the EEC Directive 94/20 EC and /or ECE R55
- Whenever frame drilling is necessary use tube reinforcement

NOTE: When fitting a tow bar to Van, Bus and Kombi variants use all 12 fixing points as shown in E175744.

Tow Bar Van, Bus and Kombi


Item	Description						
1	Tow bar frame assembly						
2	Tow ball ⁽¹⁾ 2.8 Tonne vehicle						
3	2 x thread rolling bolts ⁽²⁾ each side, M12 x 40 - Torque 62.5 Nm ± 6.2						
4	2 x unthreaded weld nuts inside the longitudinal member of the rear bumper						
5	2 new nuts and bolts (each side) in holes 'F' M12 x 90 - Torque 110 Nm ± 16.5						
6	Reuse 2 x bolts (each side) in holes 'G' M12 x 100 Torque 103 Nm ± 15						
7	Tow ball 4.7 Tonne / 3.5 Tonne HD (derated) vehicle - use all 4 fixings hole						
A	514 mm	D	135.8 mm	G	12 mm diameter	K	78.5 mm
B	75 mm	E	45 mm	H	367.4 mm	-	-
C	361.4 mm	F	15 mm diameter	J	60 mm	-	-

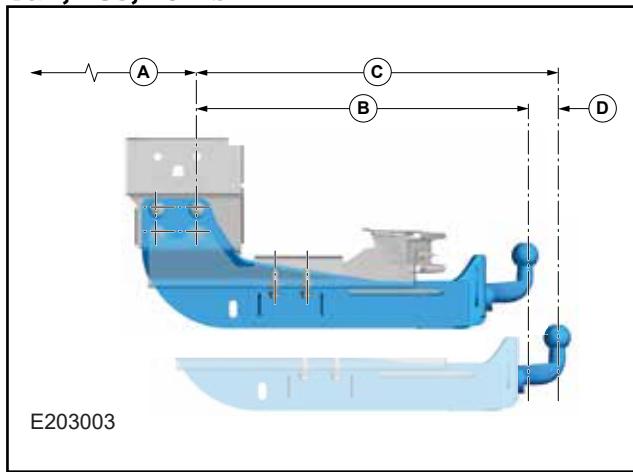
⁽¹⁾ The low position two fixing holes should be used for attaching the tow ball to vehicles with 16 inch wheels and the mid position two fixing holes should be used for attaching the tow ball to vehicles with 15 inch wheels

⁽²⁾ Use thread rolling bolt (Ford Part Number: W505286 – S442, M12x40 HF010) or equivalent.

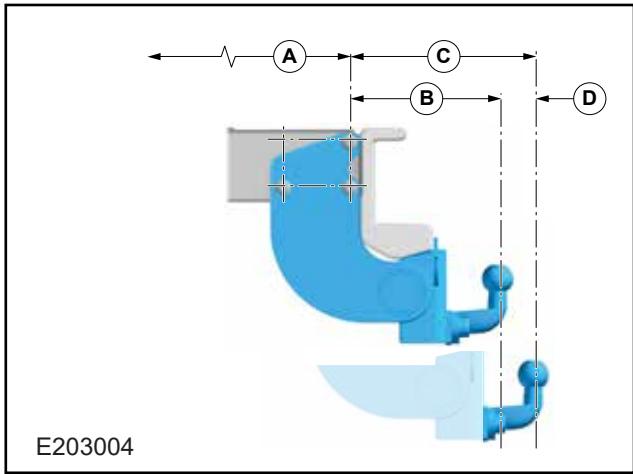
Trailer Sway Control (TSC) Tow Ball Zones

WARNING: To ensure functionality of Trailer Sway Control (TSC), please make sure that the tow ball is within zone 'D' as shown in figures E203003 and E203004.

Trailer Sway Control (TSC) Tow Ball Zone - Van, Bus, Kombi



Trailer Sway Control (TSC) Tow Ball Zone - Chassis Cab



Item	Description
A ⁽¹⁾	See TSC Dimensions table below
B	629 mm
C	666 mm
D	37 mm

⁽¹⁾ From centre of rear axle.

Item	Description
A ⁽¹⁾	See TSC Dimensions table below
B	222 mm
C	257 mm
D	35 mm

⁽¹⁾ From centre of rear axle.

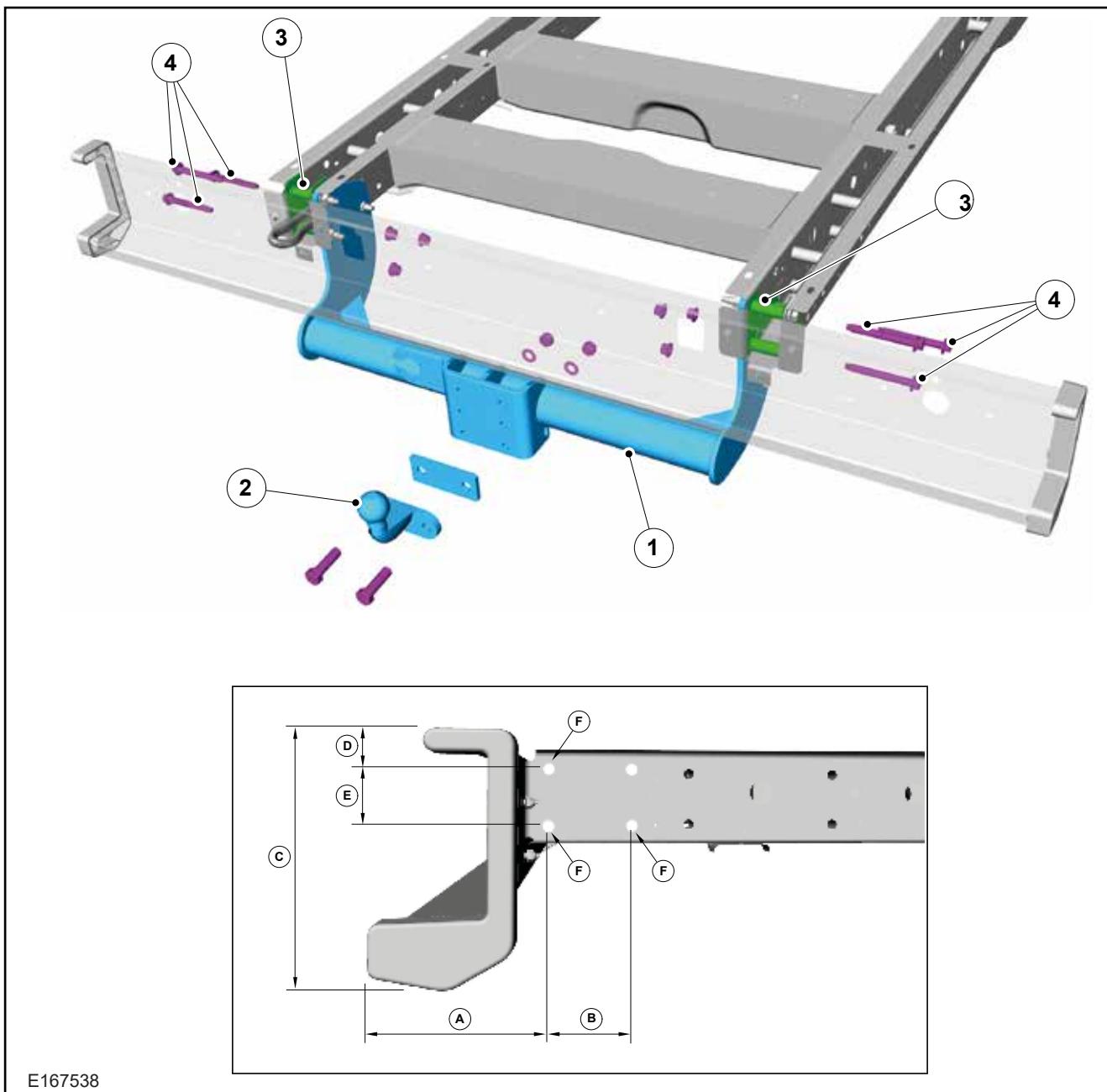
Trailer Sway Control (TSC) Dimensions

Vehicle Type	Length	Wheelbase mm	Dim A mm	Dim B mm	Dim C mm	Dim D mm
Chassis Cab	L1	3134	919	222	257	35
	L2	3504	919	222	257	35
	L3	3954	919	222	257	35
	L4	3954	1476	222	257	35
	L5	4522	1906	222	257	35
Van, Bus, Kombi	L2	3300	715	629	666	37
	L3	3750	715	629	666	37
	L4	3750	1439	629	666	37

1 General Information

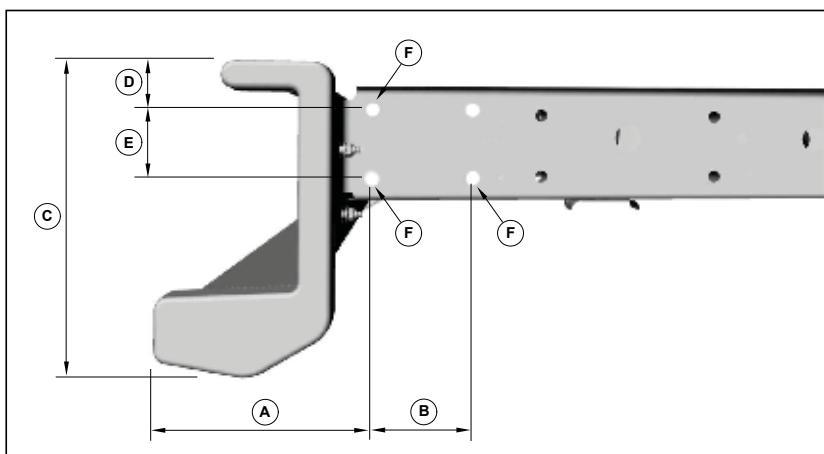
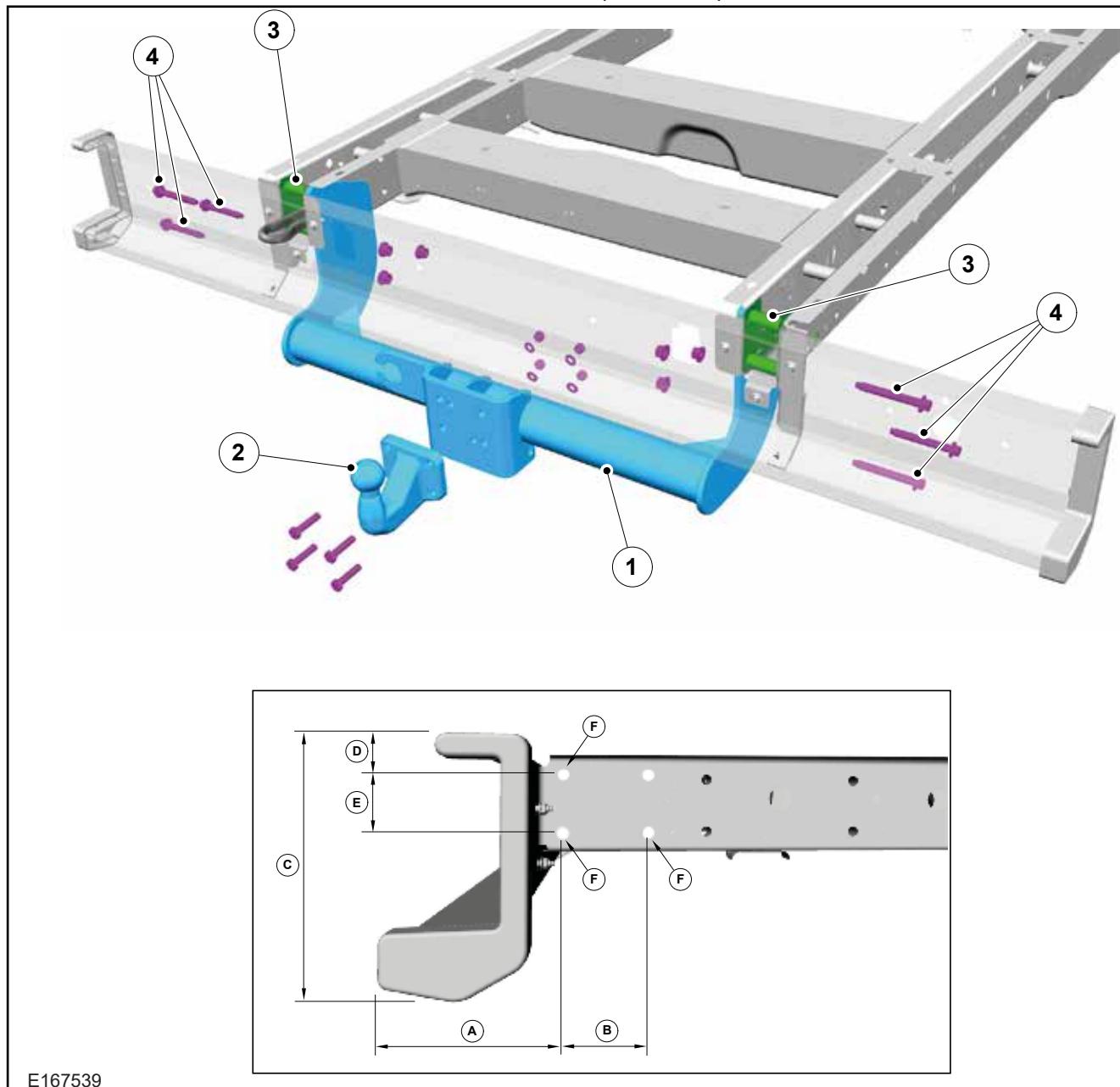
Abc = BEV Only Abc = ICE Only

Tow Bar Chassis Cab 2.8 Tonne



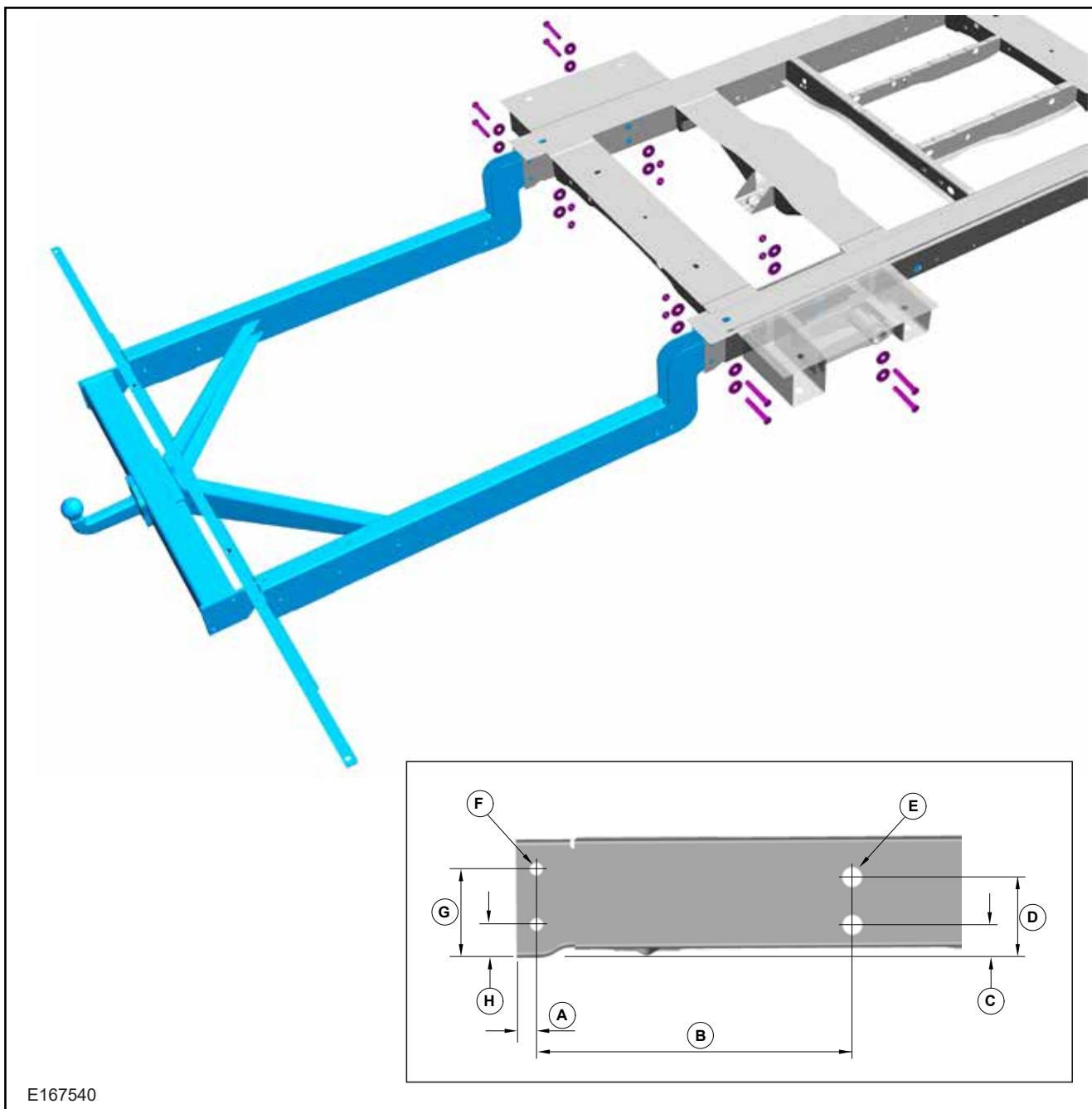
Item	Description		
1	Tow bar frame assembly		
2	Tow ball with 2 x fixing bolts ⁽¹⁾		
3	Reinforcement clamp plate		
4	Side member with 3 x fixing nuts and bolts each side, M12 x 1.75 x 100 - Torque 103 Nm ± 15		
A	115 mm	D	22 mm
B	106 mm	E	74 mm
C	267 mm	F	15 mm Diameter

⁽¹⁾ The low two fixing positions should be used for attaching the tow ball to vehicles with 16 inch wheels and the mid two fixing positions should be used for attaching the tow ball to vehicles with 15 inch wheels

Tow Bar Chassis Cab 4.7 Tonne and 3.5 Tonne HD (de-rated)


Item	Description			
1	Tow bar frame assembly			
2	Tow ball with 4 x fixing bolts			
3	Reinforcement clamp plate			
4	Side member with 3 x fixing nuts and bolts each side, M12 x 1.75 x 100 - Torque 103 Nm ± 15			
A	115 mm	D	22 mm	
B	106 mm	E	74 mm	
C	267 mm	F	15 mm Diameter	

Tow Bar Skeletal Chassis for Camper Conversion Only



Item	Description
A	20 mm
B	314 mm
C	30 mm
D	77.5 mm
E	20 mm Diameter
F	13 mm Diameter
G	86 mm
H	32 mm

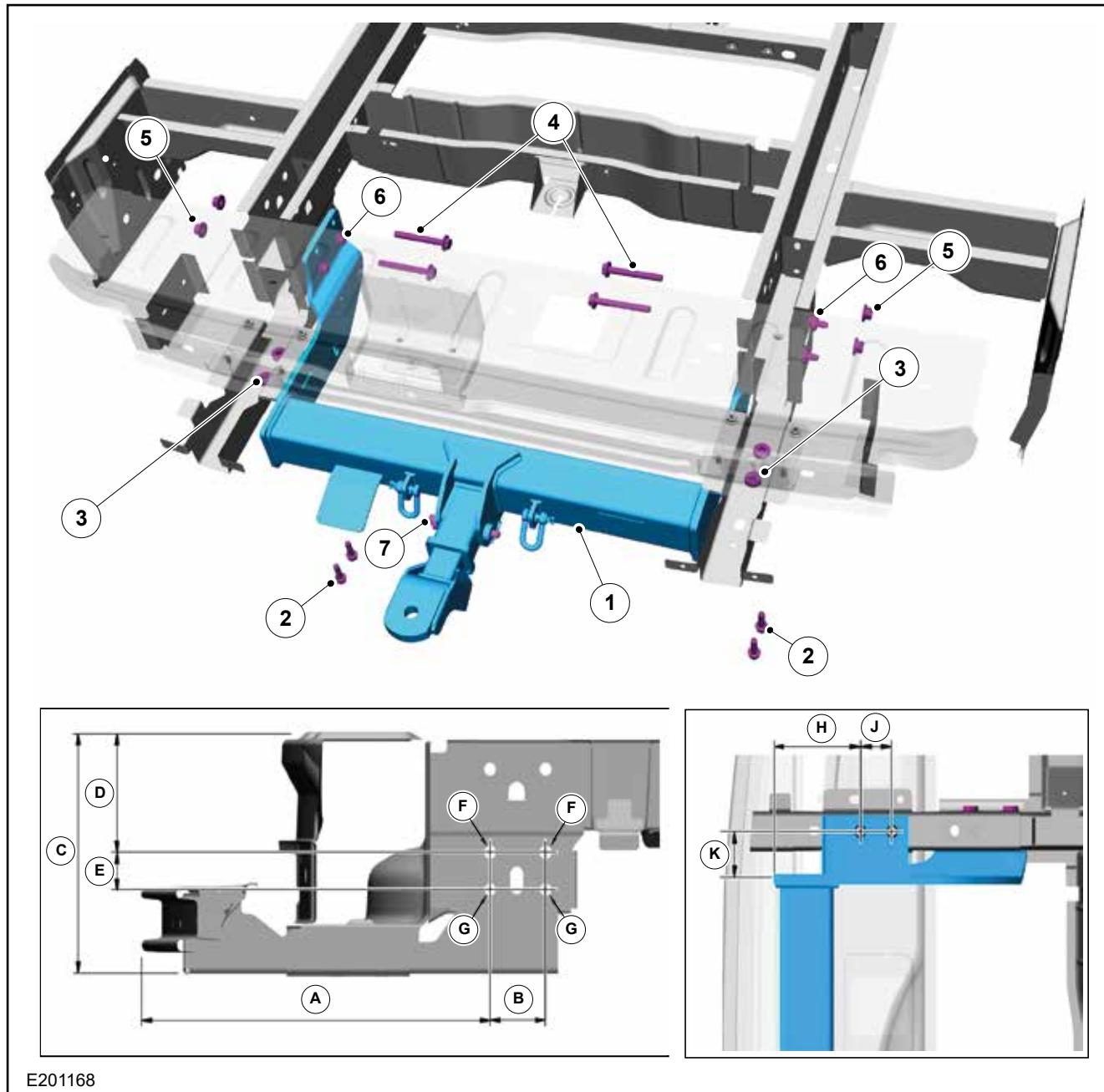
1.17.3 Tow Bar Types (for AUS and NZL specification vehicles)

For tow bar devices fitted by the Vehicle Convertor the following applies:

- Tow bar allowances must not exceed those of the standard vehicle.
- For attachment of the tow bar, under run bar and steps see the following figure E201168
- Any modifications to the vehicle must be noted in the owner's handbook or new descriptive literature included with the owner's documentation
- The maximum allowable tow ball static load is 170 kg on 350L LWB Van (FWD AT) - 1700 kg maximum towing
- The maximum allowable tow ball static load is 275 kg on 350L LWB Van (RWD AT) - 2750 kg maximum towing
- The maximum allowable tow ball static load is 275 kg on 350E E-LWB Van (SRW MT) - 2750 kg maximum towing
- The maximum allowable tow ball static load is 350 kg on 470E E-LWB Van (DRW MT) - 3500 kg maximum towing
- The maximum allowable tow ball static load is 350 kg on 470E Single C/C (DRW MT) - 3500 kg maximum towing
- The maximum allowable tow ball static load is 350 kg on 470E Double C/C (DRW MT) - 3500 kg maximum towing
- A minimum tow ball static load of 10% of towed weight is required for Australia and New Zealand
- Tow bar installations must meet the requirements of the Australian Design Regulations ADR 62
- Whenever frame drilling is necessary use tube reinforcement

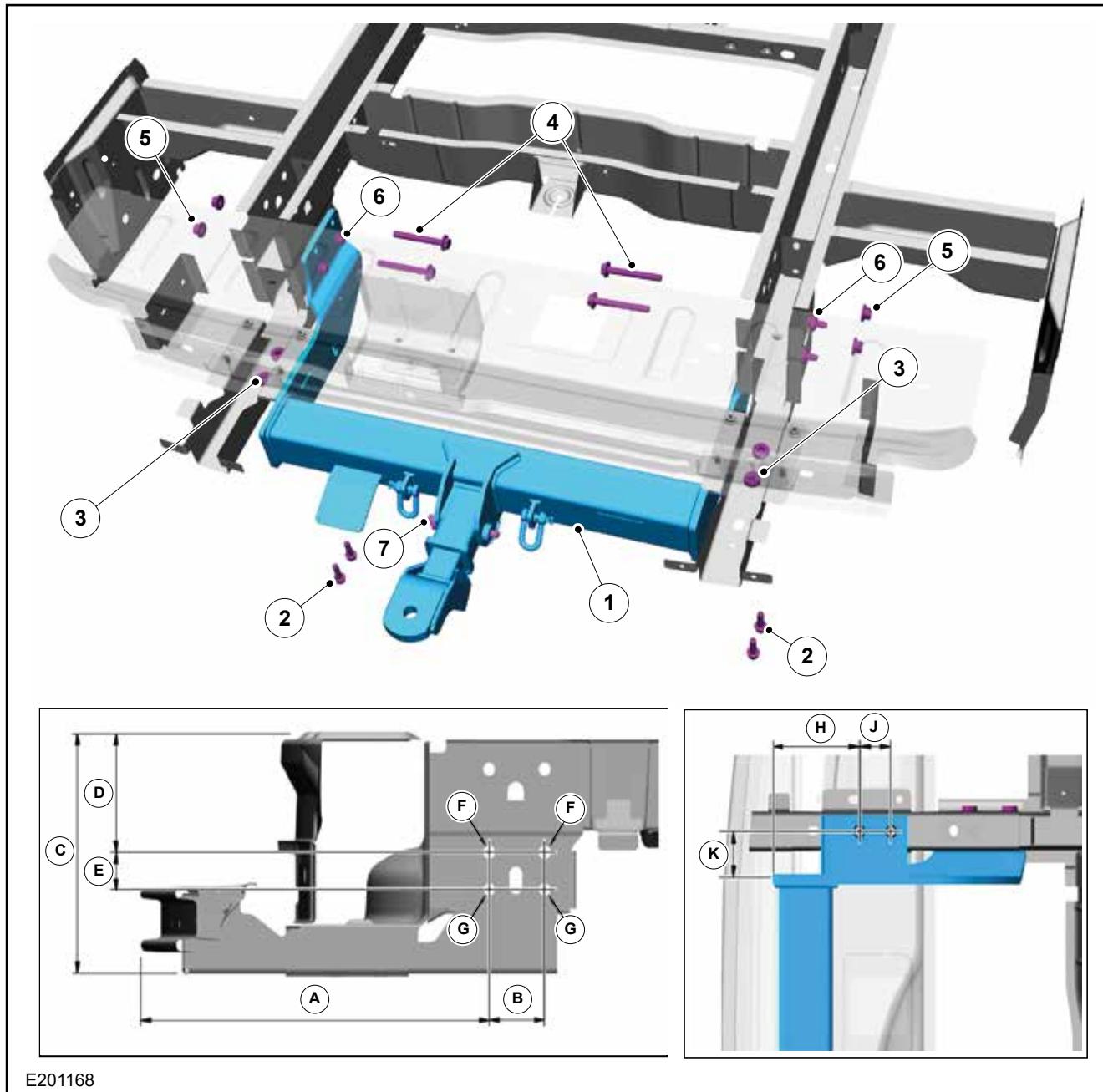
NOTE: When fitting a tow bar to Van and Bus variants use all 12 fixing points as shown in E201168.

Tow Bar Skeletal Chassis for Camper Conversion Only



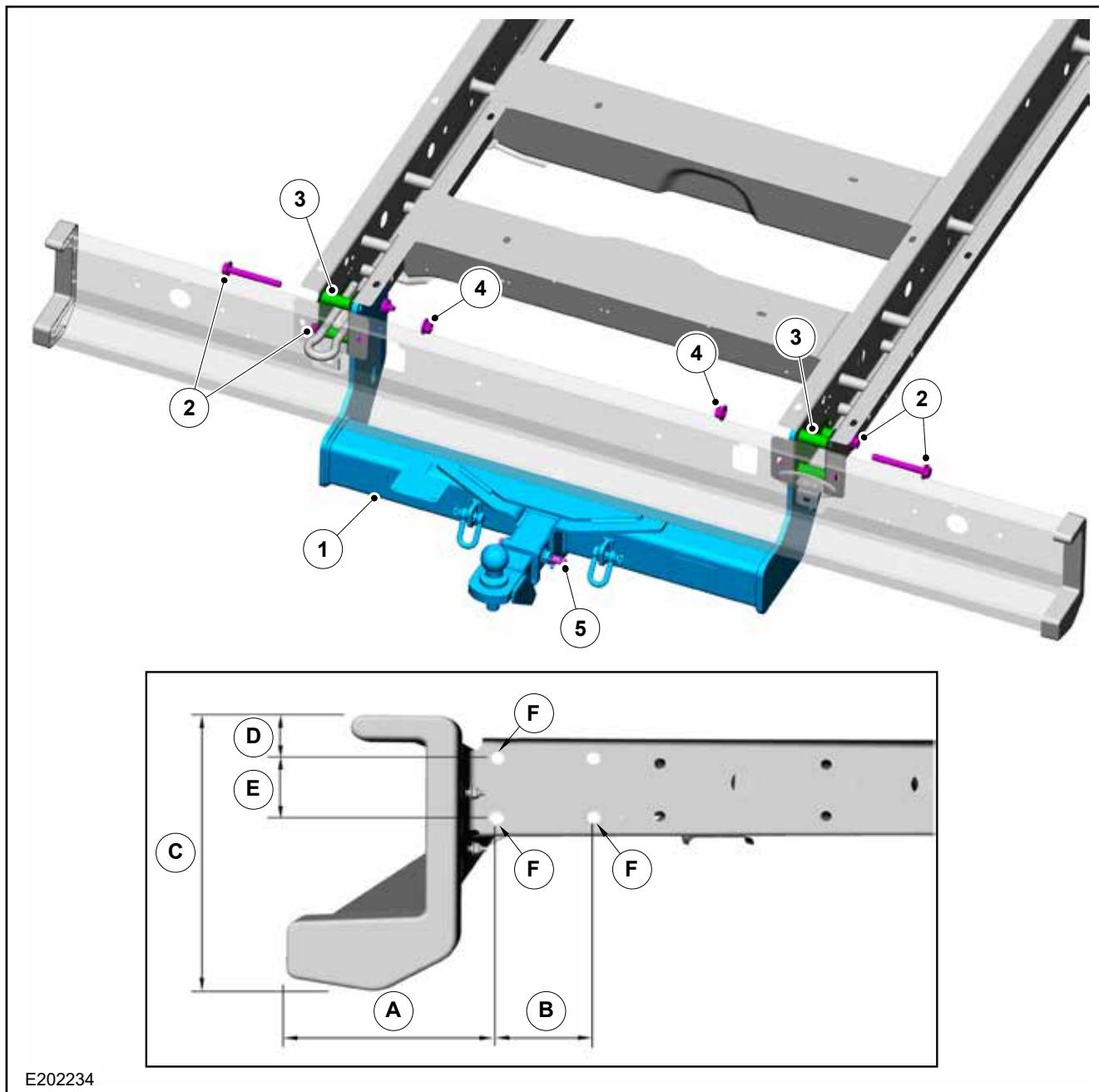
Item	Description								
1	Tow bar frame assembly								
2	2 x thread rolling bolts ⁽¹⁾ each side - Torque 110±5 Nm								
3	2 x unthreaded weld nuts inside the longitudinal member of the rear bumper								
4	2 x fixing bolts each side in holes 'F' M12 x 1.75 x 100 - Torque 115±5Nm								
5	2 x fixing nuts each side								
6	Reuse 2 x fixing bolts (each side) in holes 'G' M12 x 100 - Torque 103±15Nm								
7	1 x Anti-rattle pin - Torque 150±5 Nm								
A	514 mm	C	361.4 mm	E	45 mm	G	12 mm	J	60 mm
B	75 mm	D	135.84 mm	F	15 mm	H	120 mm	K	58 mm

⁽¹⁾ Use thread rolling bolts (Ford Part Number: W505286 – S442, M12x40 HF010) or equivalent.

LWB-EL Van (DRW) 4.5 Tonne

Item	Description								
1	Tow bar frame assembly								
2	2 x thread rolling bolts ⁽¹⁾ each side - Torque 110±5 Nm								
3	2 x unthreaded weld nuts inside the longitudinal member of the rear bumper								
4	2 x fixing bolts each side in holes 'F' M12 x 1.75 x 100 - Torque 115 ±5 Nm								
5	2 x fixing nuts each side								
6	Reuse 2 x fixing bolts (each side) in holes 'G' M12 x 100 - Torque 103 ±15 Nm								
7	1 x Anti-rattle pin - Torque 150±5 Nm								
A	514 mm	C	361.4 mm	E	45 mm	G	12 mm	J	60 mm
B	75 mm	D	135.84 mm	F	15 mm	H	120 mm	K	58 mm

⁽¹⁾ Use thread rolling bolts (Ford Part Number: W505286 – S442, M12x40 HF010) or equivalent.

Single Chassis Cab and Double Chassis Cab 4.5 Tonne


Item	Description		
1	Tow bar frame assembly		
2	3 x fixing bolts each side M12 x 1.75 x 100 - Torque 115±5 Nm		
3	Reinforcement clamp plate (each side)		
4	Fixing nut (each side)		
5	1x Anti-rattle pin - Torque 150±5Nm		
A	115 mm	D	22 mm
B	106 mm	E	74 mm
C	267 mm	F	15 mm Diameter

Abc = BEV Only Abc = ICE Only

2.1 Suspension System

WARNINGS:

 **Do not modify, drill, cut or weld any suspension components, specifically the steering gear system, subframe, lower control arm or anti-roll bars, springs or shock absorbers including mounting brackets.**

 **Interchangeability (including between different Transit variants) of springs, shock absorbers and jounce bumpers is not permitted as the changes in vehicle dynamic performance can affect the ESP system.**

 **CAUTION: Modifications to the suspension system can cause a deterioration of the vehicle handling characteristics and durability.**

NOTE: For further information please contact your National Sales Company representative, or local Ford dealer. If they are unable to help you then please contact FPSV Technical Support at FPSVHelp@ford.com

2.2 Front Suspension

2.2.1 Springs and Spring Mounting

WARNINGS:

 **Do not modify, drill, cut or weld any suspension components, specifically the steering gear system, subframe, lower control arm or anti-roll bars, springs or shock absorbers including mounting brackets.**

 **Interchangeability (including between different Transit variants) of springs, shock absorbers and jounce bumpers is not permitted as the changes in vehicle dynamic performance can affect the ESP system.**

CAUTIONS:

 **When carrying out welding work the springs must be covered to protect them against weld spatter.**

 **Do not touch springs with welding electrodes or welding tongs.**

 **Make sure that components loosened or removed and reinstalled are properly reassembled and the torque set in accordance with manufacturer's requirements.**

NOTE: Do not modify the wheelbase or track width or add any type of frame extension.

NOTE: Do not damage the surface or corrosion protection of the spring during disassembly and installation.

NOTE: For further information please contact your National Sales Company representative, or local Ford dealer. If they are unable to help you then please contact FPSV Technical Support at FPSVHelp@ford.com.

2.3 Rear Suspension

2.3.1 Springs and Spring Mounting

WARNINGS:

 **Interchangeability (including between different Transit variants) of springs, shock absorbers and jounce bumpers is not permitted as the changes in vehicle dynamic performance can affect the ESP system.**

 **The rear leaf springs are pre-stressed in manufacture and should not be altered for rate or height in any way during vehicle conversion. Adding or removing leaves (or any other spring type) may result in failure or reduced function of the spring as well as other vehicle related issues for which Ford Motor Company cannot be held responsible**

 **The rear coil springs on E-Transit are pre-stressed in manufacture and should not be altered for rate or height in any way during vehicle conversion. Modification of any suspension component may result in failure or reduced function of the spring as well as other vehicle related issues for which Ford Motor Company cannot be held responsible**

 **Do not modify, drill, cut or weld any suspension components, specifically the steering gear system, sub-frame, springs or shock absorbers including mounting brackets.**

CAUTIONS:

 **When carrying out welding work the springs must be covered to protect them against weld spatter.**

 **Do not touch springs with welding electrodes or welding tongs.**

 **Make sure that components loosened or removed and reinstalled are properly reassembled and the torque set in accordance with manufacturer's requirements.**

NOTE: Do not modify the wheelbase or track width or add any type of frame extension.

NOTE: Do not damage the surface or corrosion protection of the spring during disassembly and installation.

NOTE: Do not add any additional axles.

NOTE: For further information please contact your National Sales Company representative, or local Ford dealer. If they are unable to help you then please contact FPSV Technical Support at FPSVHelp@ford.com.

2.4 Wheels and Tyres

NOTE: For further information please contact your National Sales Company representative or local Ford dealer. If they are unable to help you then please contact FPSV Technical Support at FPSVHelp@ford.com.

2.4.1 Wheel Clearance

The distance from the tyre to the mudguard or wheel arch must be sufficient, even if snow or anti-skid chains are fitted and the suspension is fully compressed allowing for axle twist as well. Please consult FPSV Technical Support FPSVHelp@ford.com for clearance requirements and data.

NOTE: Make sure that only approved wheels and/or permissible tyre sizes are fitted.

NOTE: Ensure access to the wheel and wheel jack and provide sufficient clearance in the wheel arch to allow changing the wheels after conversion.

NOTE: Maintain access to the spare wheel winch on Chassis Cab via the hole in the side rail, under all loading conditions.

For standard wheelhouse dimensions:
[Refer to: 5.1 Body Integral Bodies and Conversions](#)

2.4.2 Tyre Manufacturers

Replacement tyres should be of the same make, size, tread pattern and load rating as the original equipment manufacturer. Under these conditions the original tyre label should be satisfactory, however if the specified tyres and/or inflation pressures are changed then a new label should be affixed over the original label.

2.4.3 Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)

Ford TPMS is a direct system, using physical pressure sensors. TPMS is calibrated according to the correct tyre pressure for the GVM of the vehicle. If the spare wheel is ordered on a base vehicle with TPMS, the tyre will not be supplied with a TPMS sensor.

If you need to replace a road wheel and tyre with the temporary spare wheel, the system will continue to identify a defect. This is to remind you to repair and refit the damaged road wheel and tyre to your vehicle. To restore the correct operation of the system, you must have the repaired road wheel and tyre refitted to the vehicle.

NOTE: If fitting new tyres, you must ensure that the TPMS sensors are fitted correctly as outlined in the service literature. For further information refer to the Owner's Manual or contact your Local Ford Dealer.

The TPMS receiver is located in the overhead shelf and points directly towards the rear doors.

For additional information [Refer to: 4.21 Handles, Locks, Latches and Entry Systems](#)



2.4.4 Spare Wheel

When converting or relocating the spare wheel, access to the spare wheel must be ensured.

2.4.5 Tyre Repair Kit

If your vehicle does not have a spare tyre, it will have a temporary mobility kit which will only repair one damaged tyre. The temporary mobility kit is made up of a compressor and separate sealant. The compressor will be located in the glove stowage compartment. If the passenger seat is removed and the resultant space is converted, please ensure access to the glove box is maintained or the compressor is relocated to an alternate easily accessible location. The sealant will be located in the right hand side step well. For more information and usage of the tyre repair kit please refer to the Owner's Manual.

2.4.6 Jacking Kit

On right hand drive camper variants the customer is required to find a new location for the jack kit which will be supplied in a foam pod which houses all necessary components.

2.4.7 Painting Road Wheels

! **CAUTION: Do not paint wheel clamp surfaces in contact with other wheels, brake drum or disc, hub and holes, or surfaces under wheel nuts. Any further treatment in these areas may affect the wheel clamp performance and the vehicle safety. Mask the wheel when changing the colour or repairing paint.**

2.5 Driveshaft

2.5.1 Power Take Off (PTO)

Gearbox add-on - Auxiliary Propeller Drive Shaft

CAUTIONS:

-  **Make sure that an inhibitor is fitted to any modified vehicle that uses the propshaft to power auxiliary equipment.**
-  **The only modification to the engine control system (throttle, powertrain control module and fuel pump) recommended by the manufacturer is the addition of an engine (RPM) controller.**
-  **Do not weld or join onto any part of the axle assembly.**
-  **The transmission oil temperature must not exceed 130°C during operation of the PTO.**

Where power is to be taken from the propshaft for accessory drive, the engine controller can be used in the same way as for the Front End Accessory Drive (FEAD).

Refer to: 3.3 Accessory Drive

Exceeding the recommended PTO ratings may result in the engine overheating.

If the driveshaft is modified, it must be balanced to a limit of 80gmm at 5000rpm and the installation must not have universal joint angles exceeding 4°. The gearbox output included angle must be no more than 10°.

2.6 Brake System

NOTE: For further information please contact your National Sales Company representative, or local Ford dealer. If they are unable to help you then please contact FPSV Technical Support at FPSVHelp@ford.com

2.6.1 General

The Brake System must be fully functional when the vehicle conversion is completed. The vehicle brake operating modes must be checked, including warning system and parking brakes.

Brakes are certified to 71/320EEC and ECE R13H requirements as amended or ADR 35 or applicable local legislation.

 **WARNING: Do not restrict the airflow and cooling to the brake system.**

CAUTIONS:

-  **Spoilers and wheel covers must not affect the brake cooling performance.**
-  **For converted vehicles fitted with AEBS (Advanced Emergency Braking System), where vehicle mass or geometry is significantly altered, it is recommended that the radar vertical alignment and system functionality is checked by a Ford dealer. For further information, refer to the Workshop manual or Owner's manual.**

NOTE: Do not obstruct the view of the brake fluid reservoir level.

NOTE: The donor vehicle brake fluid reservoir is translucent so that it is possible to check the level of fluid without opening the reservoir which will reduce the risk of contamination. Do not move the brake fluid reservoir.

NOTE: Do not obstruct the radar. [Refer to: 4.17 Adaptive Cruise Control](#)

NOTE: Do not paint the front grille of the vehicle as this may affect the functionality of the radar.

NOTE: The brake fluid reservoir must remain accessible for servicing and for adding brake fluid.

2.6.2 Kerb Mass Data

NOTE: For further information please contact your National Sales Company representative or local Ford dealer. If they are unable to help you then please contact FPSV Technical Support at FPSVHelp@ford.com

2.6.3 Brake Hoses General

 **CAUTION: Make sure that the front and rear brake hoses are not twisted and are correctly located away from body and chassis components.**

Front and rear brake hoses must not rub, chafe or rest on body or chassis components. There must be clearance under all operating conditions, between full compression and extension and full lock to lock.

Brake lines must not be used to support or secure any other component.

2.6.4 Parking Brake

WARNINGS:

-  **Do not modify the brakes.**
-  **Do not splice into the parking brake cable**
-  **Do not modify the Electronic Parking Brake (EPB)**
-  **CAUTION: Make sure that a new parking brake cable is fitted if modification impacts the existing parking brake cable.**

2.6.5 Hydraulic Brake - Front and Rear Brakes

WARNINGS:

-  **Do not modify the brakes.**
-  **Do not modify the disc inflow and outflow of cooling air.**

2.6.6 Anti-Lock Control — Stability Assist

 **WARNING: Do not modify any part of the braking system, including Anti-lock Brake System (ABS), Traction Control System (TCS) and Electronic Stability Control (ESC), also known as Electronic Stability Program (ESP).**

3.1 Engine / E-Drive

CAUTIONS:

 **Make sure to follow the equipment supplier's instructions for safety, warranty and sometimes legal compliance.**

 **For E-Transit BEV, do not modify the Electric Drive Assembly**

 **For E-Transit BEV, do not modify the Halfshafts in the Electric Drive Assembly**

For electrical supply to auxiliary equipment.

Refer to: 4.4 Charging System

3.1.1 Engine/E Drive Selection for Conversions

The Vehicle Convertor is responsible for specifying the correct emissions engine to the latest E.E.C/E.U. Regulations or applicable local legislation depending on the completed vehicle category and weight. The final weight of a vehicle including the conversion, determines whether a vehicle needs a light duty or heavy duty emissions engine.

The weight is based on the Reference Mass defined as the mass in running order, less a 75kg allowance for the driver, add a 100kg uniform mass.

For guidance purposes only, if the Reference Mass used for completed vehicle type approval is:

- Not exceeding 2840kg, a light duty engine may be specified for N1 and N2 vehicles.
- Greater than 2840kg, a heavy duty engine needs to be specified. Note: heavy duty engines are required for M2 Bus Conversions.

NOTE: Light duty emissions engines are available at EU6 emissions level for Transit vehicle conversions not exceeding 2840kg, including Vans and Chassis Cabs. Conversions exceeding 2840kg need to be specified with heavy duty engines.

For incomplete heavy duty vehicles between 2380kg and 2610kg reference mass. WLTP values will be required from Ford Service Info. The WLTP calculator can be accessed at <https://www.fordserviceinfo.com>. You will need to register or login to use it.

Refer to: 1.14.10 Chassis Cab Body Heavy Duty Incomplete Chassis Cab
Refer to: 1.14.12 Skeletal Chassis for Camper and Non Camper Heavy Duty Incomplete Skeletal Chassis

3.1.2 Engine/E-Drive Types

Engine/ E-Drive	Max Power kW/RPM	Max Torque Nm/RPM	Emissions	Vehicle Class	Transmission
FWD					
Panther 2.0L	77kW (105PS) @ 3250-3500 RPM	310Nm @ 1500-2250 RPM	LDT	N1	VMT6
Panther 2.0L	96kW (130PS) @ 3250-3500 RPM	360Nm @ 1500-2500 RPM	Passcar/LDT/HDT	M1/N1/N2	VMT6/8F57-
Panther 2.0L	110kW (150PS) @ 3500 RPM	360Nm @ 1500-2750 RPM	Passcar	M1	8F57
Panther 2.0L	121kW (165PS) @ 3500 RPM	390Nm @ 1750-2750 RPM	LDT/HDT	N1/N2	VMT6/8F57
RWD					
Panther 2.0L	77kW (105PS) @ 3250-3500 RPM	310Nm @ 1500-2250 RPM	LDT	N1	MT82
Panther 2.0L	96kW (130PS) @ 3250-3500 RPM	360Nm @ 1500-2500 RPM	LDT/HDT	N1/N2/M2	MT82
Panther 2.0L	121kW (165PS) @ 3500 RPM	390Nm @ 1750-2750 RPM	HDT/PL8/HDT/P8	N1/N2/M2	MT82/10R80
AWD					
Panther 2.0L	96kW (130PS) @ 3250-3500 RPM	360Nm @ 1500-2500 RPM	LDT	N1	MT82 AWD
Panther 2.0L	121kW (165PS) @ 3500 RPM	390Nm @ 1750-2750 RPM	LDT	N1	MT82 AWD
E-RWD					
BEV	135kW (184PS) 	430Nm	Zero	N1/N2	Single Speed

3.2 Engine Cooling

NOTE: The installation must be in line with the appropriate legal requirements.

3.2.1 Auxiliary Heater Systems

WARNINGS:

! Ford coolant additives are necessary for the complete function of the system. Only use Ford approved or equivalent specification component, to withstand any detrimental effects on the materials.

! Do not mount components in front of the grille or in an area of air flow around the engine, which could affect the engine cooling.

CAUTIONS:

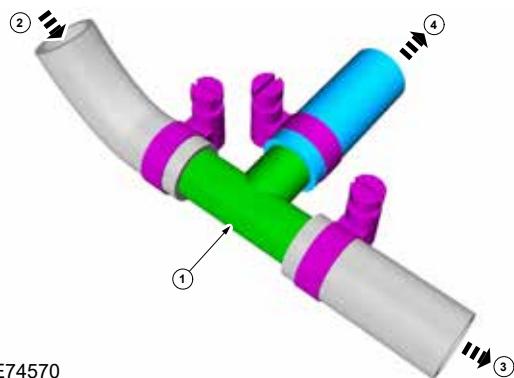
! Only make connections into the heater hose between the front cab heater and water pump return inlet.

! Do not exceed the vehicle's original coolant volume (without auxiliary heater) by more than 10%.

! Maintain a coolant level between the maximum and minimum lines in cold condition after fill and de-aerating operations.

! Only use the manufacturer recommended (or equivalent specification) coolant additives/anti-freeze. Do not mix coolant types.

Water Hoses for Auxiliary Heating System



Item	Description
1	Connector (aluminium or plastic)
2	Heater hose (maintain heater fluid)
3	Original flow
4	To ancillary equipment

- Coolant flow to cab heater must have priority over flow to auxiliary heater or hand wash facility
- Coolant tube routing must be below the minimum line of the degas bottle
- Use aluminium or plastic 'T' junction with swaged or beaded ends to prevent hose blow off. Reconnect original coolant tube as shown in view E74570 (in this section) with standard Ford water hose clip or suitable equivalent specification clip. Ensure interference fit between hose and 'T' joint
- Tube routing must be secured to the body structure or suitable brackets avoiding electrical components or wires, hot or moving parts and brake or fuel system components
- Hose must be heat sleeved with appropriate material if within 100mm of exhaust components (for example, manifold or exhaust gas recirculating)
- The vertical clearance between the critical cooling components (radiator, fan shroud and radiator brackets) and both the bonnet inner and outer (assembly) panels at design position shall not be less than 15mm
- There must be a minimum clearance of 10mm between the engine assembly and flexible components (for example, hoses or wiring harnesses) affixed to front end sheet metal hardware, under a maximum engine torque roll condition

3.2.2 Fuel Fired Auxillary Heaters

Ensure that the exhaust gas from fuel fired auxiliary heaters cannot be re-circulated into the vehicle. The exhaust gases must not pass into the engine intake system or the air intake for the passenger compartment ventilation. The heating system should be installed outside the passenger compartment. The location of the heating system should not be in close proximity to movable components. Any body reworks which damage the paint must be fully protected against corrosion.

Refer to: 5.14 Corrosion Prevention

3.2.3 Air Flow Restrictions

! **WARNING: Do not mount components in front of the grille or in an area of air flow around the engine, which could affect the engine cooling performance.**

! **CAUTION: Overheating within the engine compartment can seriously compromise component robustness.**

NOTE: Please assume under bonnet environment is about 130°C when selecting appropriate materials.

3.3 Front End Accessory Drives

CAUTIONS:

- !** Only use the manufacturer's recommended (or equivalent specification) components.
- !** Make sure that the ancillary pulley diameter is less than the crankshaft pulley diameter.
- !** Front End Accessory Drive shields must be maintained at all times. If shields are removed, for example when attaching an ancillary unit, they must be replaced so that it is protected appropriately.
- !** Do not fit an additional belt driven accessory within the existing belt drive when the vehicle is already equipped with an air conditioning compressor. If it is required to retain the air conditioning, then a further belt must be used to drive the additional accessory, driven from a third crankshaft pulley sheave.

FWD TDCi

Figure	Engine
E289251	Upgrade with EPAS. Start-Stop Shields as standard. Optional AC.

RWD TDCi

Figure	Engine
E293302	Upgrade with EPAS. Optional AC. No Start-Stop Shield.

NOTE: No devices can be taken off the crank damper as this is a tuned device for system resonance.

NOTE: The shields are there to protect the Front End Accessory Drive system from stone ingress and also protect people from rotating parts under Start-Stop function.

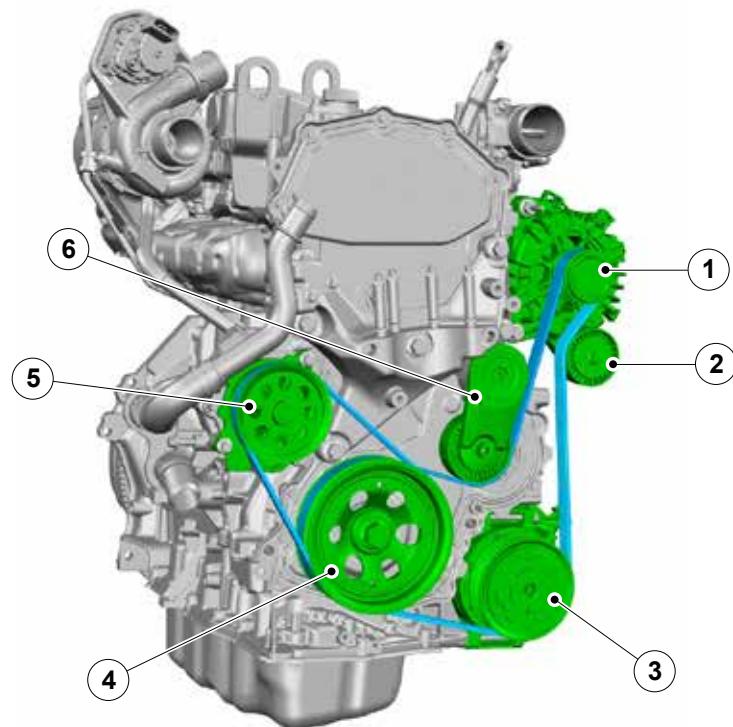
When the correct belt is used, tensioning is and remains fully automatic for the life of the belt.

The Eigen frequency of the bracket with auxiliary unit should be above the maximum excitation frequency of the main excitation order of the individual engine at engine top speed. On 4-cylinder inline engines, this is the second engine order.

When engineering and installing a new front end accessory drive i.e. belt driven from the crankshaft pulley, the angular alignment of the belt to any pulleys must be within $\pm 0.5^\circ$.

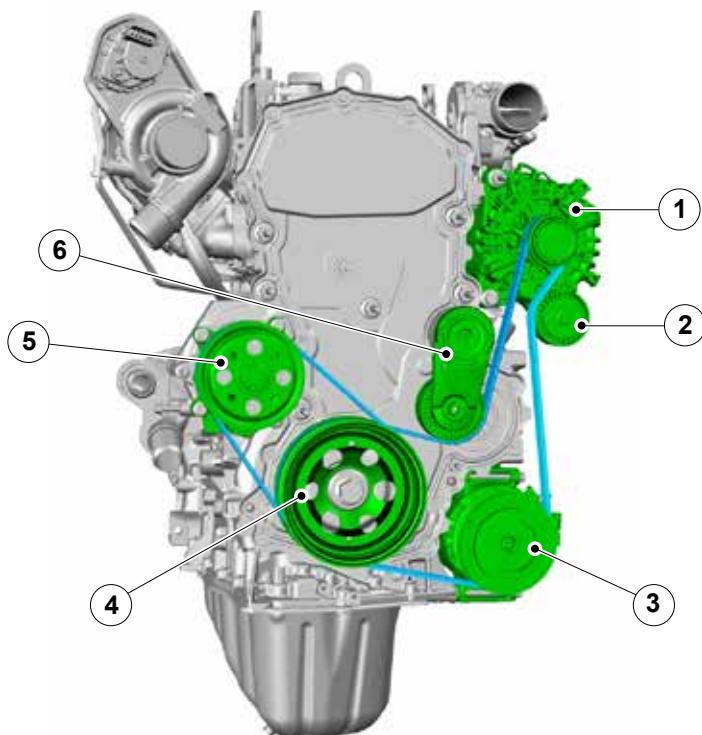
When the vehicle is not equipped with an air conditioning compressor, an additional accessory can be added in its place, and the longer standard option air conditioning belt can replace the standard belt if pulley size and position are the same as the standard option compressor. Then maximum power/torque that is available in that case at any engine speed is 5kW or 21Nm based on the Ford released variable air conditioning compressor.

2.0 EcoBlue Upgrade with EPAS. Start-Stop Shields as standard. Optional AC



E289251

Item	Description
1	Alternator
2	Idler
3	AC Compressor
4	Crankshaft Pulley
5	Water Pump
6	Tensioner

2.0 EcoBlue Upgrade with EPAS. Optional AC. No Start-Stop Shield

E293302

Item	Description
1	Alternator
2	Idler
3	AC Compressor
4	Crankshaft Pulley
5	Water Pump
6	Tensioner

3.4 Automatic Transmission

WARNINGS:

 **Do not reroute external transmission gear shift cables.**

 **Do not change external electrical connectors.**

8F57 8 Speed Automatic FWD Transmission

Gears	Base Transmission Ratio	Overall Ratio - Final Drive 3.39
1st	4.484	15.201
2nd	3.146	10.665
3rd	2.872	9.736
4th	1.842	6.244
5th	1.414	4.793
6th	1.000	3.390
7th	0.742	2.515
8th	0.616	2.088
Reverse	2.882	9.770

3.5 Clutch

The manufacturer does not offer the option of a reinforced clutch system. The axle ratio available is dependent on the weight of the specified donor vehicle.

It is necessary to select the appropriate drive, engine, gear ratio, gross vehicle mass, gross train mass, axle plates and payloads of the base vehicle to match the customer's order.

3.6 Manual Transmission

 **WARNING: Do not reroute external transmission gear shift cables.**

NOTE: All transmissions are tachograph compatible.

VMT6 - 6 Speed Manual FWD Transmission

Gear	Base Transmission Ratio	Overall Transmission Ratio		
		4.19 Final Drive	4.43 Final Drive	4.93 Final Drive
1st	3.727	15.609	16.507	18.370
2nd	1.952	8.175	8.645	9.620
3rd	1.121	4.695	4.965	5.530
4th	0.780	3.267	3.455	3.850
5th	0.844	2.570	2.754	2.910
6th	0.683	2.080	2.229	2.360
Reverse	1.423	16.150	17.306	18.30

MT82 - 6 Speed Manual RWD and AWD Transmission

Gear	RWD Gear Set E			
	Base Transmission Ratio	Overall Transmission Ratio		
		3.31 Final Drive	3.73 Final Drive	4.10 Final Drive
1st	5.701	18.870	21.265	23.374
2nd	2.974	9.844	11.093	12.193
3rd	1.803	5.968	6.725	7.392
4th	1.282	4.243	4.782	5.256
5th	1.000	3.310	3.730	4.100
6th	0.776	2.569	2.894	3.182
Reverse	5.170	17.113	19.284	21.197

3.7 Exhaust System

NOTE: For further information please contact your National Sales Company representative or Local Ford Dealer. If they are unable to help you then please contact FPSV Technical Support at FPSVHelp@ford.com

3.7.1 Extensions and Optional Exhausts

CAUTIONS:

- !**Non-standard systems must be tested for engine back pressure and all legal compliance (noise and emissions).**
- !**Make sure that for any pipes that require bending, the radius of the bend is minimum 2.5 x tube diameter.**
- !**Make sure that sufficient clearance is maintained for all driving conditions to all hot and moving components.**
- !**Repositioning of any of the thermal elements (DOC, DPF, SCR or aSCR) or any of the sensors will render the donor vehicle non-compliant from a legal/ emissions homologation point of view. The control of DPF and SCR regeneration has been calibrated to the delivered system layout and modification could also lead to component failure.**

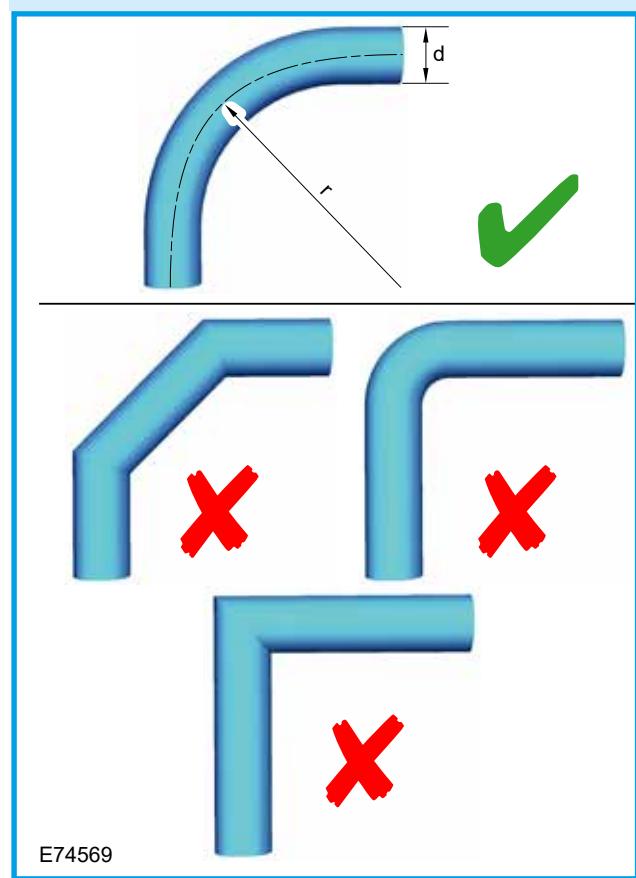
NOTE: Where possible all pipe connections should be designed so that the gas flows from smaller to larger diameter pipes.

3.7.2 Exhaust Pipes and Supports

CAUTIONS:

- !**Maintain the original set-up and heat shields.**
- !**Do not position any components closer than 150mm nominal (100mm minimum) clearance to the downpipe, the catalytic convertor, the diesel particulate filter, the selective catalyst reduction and any part of the exhaust system.**

Exhaust Pipe Design Principles



Item	Description
d	diameter
r	radius => 2.5d

3.7.3 Exhaust Heat Shields

 **CAUTION:** Standard heat shields are available from your local dealer and can easily be fitted. Additional heat shields may be required over the modified exhaust system, particularly in areas of close proximity to the floor.

Catalytic converters, in particular, operate at high temperatures. Ensure existing shields are maintained and add further shields over exhaust system as necessary to avoid fire risk.

3.7.4 Diesel Particulate Filter (DPF)

The DPF forms part of the emissions reduction systems fitted to your vehicle. It filters harmful diesel particulates (soot) from the exhaust gas.

For further information

[Refer to: 4.10 Electronic Engine Controls](#) DPF & RPM Speed Control.

Regeneration

 **WARNING:** Do not park or idle your vehicle over dry leaves, dry grass or other combustible material. The DPF regeneration process creates very high exhaust gas temperatures. The exhaust will radiate a considerable amount of heat during and after DPF regeneration and after you have switched the engine off. This is a potential fire hazard.

Unlike a normal filter which requires periodic replacement, the DPF has been designed to regenerate, or clean itself to maintain operating efficiency. The regeneration process takes place automatically. However, some driving conditions mean that you may need to support the regeneration process.

If you drive only short distances or your journeys contain frequent stopping and starting, occasional trips with the following conditions could assist the regeneration process:

- Drive your vehicle, preferably on a main road or motor way, for up to 20 minutes avoiding prolonged idling, but always observing speed limits and road conditions
- Do not switch off the ignition
- Use a lower gear than normal to maintain a higher engine speed during this journey, where appropriate

3.7.5 Manual Regeneration Initiation (A6YAB)

With the vehicle stationary, the DPF is unable to start a regeneration event.

Where the anticipated usage profile of the vehicle is expected to include longer stationary durations, it is strongly recommended that the Manual Regeneration Initiation (A6YAB) is specified and ordered for the base vehicle.

Manual Regeneration Initiation allows the driver/operator to manually perform a DPF regeneration while the vehicle is stationary, after confirming that it is safe to do so.

[Refer to: 4.10 Electronic Engine Controls](#)

3.8 Fuel System

WARNINGS:

-  **Do not cut into the original fuel supply lines.**
-  **Make sure that the modified vehicle complies with all relevant legal requirements.**

-  **Transport Mode includes a calibration feature to reduce the risk of fuel injector nozzle corrosion. Exiting Transportation Mode prior to upfitting/conversion increases the risk of early life injector failure**

Procedure for protection from Injector Nozzle Corrosion During the Upfitting/Conversion Process
[Refer to 1.13 Vehicle Transportation Aids and Vehicle Storage](#)

NOTE: For further information please contact your National Sales Company representative or local Ford dealer. If they are unable to help you then please contact FPSV Technical Support at FPSVHelp@ford.com

NOTE: The fuel heater line comes with a fuel fired heater as a factory-fit option, it is also available as a service item.

For vehicles without the fuel heater Line that require a fuel supply for applications (for example: auxiliary heater or fuel fired hand wash facility) it is advisable to use the auxiliary fuel supply port on the top of the fuel sender unit located on the top of the fuel tank as shown in figure E295894.

NOTE: To fit the fuel heater line, the fuel tank will need to be lowered, see the following process:

To lower fuel tank:

- Drain tank
- Disconnect fuel lines between fuel tank and urea tank
- Plug lines to prevent residual fuel from draining/spilling
- Remove filler pipe from tank
- Remove bolts securing the two tank straps
- Lower the fuel tank to gain access to the top, see Figure E295894 for fitting fuel heater Line

To refit fuel tank:

- Lift fuel tank ensuring not to trap fuel lines and electrical wires
- Refit straps, torque bolts to 47.5Nm ±7.2Nm
- Refit filler pipe to tank spud securing hose clip torque to 3.7Nm ±0.6Nm
- Remove plugs and reconnect fuel lines

CAUTIONS:

-  **Make sure that sufficient clearance is maintained for all driving conditions to all hot and moving components.**

-  **Make sure that when the port is cut that it is smooth with no sharp edges or burrs.**

NOTE: The tube and/or line must be routed independently and secured to the body structure or to suitable brackets.

NOTE: Ensure that a suitable fuel shut-off is fitted in any unique system.

NOTE: Do not fasten anything to existing electrical components, wires or fuel lines.

For additional information

[Refer to: 5.1 Body](#) Floor 'Precautionary Drill Zones' Fuel Tank with Urea.

Retrofitting of Fuel Heater Line - For all Vehicles Except Campers

Follow the steps below to retrofit the fuel heater line (figure E295894):

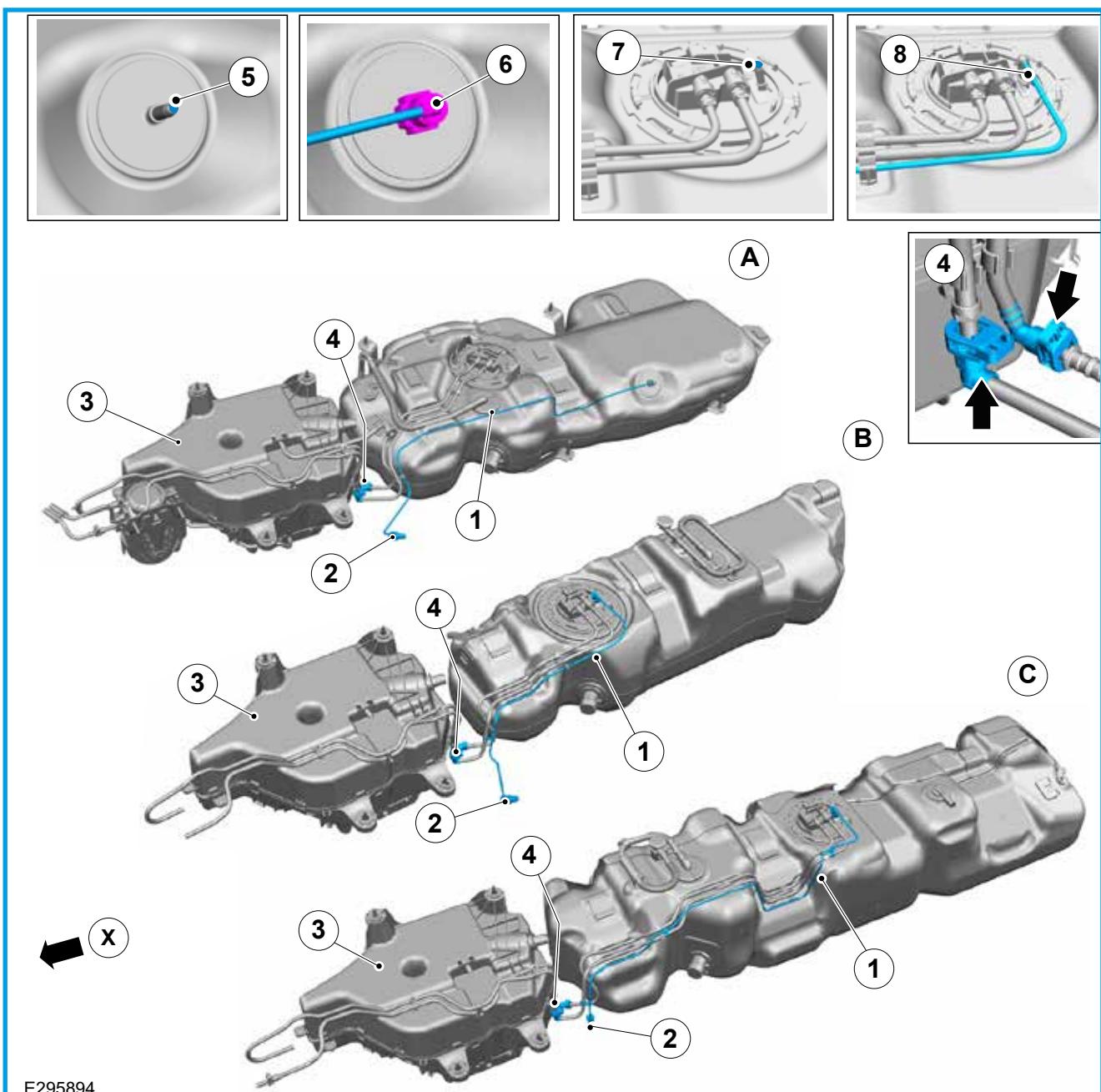
For tank A:

1. Disconnect fuel lines between fuel tank and Urea tank (Item 4)
2. Cut off top of port of tank flange leaving 19.64 ±0.12mm and carefully insert heater tube, part number BK21-9T308A* (Item 5)
3. Fix quick fit connector of fuel line to heater tube (Item 6)

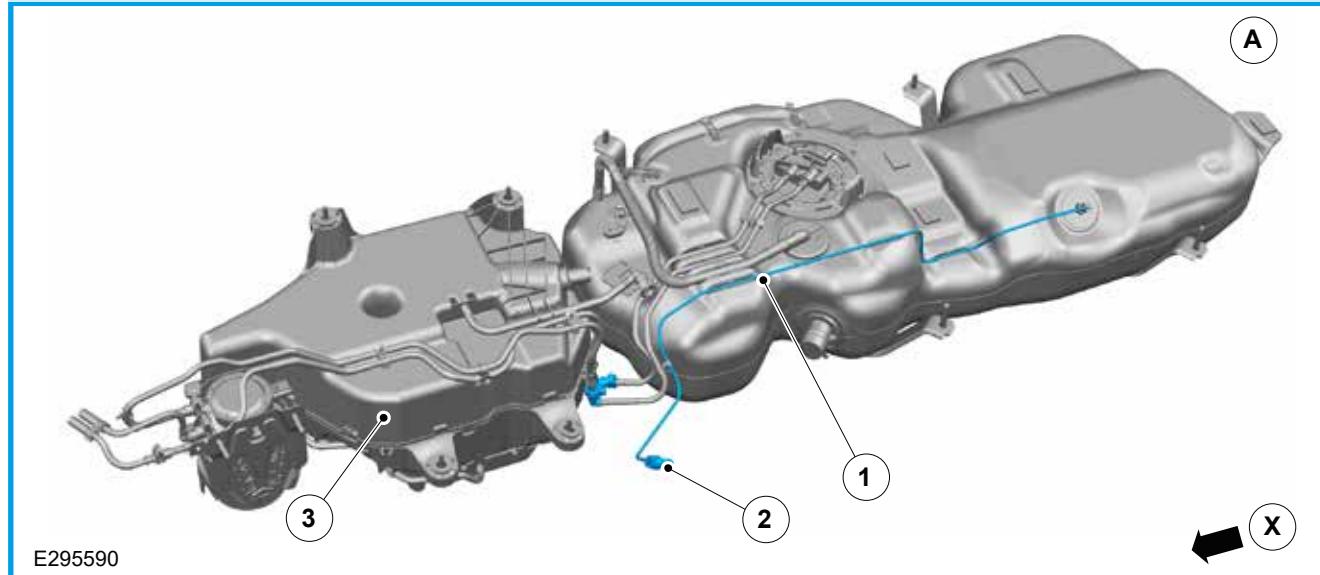
For tank B & C:

1. Disconnect fuel lines between fuel tank and Urea tank (Item 4)
2. Cut off top of port of module flange leaving 19.64 ±0.12mm and carefully insert heater tube, part number for 70L Chassis Cab FWD, RWD/AWD: KK31-9T308-A* or 95L : BK31-9T308-A* (Item 7)
3. Fix quick fit connector of fuel line to heater tube (Item 8)

NOTE: Fuel Pick up line lengths are designed to provide 80-160km of driving range left in tank

Retrofitting of Fuel Heater Line - For all Vehicles Except Campers


Item	Description
A	70L Standard Fuel Tank for all FWD vehicles except Chassis Cab
B	70L Standard Fuel Tank for Chassis cab FWD, all RWD and AWD vehicles.
C	95L Fuel Tank, optional for Chassis cab FWD, all RWD and AWD vehicles.
1	Heater Fuel Line, part number 70L FWD except Chassis Cab: KK21-9N126-A*, 70L Chassis Cab FWD, RWD/AWD: KK31-9N126-A*, 95L : GK31-9N126-C*
2	Heater Fuel Line has a female end adapter TI LOCC QC 7.89mm fitted as standard. It is recommended to use a male 8mm (5/16") quick connector that meets SAE J2044 standard (August 2009 or later), where the seal diameter = 7.89mm
3	Urea Tank/AdBlue® Tank
x	Drive Direction

Retrofitting of Fuel Heater Line - Skeletal Chassis for Camper and Non Camper


Item	Description
A	70L Standard Fuel Tank for Skeletal Chassis for camper and non camper
1	Heater Fuel Line, part number FWD KK31-9N126-B*, RWD KK31-9N126-C*
2	Heater Fuel Line has a male end adapter TI LOCC QC 7.89mm diameter fitted as standard, with a female blind quick connector. After the female blind quick connector is removed, it is recommended to use a female 8mm (5/16") quick connector that meets SAE J2044 standard (August 2009 or later), where the seal diameter = 7.89mm.
3	Urea Tank/AdBlue® Tank
X	Drive Direction

3.9 High Voltage System & Electrified Drivetrain

 **WARNINGS:** Before beginning any vehicle modifications refer to the following overview of High Voltage System Health & Safety Precautions

3.9.1 High Voltage Health & Safety Precautions

WARNINGS:

 **Do not touch, drill, modify or obscure the orange High Voltage cables, fasteners, channels, strain relief, ground wire or connectors**

 **Service of the High Voltage system on this vehicle is restricted to qualified personnel. The required qualifications vary by region. Always observe local laws and legislative directives regarding electric vehicle service. Failure to follow this instruction may result in serious personal injury or death.**

 **To prevent the risk of High Voltage shock, always follow precisely all warnings and service instructions, including instructions to de-energize the system. The High Voltage system utilises approximately 400V DC, provided through High Voltage cables to its components and modules. The High Voltage cables and wiring are identified by orange harness tape or orange wire covering. All High Voltage components are marked with 'High Voltage' warning labels with a 'High Voltage' symbol. Failure to follow these instructions may result in serious personal injury or death**

 **Any work on the High Voltage system requires the Low Voltage Service Disconnect to be open and locked out. Failure to follow these instructions may result in serious personal injury or death.**

 **Extreme heat, such as paint drying ovens, will cause the damage to the High Voltage battery. The High Voltage battery must be removed before using paint drying ovens longer than 45 minutes or with temperatures above 60°C (140°F). Failure to follow this instruction may result in damage to the high voltage battery, which could cause serious personal injury or death in a fire or explosion. Please refer to the Ford E-Transit workshop manual.**

 **De-energising the High Voltage system does not dissipate the voltage inside the High Voltage battery. The battery pack remains live and dangerous. Contact with the High Voltage battery pack internals may result in serious personal injury or death**

 **Powertrain software calibrations must not be modified (this includes Electric Vehicle Control Module, Primary Drive Control Module, Battery Charge Control Module, Battery Energy Control Module and Antilock Braking System Control Module).**

 **Direct contact with high voltage components by personnel, tools or equipment should generally be avoided, including stepping on or leaning on them, setting tools on them, etc**

"High Voltage" is defined in UN ECE 100 as:

- Greater than 60 volts for Direct Current (DC) circuits.
- Greater than 30 volts RMS for Alternating Current (AC) circuits.

Subsequent stage manufacturers and vehicle convertors should NOT plan to connect with or modify the high voltage system or components in any way. Integration with the vehicle electrical system must be done only with the low voltage (12 volt) electrical system, or with outlet(s) provided with the "Pro Power Onboard" feature (where applicable)

Only qualified Ford service personnel should attempt to diagnose or repair any high voltage components or systems. Any personnel involved in engineering, subsequent stage manufacturing, modifying, or servicing vehicles with high voltage systems (content other than the HV systems) should be trained in basic understanding and safety principles regarding HV systems.

Emergency Response Guides – Information for First Responders may be helpful in developing an emergency response plan in case a vehicle with a HV system is damaged.

The following manufacturing operations are not recommended on vehicles with High Voltage systems:

- Operations generating significant heat near HV components, especially near the HV battery.
- Paint curing operations above 60°C (140°F) or longer than 45 minutes.

For welding/drilling or cutting, refer to sections:

[5.1.5 No Drill/No Weld Zones - BEV](#)

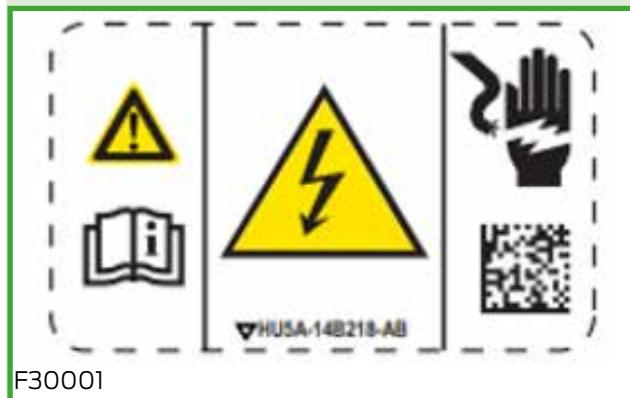
[5.1.6 BEV Van Floor Drilling](#)

[5.1.7 BEV Side Step](#)

High Voltage Labels

On electric vehicles, 'WARNING' labels are located on High Voltage components throughout the vehicle as per the following examples. High Voltage warning symbols are not to be obscured or altered in any way:

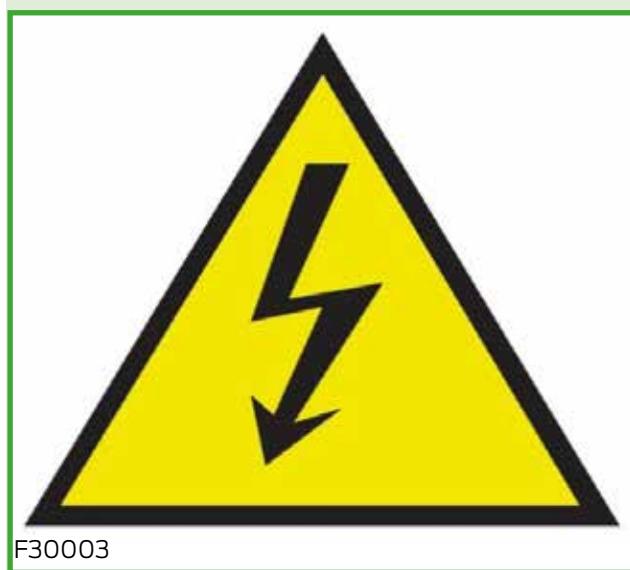
HV Label Example 1



HV Label Example 2



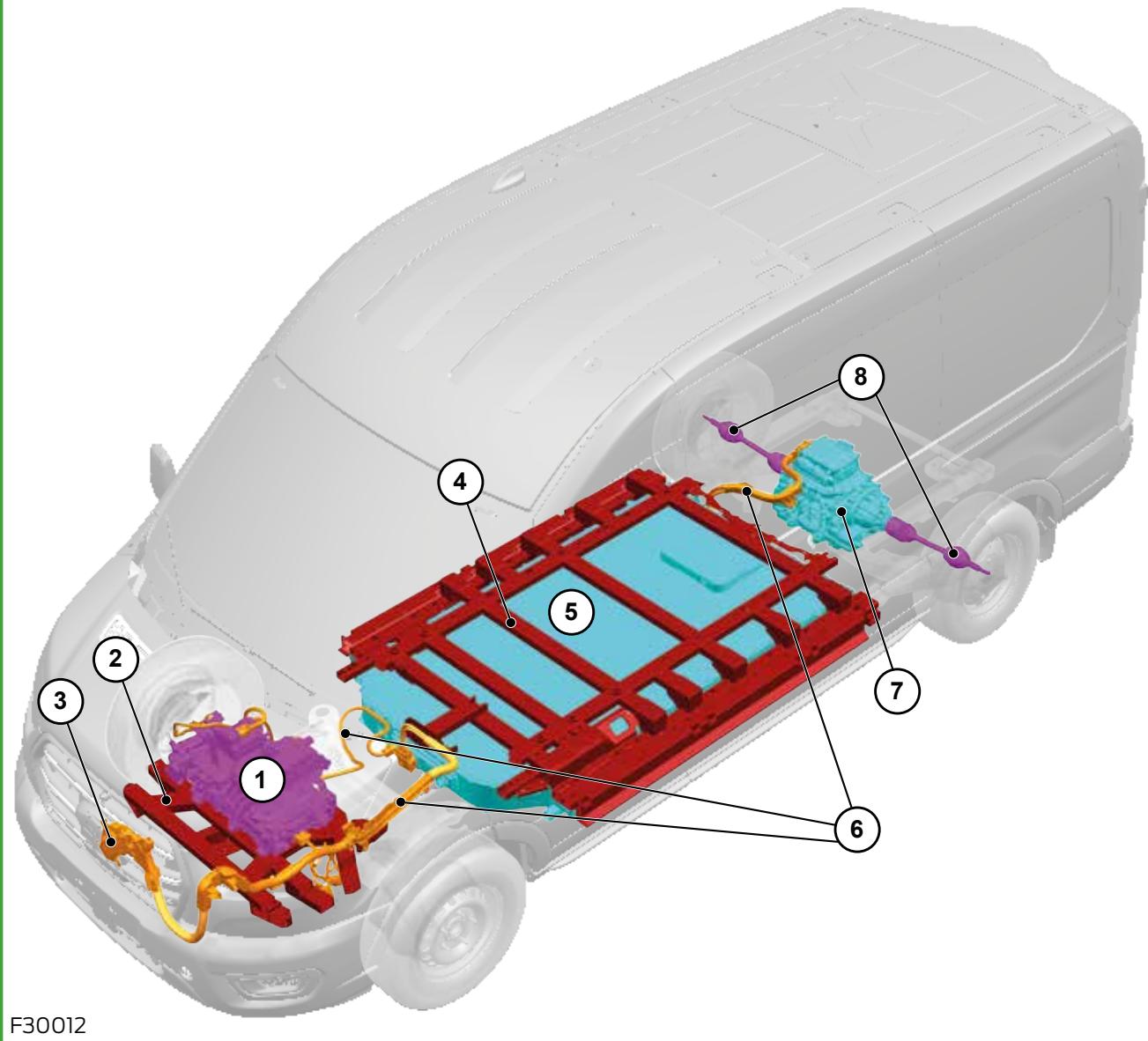
HV Label Example 3



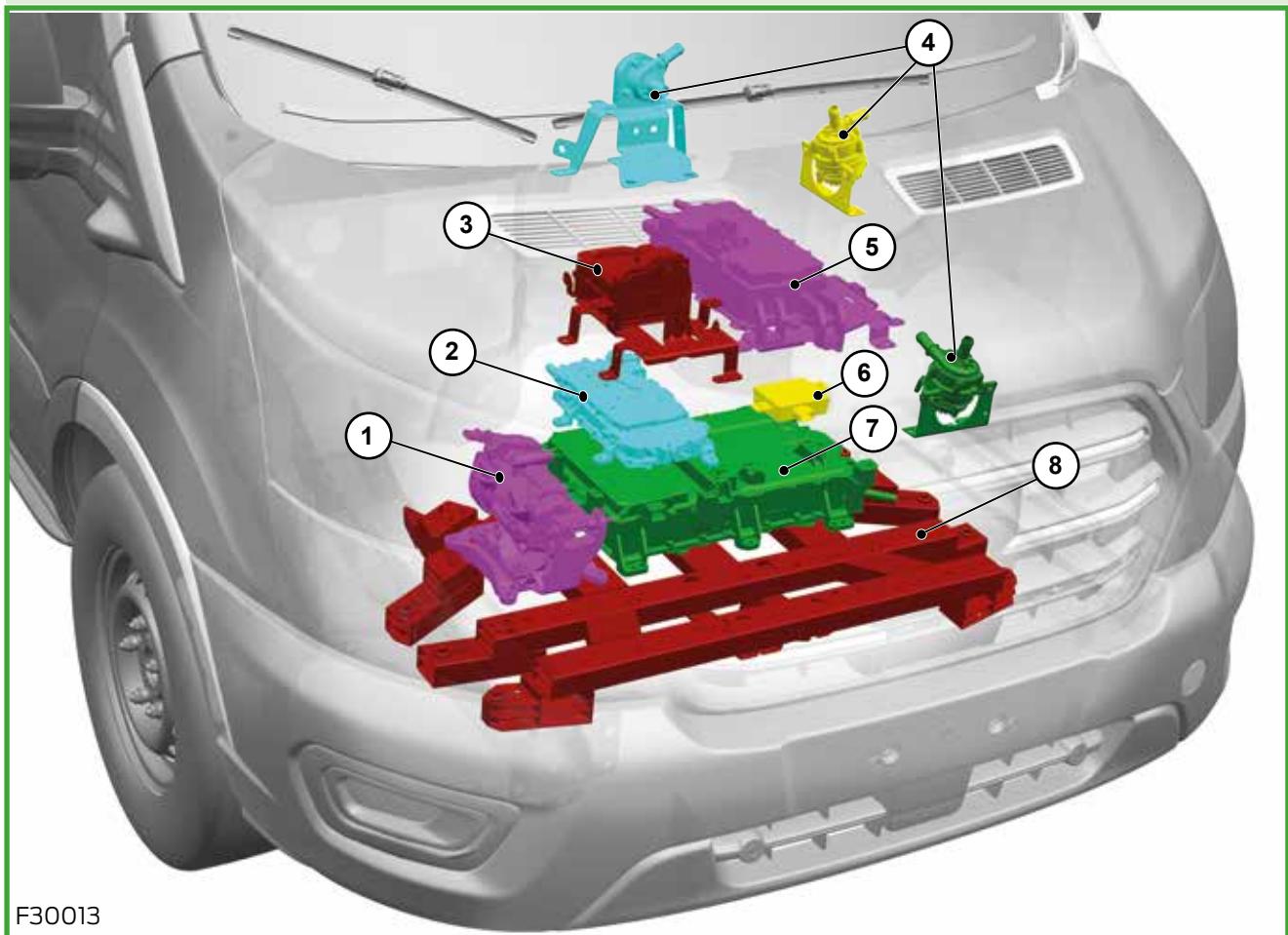
3.9.2 High Voltage System Overview

The High Voltage System on E-Transit consists of a centrally mounted, underfloor High Voltage Battery Pack, a front-mounted 'stack' of HV control systems under the 'bonnet', that are mounted to the 'Megabrace' and an Electric Drive Assembly providing drive to the rear wheels. These are connected by orange High Voltage cables and a system for cooling the components of the High Voltage system

High Voltage System Overview

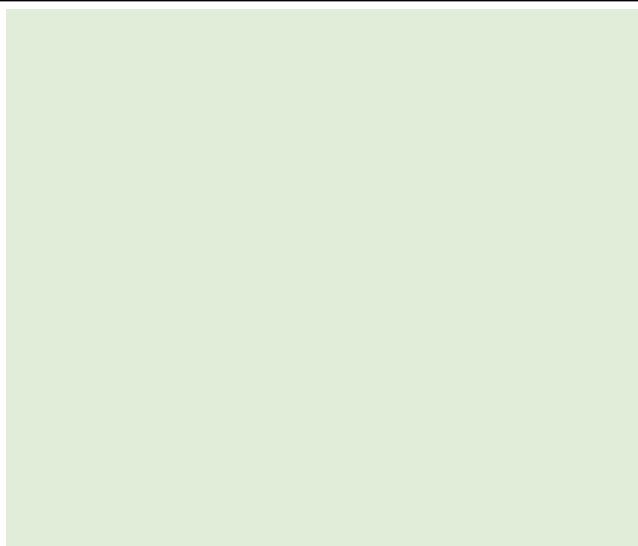
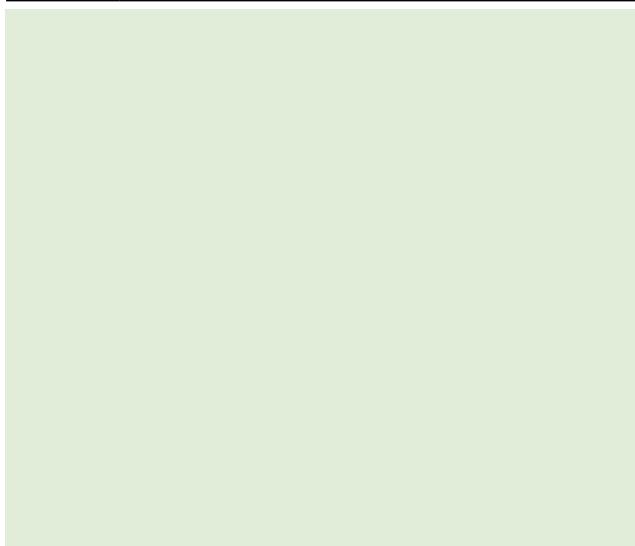


Item	Description
1	High Voltage Module Stack
2	Megabrace
3	High Voltage Charge Port Inlet
4	High Voltage Battery Cradle
5	High Voltage Battery Pack
6	Orange High Voltage Cables
7	Electric Drive Assembly
8	Halfshafts

Exploded View of HV Stack Components


F30013

Item	Description
1	Electric Air Conditioning Compressor
2	DC-DC Convertor
3	Electric Heater
4	Cooling Pumps and Valves
5	On Board Generator Inverter Module (optional)
6	Off-Board Charger Control Module
7	Charge Unit
8	Megabrace



3.9.3 HV System De-Energising

Please refer to the Ford E-Transit workshop manual for High Voltage Battery Disconnect and Connect procedure.

WARNING: De-energising the High Voltage system does not dissipate the voltage inside the High Voltage battery. The battery pack remains live and dangerous. Contact with the High Voltage battery pack internals may result in serious personal injury or death

NOTE: When the HV system has been de-energised, the 12V Low Voltage system will remain live

3.9.4 HV System Cooling

CAUTION: For E-transit BEV, do not modify the High Voltage Battery cooling system.

3.9.5 High Voltage Battery

Observe the following precautions when working on or around High Voltage Batteries

- Do not cut the High Voltage Battery case. Do not penetrate the batteries or case in any way.
- The High Voltage Battery Pack is located under the vehicle.
- The total voltage of the HV Battery Pack may be up to approximately 400V DC.
- The Battery Case is water resistant.
- The battery cells contain liquid electrolyte absorbed in a porous special polymeric film. The electrolyte will not leak from the battery under most conditions. However, if the battery is crushed, it is possible for a small amount of electrolyte to leak.
- If possible, isolate and avoid contact with any electric vehicle components. If contact with the High Voltage system cannot be avoided, Personal Protective Equipment (PPE) such as a splash shield or safety goggles, gloves (butyl), an apron or overcoat and rubber boots are required when handling damaged batteries. Exposure to electrolyte could cause skin and/or eye irritation/burns. If exposed, rinse with large amounts of water for 10-15 minutes.

The high voltage system has a floating return reference, which is designed to completely isolate the HV system from the vehicle chassis and non-HV components and circuits. As part of the safety features built in to the HV system, measurements between the HV bus and vehicle ground are monitored during key "on" state to detect high voltage leakage or stray current to the chassis.

The power terminals of the high voltage battery are only activated when necessary for vehicle operation, including:

- When the vehicle is in key "on" or "accessory" state
- When the 12v battery has a low state of charge

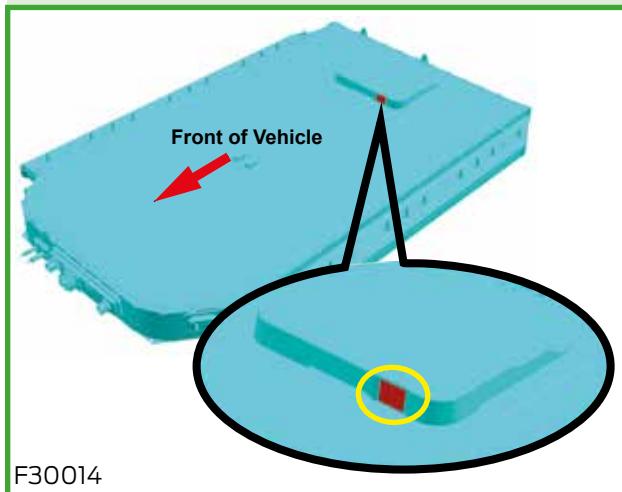
- the HV battery will activate to charge the 12v battery through the DC-to-DC Convertor, even in the vehicle key "off" state

- When the vehicle is plugged into a charging station (BEV only) - the charge port, charge unit, HV battery and wiring between these components may be active, with high voltage present even in the vehicle key "off" state.

HV Battery Venting

- The E-Transit BEV HV Battery is equipped with an exhaust vent. No additional components nor obstructions (beyond any installed by Ford) shall be located in the same environment as the battery (e.g., underbody) and within 150 mm of these features. Additionally, no components which may contain combustible liquids or gases at any time shall be added within 300 mm of these features.
- There shall be no modifications or installed components which confine the air space near the outside of the HV Battery or obstruct the free flow of air about the battery (beyond any installed by Ford).
- Any cut outs or openings created between the occupant space and the vehicle underbody shall be sealed such that air is not free to pass from under the vehicle into the occupant space.
- If any primary ingress/egress paths for occupant spaces are located above or rearward of the rear axle(s), a metallic shielding shall be added to obstruct any air flow from the battery towards those ingress/egress paths, and redirect that air flow towards a side/rear area that is not a primary ingress/egress path.

HV Battery Vent



HV Battery Grounding

WARNINGS:

! The following illustrations indicate the points where the High Voltage Battery and Cradle are grounded. These points should NOT be used as additional/auxiliary grounding points for the Low Voltage (12V) system.

! Electrical ground paths (case grounds and/or ground straps and/or low voltage wiring) for High Voltage components on the E-Transit BEV must not be altered or modified in any way. Do not tamper with or modify any of these HV component fastener joints or ground points.

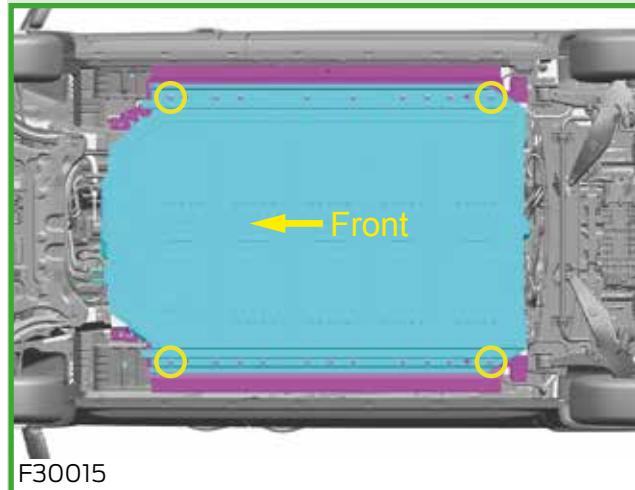
NOTE: As part of the safety features built in to the HV system, measurements between the HV circuitry and vehicle ground are measured using these ground paths. Therefore, HV battery ground paths must not be altered in any way.

NOTE: Battery ground path for Van and Chassis Cab/Cutaway are not the same, the complete battery ground path includes the cradle as well as attachment to the body rail.

Refer to:

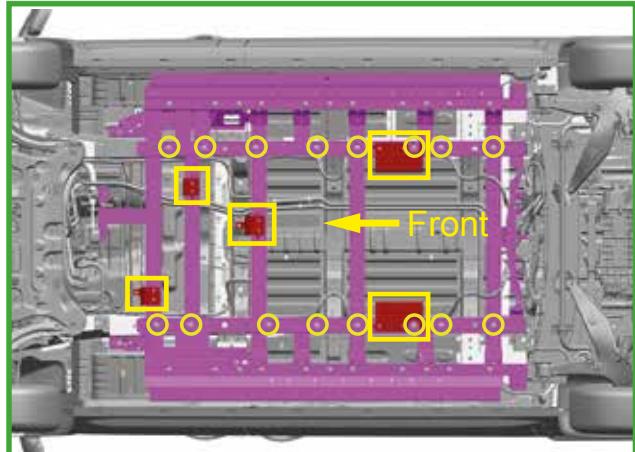
[4.2.14 Precautionary Drill Zones - Cable Grounding](#)

HV Battery to Cradle Grounding Fasteners: Van and Chassis Cab



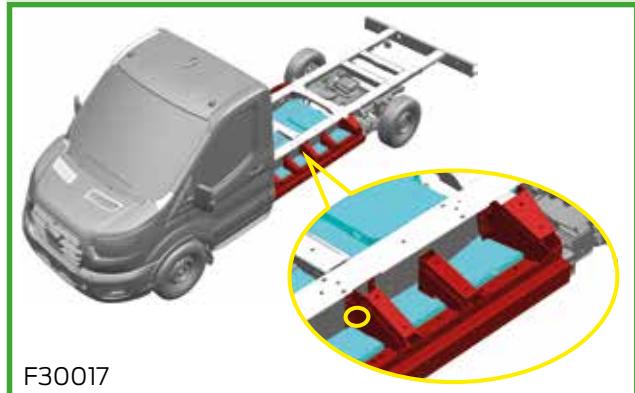
F30015

HV Cradle to Chassis Grounding Fasteners and Grounding Brackets: Van



F30016

HV Battery Grounding Location - Cradle to Chassis: Chassis Cab



F30017

Battery Protection Bar

! **CAUTION:** The E-Transit Chassis Cab Variant has a front-mounted Battery Protection Bar to protect the battery from hitting the road surface where ground clearance is an issue. The Battery Protection Bar must NOT be removed

Battery Protection Bar: Location



F30018

3.9.6 EV Charging

Please refer to the E-Transit Owners Manual for ePower Pack System and Mobile Charger Unit

NOTE: Chargers provided with vehicles should be reserved for end customer use only, and not used during manufacturing or delivery processes, to prevent damage or loss

NOTE: The standard charge cord storage location is lost if the passenger seat delete option is chosen and the upfitter must provide their own storage feature for the cord

Abc = BEV Only Abc = ICE Only

4.1 Electrical System Overview

WARNINGS:

 **It is recommended to follow the guidelines in the electrical sections of the BEMM.**
Incorrect design, for example: overloaded ground paths or insufficient mechanical protection to a third party wiring, could lead to serious system or vehicle failure.

 **The fitting of voltage boosters or other devices to enhance alternator output are not allowed. The fitting of such devices will not only invalidate vehicle warranties, but could damage either or both, the alternator and Engine Management System/Power Control Module, and possibly affect vehicle legal compliance. Check local legislation.**

NOTE: Ford Motor Company has no control over the modification or installation process of the electrical content of auxiliary systems and therefore can take no responsibility for such installations.

NOTE: For further information please contact your National Sales Company representative, or local Ford dealer. If they are unable to help you then please contact FPSV Technical Support at FPSVHelp@ford.com

4.2 Wiring Installation and Routing Guides

4.2.1 Wiring Harness Information

NOTE: For additional information and recommendations on materials and equipment for interfacing to the Ford systems, power and grounds, please contact your National Sales Company representative or local Ford dealer. If they are unable to help you then please contact FPSV Technical Support at FPSVHelp@ford.com

The following provides an installation guide for conversions affecting electrical components and/or electrical systems. The aim is to maintain robust integration of auxiliary systems without compromising existing systems, by control of splicing techniques, module package location, electromagnetic compatibility (EMC) etc. The Vehicle Convertor must test their installation and ensure the design and function complies with all legal and homologation requirements.

4.2.2 General Wiring and Routing

Temperature requirements: Wiring systems in the vehicle interior are expected to function over the temperature ranges of -40°C to 85°C for exposure and -40°C to 75°C for function. For engine compartment and underbody, the minimum temperature is -40°C, while the maximum exposure and operational temperatures are 125°C for exposure and 105°C for operational.

Make sure that the insulation is compatible with any fluids it may encounter, for example: petrol, oil, antifreeze, brake fluid, transmission fluid and power steering fluid.

If a connector is to be located in a wet area, use a sealed connector. Wet areas include: the Engine Compartment, Wheel Wells, Underbody and Doors.

Do not route wires near weld points or weld flashes. A minimum of 15mm clearance to any sheet metal welds under static and dynamic conditions is required. However, it is best to avoid routing near weld points or weld flashes at all times.

In general, the distance between retention points for wiring not contained in a rigid shield should be less than 300mm.

A minimum 25mm clearance is recommended from all sharp edges and a minimum 35mm clearance of all moving parts of the parking brake assembly. If these clearances cannot be met, protect the wires with a convolute.

For conversions with walkthroughs, it is recommended to provide appropriate protection on the floor in the walkway.

Connecting blocks with screws or spring retention are not recommended due to the low frequency vibration that can occur in certain vehicles which could lead to terminals becoming loose.

A secondary clamp design is required on all eyelets to

help avoid strain and breaking of a single conductor strand.

It is recommended to use a set ratchet crimp tool for the required crimp force.

Soldering is not permitted as the only method of retention. All connections must be crimped. Soldering should only be used as a supplementary retention method to the crimp, to reduce impedance.

If routing wiring through drilled metal, all holes need to be protected by a grommet or protective edging to avoid chafing.

All wires, single or multiple, should have a secondary form of mechanical protection, for example: cotton, PVC tape, conduit or sleeving, depending on the routing environment within the vehicle.

It is recommended to use edge clips, where required, to control routing of all cables in weather zone areas of the vehicle. For non-weather zone areas of the vehicle do not use edge clips.

4.2.3 Connector Pin Out Practices

When designing a harness to connect a component, it is best practice to put the female terminals in the harness side connection and the male terminals in the component side. When determining connector pin outs, make sure that Power and Ground circuits are not in close proximity, adjacent, to one another. A minimum separation of 5 mm between Power and Ground circuits is required.



WARNING: Do not use connectors which cut through the outer covering and into the core wire.



CAUTION: Only use Ford approved connectors.

Cutting into vehicle wiring is not recommended because:

- The base vehicle specification is unsuitable for incremental loads except in conjunction with Vehicle Integration System (JRSAB)
- Long term risk of a faulty connection developing
- Potential fire risk from overloading

All connections into existing wiring must be permanently insulated. Exterior connections must be waterproof.

When designing electrical circuits, or making alterations, the following must be considered:

- Current rating of wiring, see table 'Current Rating of Wire Sizes' in this section
- Any voltage drop in the circuit should not lower the terminal voltage at consumption point to below 95% of battery voltage
- Do not cut into the original harness
- Additional Ground returns should be included to

support new equipment

- A supplementary circuit diagram and accompanying instructions should be added to the Owner's information or a separate manual supplied with the vehicle for each unique component

Where wires are required to be extended, break in points and only Ford approved connectors should be used.

Ford approved jumper harnesses should be used.

4.2.4 Unused Connectors

Harnesses may have a number of unused connectors, depending on which features have been ordered on the donor vehicle, e.g. heated seats. Ford do not recommend the use of these connectors for any other purpose than that intended by design.

4.2.5 Grounding

If a new grounding point is required, avoid placing it in a wet area, especially for high current grounds. Ground connections should be routed back close to the location of the +12V supply. This helps to reduce the electromagnetic field particularly generated by inrush current and improve electromagnetic compatibility.

Drill point screws are not to be used for any ground attachments:

- Do not ground to moving structures, for example: doors, deck lids, lift gates, as the ground return path through the hinges is not reliable
- Do not exceed 2 eyelet or crimp terminals per stud connection for high current applications

Refer to: 4.5 Battery Systems

- Do not place electrical component attachments or ground nuts adjacent to vehicle fuel tanks or fuel lines
- Each individual third party load must have a dedicated ground connected directly to the vehicle body ground or to the battery negative spare stud - see 'Additional Loads and Charging Systems' later in this section of the BEMM
- Multiple grounds must not go to an interim splice to a main ground cable
- If additional ground studs are required it is recommended to install a busbar with multiple studs fed directly from the battery ground post. See 'Additional Loads and Charging Systems'

4.2.6 Prevention of Squeaks and Rattles

Wiring should be positively retained/supported every 150 to 250mm, with a maximum distance not to exceed 300mm. All connectors should be positively retained. Use tapes which do not squeak against metal or plastic.

4.2.7 Water Leakage Prevention

Make sure the harness design includes drip-loops to prevent water seepage into the vehicle interior when wiring passes from the outside to the inside of the vehicle. The drip-loop is a section of wiring deliberately formed to route below the point of entry into the vehicle. Water droplets on the harness will migrate under gravity to the lowest part of the harness.

Wiring from door to passenger compartment, should be made such that the door entry point is below the passenger compartment entry point, which creates a type of drip loop.

4.2.8 Wiring Splicing Procedures

TYCO-RAYCHEM crimp splices



Ford Motor Company strongly advises against the use of wire splicing due to the variable and unpredictable nature of the joint created. However, if it is decided that a wire splice is unavoidable, it must be made using **DuraSeal Heat-Shrinkable, Environmentally Sealed, Nylon-Insulated Crimp Splices** (manufactured by TYCO-RAYCHEM). For example the D406 series. As a further process to improve the splice integrity, the splice should be further sealed with a suitable heat shrink tubing. See Figure E131081.

4.2.9 Electromagnetic Compatibility (EMC) Awareness



WARNING: Do not route other wiring near/ close to electrical cables with the Anti-Lock Brake System and Traction Control System cables because of extraneous signal risk. It is generally not recommended to hang extra wiring from existing looms or pipes.

The installation and routing of Ford wiring has been fully-validated and has passed the requisite EMC tests. Ford Motor Company, however, are not responsible for the vehicle's EMC immunity when non-Ford-approved systems are installed.

Wiring must be suitably fixed without any detrimental effect on other wiring.

Single or bunched looms must maintain the following clearances:

- 10mm from static components (unless clamped to it)

- 250mm from exhaust system
 - 30mm from rotating or moving components
- [Refer to: 1.7 Electromagnetic Compatibility \(EMC\)](#)

4.2.10 Wiring Specification

Current Rating of Wire Sizes

ISO Conductor Size mm ² CSA	Conductor Resistance mOhm/m					
	Maximum			Minimum		
	Plain Copper	Tinned Plated Copper	Nickel Plated Copper	Plain Copper	Tinned Plated Copper	Nickel Plated Copper
0.13	136	140	142	-	-	-
0.22	84.8	86.5	87.9	-	-	-
0.35	54.4	55.5	56.8	-	-	-
0.5	37.1	38.2	38.6	-	-	-
0.75	24.7	25.4	25.7	22.7	23.3	23.6
1	18.5	19.1	19.3	17.0	17.6	17.7
1.5	12.7	13.0	13.2	11.7	11.9	12.1
2.0	9.42	9.69	9.82	8.66	8.91	9.03
2.5	7.60	7.82	7.92	6.99	7.19	7.28
3	6.15	6.36	6.41	5.66	5.85	5.89
4	4.71	4.85	4.91	4.33	4.46	4.52
5	3.94	4.02	4.11	3.62	3.70	3.78
6	3.14	3.23	3.27	2.89	2.97	3.01
8	2.38	2.52	2.60	2.19	2.32	2.39
10	1.82	1.85	1.90	1.68	1.70	1.75
12	1.52	1.60	1.66	1.40	1.47	1.53
16	1.16	1.18	1.21	1.07	1.09	1.12
20	0.955	0.999	1.03	0.870	0.919	0.948
25	0.743	0.757	0.774	0.688	0.701	0.716
30	0.647	0.684	0.706	0.595	0.629	0.650
35	0.527	0.538	0.549	0.489	0.500	0.510
40	0.473	0.500	0.516	0.435	0.460	0.475
50	0.368	0.375	0.383	0.343	0.350	0.357
60	0.315	0.333	0.344	0.290	0.306	0.316
70	0.259	0.264	0.270	0.243	0.248	0.254
95	0.196	0.200	0.204	0.185	0.189	0.193
120	0.153	0.159	0.159	0.146	0.149	0.152

When designing wire installations for additional equipment use the cable size recommended by the equipment manufacturer or select a suitable size from the 'Current Rating of Wire Sizes' table.

4.2.11 Wiring through Sheet Metal

WARNING: Harnesses passing through sheet metal must be through protective grommets that also ensure a watertight seal. A windscreens type sealer should be used. Adhesive or tape is not acceptable.

NOTE: Holes must permit the appropriate connector to pass through.

NOTE: The maximum size of additional wire bundle diameter is 6mm.

There are three locations in the dash panel which have been identified for additional holes to route wires through. See figure E145360 (view from engine bay) for locations. The number of suitable locations will depend on the vehicle specification.

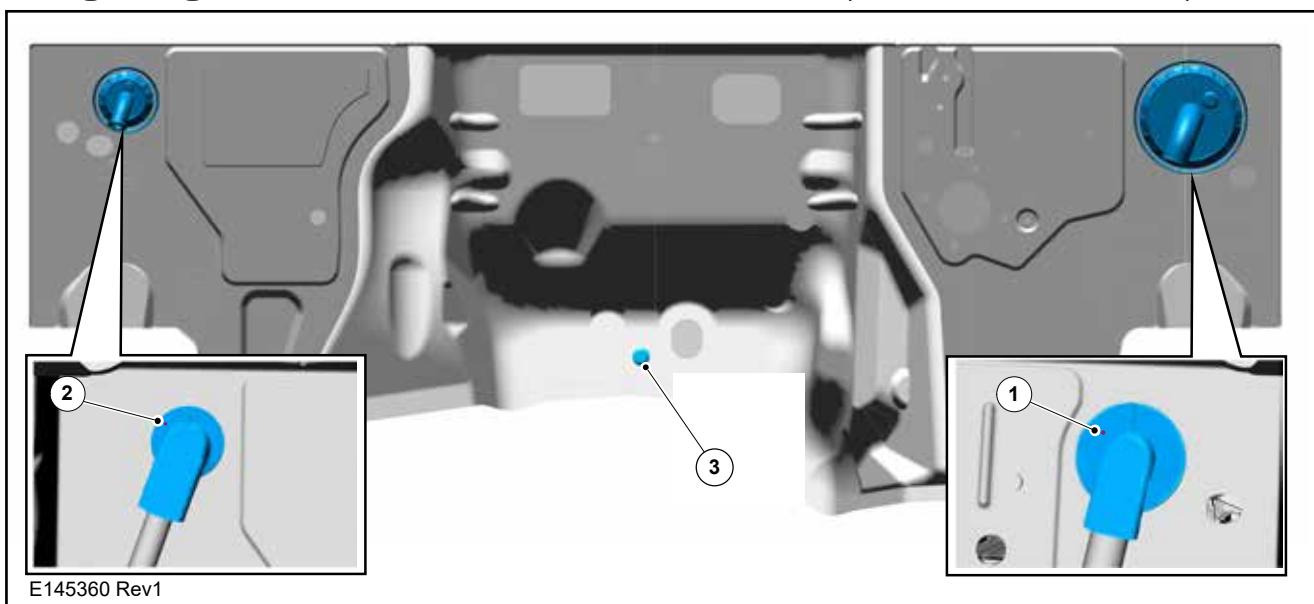
The grommets in locations 1 and 2, shown in figure E145360, are moulded directly to wire bundles in

polyurethane foam material. It is not possible to feed extra wires through with the wire bundle. The grommets have an 'indent' moulded into the surface face, engine bay side, which show the positions where an additional hole can be made using the following procedure:

- Check that the immediate surrounding area is free from obstructions and/or components to prevent damage to critical systems
- Use a suitable tool, for example: a drill or spike bit.
- Insert the drill or spike bit, horizontal and parallel, through the indent of the grommet, making sure not to extend further than 25mm through the grommet surface, this will help eliminate any possible damage to items on the passenger side of the grommet

Ford released hardware is available to support further installations to the vehicle. Only this hardware and released parts are to be used for this.

Wiring through Sheet Metal: Front Wheel Drive Dash Panel (Left Hand Drive Shown)



Item	Description
1	Dash Grommet Left Hand Side
2	Dash Grommet Right Hand Side
3	This location is available on Rear Wheel Drive vehicles and Front Wheel Drive without Tachograph

4.2.12 Precautionary Drill Zones - High Voltage (HV) Cables

WARNINGS:

- !** Do not touch, drill, modify or obscure the orange High Voltage cables, fasteners, channels, strain relief, ground wire or connectors
- !** Fasteners that upfitters install must point away from the battery so as to not to cause damage to the battery. Do not add a fastener into the vehicle that would point toward the HV Battery
- !** No components or structure installed by an upfitter shall result in contact, penetration (especially added fasteners pointed towards the high voltage battery or other electrical components), separation, or other damage to the high voltage electrical system or any portion thereof when the vehicle is tested in any manner.

! Do not modify the High Voltage Charge Port Inlet Connector/Mounting Bracket

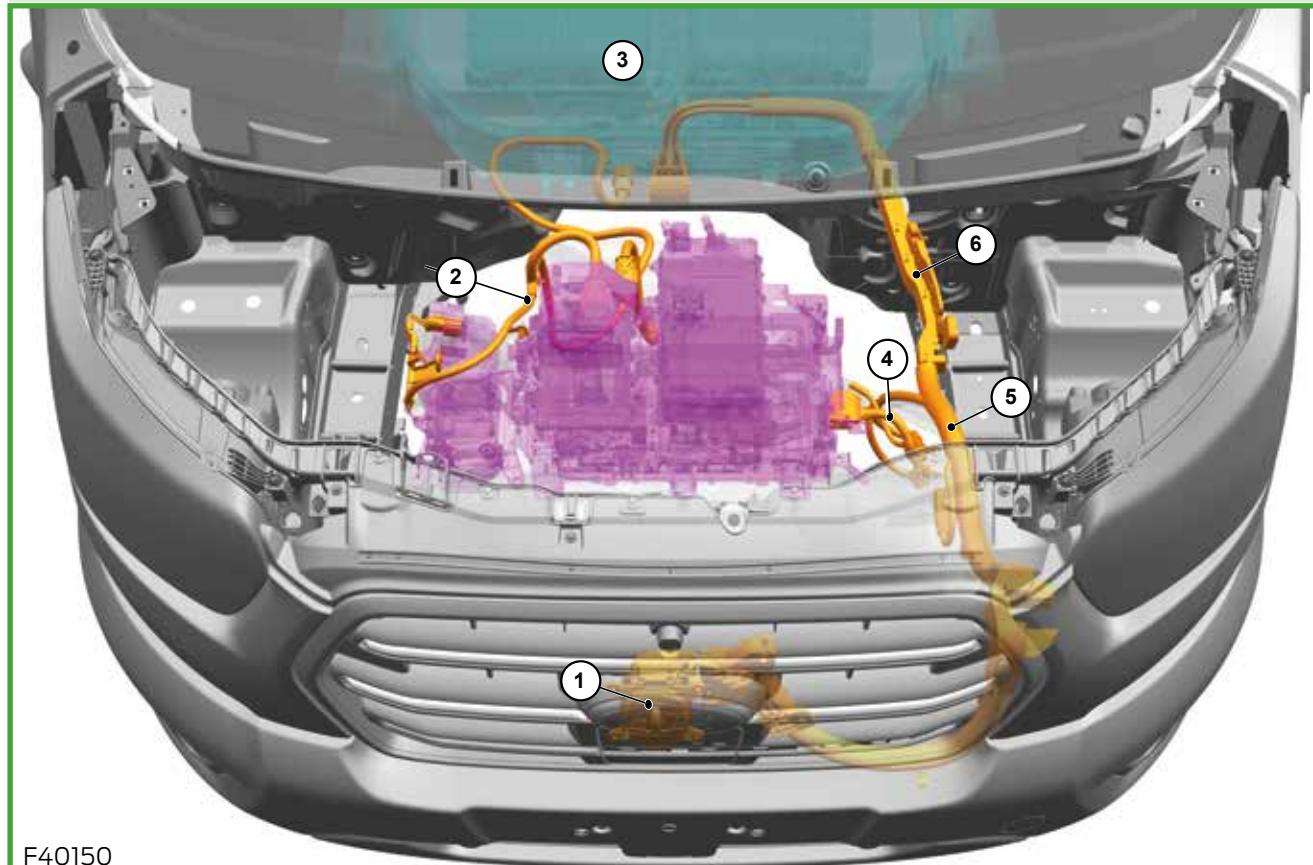
! Do not modify these High Voltage/Low Voltage grounding locations/joints/fasteners of the Charge Port Harness Package Grounds

! Do not modify the length of any of the orange high voltage cables

! Do not remove fasteners and protective shield from the Charge Port Inlet Harness

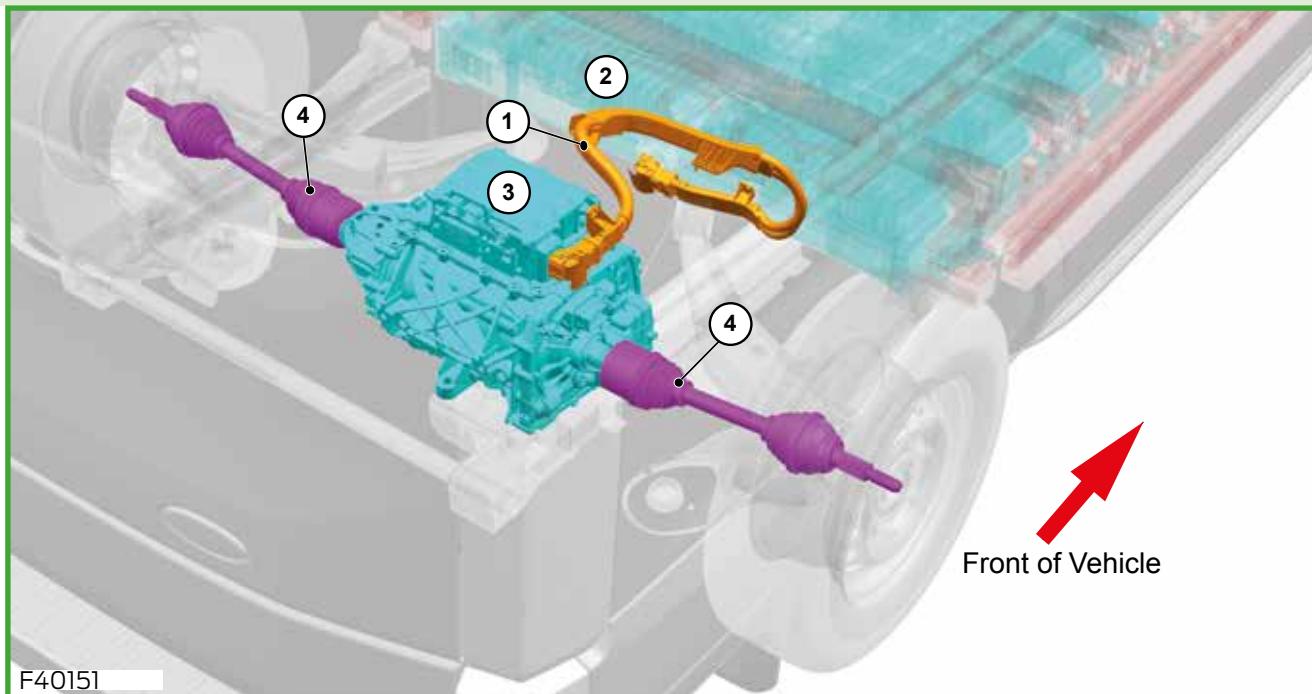
! CAUTION: Take precaution when undertaking drilling or any other operation in or near any HV cable to prevent damage.

Front End High Voltage Wiring Package



F40150

Item	Description
1	High Voltage Charge Port Inlet
2	Accessory Harness
3	High Voltage Battery Pack
4	Battery Charger Inline Jumper
5	Charge Port Harness
6	Charge Port Harness Protective Shield

Rear End HV Cable Package: 14B322


Item	Description
1	Electric Drive Assembly to High Voltage Battery Cable
2	High Voltage Battery Pack
3	Electric Drive Assembly
4	Halfshaft

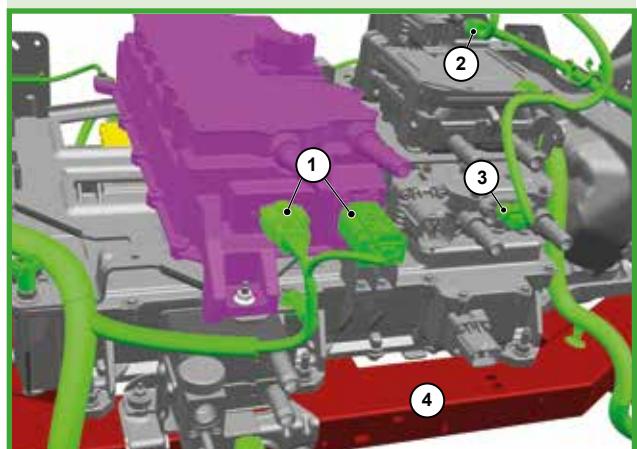
4.2.13 Precautionary Drill Zones - HV Modules LV Cables and Connectors

CAUTION: Beware when drilling or undertaking any operation near the LV cable that connects to the High Voltage modules, as this could negatively impact vehicle performance. The LV cable also includes a ground for HV components.

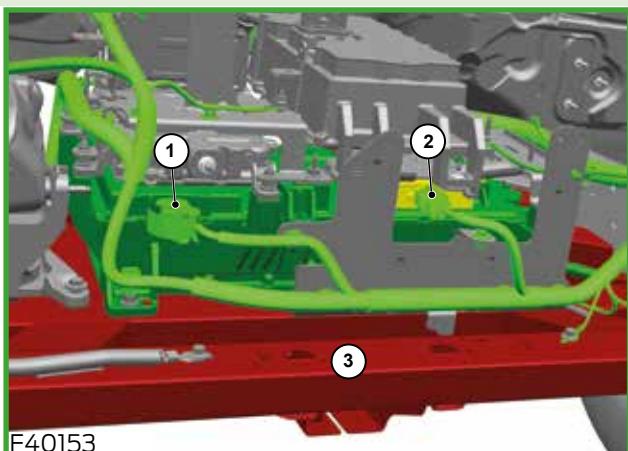
WARNINGS:

Take precautions when drilling or undertaking any other operation in the areas indicated ,in order to prevent damage to any components

Do not modify any existing Low Voltage Cable cable/connections

LV Connectors: Rear of HV Stack


Item	Description
1	LV Connector to OBGI
2	LV Connector to Electric Heater
3	LV Connector to DC-DC Convertor
4	Megabrace
5	Low voltage connector to auxillary chiller

LV Connectors: Front of HV Stack

F40153

Item	Description
1	LV Connector to Charger
2	LV Connector to OBCC
3	Megabrace

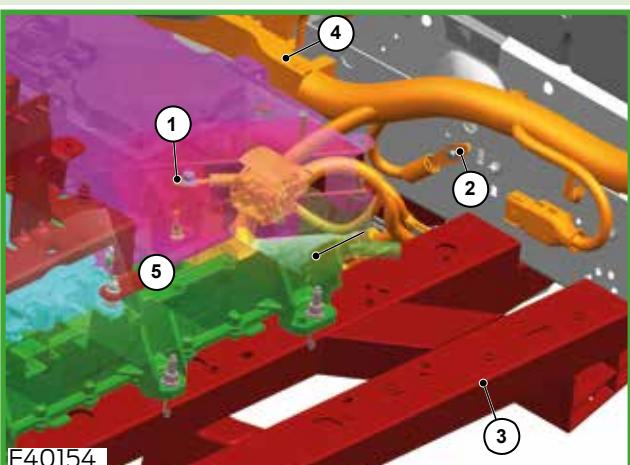
4.2.14 Precautionary Drill Zones - Cable Grounding**WARNINGS:**

 Take precautions when undertaking drilling, or any other operation, in or around the high voltage stack or electric drive assembly in order to prevent damage to any components. HV grounding points in the vehicle are not to be touched.

 Do not modify any High Voltage grounding locations, connectors or joints.

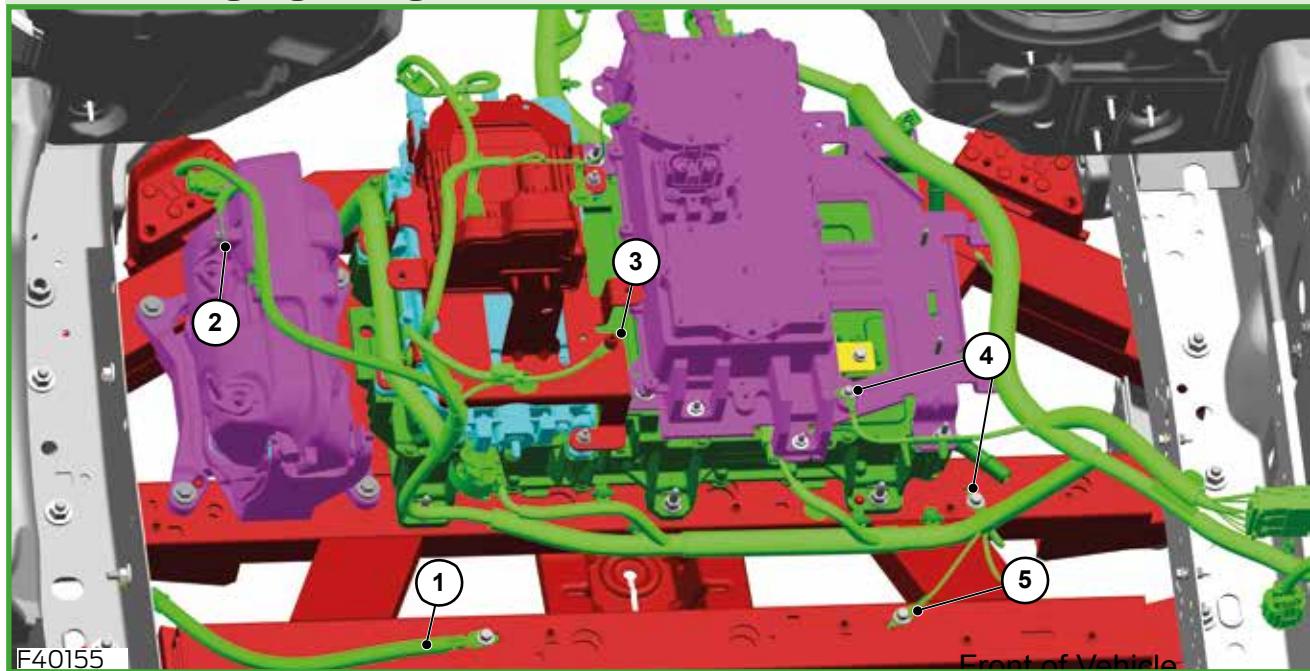
 On the E-Transit BEV, the High Voltage (HV) circuitry is not grounded to the body/chassis in the same way as the Low Voltage (12V) system. As part of the safety features built in to the HV system, measurements between the HV circuitry and vehicle ground are measured using these ground paths. Therefore, HV module ground paths must not be altered in any way.

 **WARNING: Do not modify these High Voltage/Low Voltage grounding locations/joints/fasteners of the Charge Port Harness Package Grounds**

Cable Grounding: Charge Port Harness

F40154

Item	Description
1	Harness Ground to Megabrace
2	Harness Ground to Chassis
3	Megabrace
4	Harness Protective Shield
5	High Voltage Stack

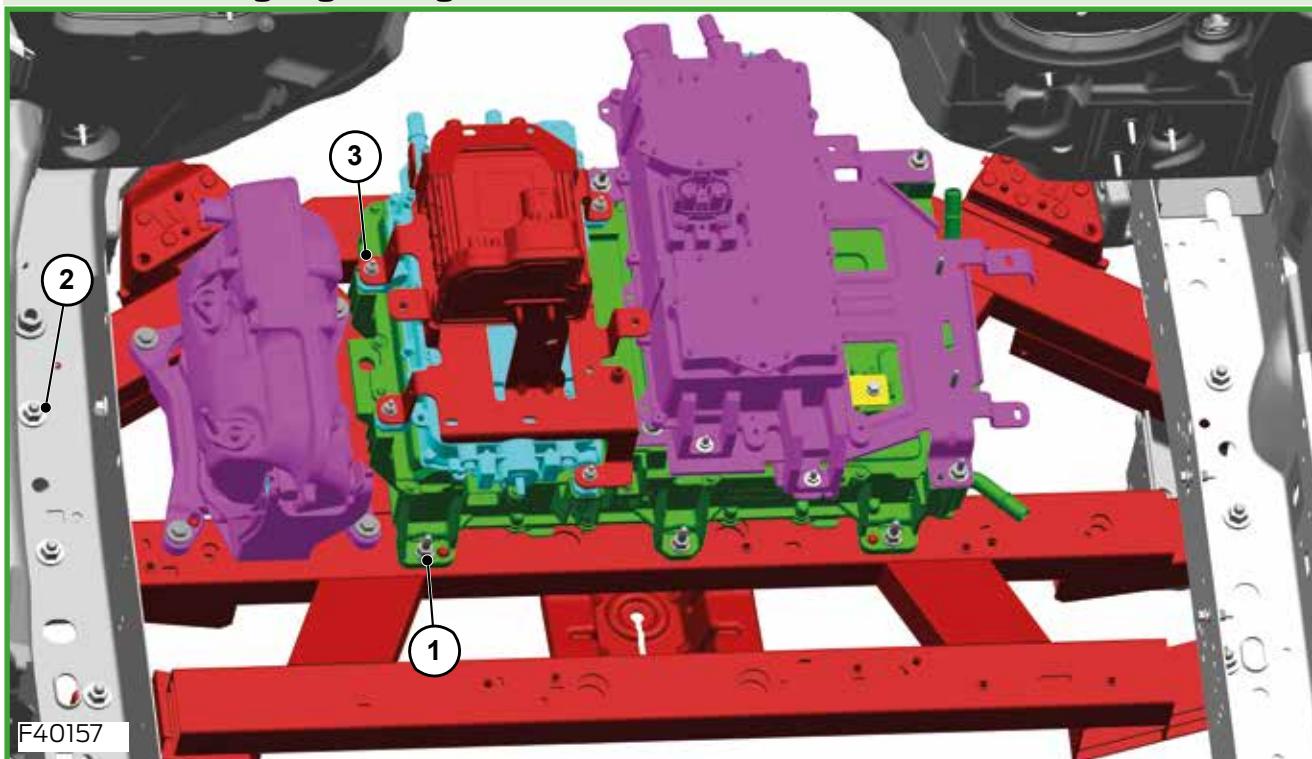
Cable Grounding: High Voltage Modules

Item	Description
1	Megabrace Ground Strap to Chassis
2	Electric A/C Compressor Grounding
3	HV Electric Heater Grounding
4	OBDI Ground Strap to Chassis
5	EDS Grounding to Megabrace for Electric A/C Compressor and HV Electric Heater

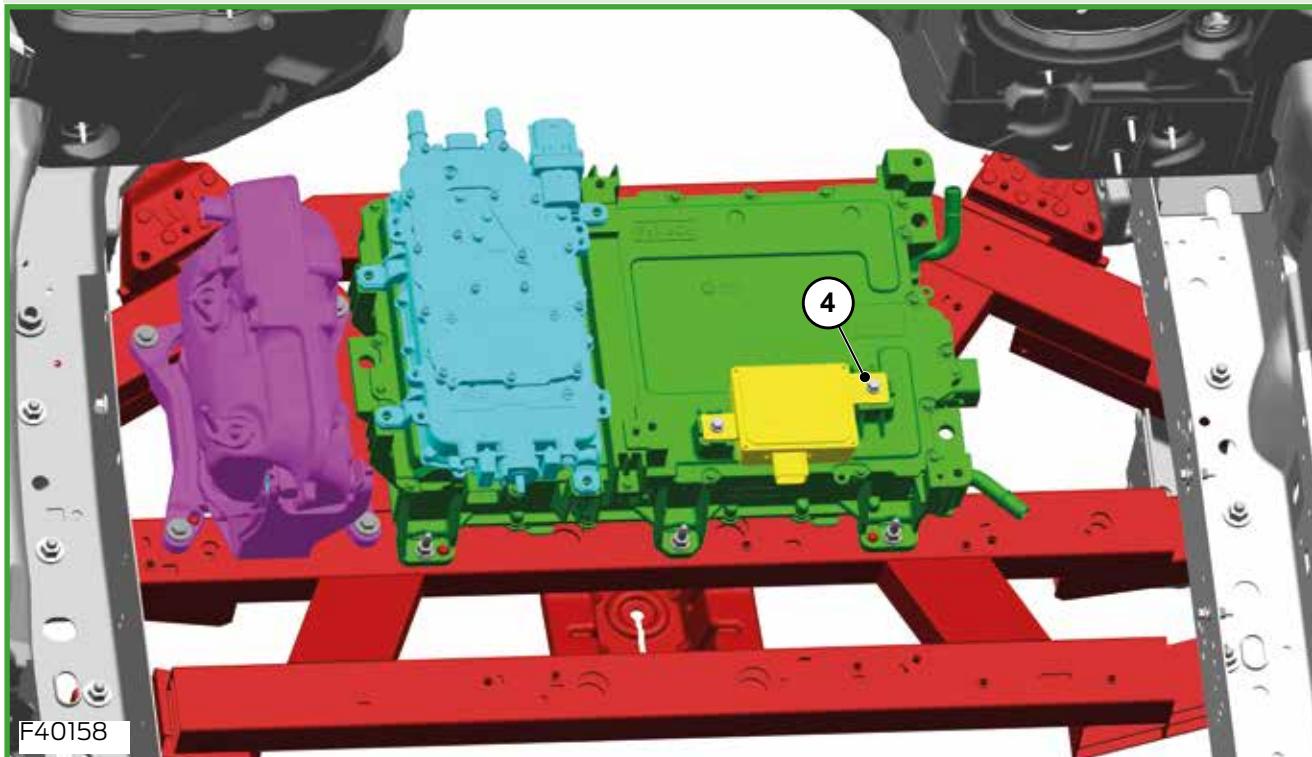
4.2.15 Precautionary Drill Zones - Chassis Grounding

WARNING: Do not modify locations/joints of the Electric Drive Assembly Ground Path from the Inverter System Controller to the Electric Drive Unit or Chassis Crossmember

Chassis Grounding: High Voltage Modules



Chassis Grounding: High Voltage Modules



Item	Description
1	High Voltage Charger to Megabrace - 6 Locations
2	Megabrace to Chassis - 6 Locations
3	DC-DC Convertor to HV Charger - 4 Locations
4	Off-Board Charger Control Module (OBCC) to HV Charger

4.2.16 Precautionary Drill Zones — Rear Cargo Area

! **CAUTION:** Do not drill into the vehicle before checking the precautionary drill zones and electrical wire routing.

NOTE: Refer also to [5.12.2 B Pillar No Drill Zone](#) for details of the restrictions in the area around the Seat Belt installation.

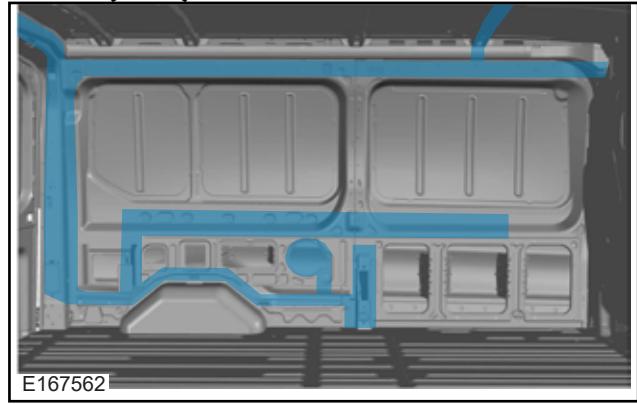
For vehicle wheelbase and roof height [Refer to: 1.14 Package and Ergonomics](#)

The areas marked in blue on figures E167561 - E167565 show the Precautionary Drill Zones for the rear cargo area where there is wire routing and is to be avoided, (for example: when installing cladding and racking). The same care should also be taken when using self-tapping screws. Not all derivatives are shown but the routing is the same for roof line and wheelbase with regards to 'B', 'C' and 'D' pillars or roof bows and doors. Other non-electrical systems may also be present, for example: fuel tank under floor so it is important to check before drilling. For additional information refer to the following links.

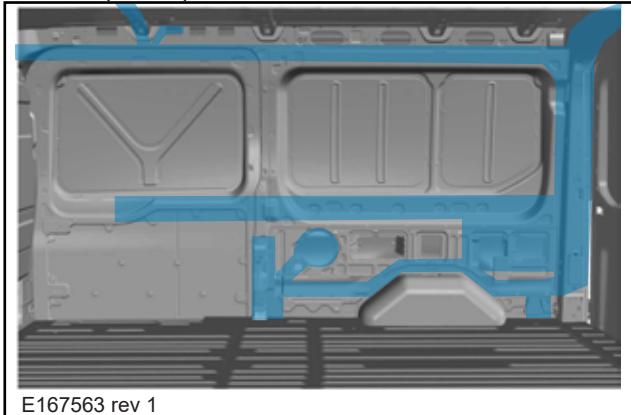
L2/H2 — Rear Cargo Doors



L3/H2 (LHS)



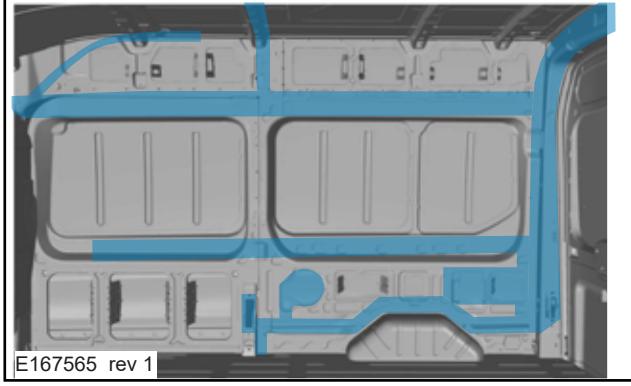
L3/H2 (RHS)



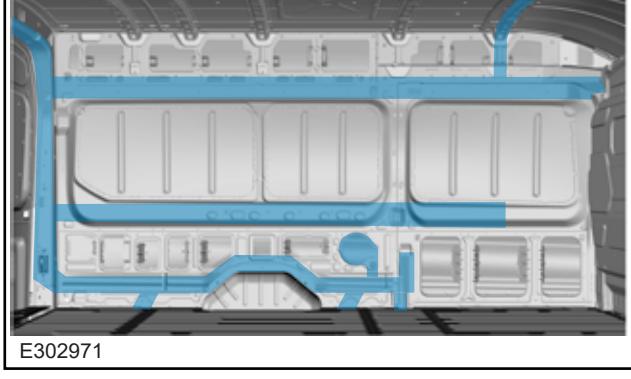
L3/H3 (LHS)



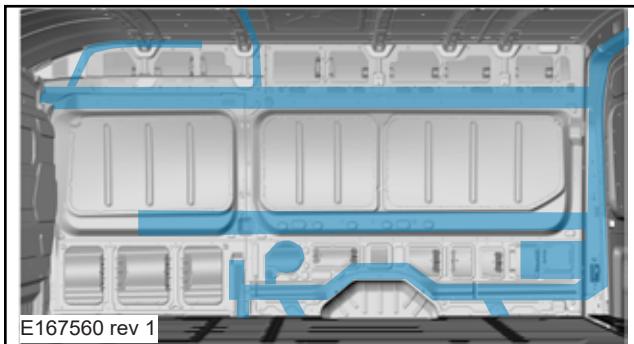
L3/H3 (RHS)



L4/H3 (LHS)



L4/H3 (RHS)



[Refer to: 5.1 Body Precautionary Drill Zones](#)
[Refer to: 5.4 Loadspace Load Compartment Tie Downs](#)
[Refer to: 5.3 Racking Systems](#)
[Refer to: 5.6 Body Closures No Drill Zones – Closures](#)

4.2.17 Trailer Tow Electric Wiring Kit (C1DAD)

NOTE: Fix over length of the wiring on a secure area of the vehicle.

NOTE: The 12V socket bracket can stay in its original position when the socket is mounted in a different location.

Figure E236337 shows the routing for the Trailer Tow Electric Wiring Kit (C1DAD) without a tow bar and the recommended wiring routing and wiring clip positions if a tow bar will be retrofitted.

4.2.18 Electrics for Tow Bar

NOTE: The Ford trailer tow system is integrated with the Ford park aid system. When a trailer is connected, the system communicates on CAN only, to deactivate reverse park aid feature, there is no hardwired interface. It is not possible to turn off reverse park aid with an aftermarket trailer tow system.

NOTE: For Van tow bars it is necessary to connect into the rear lamp unit.

NOTE: If tow bar connectors are not used, appropriate fixing and cover must be applied for protection from water and contaminant ingress.

NOTE: The trailer detect circuit is part of the Ford Trailer Tow module, it can only be implemented on vehicles with power locking and perimeter or CAT 1 alarms.

Tow bar electrical system may be ordered as a 13-pin DIN connector, as part of the original vehicle build. Where it is required to add trailer towing to an existing vehicle, and to ensure compliance with lighting regulations, the appropriate wiring accessory kit can be obtained from your Ford Dealer. Fitment of non-Ford trailer tow wiring is not advisable due to Body Control Module control of lighting, and meeting legal lighting regulations. Contact your local Ford dealer for details of a harness that connects to the base vehicle harness.

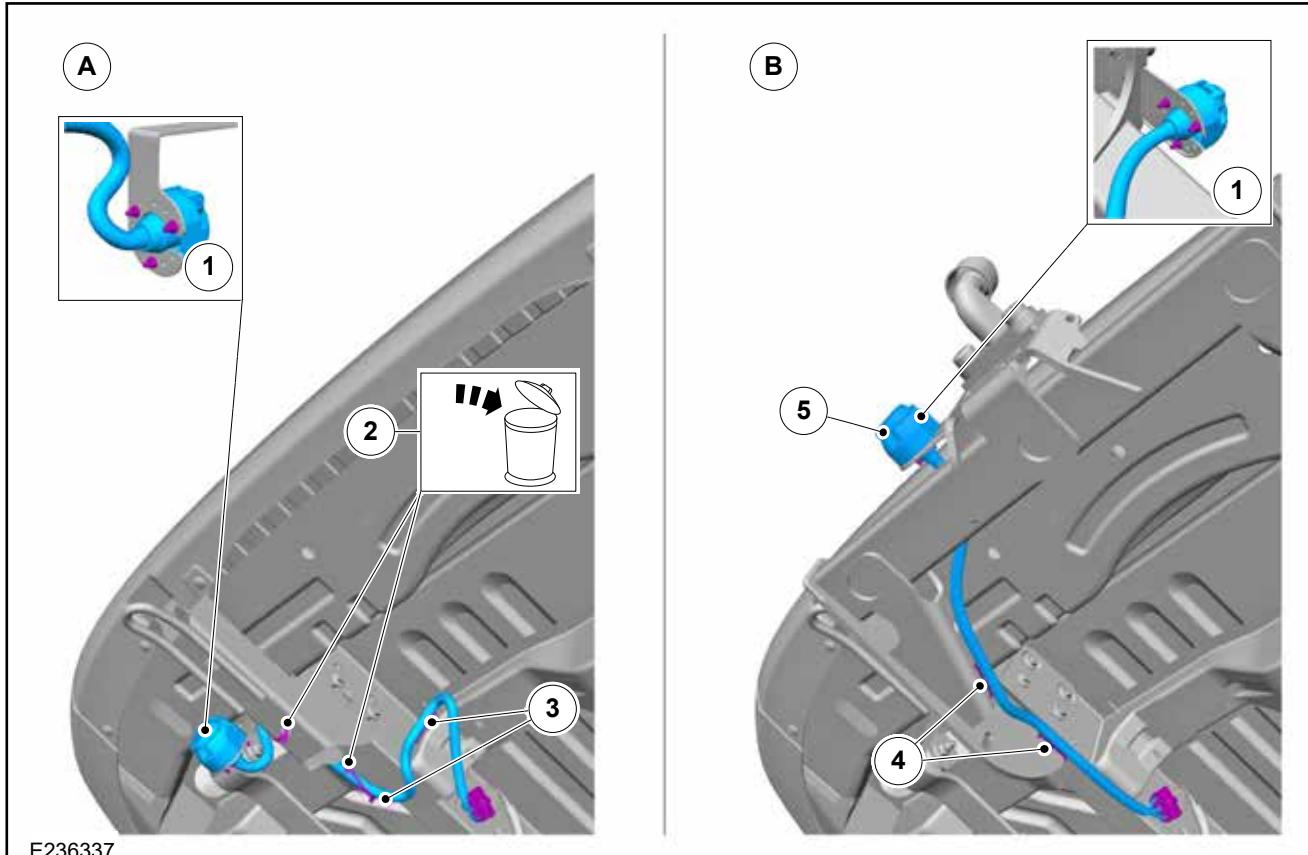
Each output driver could handle a current of 15A but it is not recommended to always run to this maximum. A higher current is interpreted as short circuit. If a short circuit is detected the related output will be switched off. Trailer Tow Module Connector tables show the recommended output maximums per circuit further in this section.

The TTM offers a battery charge output. This output is used for loading a trailer battery with a maximum parameter current of 10A. If the current exceeds 10A the output is switched off until the current drain goes below 10A. The voltage used to charge this battery is designed to maintain current charge up to 10A but not fully charge the battery or let it discharge. This voltage is approximately 13.5V. Full charge strategy should be performed separately.

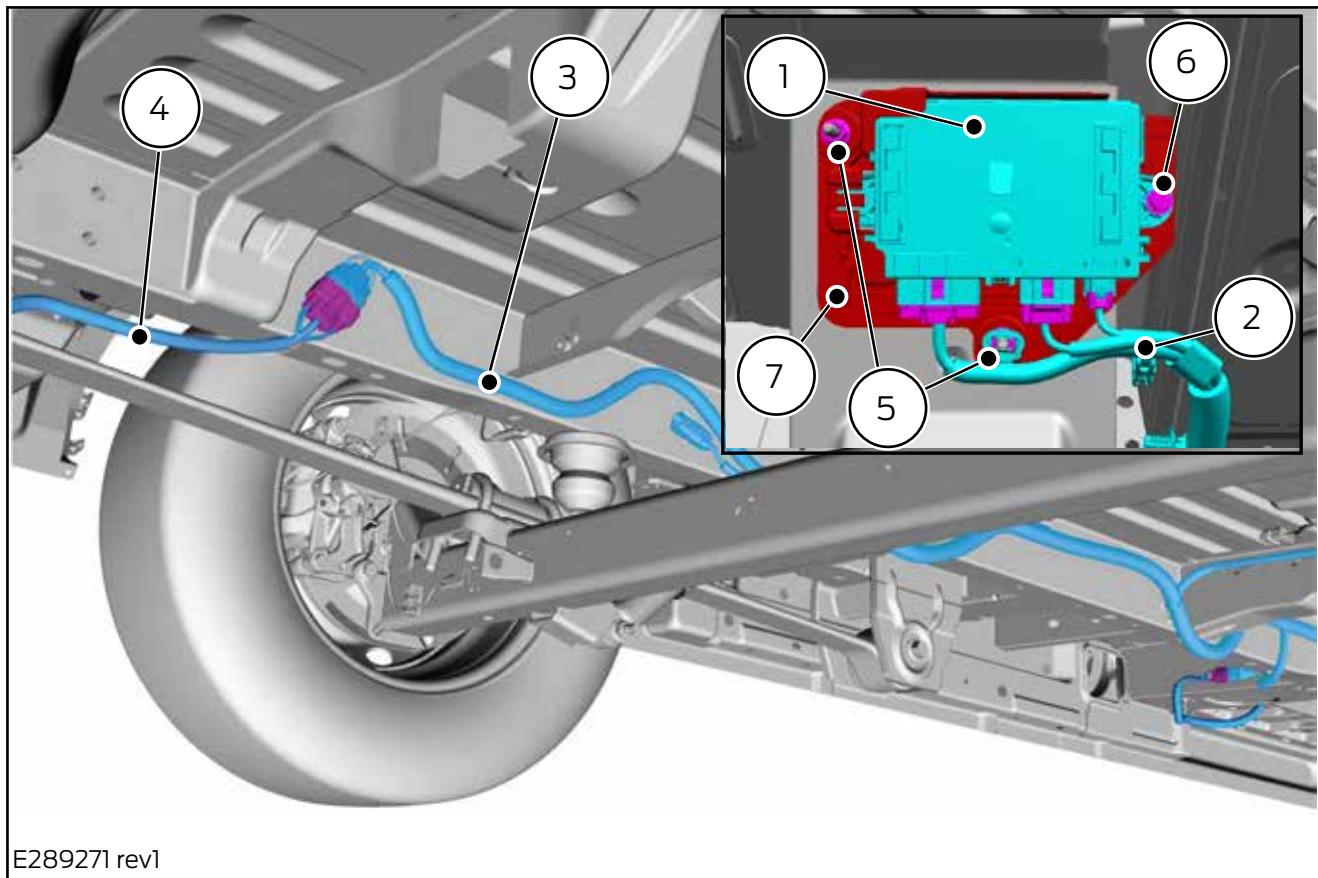
The maximum total current is 30A of all circuits. If this is exceeded the battery charge output is switched off.

Summary:

- Max permanent current: 10A
- Switch on condition:
 - Power Mode > = Accessory_1
 - Total power consumption (all lamps + battery charge) < 30A
 - Permanent battery charge output current < = 10A
 - 9V < TTM power supply voltage < 16V
- Short circuit detection: 30A

Trailer Tow Electric Wiring Kit (C1DAD)

Item	Description
A	Trailer Tow Electric Wiring Kit without a Tow Bar
B	Rerouted Trailer Tow Electric Wiring Kit with a Tow Bar Retrofitted
1	3x Screw for 12V Socket
2	Cable Ties 2x
3	Wiring clips 2x
4	Recommended Wiring Clip Position 2x
5	Recommended 12V Socket Position

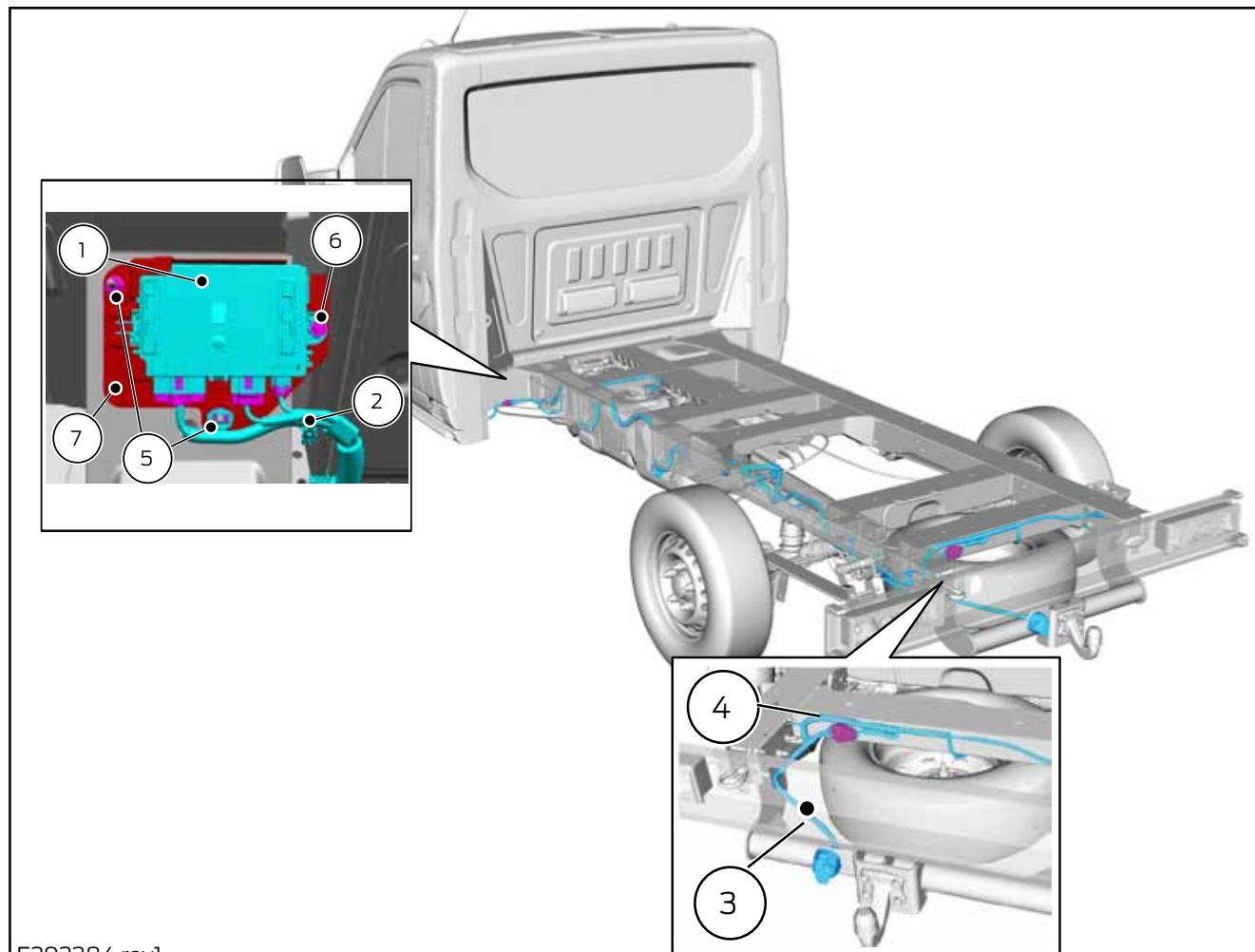
Trailer Tow Module and Harnesses - Van, Bus and Kombi Vehicles


E289271 rev1

Item	Description	Part Number
1	Trailer Tow Module	PZ3T-19H517-AK
2	Trailer Tow Socket Jumper - Europe	RK3T-13B576-**
	Trailer Tow Socket Jumper - Australia and New Zealand	AMBK3J-15A416-A*
3	Underbody Harness	RK3T-14406-**
4	Main Harness	RK3T-90A000-**
5	Screws (x2)	W706131
6	Bolt	W506854
7	Trailer Tow Module Bracket	RK3T-19H271-A*

Trailer Tow Module is located in lower B Pillar area in the inner surface

Trailer Tow Module and Harnesses - Chassis Cab Vehicles



E292384 rev1

Item	Description	Part Number
1	Trailer Tow Module	PZ3T-19H517-AK
2	Trailer Tow Socket Jumper	RK3T-13B576-**
3	Underbody Harness	RK3T-14406-**
4	Main Harness	RK3T-90A000-**
5	Screws (x5)	W720357
6	Bolt	W506854
7	Trailer Tow Module Bracket	RK3T-19H271-A*

4.2.19 Trailer Tow Connectivity

If trailer tow system is to be added, the correct wiring and module needs to be ordered. For the correct vehicle configuration, please contact your National Sales Company representative or local Ford dealer. If they are unable to help you then contact FPSV Technical Support at FPSVHelp@ford.com

NOTE: It is mandatory that a trailer is detected. Therefore at least one of the following lamps have to be connected in the **on mode** or in the **standby mode** (anti-theft mode): Stop right, Stop left, Position Lamps or Direction Indicator left.

If a trailer is detected the trailer detection hardware output (JP3-pin 5) is set low (open drain). If a short circuit is detected or an overheating of the drivers occurs, the related output remains off until an ignition

cycle is performed and the engine is restarted. The trailer detection uses a strategy of having a 1K ohm resistor if the lights are not actually switched on to detect that the trailer has been connected. If a trailer light is already switched on the related current will be checked.

The Trailer Tow Module **does not** support the incremental load of powering side marker lamps on a trailer, if these are required they should also be driven using separate relays.

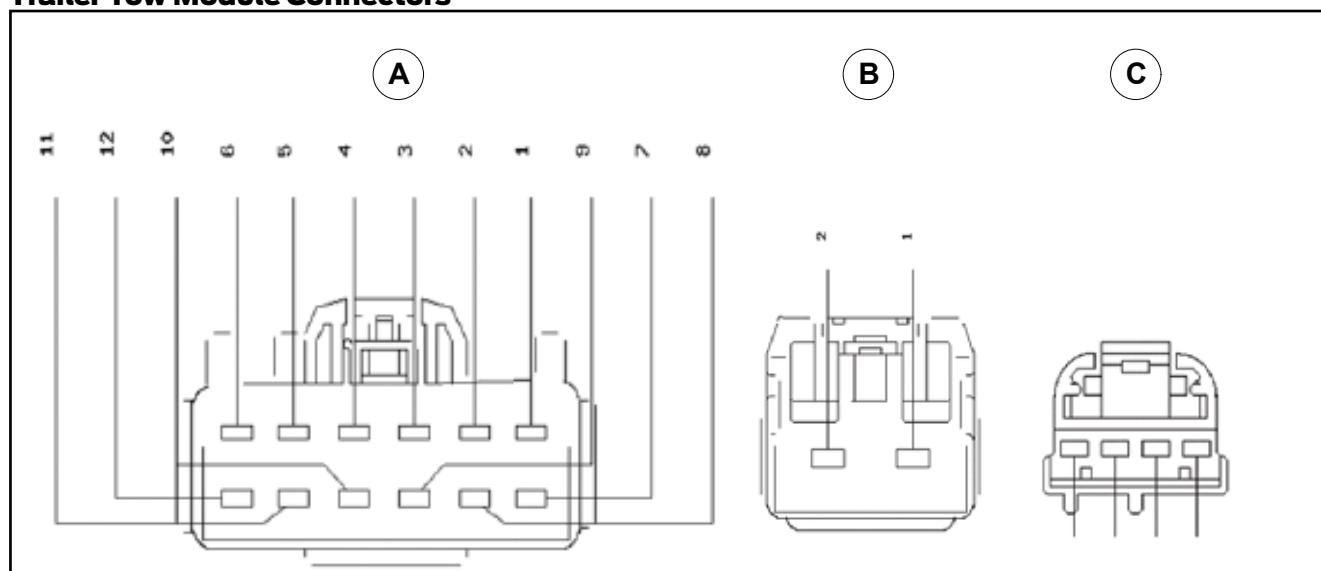
Trailer Tow features are enabled via the Ford Diagnostic Repair System (FDRS). There may be a dealer charge for this service.

FDRS access can be purchased from Ford Service Info <https://www.fordserviceinfo.com/Home/SetCountry?returnUrl=%2F>

Trailer Tow Module Connectors (Figure E185972)

Component Terminal Number	Feature	Current (A)		Voltage (V)	
		Min	Max	Min	Max
Connector A					
1	Left Turn Lamp	1.13	1.89	8	19.0
2	Right Turn Lamp	1.13	1.89	8	19.0
3	Position Lamp	3.62	6.03	8	19.0
4	-	-	-	-	-
5	Reversing Lamp	2.26	3.78	8	19.0
6	Battery Charge	15.0	15	8	16.0
7	Stop Lamp	4.54	7.57	8	19.0
8	Rear Fog Lamp	2.26	3.78	8	19.0
9	Trailer Tow Connect Signal	0.002	0.002	5	5
10	LIN BUS	0.04	0.04	8	16
11	-	-	-	-	-
12	Battery Charge	15.0	15	8	16.0
Connector B					
1	KL30	0.5	25.1	8	19
2	Battery Charge Feed KL30	0	30	8	16
Connector C					
1	Ground	0.5	0.5	0	0
2	HS 3 CAN Low	0.1	0.1	8	8
3	HS 3 CAN High	0.1	0.1	8	8
4	Trailer Tow Anti-Theft	0.013	0.013	8	19

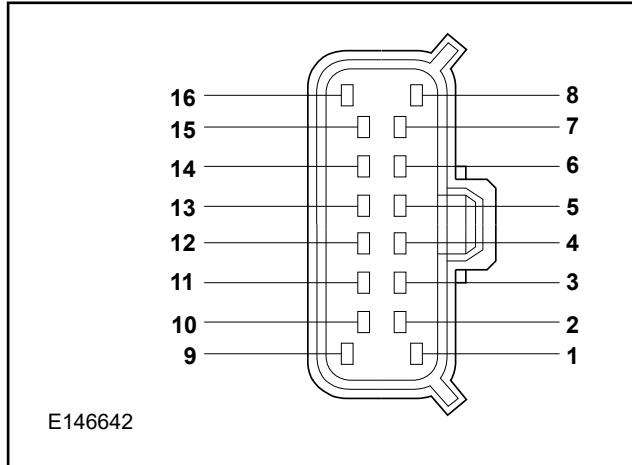
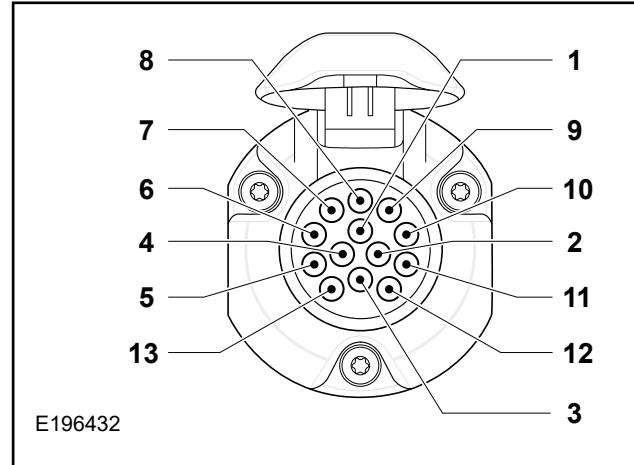
The electrical system on the vehicle is suitable for towing trailer with LED lights.

Trailer Tow Module Connectors


Trailer Tow Connectivity 13 Pin Socket

14406 Trailer Tow Connector		13 Pin Trailer Tow Connector	
Pin	Colour	Pin	Description
3	Yellow	1	Left Turn Lamp
5	Grey/Orange	2	Fog
1	Black/Violet	3	Lamp Ground
6	Green	4	Right Turn Lamp
13	Brown	5	Right Position Lamp
12	Red	6	Stop Lamps
14	Brown	7	Left Position Lamp License Lamp
11	Grey/Brown	8	Reversing Lamp
9	Blue/Red	9	KL30 Power
10	Grey/Yellow	10	KL15 Ignition
8	Black/Violet	11	Ignition Ground KL15
16	Black/Violet	13	Power Ground

Any pins not listed in the table above are not to be used.

Trailer Tow 14406 Interface Connector

Trailer Tow 13 Pin Socket


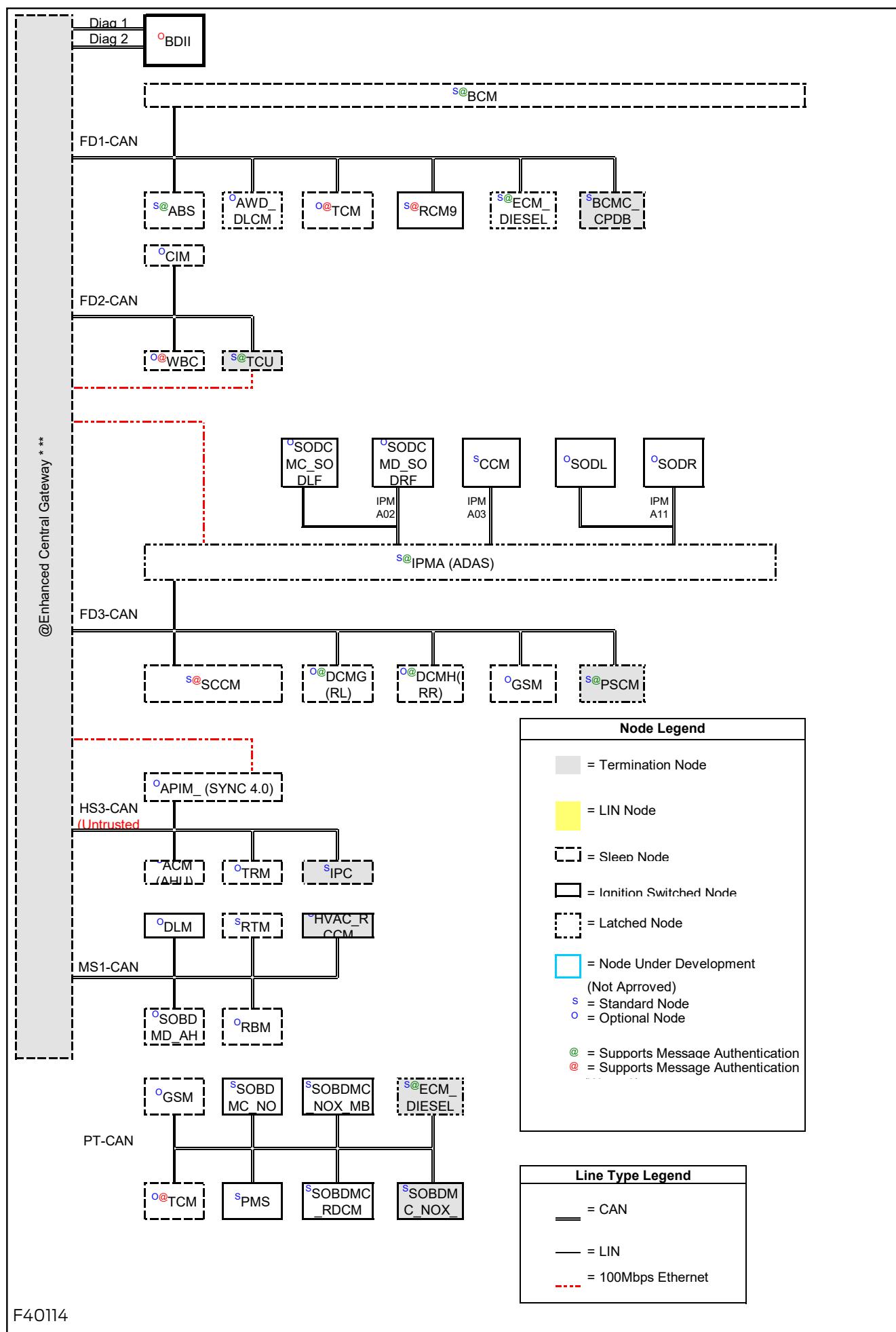
4.3 Communications Network

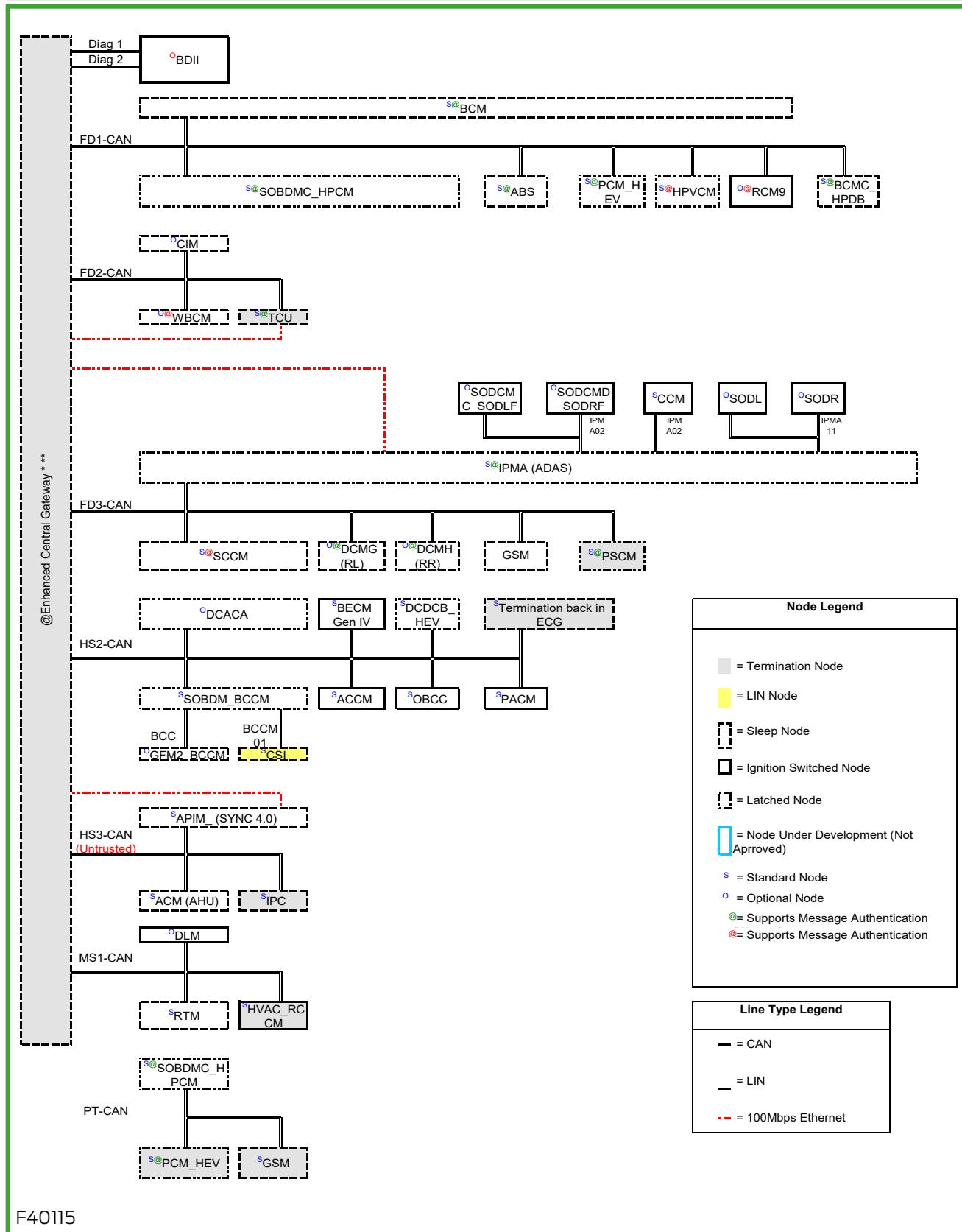
Electrical Architecture has been updated with 24.75 MY

4.3.1 CAN-Bus System Description and Interface

 **WARNING: Do not tamper with, cut into or connect to any of the CAN-Bus interface wiring or connectors. The addition of unapproved CAN-Based modules could impact the safe operation of the vehicle.**

CAN, Controller Area Network, uses propriety message sets to communicate between the devices shown, via Medium Speed (MS), High Speed (HS), Private and Public Buses. In addition, there is localised application of Local Interconnect Network (LIN) and ISO 9141 K-line serial links.

CAN-Bus System, SYNC 4 (12" touch screen)


CAN-Bus System, eTransit BEV


Communication Network System (F40114 and F40115 references)

Item	Description
FD1-CAN	FD1-CAN Flexible data 1
FD2-CAN	FD2-CAN Flexible data 2
FD3-CAN	FD3-CAN Flexible data3
HS3-CAN	HS3-CAN High speed 3
MS1-CAN	MS1-CAN Medium speed 1
PT-CAN	PT-CAN Private CAN gearshift module
ABS	Anti-Lock Brake System Control Module
ACCM	Air Conditioning Control Module
ACM	Audio Control Module
APIM	Auxiliary Protocol Interface Module
AWD_DLCM	All Wheel Drive_Drive Line Control Module
BCM	Body Control Module
BCMC HPDB	CAN PDB Power Distribution Box
BECM	Battery Energy Control Module
CCM	Cruise Control Module (Adaptive Cruise)
CIM	Upfitter (Control) Interface Module
CSI	Charge Status Indicator
DCACA	DC to AC converter
DCMG RL	Door Control Module G Rear Left
DCMG RR	Door Control Module G Rear Right
DLM	Driver Lockout Module
ECG	Enhanced Central Gateway
ECM_DIESEL	Engine Control Module_Diesel
GFM2_BCCM	Battery Charger Control Module
GSM	Gear Shift Module

Item	Description
HPVCM	Heat Pump Valve Control Module
HVAC -RCCM	Heating Ventilation Air Cconditioning (Remote Climate Control Module)
IPC	Instrument Panel Cluster
IPMA	Image Processing Module A (Lane Departure System Camera)
OBCC	Off Board Charge Controller
OBDII	On Board Diagnostics
PACM	Pedestrian Alert Control Module
PCM	Powertrain Control Module
PMS	Particulate Matter Sensor
PSCM	Power Steering Control Module
RBM	Running Barod Moduel
RCM	Restraints Control Module
RTM	Radio Transceiver Module
SCCM	Steering Column Control Module
SOBD	Sec. OBD Control Module
SODCMC SODLF	Side Obstacle Detection Control Module left front
SODL	Side Obstacle Detection Control Module Left
SODR	Side Obstacle Detection Control Module Right
TCM	Transmission Control Module
TCU	Telematics Control Unit
TRM	Trailer Module (Trailer Tow)
WBCM	Wireless Belt Minder

4.3.2 Body Control Module (BCM)

WARNINGS:

 **Unapproved and/or incorrect connection to any of the mating wiring can cause either the associated systems to shut down (overload protection), or permanent damage to the BCM itself.**

 **Vehicle BCM configuration must NOT be modified once the vehicle has left a Ford production plant, except for any changes that may be carried out using dealership integrated diagnostic systems equipment.**

The BCM is the prime control module in the vehicle's electrical architecture. It is responsible for management of most of the vehicle's lighting, locking and security systems.

BCM Location - Left Hand Drive

BCM Location - Right Hand Drive**BCM - as viewed in-car position**

BCM Output Information

Function	Component	Load Type	Max. Load	Overload Condition
Low Beam Left	High Side PWM or DC for HID Relay	Bulb/HID (via Relay)	55W	Output Shutdown ⁽¹⁾
Low Beam Right	High Side PWM or DC for HID Relay	Bulb/HID (via Relay)	55W	Output Shutdown ⁽¹⁾
High Beam Left	High Side PWM or DC for HID Main Beam Shutter	Bulb/ HID Shutter	55W	Output Shutdown
High Beam Right	High Side PWM or DC for HID Main Beam Shutter	Bulb/ HID Shutter	55W	Output Shutdown
Daytime Running Light Left	High Side PWM (configurable for Smart LED DRL/ Position Light)	Bulb/Smart LED	30W	Output Shutdown
Daytime Running Light Right	High Side PWM (configurable for Smart LED DRL/ Position Light)	Bulb/Smart LED	30W	Output Shutdown
Position Light Left Front	High Side PWM	Bulb	10W	Output Shutdown
Position Light Left Rear	High Side PWM	Bulb	6W	Output Shutdown
Position Light Right Front	High Side PWM	Bulb	10W	Output Shutdown
Position Light Right Rear	High Side PWM	Bulb	6W	Output Shutdown
Front Fog Light Left	High Side PWM	Bulb	35W	Output Shutdown
Front Fog Light Right	High Side PWM	Bulb	35W	Output Shutdown
Turn Indicators Left Front	High Side PWM	Bulb	27W	Output Shutdown
Turn Indicators Left Rear	High Side PWM	Bulb	27W	Output Shutdown
Turn Indicators Right Front	High Side PWM	Bulb	27W	Output Shutdown
Turn Indicators Right Rear	High Side PWM	Bulb	27W	Output Shutdown
Number Plate (& Marker Lights)	High Side PWM	Bulb/LED	25W	Output Shutdown
Reversing Lights	High Side DC	Bulb + Micro Relay	42W + 250mA	Output Shutdown
Rear Fog Lights	High Side PWM	Bulb	2 x 21W	Output Shutdown
Stop Light Left	High Side PWM	Bulb	2 x 21W	Output Shutdown
Stop Light Right	High Side PWM	Bulb	2 x 21W	Output Shutdown
Centre High Mounted Stop Light	High Side PWM	LED	1 x 16W or LED string	Output Shutdown
Switch Illumination	High Side PWM	LED	1.5A at 16V	Output Shutdown
Battery Saver Control	High Side Driver	Bulb	75W	Output Shutdown
Front Cabin Lights Courtesy	High Side PWM	Bulb or LED	65W	Output Shutdown
Rear Cabin Lights Courtesy	High Side PWM	Bulb or LED	65W	Output Shutdown
Vehicle Horn	High Side Relay Driver	Micro Relay	250mA	Output Shutdown
Alarm Siren	High Side Driver	Electro Mechanical Sounder	4A nominal, 8A for 10ms in-rush	Output Shutdown
Lock/Double Lock Outputs	Bi-directional Driver	Latch Motor (x 5 max)	6A per latch, 110ms Pulsed	Output Shutdown
Unlock Outputs	Bi-directional Driver	Latch Motor (x 5 max)	6A per latch, 110ms Pulsed	Output Shutdown

PWM = Pulse Width Modulation / DRL = Daytime Running Lights / HID = High Intensity Discharge

Repeated overloading of circuits can result in output lock-out requiring dealer reset. Repeated dealer resets can result in permanent loss of a function.

⁽¹⁾ BCM does NOT support HID directly Driven. HID MUST use relays.

4.4 LV Charging System (12 V)

WARNING: Do not cut into the alternator wires.

NOTE: Alternator systems use Smart Regenerative Charging (SRC), please refer to this section.

NOTE: The alternator is LIN controlled. It does not have a conventional D+ (engine start) signal line.

NOTE: For further information please contact your National Sales Company representative or Local Ford Dealer. If they are unable to help you then please contact FPSV Technical Support at FPSVHelp@ford.com

4.4.1 General Information

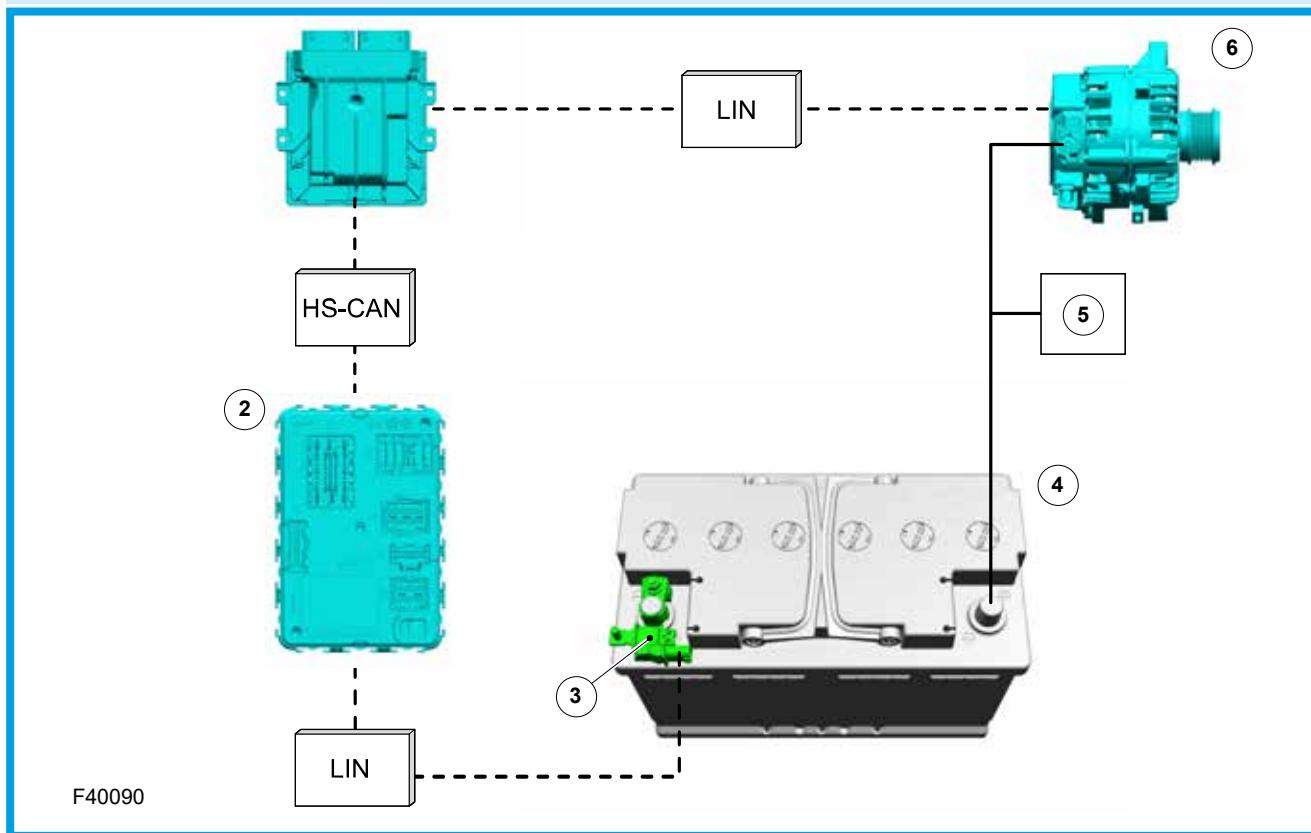
The battery capacity, technology and charge available from the alternator must be adequate to ensure engine cranking in unfavourable climatic conditions, even after fitment of additional electrical equipment.

Additional connection points are provided, specifically for customer use and are located on the outside of the driver's seat pedestal. A 60A fused connection is provided as standard on single battery vehicles. An additional 175A switched connection is provided for twin battery vehicles. Other options are possible for higher current applications,

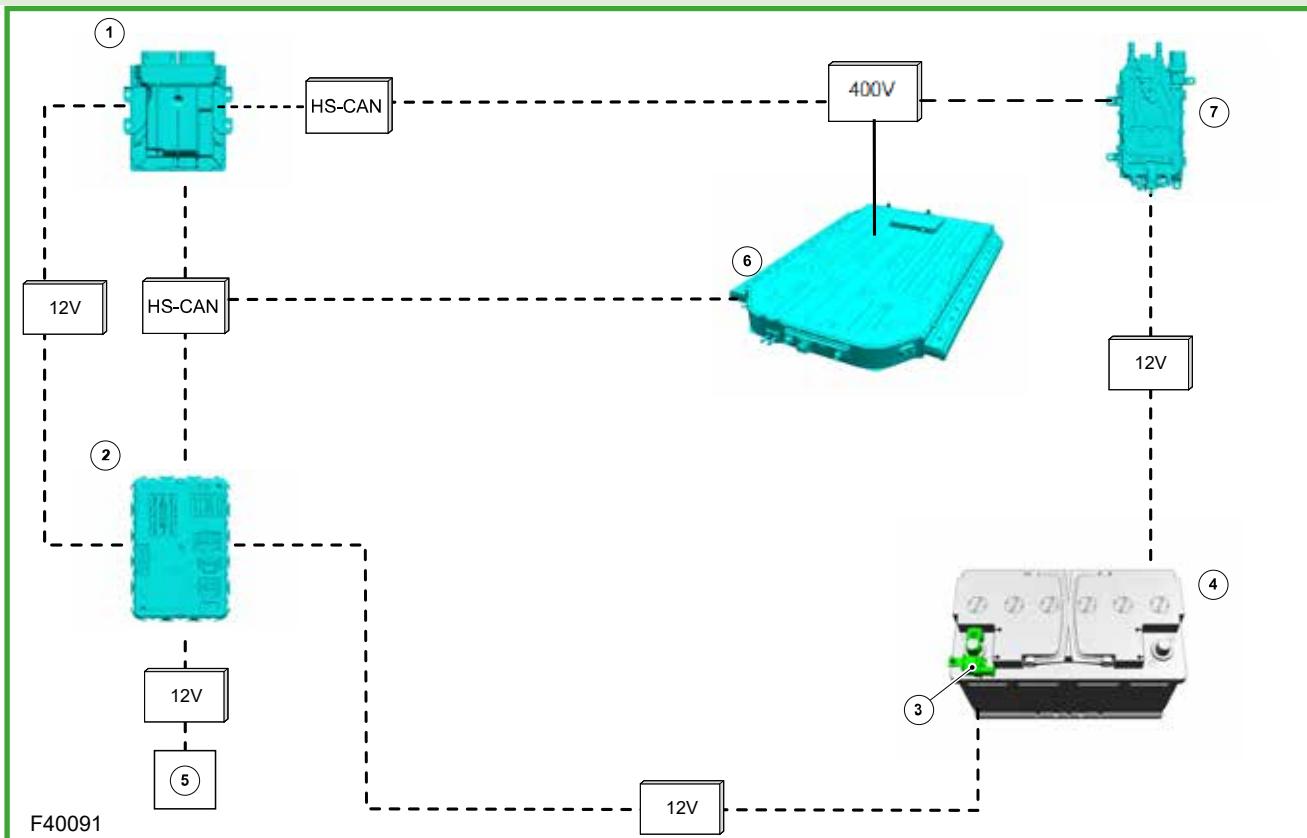
Refer to: 4.5 Battery Systems

4.4.2 LV Charging System Layout

Alternator-Based LV Charging System Diagram



Item	Description
1	Power Control Module (PCM) or Engine Control Module (ECM)
2	Body Control Module (BCM)
3	Battery Monitoring Sensor (BMS)
4	Battery — Twin batteries are available as an upgrade or driven by specific features
5	Electrical Consumers
6	Alternator

BEV LV Charging System Diagram


Item	Description	Item	Description
1	Power Control Module (PCM) or Engine Control Module (ECM)	5	Electrical Consumers
2	Body Control Module (BCM)	6	High Voltage Battery
3	Battery Monitoring Sensor (BMS)	7	DC-DC Convertor
4	Battery		

Summary of the Available Charging Modes

Charge Mode		Approximate Charging Voltages (Measured at Jump-Start post)
	Float mode/ Key on / On-plug charging	Minimum 12.2 - Maximum 14.9
SRC	Smart Regenerative Charging - normal charge mode.	Minimum 12.2 - Maximum 14.9
CC	Conventional Charging - applies a strong charging voltage until the battery is full and maintains alternator voltage above 13.5V unless battery temperature >40°C. The actual voltage at the battery will vary depending on the alternator load.	Minimum 13.5 - Maximum 14.9
SS	Start-Stop - there is a 5 second delay from when the CC/SS inhibitor is activated to when it takes effect.	Not Applicable

The voltages in the above table are approximate as the charging system is dynamic and can vary the voltage at any time. There is also a refresh mode that is activated periodically if the vehicle stands for more than 30 days. This may take the voltage to 15.2V.

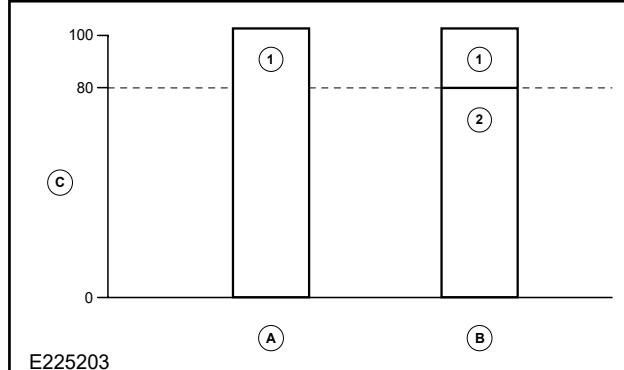
For further information on Start-Stop
[Refer to: 4.10 Electronic Engine Controls](#)

4.4.3 Smart Regenerative Charging (SRC)

Smart Regenerative Charging varies alternator output using information from the Battery Monitoring Sensor to reduce fuel consumption. Alternator output can be increased during deceleration to charge the battery without the use of additional fuel. Alternator output can also be decreased to reduce the load on the engine and therefore fuel used. During this condition the battery supports the electrical loads. This function can be turned off by using Third Party High Power mode as detailed later in this section.

By comparison, Conventional Charging aims to charge the battery at a constant level which varies with battery temperature.

SRC and Conventional Charging



Item	Description
A	Conventional Charging
B	Smart Regenerative Charging (SRC)
C	Battery Charge Level (%)
1	Minimum 13.5V at battery when charging
2	Minimum 12.2V at battery when charging

4.4.4 SRC Override

SRC can be interrupted temporarily in the following ways:

- By the Start-Stop button if the vehicle is stationary.
- By Third Party High Power mode

[Refer to: 4.10 Electronic Engine Controls](#)

The Start-Stop deactivation button also deactivates SRC (LED tell-tale is illuminated). When deactivated, and when the vehicle is stationary, the engine will not shut down and the battery will be charged by the alternator with Conventional Charging.

4.4.5 Third Party High Power Mode

WARNINGS:

⚠ The Third Party High Power mode is a single method that has various effects. Do not allow the Third Party High Power mode to be active in incorrect conditions, as this may lead to unintended consequences. When implementing automated control of Third Party High Power mode, be sure to consider the full range of effects.

⚠ The Third Party High Power mode can inhibit engine shutdown (AEIS) which is a safety procedure designed to protect against carbon monoxide (CO) poisoning. Do not operate the feature on a vehicle in a confined space. Do not install the feature on a vehicle that may be left running in a confined space. Do not allow carbon monoxide to accumulate.

⚠ The Third Party High Power mode feature must not be grounded permanently. This will invalidate the emission and homologation of the vehicle. Permanently disabling the vehicle's fuel/battery save features will require re-homologation as part of the approval process by the convertor.

⚠ When fitting automated systems to control Third Party High Power mode, be sure to record details within the owner's vehicle information. Advise subsequent owners of modifications relating to application of Third Party High Power mode. Subsequent owners of equipped vehicles are to be informed about applications of Third Party High Power mode.

⚠ CAUTION: Third Party High Power mode is only to be used where required for third party equipment functionality. When equipment is off and in a normal drive cycle. All fuel and emission save features must be active.

NOTE: When a vehicle is decommissioned for resale, the Third Party High Power mode inhibit needs to be removed from the vehicle.

Introduction

Third Party High Power mode has only one input that can affect the following features:

- SRC inhibit
- Start-Stop inhibit
- AEIS inhibit (feature restricted in some markets)
- At engine off, inhibit of the timer of the Standard Battery Guard (SBG)

Examples of when to not switch to third party mode include in a normal drive cycle when no extra loads are active. Solutions should only be used for heavy electrical loads, or mechanical power from the Front End Accessory Drive (FEAD), mainly when stationary.

The Third Party High Power mode is subject to configuration and may be subject to restriction.

SRC Inhibit (Conventional Charging)

When SRC is inhibited, such as by Third Party High Power mode, then the system is using Conventional Charging.

This may be required for converters requiring voltage in the range of 13.5V to 14.9V. Such applications include boost or supplemental battery charging, compensation for voltage drop or high ampere electrical loads whilst the engine is running.

For additional information [Refer to: 4.6 Battery Protection](#) Load-shedding.

Start-Stop Inhibit

This may be required where the charging system is required to provide voltage or high electrical power while driving, for example refrigeration or emergency service conversions.

AEIS Inhibit

This may be required to keep the engine running/vehicle-ready to drive when the vehicle is used for power generation, mechanical or electrical, in a stationary application. Normal AEIS functionality is where the engine/electric motor will automatically shutdown after 30 minutes if no driver input is detected.

Timer of Standard Battery Guard at Engine/Electric Motor Off

This may be required to prevent the SBG operating too soon, when the engine/electric motor is off.

[Refer to: 4.6 Battery Protection](#) Load shedding.

Installation/Access

The Third Party High Power mode is activated by the grounding of a particular electrical circuit to a 'non permanent' switching strategy.

The Third Party High Power mode can be accessed at following vehicle connectors:

- As a kit to install the standard 12-way Vehicle Interface Connector pin 3 in the driver's seat pedestal (for non Camper variants)
- Pre-installed as part of a Camper Donor vehicle (C9)
 - 15-way camper connector pin 14

For further information

[Refer to: 4.6 Battery Protection](#)

[Refer to: 4.24 Electrical Connectors and Connections](#)

4.4.6 Test Functionality

NOTE: There will be a delay between setting the Third Party High Power mode and the effect occurring (up to a 5 seconds delay).

NOTE: If the 12V SOC is already too low, the circuit will open before the timer to protect the vehicle start.

Test Functionality: Start-Stop Inhibit - for vehicles with Start-Stop

1. Check Start-Stop functions as intended, refer to Owner's Manual for details
2. While driving the vehicle, close the Hardware Input switch, if safe to do so, and check that the Start-Stop no longer operates
3. Open the Hardware Input switch and check Start-Stop functionality is restored

Test Functionality: SRC Inhibit, Charging Mode Control

1. Ensure batteries have good charge. When charging, use the Jump Start point and engine bay ground point. Refer to the charging instructions in the Owner's Manual
2. Measure voltage between Jump Start point and engine bay ground point with engine running/vehicle-ready-to-drive and SRC inhibit input circuit open. Refer to the Roadside Emergencies section of the Owner's Manual
3. With the engine running/vehicle still in ready-to-drive, set to ground the circuit for Third Party High Power mode and measure 12V battery voltage. The voltage should be in the ranges shown in the table 'Summary of the Available Charging Modes'. The voltage may depend on many factors including total electrical load, which loads are active, battery condition and others. The rate of charge between modes varies depending on which loads are active
4. Remove the ground and check voltage level returns to the original level measured in Step 2. SRC is active

Test Functionality: AEIS Inhibit, Idle Shutdown Control (where fitted)

1. Check that AEIS is fitted and operational
2. Set Third Party High Power mode
3. Check that the engine/electric motor continues to run/vehicle-ready to drive whilst the inhibit is set
4. Check that normal AEIS behaviour resumes when the inhibit is not set, for example the engine shuts down after 30 minutes

Test Functionality: Inhibit of Timer for Engine Off Load-Shedding

1. Establish the preset timer of a SBG circuit e.g.
 - CCP2
 - Other switched ground circuits fed from the feature
2. Set Third Party High Power mode
3. Check that the circuit remains on after the timer period

4.4.7 Charge Balance Guidelines

When fitting medium to high third party electrical loads, including extra batteries, a charge balance test should be performed. This includes all relevant and third party loads active at the same time where the battery voltage should not go below 13V. This will ensure that the DC/DC is not overloaded, extra batteries are charged and correct system functionality is maintained. Third Party High Power Mode [TPHPM] is recommended to be utilised to ensure the highest power mode..

4.4.8 Circuit Diagrams

Full vehicle wiring and circuit diagrams are in the Ford Workshop Manual.

[Refer to: 4.24 Electrical Connectors and Connections](#)

[Refer to: 4.22 Fuses and Relays](#)

4.4.9 Alternator Characteristics

NOTE: For equivalent engine revs per minute (RPM), the alternators revolutions, axis (B) should be divided by the following factor: 2.79 for 2.0L diesel.

NOTE: These alternator curves do not show spare output capacity as this would be dependent on original vehicle features and options.

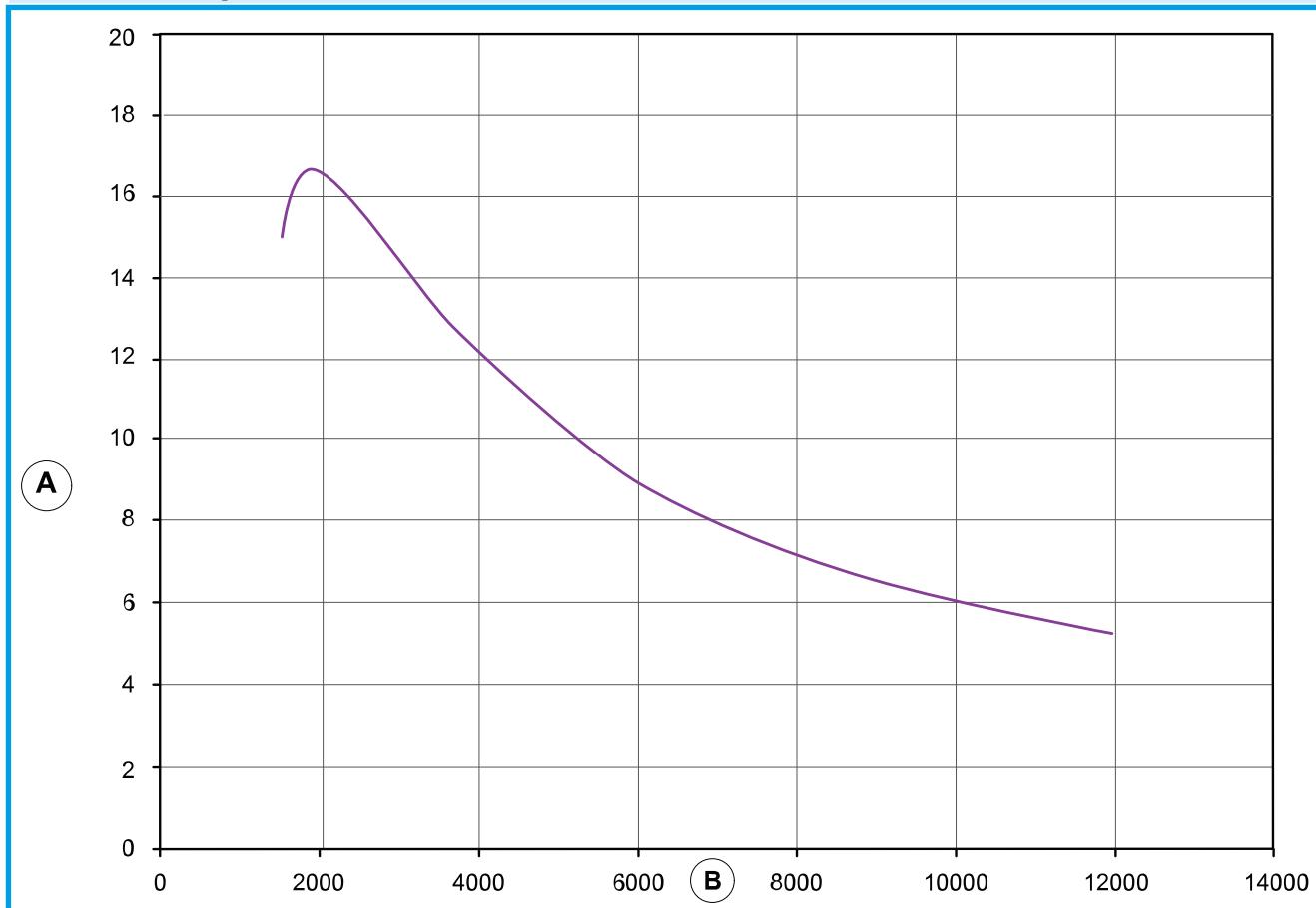
NOTE: If the engine is running for long periods, assume the hotter temperatures apply.

The alternator performance curves show the Engine RPM speed control option (DCNAB) and the factory set engine RPM values for mode 1. This data can be used for calculating charge balance values for the finished third party system

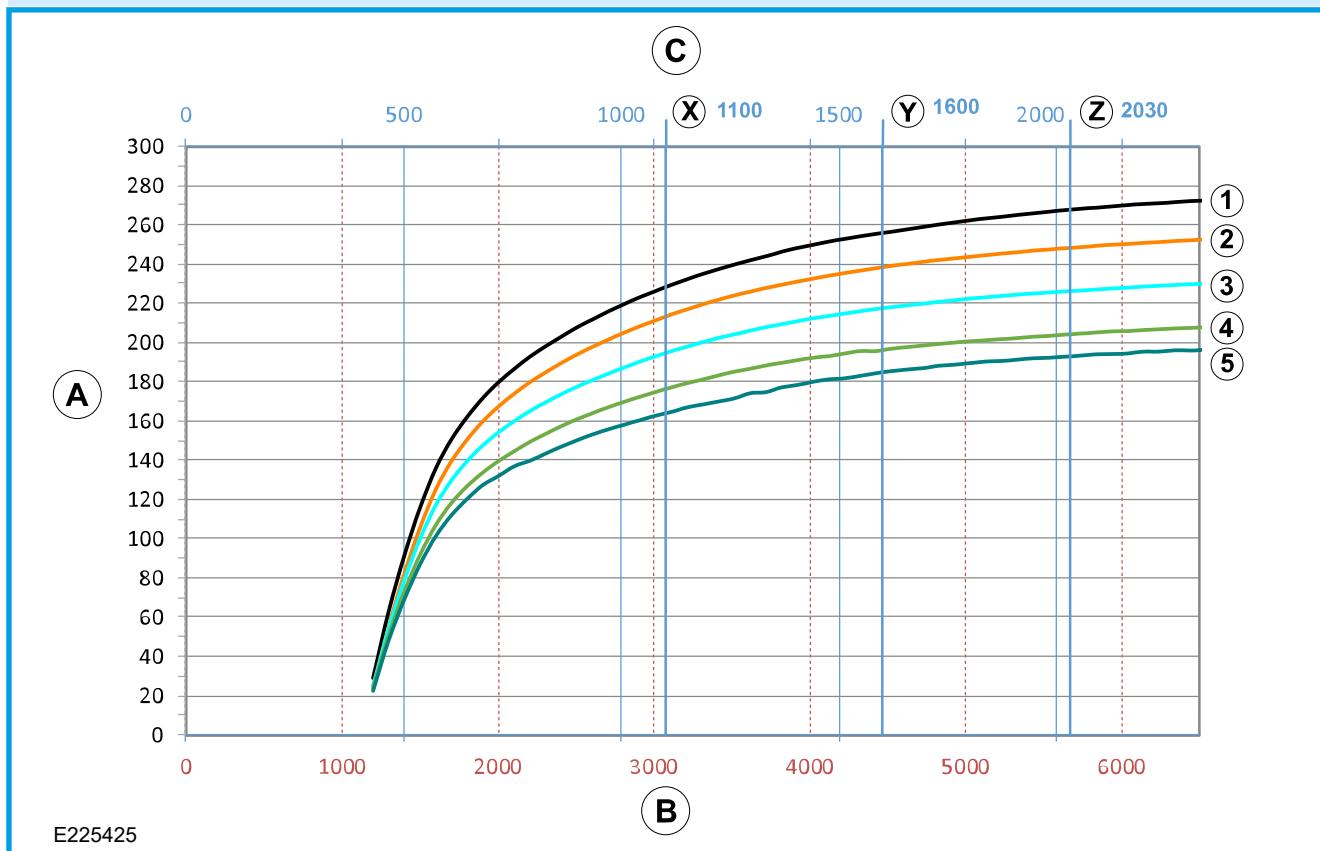
[Refer to: 4.6 Battery Protection](#)

Allow for the Ford system to require approximately 20A to run the engine. Any further Ford systems active such as blowers and lights, will further reduce available Ampere for third party systems. It is also recommended to utilise the SRC override feature (Third Party High Power mode) to maximise alternator output. An overloaded alternator will exhibit voltage lowering below 12.8V and could lead to damage, so must be avoided inhibit is set. Check that normal AEIS behaviour resumes when the inhibit is not set, for example the engine shuts down after 30 minutes

Alternator Torque Curve



Item	Description
A	Torque (Nm)
B	Revolutions Per Minute (RPM)

Alternator Output Performance


Item	Description
A	Output Current (Amps)
B	Alternator Speed (RPM)
C	Engine Speed (RPM)
X	RPM 1 Default
Y	RPM 2 Default
Z	RPM 3 Default
1	Temperature 0°C – Voltage 14.1V
2	Temperature 23°C – Voltage 13.9V
3	Temperature 60°C – Voltage 13.5V
4	Temperature 93°C – Voltage 13.1V
5	Temperature 116°C – Voltage 12.9V

4.5 Battery Systems

⚠️ WARNING: For electrical Power Take Off (PTO) that requires cycling from third party systems, High Performance AGM batteries (HTAAC or HTAAZ) must be ordered on the base vehicle. For more information, refer to 'Power and Connectivity Usage Recommendations' table later in the section. If option twin H7 AGM (HTAAC) or twin H8 AGM (HTAAZ) is not on the base vehicle, for battery upgrade guidance please refer to Single and Twin Battery Systems further in this section."

❗ CAUTION: Some batteries will require specific charging profile. Therefore you must use a suitable battery charger (e.g. DC-DC charger) for your selected battery. Please consult your battery supplier.

NOTE: If there is an isolation relay, check settings to ensure batteries are connected to the charging circuit.

NOTE: The battery capacity, technology and charge available from the charging system must be adequate to ensure engine cranking in unfavourable climatic conditions, even after fitment of additional electrical equipment.

NOTE: Auxiliary customer electrical loads exceeding 60A must be regulated by the Standard Battery Guard (SBG) and load-shedding system. For loads greater than 175A see 'Third Party +12V PTO for loads exceeding 175A' section in this BEMM.

NOTE: Do not make any additional connections to the Power Distribution Box (PDB) terminals, as over-torqueing could cause damage to the PDB. Any electrical loads should be taken from the CCP.

NOTE: For further information please contact your National Sales Company representative, or local Ford dealer. If they are unable to help you then please contact FPSV Technical Support at FPSVHelp@ford.com

4.5.1 Power and Connectivity Usage Recommendations

⚠️ WARNING: If a third party battery guard is fitted, it must be connected to the load-shedding signal so that EPAS is protected in the event of an overload at engine run.

NOTE: Use Absorbent Glass Mat (AGM) batteries for deep cycle applications, i.e. charge and discharge on a regular basis.

NOTE: When considering battery discharge, the Vehicle Convertor needs to consider the current drawn when the added system is in operation, plus any continuous key off loads even when not in use. For example, an inverter fitted will consume power even with no load connected.

NOTE: Where possible, engine run operation/power active(BEV) of electrical equipment reduces battery discharge; both Vehicle Start and Auxiliary Batteries are utilised in conjunction with the charging system.

NOTE: User training and appropriate battery maintenance on a regular basis will assist in ensuring correct battery operation.

NOTE: For heavy 12V electrical demands at engine off/charging-off/DCDC-off situations, for example from 'beacons on for full working shift', then AGM technology battery/batteries are required. Standard 'Enhanced Flooded Batteries' are not suitable for routine use of High Voltage to low voltage charging system. Use 1 or 2 batteries according to the Power Usage table.

The section is to serve to assist with fitting the appropriately sized charging system.

Connectivity Usage	Recommended Specification (order code in brackets)
Additional fused relay outputs. For example: Service Engineer's Van.	Vehicle Integration System (JRSAB) for up to 10A, CCP1 for up to 60A or CCP2 for up to 175A
Roof Beacons/Additional switches. For example: Highway Maintenance Vehicles.	SYNC screen switch control with Vehicle Integration System (JRSAB)
Conversions using various vehicle signals are required, such as indicators, stop lamp, door ajar, handbrake on. For example: Police Vehicles and Ambulances.	Vehicle Integration System (JRSAB)

Engine State	Power Usage	Recommended Specification (order code in brackets)
Engine Off Loads	LOW CONTINUOUS PTO: Up to additional 5mA at Key Off, for example: KL30 fed small current peripheral chargers.	Donor Vehicle Battery(s)
	MID CONTINUOUS PTO: Between 5mA and 30mA at Key Off, for example: Trackers (with sleep function, no GPS), Control Gear, KL30 fed medium current peripheral chargers.	Twin Batteries of same type (only standard on certain applications)
	HIGH CONTINUOUS PTO: Between 30mA and 175A at Key Off, for example: Trackers with GPS, Control Gear, KL30 fed high current peripheral chargers OR vehicles with multiple/extended activations of interior lighting, cycle locks and rear door ajar events. DO NOT EXCEED 175A.	Limited Engine Run/Charge Cycles, 2 High Performance AGM batteries (HTAAC/HTAAZ). Frequent Engine Run/Charge Cycles, single High Performance H8 AGM battery (HTABG). Where possible connect to loads to the standard battery guard or third party battery guard. Refer to: 4.6 Battery Protection for load-shedding.
	OCCASIONAL SHORT TERM HIGH PTO: Between 40A and 240A at Key Off, for example: Cranes, Tippers, Tail Lifts, 230V Inverters, Ambulances.	2 High Performance AGM batteries (HTAAC/HTAAZ) + Standard Battery Guard+ CCP2 - max 175A. Additional battery connection is required, for higher PTO. information see Battery Configuration, Additional Loads, Start-Stop and SRC, in this section. Refer to: 4.6 Battery Protection for Load-Shedding.
Engine Run Loads	LOW CONTINUOUS PTO: Up to 30A, for example: Maintenance Van with water heater and additional lighting but no further systems.	Donor Vehicle Alternator
	HIGH CONTINUOUS PTO: Between 30A and 240A, for example: Ambulance, High Load Maintenance Vehicle, Refrigeration.	Use RPM Speed Control (DCNAB) to enhance 12V charging if required. For voltage support consider using Third Party High Power Mode. Any loads greater than 60A must be connected to a controlled load-shedding connection. DO NOT ALLOW BATTERY DISCHARGE AND DO NOT ALLOW SYSTEM TO DROP BELOW 13V. For further information see Battery Configuration, Additional Loads, Start-Stop and SRC, in this section.
	PTO: Applications which require elevated engine idle speeds, for example: Mobile Tyre Fitter Van, Welder's Vehicle and Mechanical PTO from engine.	RPM Speed Control (DCNAB)
	For applications where the Vehicle Convertor Load requirement exceeds HIGH CONTINUOUS PTO, for example: total Ford and Vehicle Convertor loads exceed the highest available Ford alternator rating.	Supplemental batteries and supplemental energy source pending charge balance calculation.

4.5.2 Guidelines When Converting Vehicles

Responsibilities and Considerations

WARNING: The fitting of voltage boosters or other devices to enhance alternator output is not allowed. The fitting of such devices will not only invalidate vehicle warranty, but could damage either or both, the alternator and Engine Management System/Power Control Module, and possibly affect vehicle legal compliance. Check local legislation.

Operator requirements for additional and specialised electrical equipment vary. The Vehicle Convertor must therefore consider the following points when designing the installation:

- Maintain legality and regulatory conformity of the base vehicle
- Driveability and serviceability of the base vehicle
- The effect of regulations governing the proposed conversion including national legislation in the country of sale
- The method of integrating the circuit into the base vehicle
- The materials and installation must meet the quality standards described in this section

Normal Operating Voltage

The Transit electrical system is charged by an alternator. The vehicle electronics run on a 12V supply with a negative ground return. The factory fit equipment is designed for normal operations to be fully operational in the range 9-14V.

Voltage Check and Charging Procedure

WARNING: Do not connect to any ground or +12V potential points other than that specified in the Owner's Manual. There is a dedicated charge point under the bonnet. Failure to comply may lead to high current paths that may damage peripherals and electronic modules, especially in a Jump Start condition.

All voltages are to be measured with an accuracy of ±5% of values published, using calibrated meters. Measure connected to the vehicle at ignition off and no loads active including interior or exterior lights in Off status. Measure the voltage by using the CCP1 or the battery plus terminal for positive connection and battery ground or battery minus terminal for negative connection. Alternatively, the voltage can be measured in the engine bay, between the Jump Start point and engine bay ground point.

1. Cold batteries will not readily accept a charge. Therefore, batteries should be allowed to warm up to at least 5°C (41°F) before charging. This may require four to eight hours at room temperature depending on the initial temperature and battery

size.

2. A battery which has been completely discharged may be slow to accept a charge initially, and in some cases may not accept a charge at the normal charger setting. When batteries are in this condition, charging can be started by use of the dead battery switch or boost charge on chargers that have this facility.
3. To determine whether a battery is accepting a charge, follow the manufacturer's instructions for the charger, for use of the discharged battery/boost charge mode.

Surface Charge Dissipation

Prior to carrying out manual voltage checks, it is necessary to establish that the battery does not have any damage and the battery voltage is stable and free from surface charge which occurs after engine run.

To ensure surface charge is not present, measure the battery voltage after the vehicle has been standing with the ignition off and no loads active for a prolonged period of 24 hours. If this is not possible an estimate can be made using the following method:

1. To dissipate whatever surface charge is present in the battery turn on the headlamps (main beam) for 5 seconds or turn on the parking lamps for 15 seconds if the head lamps will not turn on with the key in the off position.
2. Turn off the lights and allow the key off loads to reach their steady value. This typically takes 10-15 minutes.

Sensitivity and Voltage Tolerance

The Transit utilises multiplexed vehicle electronics. It is recommended that the appropriate Ford proprietary accessory systems are used. Inappropriate or incorrect connection of additional equipment could cause misoperation, or damage to the vehicle, and so invalidate any warranty.

Stored and Delayed Vehicles

Vehicles held at the Vehicle Convertor premises and/or not in use for longer than 7 days, should have the battery's negative cable disconnected. Before shipping to the customer, the battery negative cable must be reconnected and the voltage rechecked. A complete recharge is required for battery voltage below 12.4V for standard and enhanced flooded or AGM or for no-crank vehicles by using an appropriate charger.

For additional information

[Refer to: 1.13 Vehicle Transportation Aids and Vehicle Storage](#)



Transport Mode

If the cluster displays 'Transport Mode', the vehicle may have reduced functionality. This mode is mainly to conserve battery life/warranty during pre-delivery.

NOTE: To change from transport mode to normal

mode 'temporarily', keep the ignition at run, turn on and off hazard switch twice in 10 seconds.

The maximum duration of this temporary pause mode is 120 minutes.

NOTE: To change from 'Transport Mode' to 'normal mode'; keep the ignition on, press the brake pedal five times, turn on and off hazard switch twice (in any combination) within a 10 second period.

NOTE: Vehicles should remain in 'Transport Mode' (where possible) during storage and prior to handover to customer.

The SBG, CCP2 and third party load-shedding system is 'always off' during Transport mode.

Power Disconnection

 **WARNING: Disconnection is required for welding work and work with airbags. Disconnect all the batteries, including ground and insulate the negative battery terminal(s).**

NOTE: After disconnecting the power supply and before performing further work, a wait time of 15 minutes must be maintained to ensure safety systems are fully deactivated.

Following battery disconnection, there is no need to reprogramme the vehicle. It retains its normal power management settings and configurations. However, the central locking latches may cycle if one of these was opened manually in the intervening period. With regard to the radio, all of the settings are retained.

There is no longer a need to reprogramme the electronic security code, as it is tied into the VIN of the factory fit Transit system. The clock initialises to 12:00 and will need to be reset to the correct time in accordance with the customer handbook procedure.

Ground Connections

NOTE: If there is a battery guard or an isolation relay, check settings to ensure batteries are connected to the charging circuit.

High electrical loads should also be grounded directly to the vehicle body and not the negative battery terminal. Connecting to the negative battery terminal will bypass the BMS and affect the correct assessment of the battery state of charge. Refer to BMS section in this manual.

[Refer to: 4.6 Battery Protection](#)

If separate charging systems are added, the ground side of the charger must also be connected to the body.

[Refer to: 4.24 Electrical Connectors and Connections](#)

Battery Cable Fixing Torque

The battery cables should be fixed to the terminal post with a torque of $8.0\text{Nm} \pm 1.2\text{Nm}$ for positive or negative battery post connection with/without

BMS. For additional information, see BMS later in this section.

Battery Safety

WARNINGS:

 **Take necessary safety precautions when handling batteries, for example: protective clothing, eye and hand protection.**

 **Ensure batteries are charged in a designated charging area that is correctly ventilated.**

 **Vehicles with Start-Stop* require an AGM battery. You must replace the battery with one of exactly the same specification and technology. *Optional in some markets**

 **Make sure that the battery box is correctly sealed including any additional cables routing in and out of the box. After conversion, always check that the drain tubes have not been dislodged.**

 **When a battery guard is fitted and is monitoring a supply from twin AGM battery, it is recommended not being below 11.8V measured at the battery terminals at open circuit voltage.**

Battery Type and Capacity

NOTE: If a Vehicle Convertor intends to add systems or accessories that will add load at key off or engine run, then twin AGM batteries should be specified. There are also alternator upgrades and other options that are needed for PTO requirements. Refer to the table 'Power and Connectivity Usage Recommendations' in this section of the BEMM for your vehicle. Heavy PTO may inhibit Start-Stop but only for the duration of the third party load. This is normal functionality.

The base vehicle is equipped with either a single or twin battery system. It is important to also read related information on Start-Stop and charging systems.

The vehicle may have Enhanced Flooded or AGM batteries as factory fit. Higher capacity batteries are available as standard production options and Special Vehicle Options offer AGM technology for heavy PTO and deep cycling applications. Before installing additional electrical equipment check that the battery capacity, technology type, harness load capability and charging system output are suitable for the extra load.

[Refer to: 4.5 Battery Systems](#) Power and Connectivity Usage Recommendations table.

The battery capacity, technology and charge available from the charging system must be adequate to ensure engine cranking in unfavourable climatic conditions, even after fitment of additional electrical equipment.

Battery Covers

 **WARNING:** It is important that the battery box lid, on vehicles fitted with H7 batteries or the battery cover and battery positive terminal cover, on vehicles fitted with an H8 battery, must be replaced after any conversions to the battery positive terminal. If the battery lid/cover is missing or damaged, a replacement part must be ordered and fitted. It is recommended to check fitment as part of a quality control process. See figure E278335 in the BMS later in this section of the BEMM.

Battery Drain Prevention

As part of the Vehicle Convertor process and to maximise battery life and prevent premature failure of the Ford batteries, protect and prevent battery discharge during any conversion or whilst the vehicle is in storage. This may include leaving the vehicle in Transport mode as long as possible, reducing the amount of crank cycling around the facility, door ajar events and duration. The voltage MUST be checked when receiving and before shipping. Recharge with an appropriate proprietary battery charger if the vehicle battery voltage is below 12.4V for Standard and Enhanced flooded or AGM. Measure connected to the vehicle at ignition off and no loads active including interior or exterior lights in Off status.

Battery Rest Period

After reconnecting, the BMS requires at least 4 hours quiescent period to recalibrate to the correct battery state of charge, see also BMS information later in this section.

Usage of Electrical Loads During Conversion

If electric loads are used during conversion, for example multiple crank cycles or door ajar, check the battery voltage more frequently than every 7 days and recharge the battery if necessary.

For additional information

[Refer to: 1.13 Vehicle Transportation Aids and Vehicle Storage](#)

Engine Off Loads

All loads that exceed 100mA continuous key off load require an isolation switch or disconnected relay. In general, all loads should have some form of isolation. A supplemental battery may be required to power systems, for example: GPS vehicle tracking systems that pull high key off loads continuously. This is to protect from discharging batteries at ignition off and interfering with the BMS correlation of battery state of charge. This supply should also have a dedicated protection fuse of the correct value.

[Refer to: 4.6 Battery Protection](#)

Jump Start

Do not Jump Start the vehicle directly from the battery. Use designated Jump Start points. Refer to the Owner's Manual. The wiper motor bracket must not be used as a ground as it is isolated from the body.

Customer Connection Points (CCP) and Other PTO Locations

Any peripherals added to the power supply must be connected in one of the following ways either via the CCPs from dedicated fuses such as: 60A (CCP1) or 175A (CCP2) or via battery cables for loads greater than 175A (CCP2) and up to 240A.

[Refer to: 4.6 Battery Protection](#)

Auxiliary Electrical Systems

NOTE: When auxiliary electrical systems are to be added to the vehicle, it is mandatory that the additional circuit design includes the necessary fuses.

When auxiliary electrical systems are added to the vehicle, it is recommended that the additional circuits are designed to be used with the Vehicle Integration System to maintain the integrity of the electrical system

[Refer to: 4.22 Fuses and Relays](#)

The materials and installation must meet the quality standards described in this section. Any additional equipment or components must be designed such that they have no adverse Electro Magnetic Compatibility (EMC) effect on the vehicle.

Third Party High Power Mode

Third Party High Power mode is a Ford function that is available to assist with third party electrical and mechanical PTO. This will allow power for longer at engine off and help sustain a higher voltage during engine run. This mode includes SRC Inhibit, Start-Stop Inhibit, AEIS inhibit, and engine off load-shedding timer over-ride.

Cable Routing

Take special care with the routing of existing electrical harnesses within the vehicle, to avoid damage when fitting additional equipment. Also, see section concerning installation of equipment containing an electric motor.

Fitting Equipment Containing Inductive Loads

 **WARNING:** When inductive loads, such as electric motors, are to be fitted consideration of inrush current is needed.

 **CAUTION:** The following must be observed:

- All inductive loads must be driven via relays with contacts rated at least 3 times the maximum rated

current of the motor

- All inductive loads supply circuits must be individually fused with the proper fuse rating for the motor
- All power wiring must be rated for at least 3 times the rating of the motor and installed as far away as possible from any existing vehicle wiring
- All inductive loads fitted should be fully suppressed to European or applicable local Legislation relating to EMC to ensure electrical interference does not affect the vehicle systems
- Add EMC emissions statement to CE approval

Airbags

NOTE: After disconnecting the power supply and before performing further work, a wait time of up to 15 minutes must be maintained. Work on airbag systems may only be performed by persons who have a relevant certificate of competence.

Pay attention to the following points:

- Disconnect all the batteries, including ground and insulate the negative battery terminal(s)
- Disconnect the electrical connector at the airbag control module

Welding and Cutting

Increased use of comfort and safety electronics in modern motor vehicles also requires the greatest attention to be paid during body work. Over voltages produced during welding and in alignment work during body shell rectification may cause electronic systems to be damaged. In particular, the safety instructions for performing welding/cutting work on vehicles with airbag systems must be adhered to.

For additional information on welding

[Refer to: 5.1 Body](#)

Pay attention to the following points:

- Disconnect the alternator multi-plug prior to using welding or cutting equipment
- If welding or cutting is to be performed directly near a control module, it must be removed beforehand
- Never connect the negative cable of the welder near an airbag or a control module
- Connect the negative cable of the welder close to the location of the weld

4.5.3 Battery Options

NOTE: If wrong batteries or incorrect configuration, Start-Stop or SRC may not function correctly.

Any additional or different batteries must be checked for correct functionality on a Start-Stop or SRC vehicles.

[Refer to: 4.10 Electronic Engine Controls Start-Stop and SRC](#)

[Refer to: 4.4 LV Charging System \(12 V\)](#)

Battery Part Numbers and Usage

Battery Part No.	Type	Quantity	Size
Single Battery Options			
GK2T-10655-F*	800CCA (80Ah @ 20 hour rate) AGM Battery (HTAAB) (Standard)	1	H7
8C1V-10655-A*	850CCA (95Ah @ 20 hour rate) AGM Battery (HTABG)	1	H8
Twin Battery Options			
GK2T-10655-F*	800CCA (80Ah @ 20 hour rate) AGM Battery (HTAAC)	2	H7
8C1V-10655-A*	850CCA (95Ah @ 20 hour rate) AGM Battery (HTAAZ)	2	H8

4.5.4 Battery Rules

NOTE: When modifying the battery pack it is recommended to also update the vehicle configuration.

NOTE: Charge balance calculations are required when adding additional systems, taking into account charging system capacity and battery capacity.

- Batteries in parallel must be of the same type and capacity and listed in the Ford battery table
- Third party batteries and loads are to be isolated from the standard Ford system at key off or by a Ford or third party battery guard system
- For external charging of batteries, ensure that the maximum voltage of 15.2V is not exceeded. Normal proprietary charging equipment should operate below this voltage

Where twin batteries are required on vehicles with a single battery installation, associated wiring and hardware should be fitted and aligned to Ford architecture. The extra battery must be of the same technology and performance rating as the existing battery. Alternatively, single or twin battery systems can be upgraded to the High Performance AGM batteries: twin H7 AGM(HTAAC), twin H8 AGM (HTAAZ) or single H8 AGM Battery System (HTABG).

If the battery type on a vehicle is changed to other compatible derivatives (see battery configuration table) it is required to reconfigure the vehicle to the new battery types from the dealer.

For special conversions requiring a third party battery, a further disconnect strategy is required. This should be controlled via the engine run signal to a normally open relay. A schematic of this architecture can be

found later in this section.

[Refer to: 4.4 LV Charging System \(12 V\)](#)

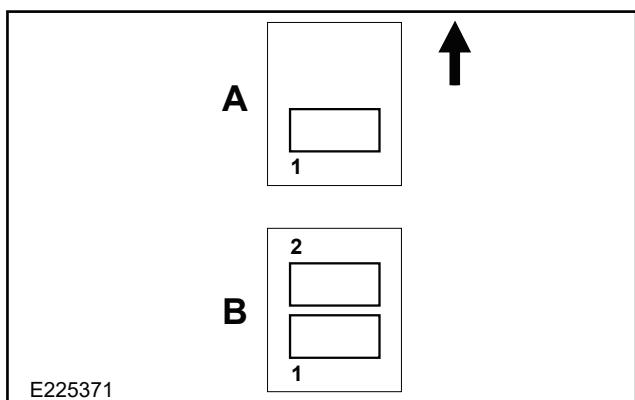
The load a battery could add to the vehicle when requiring a charge, may exceed 60A. If third party loads are also connected, a relay or contactor, controlled by the load-shedding signal, must be used to isolate.

Important Factors for Battery Choice

- Battery specification capability in ampere hours for continuously loading until empty. For example an 80Ah fully charged battery can supply 4A over a 20 hour period at 20°C until it is fully discharged
- The Cold Crank Ampere (CCA) rating is the maximum rating for cold start requirements
- For deep cycling and micro cycling requirements (engine off loads) the deep cycle battery system is recommended. For high power (twin system) requirements at engine off use H7 (HTAAC) or for low power (single system) at engine off use H8 AGM Battery System (HTABG)

Extra batteries added to the power supply should be connected as shown at the end of this section.

4.5.5 Battery Configurations



Item	Description
1	Main Battery
2	Auxiliary Battery
A	Single Battery System
B	Twin Battery System
Arrow	Front of vehicle direction

Additional Loads, Start-Stop and SRC

NOTE: The following battery configurations are NOT compatible with Start-Stop and SRC:

Start-Stop and SRC will operate within specification only if a correct battery configuration is installed in the vehicle. Start-Stop and SRC system functionality cannot be guaranteed with the following configurations.

- Mixed battery types - for example: 1x AGM and 1x Flooded
- Mixed sizes
- Battery types other than those listed in the Battery Part Number and Usage table
- Extra batteries than factory fit - for example: 3 or more, if not isolated from existing power supply at key off

If such a battery configuration is required, it is recommended not to equip the vehicle with Start-Stop in the factory so the vehicle should be originally ordered without. It will not be possible to decommission the Start-Stop and SRC features due to homologation, vehicle tax and excise requirements.

If the battery type on a vehicle with Start-Stop or SRC is changed to other compatible derivatives (see battery configuration table) it is required to reconfigure the vehicle to the new battery types at your local Ford dealer.

The feature content of the vehicle must still remain a Start-Stop or SRC vehicle to be in line with the homologation, vehicle tax and excise requirements.

4.5.6 Convertor Fit Additional Third Party Batteries



WARNING: For any third party power connections needing greater than 60A when CCP2 is not used, all connections must be controlled via the load-shedding. There must not be any exceptions to this conversion strategy, as the signal is to protect the Ford power supply from overload and voltage drop that can affect critical systems such as EPAS. It is not recommended to use the 60A CCP1, Camper, Blue light feed to supply a third party battery.

NOTE: It is the Vehicle Convertor's responsibility to ensure the power supply on the vehicle is adequate to supply both Ford and third party systems, especially if they can be active at the same time. System voltage at engine run must not fall below 13.0V whilst the vehicle is in motion and if Third Party High Power mode is active.

The assumption is that greater than 60A would be required for camper vehicles and any other conversions requiring an additional battery. Therefore, isolation should be provided by either the 175A Customer Connection Point (CCP2) or a third party relay or contactor controlled by the load-shedding signal. In all systems, there is engine off power protection, providing enough remaining energy for a future engine start. Suitable capacity in the wiring, fuses and energy sources must be calculated. The extra battery, when discharged, becomes a load that can be up to 100A, so adds to the energy requirement from the charging sources, along with the third party loads.

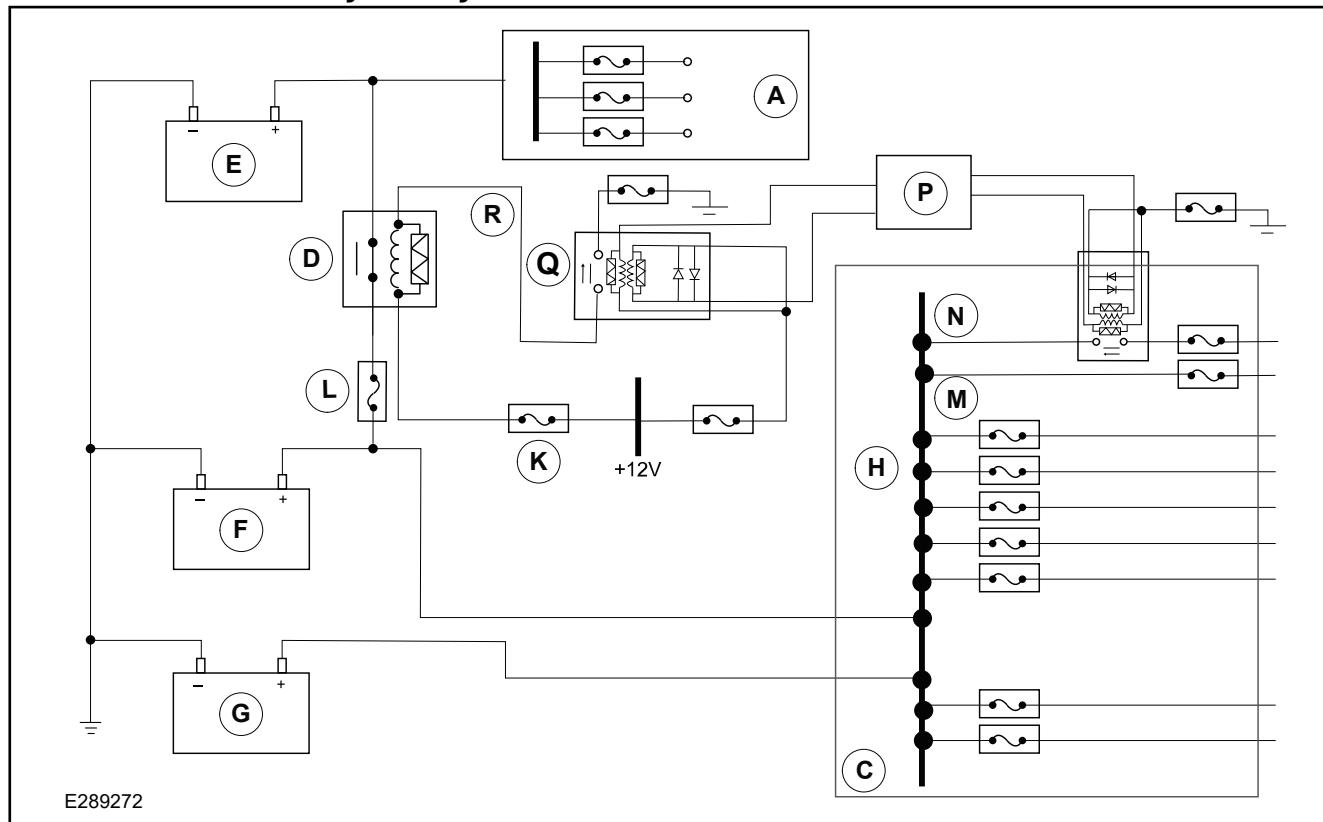
[Refer to: 4.6 Battery Protection](#)

If additional batteries are added, these should be connected via a disconnect mechanism, such as CCP2 or a third party battery guard controlled by the load-shedding signal. If the third party battery and added system requirements exceed 175A (CCP2), connection to the battery positive 6mm stud is permissible only when integrated with the load-shedding signal. Refer to the 'Third Party +12V PTO for Loads Exceeding 175A' in this section. For example of Convertor fit third party battery installation to existing Ford power supply architecture see figure E289272 in this section. If supplemental chargers are to be used, they must be connected directly to the third party battery.

The charge can also be applied to the Ford fit batteries, all relays/switches connected, but only for an emergency charge.

[Refer to: 4.4 LV Charging System \(12 V\) System Operation](#)

Convertor Fit Third Party Battery Installation



Example of installation to existing Ford Power Supply Architecture

Item	Description
A	Convertor Fit — Loads
C	Pre Fuse Box — Driver's Seat Pedestal
D	Convertor Fit — Normally open latched third party Battery Control Relay
E	Convertor Fit — third party Battery
F	Ford Fit — Auxiliary Battery ⁽¹⁾
G	Ford Fit — Vehicle Start Battery
H	Ford Fit — Loads (from Auxiliary Battery)
K	Convertor Fit — +12V Fused KL30 Supply
L	Convertor Fit Power Supply Fuse (For loads between 175-240A)
M	CCP1 - 60A standard
N	CCP2 - 175A relay and Mega fuse (with Twin Batteries)
P	BCM
Q	Ford fit SBG and load-shedding control relay
R	Ford fit signal/grid, 10A switched ground, controlled by SBG and load-shedding control relay

⁽¹⁾ Must be ordered as an extra option

Convertor fit power supply fuse may not be required if CCPs are the correct value.

4.5.7 Third Party +12V PTO for Loads Exceeding 175A



WARNINGS:

DO NOT connect the same load to both CCP1 and CCP2. The system is not designed to work together as the fuses have different values.



It is important that the battery box lid/cover are replaced after any conversions to the battery positive terminal. See figure E278335 in the BMS later in this section of the BEMM. If the battery lid/cover is missing or damaged, a replacement part must be ordered and fitted. It is recommended to check fitment as part of a quality control process after a conversion.

Third party +12V PTO connectivity should be made to the CCP where possible. In the event a current requirement greater than 175A but less than 250A peak loading (maximum fuse value third party installed), connecting to the rear battery +12V clamp 6mm stud is permitted in conjunction with a disconnect relay controlled by the load-shedding signal. A twin battery system is recommended for this application.

[Refer to: 4.6 Battery Protection](#)

The following fusing principles must apply:

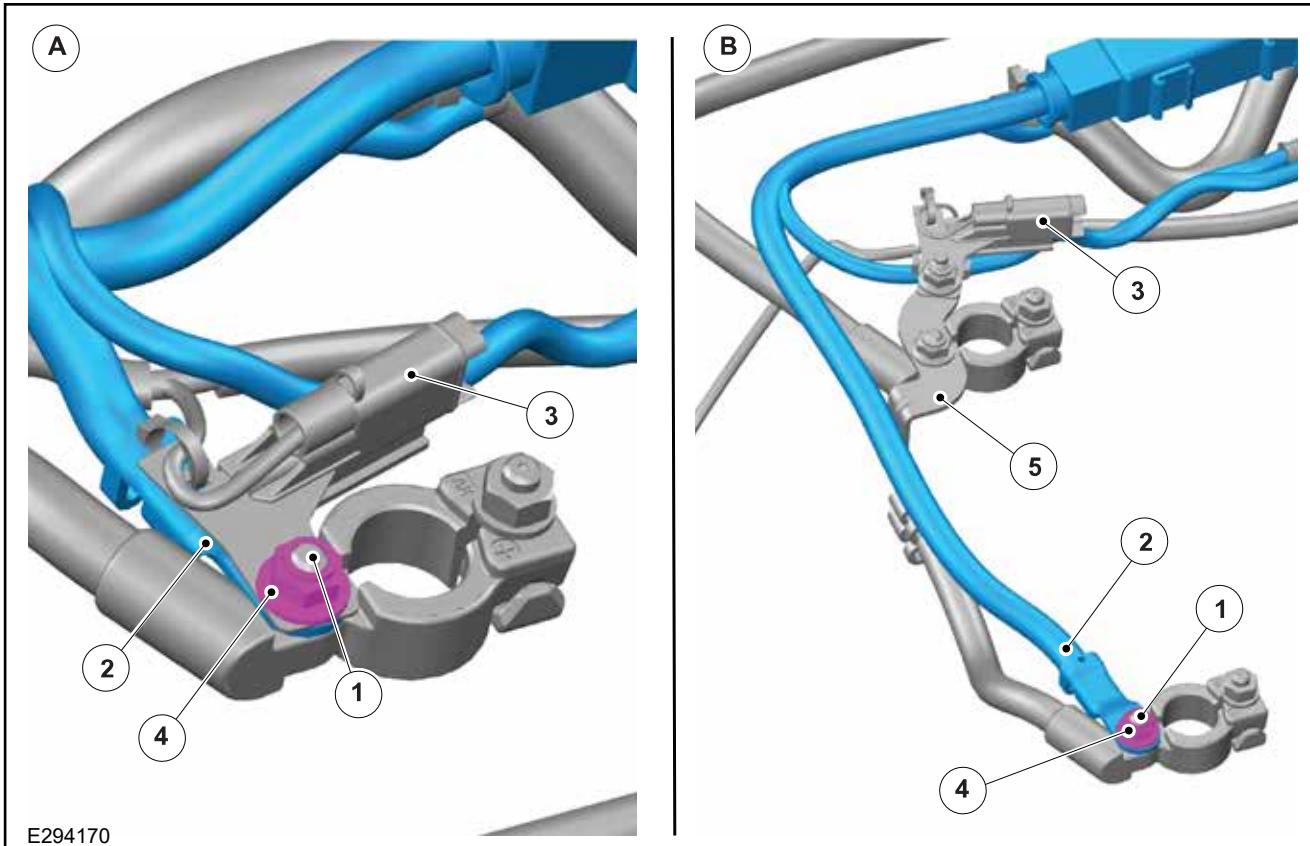
- For a long duration (greater than one hour continuous), the fuse must be no higher rating than the alternator fitted to the vehicle
- For short term loads such as one minute peak loads, a 250A fused cable can be installed. Conversion examples: Crane, Tipper, Tail-Lift . This is only allowed if testing by the Vehicle Convertor confirms that there are no issues (documentation must be held to confirm the tests) and the following criteria is met:
 - No movement before full tightening of the nut (no risk of rotation). The third party eyelet must be a tight fit within the battery clamp slot and have a maximum Cross Sectional Area (CSA) for current flow
 - The cable CSA must be oversized

[Refer to: 4.2 Wiring Installation and Routing Guides](#)

Wiring Specifications table. For example: 245A has 70mm² CSA cable

- The third party positive conductor is mounted directly to the battery clamp with the supply for the BMS last, see figure E278335
- No deformation to the Ford BMS can occur. The conductor terminal/eyelet may need to be inverted, see item 4 in figure E278335
- Only one termination (third party conductor) can be added to the 6mm stud in addition to the BMS
- The Ford 6mm self-locking nut is to be re-used and torqued to 8Nm ± 1.2Nm. Separate locking washers are prohibited

- A Mega inline fuse must be fitted as close to the 6mm stud as possible. Not to exceed 250A for short duration applications such as on Tippers, Cranes or Tail Lifts
 - For long duration continuous power applications such as High Power Inverter, the Mega fuse must not exceed the rating of the alternator fitted to the vehicle. The alternator saturation voltage must be above 13.0V when testing full load. AGM battery twin system (HTAAC/HTAAZ) must be fitted to the derivative. See 'Single and Twin Battery System' and 'Power and Connectivity Usage Recommendation' table in this section of the BEMM
 - A higher ampere alternator must be fitted if long duration (greater than one hour) high loads are required. See 'Single and Twin Battery System' and 'Power and Connectivity Usage Recommendation' table in this section of the BEMM
 - The Third Party High Power mode feature must be used for Engine Run applications.
- [Refer to: 4.4 LV Charging System \(12 V\) Start-Stop Override and Configurable Charging](#)
- Efficient isolation of third party equipment, when not required, to minimise battery discharge/deep cycling. The load-shedding signal control offers this
 - Testing for end customer usage, including duty cycle, at a range of temperatures and drive cycles, worst case
 - Testing of the Vehicle Convertor's system must confirm no heating of Ford or third party cables or any junctions utilised, unless thermal protection is incorporated
 - Testing of Vehicle Convertor's +12V conductor must demonstrate no loosening possible to Ford battery cable clamp
 - No detriment to Ford systems from voltage drop/inrush current by third party system (functionality or warnings)
 - If engine off can still operate the third party system, then testing also required in this vehicle state
 - A charge balance must also be performed to confirm system has correct battery and alternator ratings
 - If idle loading can saturate the alternator (fully load and go below 13.0V) then Engine RPM speed control system must be utilised to increase alternator output at idle
 - The return ground cable is recommended, routed in parallel to +12V supply for EMC compliance
 - When in Engine Run, systems that are not required should be turned off to help the alternator supply the main load of the third party system. This information should be passed on to the end user by the Vehicle Convertor
 - The BEMM is adhered to in all relevant areas. This document allows connectivity to Ford battery clamp if the above criteria is met

Third Party +12V PTO Assembly

Item	Description
A	Single Battery Assembly
B	Twin Battery Assembly
1	+12V Battery Clamp 6mm Stud
2	Third Party Eyelet and Cable - Must be a tight fit to the battery clamp
3	BMS Fuse
4	Self-Locking Crimp Hexagonal Nut - Re-use and torque to 8.0Nm ± 1.2Nm
5	Twin Battery positive link cable with 6mm stud - KK2V-14300-M*

4.5.8 Battery Monitoring Sensor (BMS)

WARNING: It is important that the battery box lid/covers are replaced after any conversions to the battery positive terminal. See figure E278335. If the battery box lid/cover is missing or damaged, a replacement part must be ordered and fitted. It is recommended to check fitment as part of a quality control process.

CAUTION: Do not permanently remove jumper cable from the BMS.

NOTE: If the key off load only drops to the expected lower value after 30 minutes, it is probably because a feature is still active, controlled by the battery saver timer. This could be because any door is ajar or an interior lamp is switched on. Peripherals plugged into the power sockets will continue to drain power until the battery reaches a low level of charge.

The BMS continuously monitors the condition of the main battery (or twin batteries). To do this, it is bolted directly to the negative terminal of the battery. It is recommended that this is not removed. However, if removal is required, please refer to the Ford workshop manual, Ford dealer or customer services.

The BMS re-calibrates itself at regular intervals. This occurs during a rest period at key off, when the battery closed-circuit current is less than 100mA. The rest period must last for at least 4 hours. If the system cannot carry out a re-calibration then it is unable to establish the correct state of charge of the battery. In this case, the Start-Stop system may be deactivated.

It is recommended that the total Ampere consumption, in sleep mode, does not exceed 100mA. This is because BMS will not be able to accurately correlate the battery state of charge. Note there is approximately 15mA of key off load from existing Ford fit systems, so the additional maximum is 85mA of Convertor fit system. Any third party installations should ideally be activated via ignition or engine run. However, a sleep mode of 100mA is still high and will lead to deep discharge. Regardless of battery system, long periods of discharge may necessitate long periods of recharge. See 'Power and Connectivity Usage Recommendation' table at the end of this section.

After Convertor system is installed, it is recommended to measure total key off load to battery with either a current shunt or with a clamp on ammeter calibrated and sensitive to milliampere's (mA). Perform this test after 10 minutes of key off with all doors shut so that the vehicle remains in sleep mode.

4.5.9 Single and Twin Battery Systems

Wiring of Batteries in Parallel for High Current Applications

Review whether an upgrade to a single High Performance H8 AGM Battery System (HTABG) would be sufficient or alternatively if a higher current is

required, an additional battery can be added as shown in the proposed interface schematic. In this case the load-shedding signal is used to control relay 'D', see figure E289272 'Convertor Fit Third Party Battery Installation' diagram to allow the third party battery to be charged when the engine is running.

Single to Twin Battery Conversion

Any additional or different batteries must be checked for correct functionality on a Start-Stop or SRC vehicle, please refer to Battery Configuration, Additional Loads, Start-Stop and Smart Regenerative Charging (SRC) and also:

[Refer to: 4.4 LV Charging System \(12 V\)](#) and
[Refer to: 4.10 Electronic Engine Controls](#)

If a requirement exists, it may be viable to order vehicles installed with a single battery, a battery disconnect relay and a kit of harnesses to be fitted by the installer. See following table for battery cables and components.

Battery Cables and Components

A vehicle ordered with a single battery can be converted to twin standard batteries or to High Performance AGM batteries. When converting to the standard option it is necessary to order an additional single battery to the same specification as the original fit. Alternatively when converting to the High Performance AGM batteries it is necessary to replace the original battery with two AGM batteries of the same type. The battery part numbers for each option are shown later in this section.

When changing the battery capacity or technology, the vehicle configuration must be updated after the new batteries have been installed. The vehicle needs to be connected to the Dealer Service Tool to reprogram the new batteries. Contact your National Sales Company representative or local Ford dealer with your vehicle VIN. If they are unable to help you then please contact FPSV Technical Support at FPSVHelp@ford.com. Failure to set the correct battery configuration may lead to incorrect SRC/SC and Start Stop functionality.

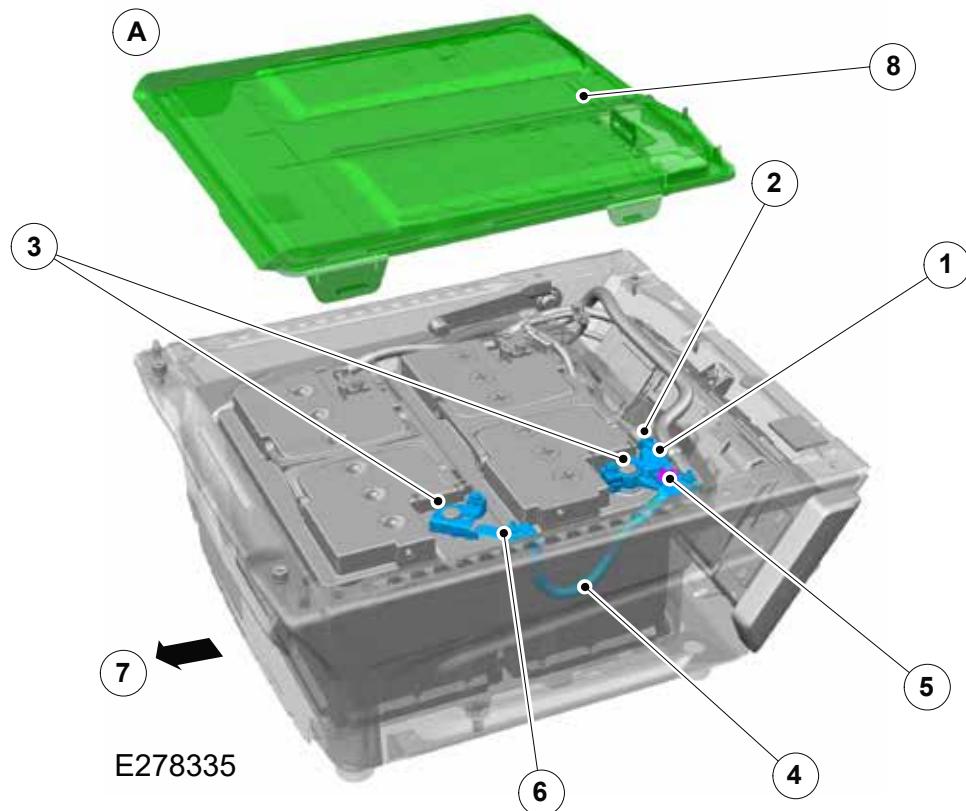
4.5.10 Additional Loads and Charging Systems

NOTE: Do not make any additional connections to the Power Distribution Box (PDB) terminals, as over-torqueing could cause damage to the PDB.

NOTE: Only use approved connection methods and connection points for additional electrical loads.

For applications that require a permanent installation to gain power for jump start requirements for example recovery vehicle conversion, please contact your National Sales Company representative, or local Ford dealer. If they are unable to help you then please contact FPSV Technical Support at FPSVHelp@ford.com

Battery Box Lid/Covers



Item	Description
A	Vehicles with H7 Batteries
1	Battery Monitoring Sensor (BMS) GK2T-10C652-A*
2	Plug-in connection — Local Interconnect Network (LIN) and Battery Positive +12V (B+) Feed
3	Connection to Negative Terminal of Main Battery Post — See 'Battery Cable Fixing Torque'
4	Jumper Cable (KK2T-14300-LA) only with twin batteries
5	1x M8 nuts. Do not loosen or remove
6	1x M6 nut. Do not loosen or remove
7	Front of vehicle direction
8	Battery Box Lid

Generic items when converting from Single System to single H8 AGM

Part Number	Description	Quantity
KU5T-14436-BU*	Auxiliary ground stud	1
BK3V-10A721-C*	Battery clamp	1
JK2V-10A818-AA	Breather tube	1
JK3V-10N669-AA	Battery tray	1
KK2V-14277-A*	Battery positive insulation covers	1
KK2V-14277-B*	Battery negative insulation covers	1
BK21-63226-A* / 63227-A*	Driver's pedestal	1
JK2V-10A687-A	Battery cover	1

Generic items when converting from Single to Twin Batteries

Part Number	Description	Quantity
GK2T-14301-A*	BMS jumper cable - less auxiliary ground stud	1
KK2V-14301-K*	BMS jumper cable - with auxiliary ground stud	1
KK2T-14300-L*	Battery link positive cable	1 ⁽¹⁾
KK2V-14300-M*	Positive link cable with auxiliary positive stud	1

⁽¹⁾ only one battery pending on drive.

4.6 Battery Protection

NOTE: For further information please contact your National Sales Company representative, or local Ford dealer. If they are unable to help you then please contact FPSV Technical Support at FPSVHelp@ford.com

4.6.1 Interior Lights and 12V Sockets

12V sockets and interior lighting are both controlled by timers and SOC control. Both reset at vehicle wake for example, door opening. These will switch off earlier if battery is low.

- 12V sockets - 30 minutes from key off
- Interior lighting - 10 minutes from key off (there are some options where the interior lighting has been extended to 30 minutes)

4.6.2 Standard Battery Guard (SBG) and Load-Shedding

WARNINGS:

 **When connecting a third party load, these installation instructions must be followed to avoid low system voltage during normal driving operation.**

 **The load-shedding system must not be disabled or interfered with.**

 **Vehicles with Single or Twin batteries should always fit battery guards if engine off power is required.**

 **If a third party battery guard is fitted, it must be connected to the load-shedding signal so that EPAS is protected in the event of an overload at engine run.**

NOTE: It is recommended to maintain the vehicle battery to a good level of charge to avoid load-shedding events.

Load-shedding is a system protection feature to stop excessive voltage drops at engine on. At engine off this system helps stop excessive battery drain which could lead to a failed start. To protect the system from sudden voltage drops it will on rare occasions of extreme conditions be necessary to disconnect high-current third party electrical loads. All third party electrical loads totalling over 60A must be connected under one or other method of load-shedding control. Charge balance system testing is expected of the third party system with any Ford system loads, to ensure that the voltage does not go lower than 13.0V at engine run. If 11.0V is measured, this is the cut off point for load-shedding but here there would be serious problems with the system design of supply and demand.

At engine-off, it helps prevent excessive battery discharge with a SBG.

To avoid the risk of there being load-shedding during engine run in a stationary electrical Power Take Off (PTO) requirement, two systems are recommended to be utilised:

1. Third Party High Power Mode override feature This will help maintain the highest voltage by forcing the charging system into conventional charge mode.
2. Engine RPM speed control feature This can help increase current output of the charging system by increasing the engine idle. Charge balance system testing is expected of the third party system with any Ford system loads, to ensure that the voltage does not go lower than 13.0V at engine run. If 11.0V is measured, this is the cut off point for load-shedding but here there would be serious problems with the system design of supply and demand.

4.6.3 Power Connections

This section explains where to connect third party electrical power connections, based on the power that will be drawn.

Ground connections are not controlled

[Refer to: 4.26 Grounding](#)

Connections without SBG and Load Shedding

NOTE: Suitable for up to 60A total.

A total limit of 60A applies to all non-sheddable third party electrical loads added to the vehicle, across all locations including the following:

- Customer Connection Point 1 (CCP1)
- Camper connection (C Connector)

[Refer to: 4.24 Electrical Connectors and Connections](#)

All higher current third party loads are to be regulated using Ford controlled load-shedding.

Optionally, third party loads below 60A can also be connected to the load-shedding control system to make use of the protection from battery drain that this may provide.

It is required to connect to the load-shedding system for loads with over 100mA continuous drain.

Connections using SBG and Load Shedding

This provides some protection of the battery for parked vehicles, and some protection of system voltages when the vehicle is running.

Regulation by load-shedding is required where total added electrical load is over 60A. Regulation by load-shedding is also optional for connections totalling less than 60A.

Load-shedding for third party systems is to be installed using one of the following 2 methods:

1. Using the provided third party isolation signal directly.
 - This is a switched ground system
 - The control wire can supply relay coil currents up to 10A total, for connected third party control relays
 - The control signal is routed to the 12-way standard interface connector in the driver's seat pedestal (pin 4)
 - Camper 6-way (pin 1)
 - The control signal is to be used with a third party relay when Customer Connection Point 2 (CCP2) cannot be utilised. This control is also recommended when connecting leisure batteries.
2. Using Customer Connection Point 2

CCP2 is a high current load-shedding connection point to provide robust power availability whilst maintaining vehicle operation

- Loads up to 175A may use CCP2
- CCP2 is provided in any of the below options:
 - Twin battery/heavy-duty battery pack
 - Refrigeration [FV]
 - Camper Donor vehicles

[Refer to: 4.6 Battery Protection](#)

4.6.4 SBG and Load Shedding - Functionality

WARNINGS:

 **Changing configurations may invalidate the vehicle warranty.**

 **Using Third Party High Power mode may invalidate the vehicle warranty.**

 **Ensure the Third Party High Power mode feature does not inadvertently remain active when the battery is being charged by the vehicle.**

 **Use of the Third Party High Power mode feature to override the connection timeout will allow more energy to be discharged from the vehicle battery. Excessive energies cycled through the battery may invalidate battery warranty.**



When designing automation of the Third Party High Power mode, avoid unintended consequences. If activated when the engine is running or vehicle is ready to drive, use of Third Party High Power mode can also prevent AEIS, where applicable. Use of Third Party High Power mode can disable this safety feature and leave the engine running/vehicle ready-to-drive. Engines that run in confined spaces cause CO accumulation which can lead to CO poisoning and death. CO can seep into adjacent confined spaces. The AEIS inhibit can be configured off at a Ford dealer.

Standard Battery Guard - Vehicle -Off

Standard Battery Guard (SBG) operates when the vehicle is off. The purpose of the SBG is to protect the vehicle battery from being drained.

It disconnects the controlled third party circuits when the battery is low or after timeout has occurred. Timeout is up to 30 minutes for single-battery vehicles and up to 75mins for vehicles with twin AGM batteries. Twin AGM batteries have a lower SOC threshold and can offer for longer duration.

[Refer to: 4.6 Battery Protection](#)

Normally the SBG is configured to reconnect at vehicle unlock. The circuits are then connected before the 'key crank'.

Camper vehicles do not reconnect at 'unlock'. Instead reconnection is delayed to about 3s after 'ignition on' to allow the vehicle to be cranked first. This is intended for vehicles with AGM batteries. With this configuration, the third party load-shedding circuits are disconnected as soon as both the key is out and the driver door is opened. Other non-Camper vehicles can be configured the same, by a Ford dealer.

The Third Party High Power Mode inhibits the timer so the SBG monitors for low SOC only. The user must ensure the Third Party High Power Mode is not used during normal drive cycles, except where required for third party equipment.

[Refer to: 4.4 LV Charging System \(12 V\)](#)

The SBG does not offer warning if an external charger is connected to the vehicle. It will not automatically connect all batteries if an external charger is applied.

Load Shedding - Vehicle -On

In rare situations of very high electrical demand, it is necessary that the system can act to prevent the voltage from becoming too low. Essential loads, including some 3rd-party loads, will never be shed. Loads totalling over 60A must be connected to the Load-Shedding function.

The ability to do Vehicle-On load-shedding is required in order to be able to prevent too low voltage during driving.

Short Term Disconnection - Contributing Factors

- Extreme environmental conditions
- High system electrical load at or already exceeding power supply capacity – including third party loads
- During short term high transient loads, such as inrush currents

If the system voltage drops very low, disconnection of the controlled third party loads may occur. This will be for a minimum of 4 seconds.

If load-shedding occurred, third party equipment may be reset and may re-initialise.

For Battery configuration

[Refer to: 4.5 Battery Systems](#)

Driver Notification

Driver Notification Instrument Cluster Notification is provided to alert the driver that third party connections have been reset, and that this may indicate an overload condition has occurred.

A customer information message is displayed briefly on the Instrument Panel Cluster (IPC). The message is "Electrical Power Saver Active Features Turned Off".

Where the warning occurs frequently, it is recommended to review the Power Supply requirements, and additional generating equipment may be required.

No message is given when power is restored. If CCP2 is fitted an audible click may be heard from the driver's seat area.

Longer Term Disconnection

If the 12V SOC is very low when load-shedding occurred, the load-shedding will remain active until the 12V SOC has been raised significantly. This will take longer in cold conditions or with old batteries. This condition inhibits activation of Auto-Park-Assist.

4.7 Climate Control System

⚠ WARNING: Information provided in this section is for convertor's reference only. Any unauthorised modifications to the climate control system will result in malfunction of the system.

⚠ Do not use propylene glycol based coolant.

NOTE: The Transit Climate Control system utilises shared components from other vehicles, which may have higher feature levels and systems. Therefore, in addition to pins that are not used generally, there are others that are not available and could impede function or cause damage if connected for external use.

- Never secure hoses or tubes to the transmission fill or dip stick or to any fuel system or brake component
- Do not route heater or refrigerant lines near or directly over any exhaust system component, including the exhaust manifolds
- Avoid routing of hoses in the wheelhouse or stone kick-up arch. If routing is required in these areas, shield against stone pecking as appropriate
- Do not route hoses near sharp edges. Utilise guards to protect against cutting or chafing

4.7.1 Front Climate Control System

C1 Climate Control System Pin-Outs

Pin	Description
1	Ground
2	V_REF Return
3	V_REF 5V
4	SRC defeat
5	Autohold switch input
6	Autohold Function Indicator Output
7	Heated Backlite (HBL) Relay
8	Front Left Temp Door Feed 'A'
9	Front Left Temp Door Feed 'B'
10	Front Left Temp Door Feedback
11	Front Blower Relay
12	Max Defrost Input
13	Max Defrost Indicator status
14	Not used
15	Air quality Sensor
16	Front Recirc Door Feedback
17	MS1-CAN H
18	MS1-CAN L
19	Evaporator Temp Sensor Input
20	Front Mode Door # 1 Feed 'A'
21	Front Mode Door # 1 Feed 'B'
22	Front Mode Door # 1 Feedback
23	Front Blower Controller PWM Command
24	Front Recirc Door Feed 'A'
25	Front Recirc Door Feed 'B'
26	V_BATT

C2 Climate Control System Pin-Outs

Pin	Description
1	V_BATT Left Heated Seat Element Supply
2	V_BATT Right Heated Seat Element Supply
3	Rear A/C demand
4	Left-Front Discharge Sensor #1
5	Left-Front Discharge Sensor #2
6	PTC PWM output
7	PTC1 relay driver output
8	PTC2 relay driver output
9	PTC3 relay driver output
10	Right-Front Discharge Sensor #1
11	Right-Front Discharge Sensor #2
12	Heated Windshield #2 Relay driver
13	Front Right Temp Door Feed 'A'
14	Front right Temp Door Feed 'B'
15	Right Heated Seat NTC Sense
16	Left Heated Seat Element
17	Right Heated Seat Element
18	Front Right Temp Door Feedback
19	Humidity Sensor Digital input
20	UART Particle Matter Sensor
21	Left Sunload Sensor Signal
22	Right Sunload Sensor Signal
23	Start/Stop Switch input
24	Start/Stop Switch indication
25	Front In-car Temp Sensor #2
26	Front In-Car Temp Sensor #3
27	In-Car Aspirator Sensor #1 or Motor Ground
28	Heated Windshield #1 Relay Driver
29	Front In-Car Temp Sensor Input #1
30	Left Heated Seat NTC Sense

4.7.2 Rear Climate Control System

C2 Climate Control System Pin-Outs

Pin	Description
1	PWM1 PWM Signal Blower #1
2	Temp_StepC Temp Door 3
3	Temp_StepA Temp Door 1
4	Mode_StepC Mode Door 3 (FWD only)
5	Mode_StepA Mode Door 1 (FWD only)
6	Spare
7	Spare
8	KL31 Ground
9	Mode_Door_Power Mode Door Power Supply (switch KL30) (FWD only)
10	KL15 Ignition Signal (Key)
11	KL30 Battery Power Supply
12	Spare
13	Spare
14	PWM2 PWM Signal Blower #2 (RWD only) / PWM Temp Rotary Position (V362 PHEV only)
15	Temp_StepD Temp Door 4
16	Temp_StepB Temp Door 2
17	Mode_stepD Mode Door 4 (FWD only)
18	Mode_StepB Mode Door 2 (FWD only)
19	Spare (Ground)
20	Spare
21	Spare
22	Valeo_Diag Supplier Diagnostic Line
23	Temp_Door_Power Temp Door Power Supply (Switch KL30)
24	KL58 Backlight Illumination Power Supply
25	Spare
26	Spare

4.8 Instrument Panel Cluster

 **WARNING: Do not tamper with, cut into or connect to any of the CAN-Bus interface wiring or connectors.**

Most of the functions are managed over the CAN-Bus interface.

Instrument Cluster

Connector Pin (C1)	Description	Wire Colour	
2	Fuel Level Sensor Return	Green/Blue	-
3	Ground	Black/Violet	-
4	Switch - Transmission Park Detect	Green	-
8	12V Power	Grey/Red	-
10	Fuel Level Sensor	Yellow/Violet	-
11	Switch - Low Level Washer Fluid	Grey	-
12	CAN Bus High Speed -High	Green/Blue	Twisted pair
13	CAN Bus High Speed -Low	White/Green	

Any pins not listed in the table above are not to be used.

4.9 Horn

Any other aftermarket horn (for example an air horn) will need to be driven by a separate relay energised by the horn circuit.

4.10 Electronic Engine Controls

! **CAUTION: Do not make any additional connections to the electrical circuits associated with the engine management system.**

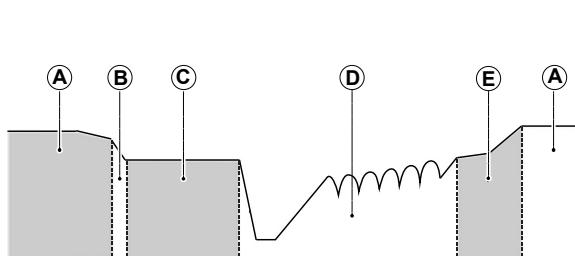
NOTE: It is not necessary to disconnect or remove engine management modules.

NOTE: For further information please contact your National Sales Company representative, or local Ford dealer. If they are unable to help you then please contact FPSV Technical Support at FPSVHelp@ford.com

4.10.1 Cranking and Warm Cranking

During a system warm re-crank the battery voltage will drop as low as 7V for 100ms, followed by a period of voltage ripple providing an output to bring the voltage back to 12.3V. This can be up to 5 seconds. All Third Party fit modules must be robust to handle warm re-cranking waveform.

Warm Re-Crank Waveform



E242177

WARNINGS:

! **If required by the system, the Start-Stop function may be deactivated which will lead into an automatic restart of the engine. In normal conditions the engine will automatically restart only if**

- **Manual transmission: clutch press**
- **Automatic transmission: brake release (In Drive only) or accelerator pedal press**

! **Switch the ignition off before opening the bonnet or carrying out any maintenance.**

! **Always switch the ignition off before leaving the vehicle. The vehicle may be in auto stop meaning that the engine is not running but the vehicle is still on.**

! **Permanent connection of additional electrical loads exceeding 100mA while the ignition is off may result in system malfunction.**

It is very important not to make any modifications to the shielding around exposed moving parts on the engine, for example the drive belt.

General Information

Start-Stop is designed to improve fuel economy and reduce CO₂ emissions by automatically stopping the vehicle's combustion engine during idle phases when it is not required for motive power and restarting it when required.

4.10.2 Start-Stop Logic

Automatic engine stops and restarts are controlled by the Start-Stop logic within the Engine Control Module (ECM). This is connected to a number of vehicle and powertrain signals, sensors and switches and decides when to shut down and when to restart the engine, based on the particular Start-Stop strategy employed.

Stop-in-Neutral is a Start-Stop strategy applicable to manual transmission vehicles which stops the engine, subject to inhibitors, when the vehicle is stationary AND neutral is selected AND the clutch has been fully released. The engine is restarted on clutch pedal press in neutral.

Stop-in-Drive is a Start-Stop strategy applicable to automatic transmission vehicles which stops the engine, subject to inhibitors, when the vehicle is stationary AND the transmission is in D AND the brake is pressed AND the accelerator is released. The engine is restarted on brake release or accelerator press. The engine also stops in P (without the brake pressed).

Inhibitors

Sometimes the engine may not shut down or will request auto restart due to one or more system inhibitors being active. The engine will shut down only when all inhibitors are cleared, which may be some time after the transmission/pedal conditions are met.

Typical examples of inhibitors are:

- If the ambient temperature is below the lower limit or above the higher limit for Start-Stop
- Engine coolant temperature not warmed up (value dependent on ambient temperature)
- Heated front screen is on
- Insufficient battery charge to sustain a stop event or too high a current drain or battery is cold or battery failure
- Driver's door has been opened and vehicle has not been driven over 5kph since
- Engine management reason, for example: during a DPF regeneration event
- The ABS warning lamp is on or the vehicle is on a steep gradient
- High electrical load where total vehicle current drain exceeds 70A
- Ford Engine RPM Speed Controller System is active
- Unrecognised battery fitted or BMS damaged or removed

- Start-Stop is disabled by the driver (either hard button or via Sync depending on vehicle specification). After ignition OFF and ON, Start-Stop will be re-enabled.
- Accelerator pedal or clutch pedal is not released
- Greater than 100mA continuous load at ignition off. The BMS will be unable to correctly assess battery state of charge
- Vehicle in Factory or Transport mode
- Third Party High Power mode has been set

Stall Recovery/Start Abortion Recovery

Stall Recovery is an additional feature available with Start-Stop on manual transmission vehicles, and is active even if Start-Stop itself has been deselected or is inhibited. Under stall recovery, an automatic engine restart is invoked if the clutch pedal is fully depressed immediately following a vehicle stall, thus enabling the driver to quickly recover from a stall condition without needing to cycle the ignition key/start button. Stall recovery is only available for 5 seconds following a stall.

Vehicle Modification Considerations

Impacts to Start-Stop Behaviour

Inhibitor occurrence may be increased by vehicle modifications. For example, the 12V energy management system on the vehicle is designed to allow the engine to shut down only if the current drain is less than 60A. High current loads may lead to this threshold being exceeded. In addition, engine stops will be inhibited if the battery state of charge is below 68%, which may occur if added electrical loads are active during key off periods. When installing extra peripherals, be aware of the continuous/quiescent current drain of such equipment, even when in Off or Standby mode. Any module should not draw more than 5mA in electrical load when off. If current draw is high at key off, a different battery system should be considered instead of the standard fit battery system. The AGM 2 x 80Ah twin system which has been engineered to work with Start-Stop, should be considered if electrical loads will be high at engine run and engine off but total key off load including Ford systems must not exceed 90mA.

NOTE: Regardless of the battery configuration, key off load in excess of 100mA for 7 days or more will cause Start-Stop to inhibit.

For additional information

[Refer to: 4.5 Battery Systems](#) Battery Monitoring Sensor

Start-Stop is only designed to operate with the specified battery type for the system. Fitting additional batteries - or the incorrect type - will cause incorrect state of battery health assessment, leading to Start-Stop becoming permanently inhibited and therefore the fuel saving features lost. Smart Regenerative Charging (SRC) is also affected by incorrect battery type.

[Refer to: 4.4 LV Charging System \(12 V\)](#) SRC.

The driver's door switch is used to help identify if the driver has left the vehicle and prevent engine shutdowns. If any modifications are made to the door or switch, then this functionality may be affected. If the driver's door is not used, then ensure this switch is permanently closed (input grounded).

The system uses signals from switches/sensors on the clutch, brake and accelerator pedals along with the transmission shift mechanism. To avoid compromising the safety of the system, no electrical connection should be made to any of these signals.

Impacts to Start-Stop System Availability

Start-Stop is designed to shut down the engine when it would otherwise be idling. Some modifications may rely upon a running engine to operate. Ford's RPM speed controller will automatically inhibit Start-Stop from shutting down the engine when the vehicle is stationary.

Aftermarket systems do not have this functionality so the driver may need to use the Start-Stop button to disable Start-Stop when such devices are being used.

NOTE: The starter relay should never be bypassed or driven directly.

With the Ford fit RPM controller, please be aware that the throttle pedal functionality is different. For instance, if RPM is active, pressing the throttle pedal will stall the engine. If an RPM controller is required – it is recommended to use the Ford engineered system as this is developed with the Start-Stop system. An aftermarket fit system may still have the engine switch off when not expected.

The FordPro feature engine run signal, which is a switched ground signal, on a Start-Stop vehicle is only active when the vehicle's engine is actually running (for example: not active during an autostop).

Added relay may be required for electrical equipment(s) that is used with the FordPro feature to achieve proper function and robust to increased low voltage cycle events i.e. engine auto restarts.

All convertor fit loads should be connected to either CCPs. Convertor fit loads must not be connected to the vehicle start battery, on a twin battery system.

Automatic Engine Idle Shutdown (AEIS)

 **WARNING: AEIS is a safety system designed to automatically shut off the engine after 30 minutes of operation to mitigate the accumulation of vehicle emissions such as "toxic carbon monoxide (CO)" in enclosed areas. This measure is essential to safeguard against vehicle emissions poisoning, which can have fatal consequences. Using the Third Party High Power mode may inhibit AEIS or disable this safety feature. Avoid using the Third Party High Power mode that inhibits AEIS in confined spaces.**

AEIS may be inhibited by the Third Party High Power mode which will keep the engine running at idle. The Third Party High Power mode has other behaviours during engine run and engine off. Use of Third Party High Power mode at engine run may affect emissions performance and vehicle re-homologation may be required.

[Refer to: 4.4 LV Charging System \(12 V\)](#)

4.10.3 Engine RPM (Revs per Minute) Speed Controller (DCNAB)

System Overview

NOTE: For RPM speed control with automatic transmission, please contact the FPSV Technical Support at FPSVHelp@ford.com where limited functionality can be achieved under certain conditions.

This feature enables the engine in the vehicle to be run at elevated RPM speeds. The power from the engine can then be used to drive ancillary equipment. The ancillary equipment may be powered via a Front End Accessory Drive (FEAD) layout (in a similar fashion to the air conditioning compressor).

The maximum power that is available for Front End Accessory Drive applications at any engine speed is 6kW (in lieu of the 26Nm air conditioning compressor).

The Vehicle Convertor should consider any increased engine cooling requirements due to the conversion and running the vehicle's engine under load for extended periods while the vehicle is stationary.

3 Modes of Operation

There are 3 principle modes in which this feature can operate, they are:

- 1. 3 Speed Mode:** This provides the end user a choice of up to 3 preset RPM values of 1100, 1600 and 2030RPM to select from. The end user cannot easily override these values, so there is minimal risk of damage to ancillary equipment due to it being run at speeds it was not designed for. Very limited vehicle speed is allowable while in this mode (up to 2.5mph approx). This is the default mode when the option is ordered from the factory
- 2. Variable Speed Mode:** This provides the end user with RPM speed ramp up and down buttons. The end user is free to select RPM values between 1300-3000RPM in 25RPM steps. A single press results in a 25RPM jump. If a ramp button is held depressed by the end user, then the rate of change is 250RPM/sec. Very limited vehicle speed is allowable while in this mode (up to 2.5mph approx). Variable mode can be switched to via entering the 'Learn Mode', alternatively a dealer can select it via Ford Diagnosis and Repair System (FDRS).
- 3. Idle Up Speed:** This mode allows the engine's normal idle to be increased (in 25RPM steps) in

the range 900-1200RPM. There is not a vehicle speed restriction in this mode, as the intended use is to raise the engine idle to reduce the likelihood of engine stall when ancillary equipment is being run from the engine during normal drive operations. For example: refrigerator units used to keep the cargo bay cool. Idle up speed mode can only be switched to via a dealer using FDRS tool.

System Availability

This feature is built into the latest Powertrain Control Module (PCM) software on all diesel engine variants.

By default, the feature is not enabled unless the vehicle is specifically ordered with the feature from the factory.

Vehicles which have not been ordered with this feature, may have the feature enabled at a dealer via the Ford Diagnostic Repair System (FDRS). There is a dealer charge for this service.

Vehicles fitted with Start-Stop technology may be converted to RPM speed control, however, the customer should turn Start-Stop off prior to starting RPM speed control. For more information refer to 'Impacts from Start-Stop System' in this section.

How to Control this Feature

NOTE: Ford does not supply the Control Box.

A loop of wire (green/white) is provided in the main electrical harness to permit control of the RPM Speed Control software. Cutting this loop will provide two wires to connect a Control Box to the PCM. The loop wire is always on the left hand side of the vehicle.

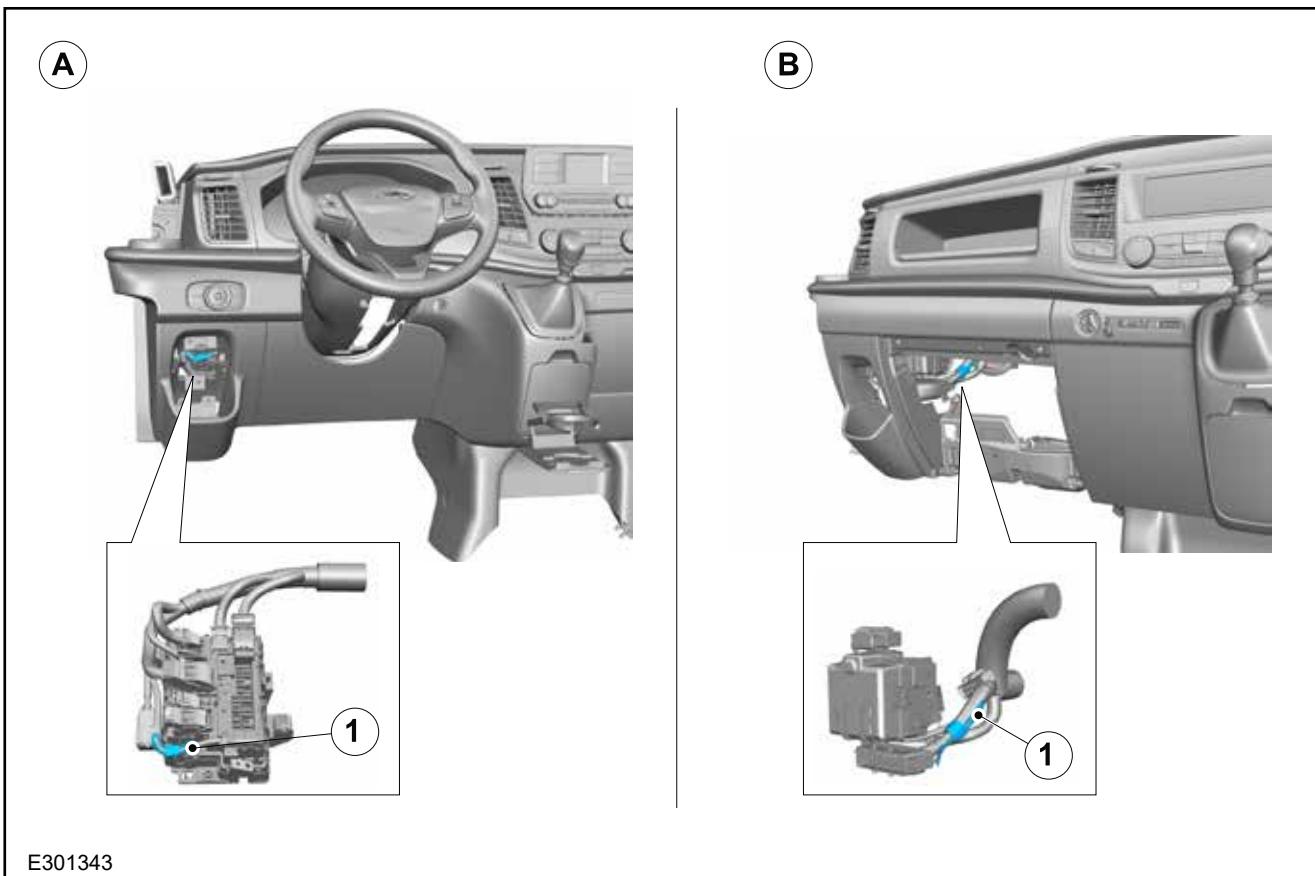
The Control Box needs to switch resistors into the circuit across the two green/white wires which formed the loop prior to being cut. This sort of circuit is known as a resistance ladder, see figure E88295.

The PCM software monitors the green/white wire circuit and when certain resistances are detected they are interpreted as various inputs which control the feature. The switch box can be located where it is ideally required for the vehicle conversion in question, rather than having to be mounted on the Instrument Panel (IP). If the Vehicle Convertor chooses to locate the switch box in a location which is subject to an adverse environment, then the Vehicle Convertor should design the switch box to withstand with these conditions.

On left hand drive vehicles, the loop is taped to the harness feeding the fuse/relay box, located behind the lower instrument panel trim to the left of the steering wheel, this can be accessed through the bottle holder, see (A) in figure E301343. Refer to Workshop Manual for removal of trim.

On right hand drive vehicles (B) the loop is taped to the harness which feeds the 64 way main instrument panel connector, located behind the lower instrument panel trim, which can be accessed through the glovebox, see figure E301343. Refer to Workshop Manual for removal of trim.

Loop Location



E301343

Item	Description
1	RPM Loop wire
A	Left Hand Drive
B	Right Hand Drive

Resistance Ladder

The resistance ladder circuit acts as a potential divider. The PCM has an internal reference voltage of 5V. Current passes through an internal 320ohm resistor (not shown above) prior to passing through the resistance ladder. There is also a (second) 220nF capacitor internally within the PCM between the 320ohm resistor and ground (not shown above) and this is to reduce EMC effects.

To ensure robust operation, it is recommended for all switches that a switch debounce specification is chosen as close to 0ms as possible.

Starting from the right of the diagram, when the key switch is closed, only 2110ohms is in the circuit and the PCM software recognises this as the RPM mode being armed and ready for operation (key switch closed = off, open = on). A key switch is recommended in this position if:

- The Control Box is located externally on the vehicle, the requirement for a key avoids any passers by being able to put the vehicle into RPM Speed Control mode by simply pressing a button.
- Using a key switch where the key can be removed in either the on or off condition could be used as

an aid to anti-theft. If the operator uses a key to put the vehicle into RPM Speed control mode and then removes the key, then the vehicle cannot quickly and easily be taken out of RPM speed control mode. If a foot pedal is pressed while in either the 3 speed or variable speed modes, the vehicle's engine will stall and therefore, the vehicle cannot easily be driven away and stolen. For latest software update, please contact your National Sales Company representative, or local Ford dealer. If they are unable to help you then please contact FPSV Technical Support at FPSVHelp@ford.com

When in 3 speed mode, pressing any of the middle 3 switches (with the feature armed) results in the engine RPM jumping to the corresponding RPM value held in memory (defaults of 1100, 1600 or 2030RPM) for the 3 switch positions. A second consecutive press of the same button returns to normal idle.

When in variable speed mode the same 3 buttons act as ramp up, ramp down and return to idle selections respectively.

The software in the PCM responds to the change of state, so it is recommended that these 3 middle switches be non-latching push button micro switches.

When going from idle to an elevated RPM the execution of the command will occur as the button is released. When going to idle the execution of the command occurs as the button is pressed.

The final button (the one on the left in figure E88295) acts as a vehicle engine stop. It is recommended that this be a red and oversize non-latching micro switch button. The execution of this command will occur as the button is pressed.

All wiring connecting the PCM to the resistance ladder Control Box should be shielded and twisted (33 twists/m) to reduce EMC effects.

All resistors should have a tolerance of $\pm 5\%$ or better.

Switch contact, connectors and loom (loom between the green/white wires and the Control Box) total resistance must be no greater than 5 ohm max.

The PCM to resistor ladder control switch box loom should not come within 100mm of any other harness, especially any carrying heavy loads.

Designs which do not require all the button switches must still have the complete resistor network with the switches positioned correctly within the network.

A suitable two way quality connector should be used to connect the Control Box to the 2 green/white wires.

How to Change the Default Settings

NOTE: It is not possible via either method below, to change the step value of 25RPM per press or the 250RPM per second for a held down button, in the variable RPM speed.

By default, when the feature is first enabled (either via factory order or via dealer using a FDRS tools), it will

be set to the 3 speed mode of operation with preset RPM values of 1100, 1600 and 2030RPM for the 3 speeds.

There are two methods by which these defaults can be modified:

1. Via a FDRS at a Ford dealer (there may be a charge for this)

Via the FDRS, the mode of operation can freely be changed between any of the 3 principle modes of operation, the feature can even be turned off (disabled). The 3 default RPM speeds can also be modified within the allowable range for the mode of operation as detailed in this section.

FDRS access can be purchased from Ford Service Info <https://www.fordserviceinfo.com/Home/SetCountry?returnUrl=%2F148>

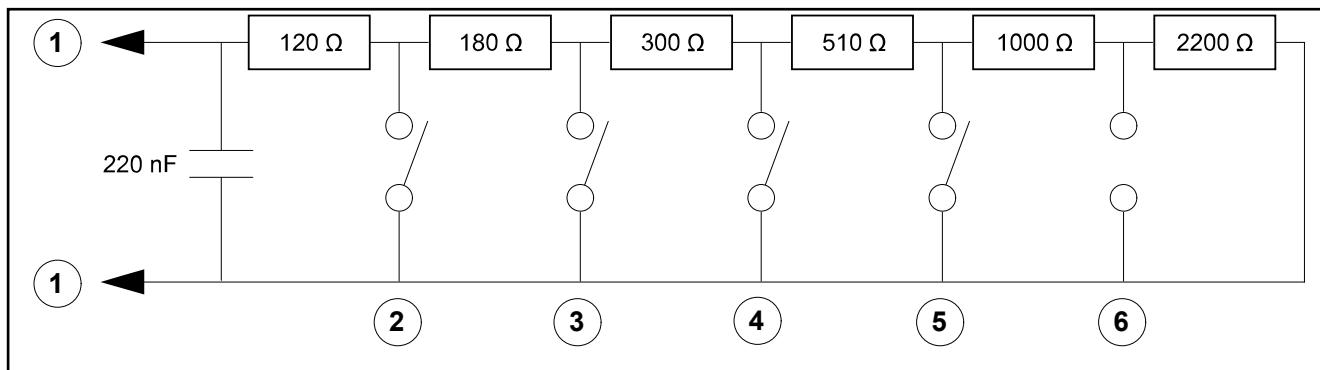
2. Via an inbuilt vehicle 'learn mode'

Via the vehicle 'learn mode', it is possible to switch from the default 3 speed mode to variable speed mode, however it is not possible to switch back using this method.

How to Enter Vehicle 'Learn mode'

1. Make sure that the RPM Speed controller switch box is connected but turned off
2. Start the engine (vehicle out of gear and no foot pedals being pressed, handbrake on)
3. Wait a couple of seconds for the instrument panel start up diagnostic lamps to extinguish
4. Press and release the clutch pedal
5. Press and release the brake pedal

Resistance Ladder Circuit



E88295

Item	Description
1	To Green/White Wire
2	Stop Engine
3	RPM 1 on/off or Variable Control 'Idle'
4	RPM 2 on/off or Variable Control 'Negative (-)'
5	RPM 3 on/off or Variable Control 'Positive (+)'
6	RPM Control Armed or Increased Idle on/off

6. Repeat steps 4 and 5 a further four times (clutch and brake pressed a total of five times sequentially each)

NOTE: Steps 4 to 6 have to be started within 10 seconds of the engine start.

The vehicle should now be in 'learn mode'.

On successful entry into 'learn mode' the engine RPM will momentarily rise up to 1000RPM and drop back to normal idle, which can be seen by monitoring the rev counter needle while performing step 6 above.

How to Select Between Modes

NOTE: If the engine stalls at the initial brake pedal input then the vehicle was not in - or has dropped out of - learn mode and you will have to restart the learn procedure.

1. Enter learn mode (see directions above)
2. Arm the RPM speed controller (turn the key switch to On)

If the vehicle is already in 3 speed mode (the initial default):

3. Press and release the brake pedal five times

The vehicle should now be in variable speed mode. The new settings can be saved and learn mode exited (see below).

OR

4. Press and release the brake pedal once
- The vehicle should now be in 3 speed mode. The new settings can be saved and learn mode exited (see below).

Using this method, it is easy to change between these two modes of operation for the RPM speed controller.

How to Change the 3 Pre-set Default RPM Values in the 3 Speed Mode

NOTE: If the engine RPM responds to the initial RPM button press, then the vehicle has not entered 'learn mode' correctly and you will have to restart the procedure. If the engine stalls at the brake or accelerator pedal inputs then the vehicle was not in - or has dropped out of - 'learn mode' and you will have to restart the procedure.

1. Enter 'learn mode' (see directions above)
2. Arm the RPM speed controller (turn the key switch to 'On')
3. Press and release the brake pedal once
4. Press and release the RPM button that requires re-programming
5. Use the accelerator pedal to rev the engine to the new desired RPM speed and hold at this speed (only speeds between 1200 to 3000 RPM can be selected in 3 speed mode)

6. Press and release the same RPM button to reset the stored RPM speed to the current engine RPM

7. Release the accelerator pedal

8. Repeat steps 4 to 7 for the remaining RPM buttons.

The three RPM speeds should now be reprogrammed to the new RPM speeds. The new settings can be saved and 'learn mode' exited (see below).

How to Save New Settings and Exit from 'Learn Mode'

NOTE: The engine stalling indicates that the settings should have been saved and the vehicle has exited from 'learn mode'. Learn mode however is very specific that the exact steps are taken in the correct order and within certain time limits otherwise the learn procedure fails and it may take several attempts to get this order and timing correct and a successful modification from the default settings.

1. From within the 'learn mode' and with the RPM Speed Control switch box 'armed', fully press and release the clutch pedal at least five times in quick succession. The engine may stall out on the last depress which is normal, however if the engine does not stall out after at least 5 clutch pedal depresses, then you can key off after the sequence of rapid clutch depresses
2. Restart the engine and test the new settings, repeat above procedures if necessary,

Troubleshooting - Reasons Why RPM Speed Control Operation May Stop or Fail to Start

The RPM Speed control software monitors vehicle information during operation in RPM speed control mode and will drop out of RPM speed control and/or stall the engine should any inhibit signals be detected. For example:

- If the engine temperature becomes too hot then RPM speed control will stop in order to protect the engine
- If the engine oil lamp illuminates then RPM speed control will stop in order to protect the engine.
- If the low fuel level lamp illuminates then RPM speed control will stop so that the vehicle can be driven to a refuelling point
- If the vehicle speed exceeds approx 2.5mph while in 3 speed or variable speed modes, then RPM speed control will stop. RPM speed control should normally be operated with the handbrake on, but some uses may require a low level of vehicle 'creep' during RPM speed control operation
- The software monitors for 'stuck on' buttons on the control switch box, this may result in RPM speed control being halted. A button that is held down for too long may be registered by the software as a 'stuck' button
- The software monitors the foot pedals, if depressed these may stall the engine if in 3 speed

mode or variable speed mode (does not apply to idle up speed)

- If the control switch box circuitry significantly exceeds 2110ohms or there is a short circuit then RPM speed control will not be possible
- If a PTO conversion has been attempted on a vehicle with a non-anti lock braking System (ABS) then RPM speed control will fail due to vehicle speed being registered via a transmission speed sensor and/or the need to press the clutch in order to put the vehicle in gear while in RPM speed control mode
- The engine should be running prior to a RPM Speed Control Box OFF to ON transition. The "RPM Speed Control Box" should be turned OFF prior to an Ignition switch OFF to ON, or ON to OFF transition. If the "RPM Speed Control Box" is left ON prior to an Ignition Switch OFF to ON transition, the engine may fail to restart (cranks then stalls), or the "RPM Controller" RPM button requests will be ignored for 3-Speed Mode/Variable Speed Mode

For additional information on DPF Refer to: [3.7 Exhaust System](#)

4.10.5 Changing Vehicle Speed Maximum Setting

The Vehicle Speed Maximum Setting can be changed via the IDS menu under the following tabs: Toolbox, Powertrain, Service, Functions, PCM. The IDS on screen menus will guide the dealer through the options and setup.

IDS/FDRS access can be purchased from Ford Service Info <https://www.fordserviceinfo.com/Home>

4.10.4 Diesel Particulate Filter (DPF) and RPM Speed Control

The DPF captures soot in the exhaust fumes to improve vehicle exhaust emissions. The condition of the DPF is monitored by the vehicle's electronic systems. Under normal driving conditions a regeneration feature is automatically triggered to clean the filter. If the DPF becomes full, a red engine warning lamp illuminates on the instrument cluster and the vehicle will need to be taken into the local Ford dealer to have the DPF specially purged.

Vehicles fitted with DPF, running under RPM Speed Control with the engine running under load at elevated idle, may produce soot build up over time. With the vehicle stationary, the DPF is unable to start a regeneration event. It is therefore recommended that Vehicle Convertors advise operators to break up any long periods under RPM Speed Control operation with some normal driving to permit the DPF to regenerate. Rapid cycling of the engine RPM, while in the RPM Speed Control mode, should be restricted where possible, as RPM transients increase soot generation rate. Where the anticipated use for RPM Speed Control is expected to be for longer durations, it is strongly recommended that the Operator Commanded Regeneration (OCR) option is also specified in conjunction with RPM Speed Control (check with your local Ford dealer for availability of option). OCR allows the driver/operator to manually perform a DPF regeneration while the vehicle is stationary, after confirming that it is safe to do so.



WARNING: Do not park or idle your vehicle over dry leaves, dry grass or other combustible material. The DPF regeneration process creates very high exhaust gas temperatures. The exhaust will radiate a considerable amount of heat during and after DPF regeneration and after the engine has stopped. This is a potential fire hazard.

4.11 Tachograph



CAUTION: Tachograph is not available with FWD Automatic Transmission (6F55)

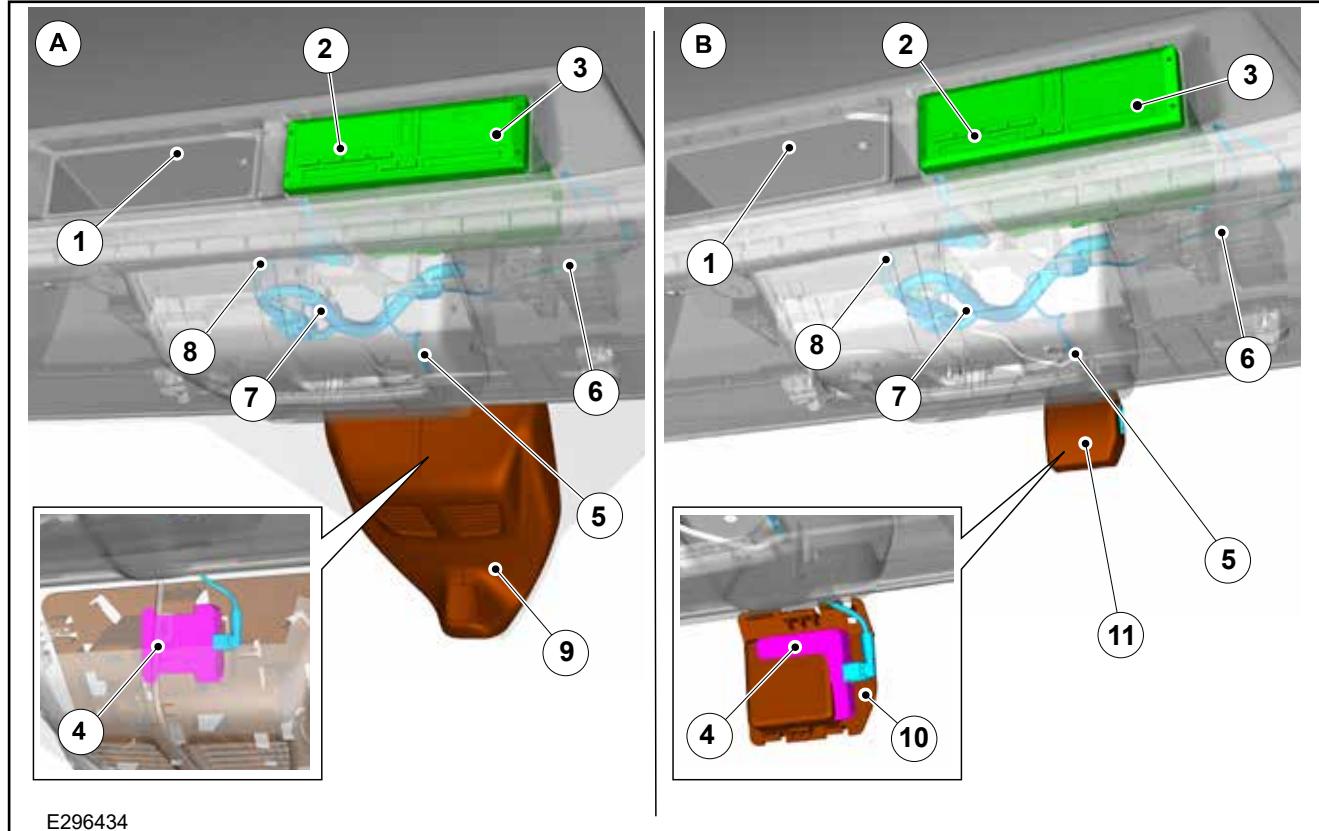
NOTE: For further information please contact your National Sales Company representative or local Ford dealer. If they are unable to help you then please contact FPSV Technical Support at FPSVHelp@ford.com

NOTE: Ford Motor Company is not responsible for calibration of any tachograph unit.

It is recommended that any vehicle that requires a tachograph is sent to an authorized Continental Tachograph Service Centre (previously known as Siemens VDO) for system installation and calibration.

Details of all recommended service centres can be found on Continental/VDO web sites. These sites also contain details of current regulations and tachograph operation.

Tachograph and DSRC Harness Mounting



E296434

Item	Description
A	If Image Processing Module A (IPMA) Bracket Present
B	If IPMA Bracket Not Present
1	Position of Tachograph if RHD
2	Position of Tachograph if LHD
3	Tachograph Digital Head Unit 4.1
4	DSRC Antenna
5	DSRC Harness 1
6	DSRC Harness 2
7	Tachograph Overhead Shelf main Harness
8	Tachograph Harness
9	IPMA Bracket
10	DSRC Carrier Base
11	DSRC Carrier Cover

4.11.1 Legislation

! **WARNING: All tachographs require the same wiring connections as this is controlled by tachograph legislation.**

NOTE: Digital Tachograph (DTCO) and Designated Short Range Communication (DSRC) is the legal requirement for Europe.

NOTE: Ford Motor Company is not responsible for calibration of any tachograph unit.

4.11.2 Tachograph and DSRC Harness Mounting

Pin Assignment

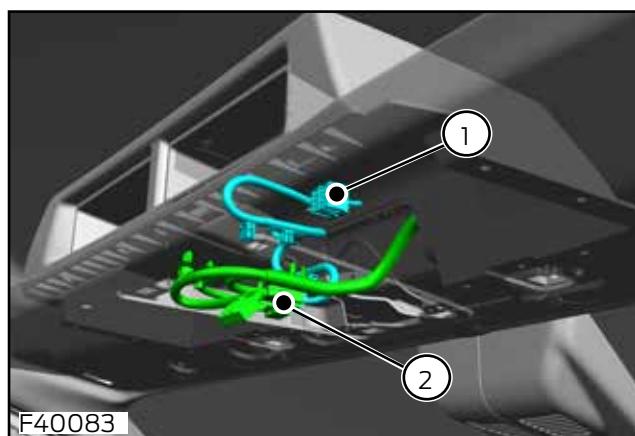
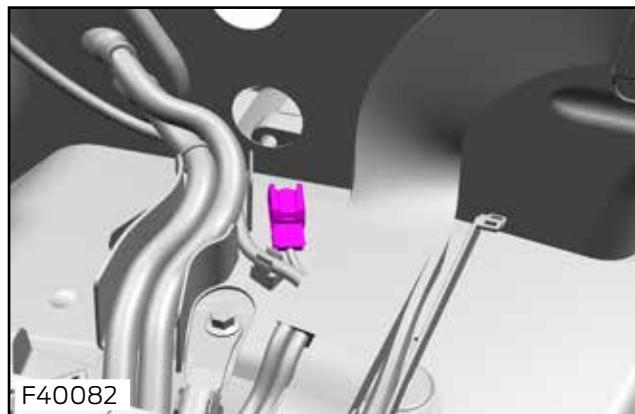
For detailed information about pin assignments please contact your local Ford dealer. If they are unable to help you then please contact FPSV Technical Support at FPSVHelp@ford.com

Wiring

The tachograph wiring consists of:

- Tachograph Harness, see figures E296434 for mounting and harness routing
- DSRC Harness, see figure E296434 for harness routing
- Speed Sensor Harness, for harness routing see figure F40084, E296435 or E225083 later in this section.

NOTE: Please check first if the inline connectors are in the floor wiring channel that is connected to Instrument Panel cluster as shown in Figure F40082 and the interior lamp area for the Tachograph jumper wire Figure F40083.



4.11.3 Retrofitting a Digital Tachograph, DSRC and Speed Sensor

! **CAUTION: It is recommended that the dealer carries out fitment process for both DSRC Unit and Harness**

NOTE: It is not always possible to retrofit a tachograph. If a tachograph is required, it is strongly recommended that this is ordered on the base vehicle.

NOTE: The base vehicle ordered must have an overhead console and the correct level of trim (headliner) to support retrofitting a tachograph.

NOTE: For further retrofitting instructions please contact your local Ford dealer. If they are unable to help you then please contact FPSV Technical Support at FPSVHelp@ford.com

NOTE: If for any reason the DSRC Carrier will need to be replaced or fixed on the windscreens then please refer to the assembly instructions in the workshop manual. If the system was not ordered on the base vehicle then the DSRC harness will need to be fitted accordingly.

Item	Description
1	NK3T-14659-CG Jumper Harness
2	KK3T-14K141-K Harness

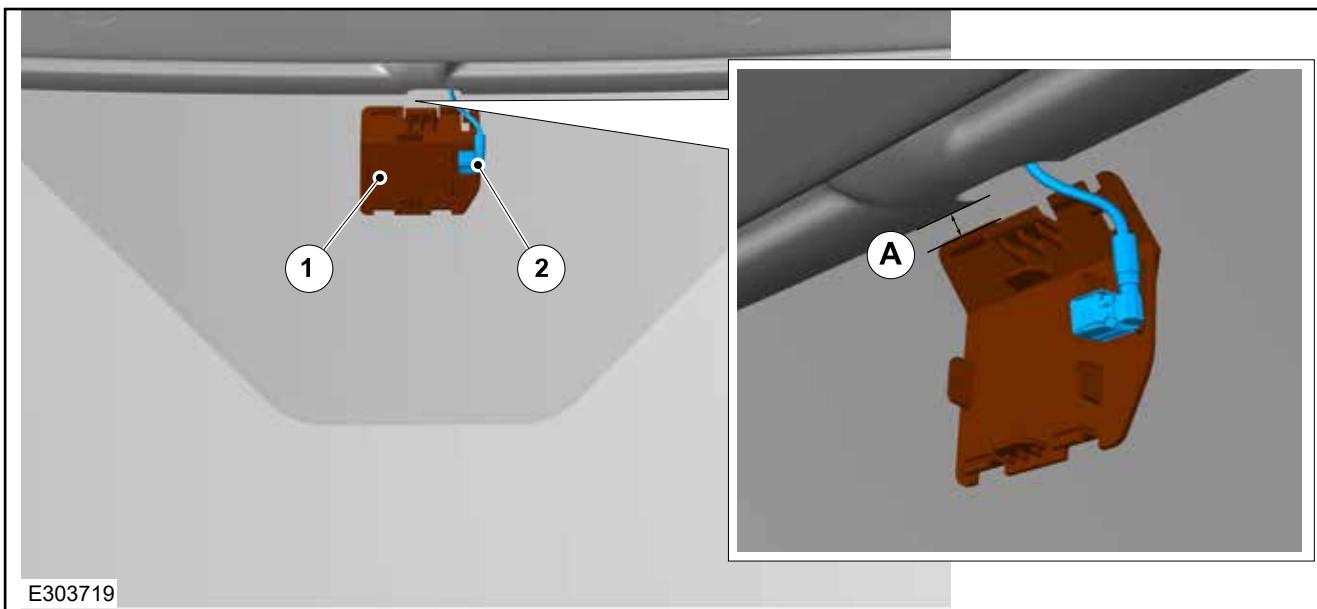
Retrofitting the Tachograph Unit and DSRC

NOTE: The tachograph head unit will be fitted by the Continental/VDO Calibration Centre.

The DSRC Carrier Base should be fitted as follows:

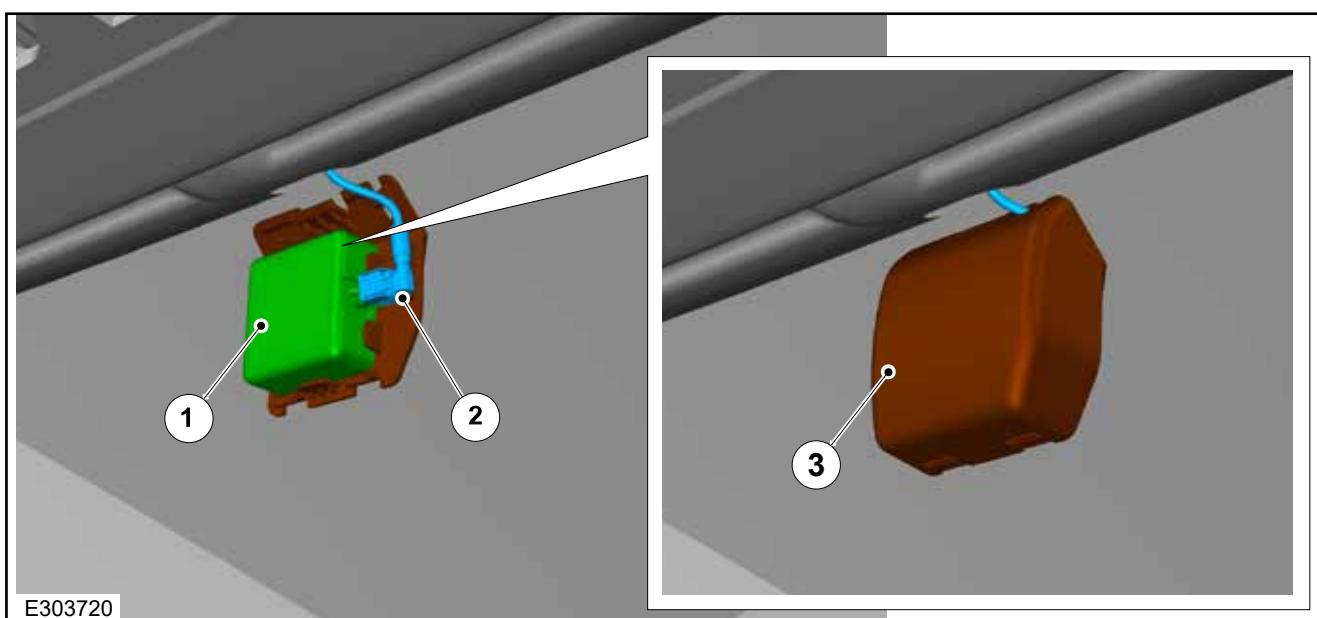
1. Ensure windscreen is dust free and clean
2. Remove adhesive tape from carrier base, align in the correct orientation to the headliner as shown in figure E303719 and stick to the windscreen
3. Remove the adhesive on the DSRC antenna and mount the antenna to the DSRC base carrier (figure E303720)
4. Connect the DSRC harness to the antenna
5. Clip on the DSRC carrier cover onto the base, ensuring the entry clips align and clip into place (figure E303720)

Abc = BEV Only Abc = ICE Only



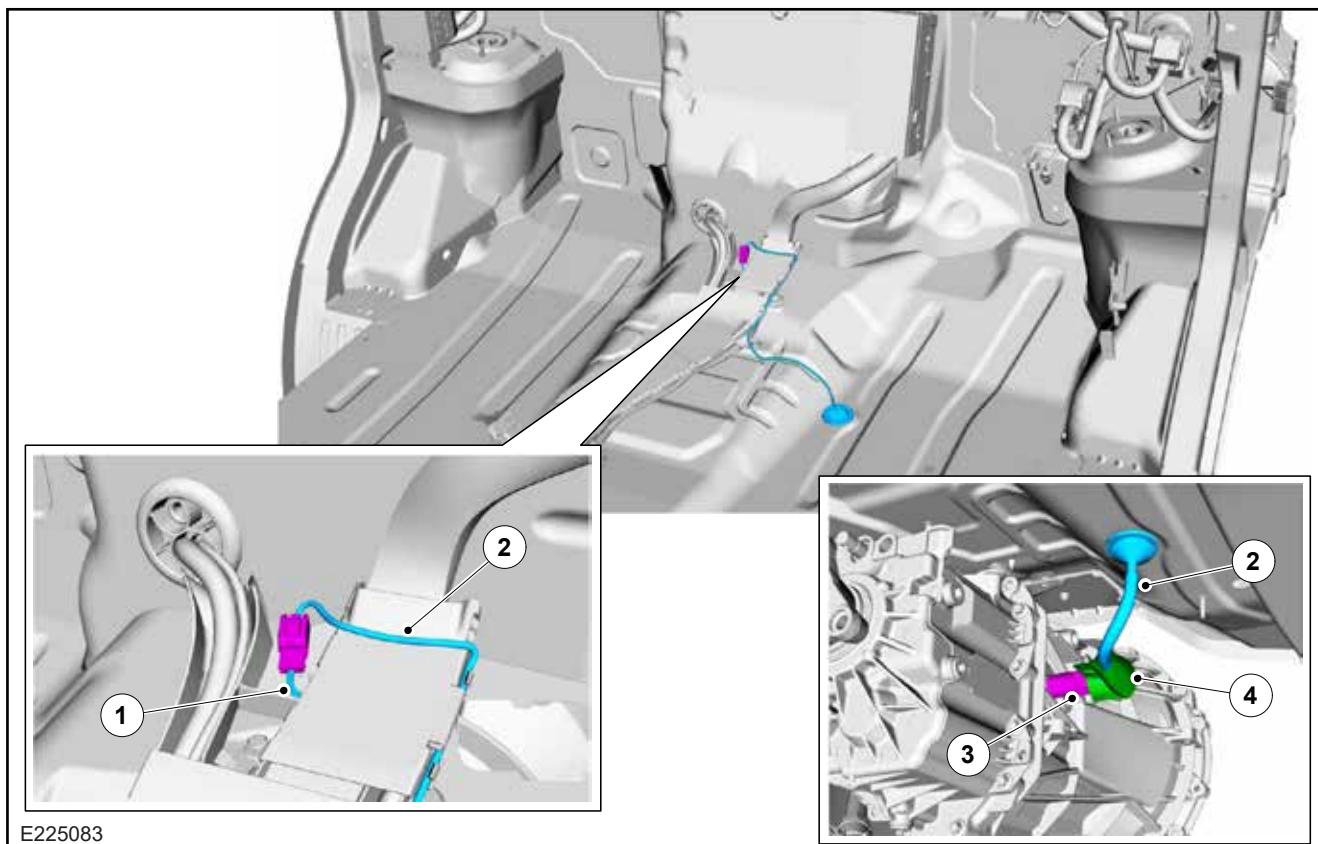
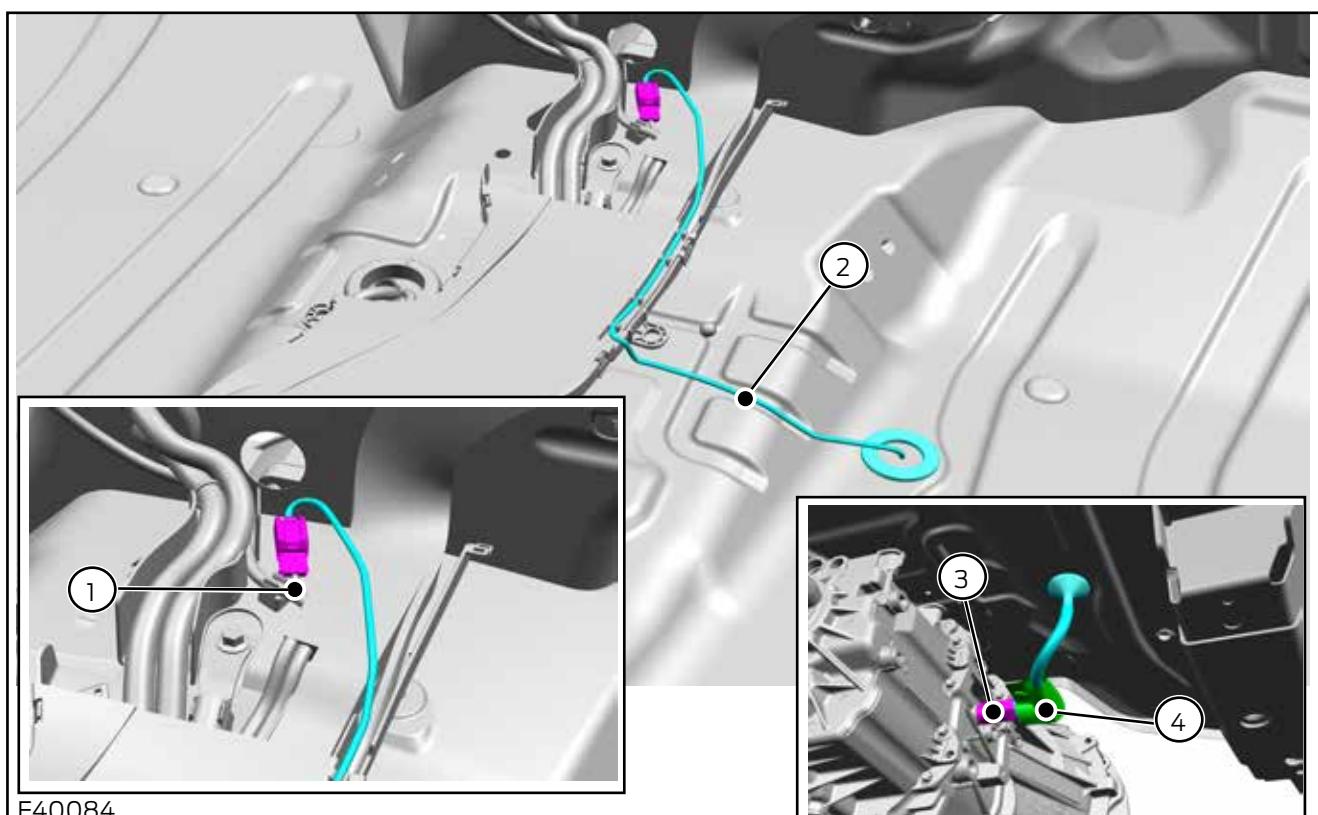
E303719

Item	Description
1	DSRC Carrier Base
2	DSRC Harness
A	9mm



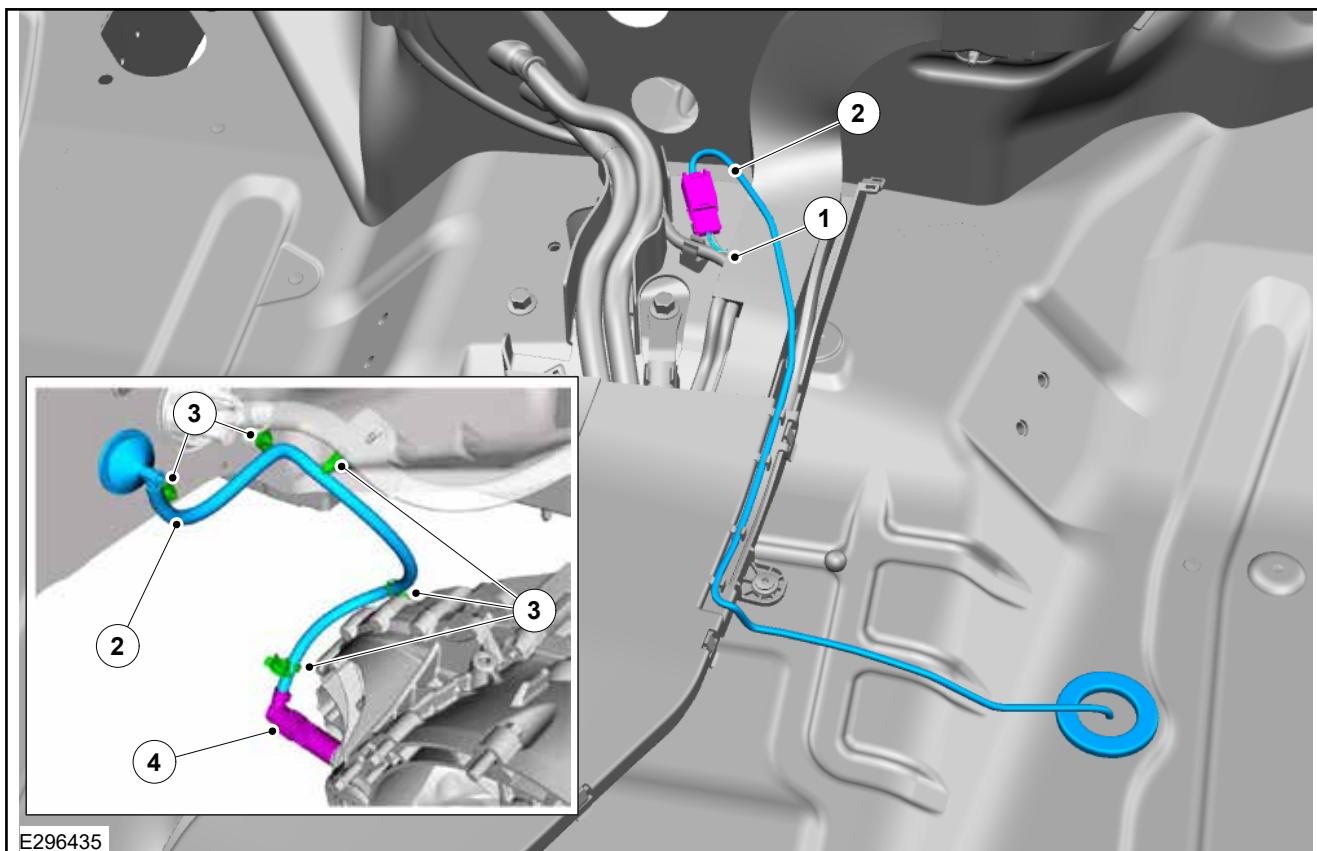
E303720

Item	Description
1	DSRC Antenna
2	DSRC Harness
3	DSRC Carrier Cover

Tachograph Speed Sensor Harness Routing - RWD Manual Transmission**Tachograph Speed Sensor Harness Routing - AWD Manual Transmission**

Item	Description
1	Main Harness
2	Tachograph Speed Sensor Harness through floor
3	Sensor into Transmission
4	Heat Shield

Tachograph Speed Sensor Harness Routing - FWD Manual Transmission



E296435

Item	Description
1	Main Harness
2	Tachograph Speed Sensor Harness
3	Clips
4	Sensor into Transmission (KK2T-14K141-L*)

Retrofitting the Speed Sensor — See figures E296435, E225083, F40084.

1. Locate the sensor housing
2. Remove the protective cap
3. Fit the speed sensor
4. Fit the supporting wiring harness

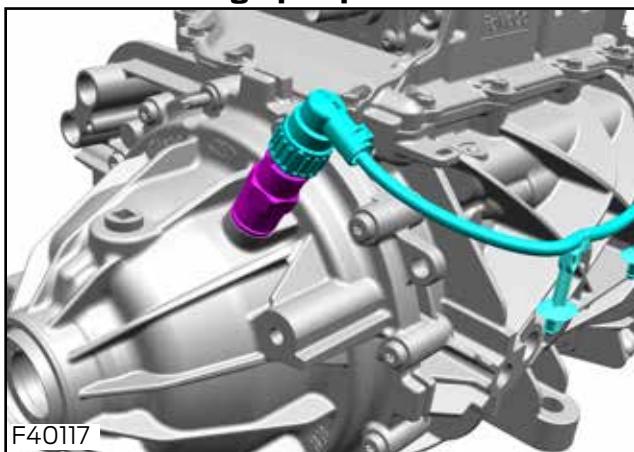
4.11.4 Calibration and Tachograph Retrofitting

NOTE: The tachograph and the cluster have independent speed signal sources and therefore a difference in distance reading between the two parts may occur.

The Continental/VDO Calibration Centre will order the tachograph and fit the unit to the vehicle.

EU Legal legislation requires that before the vehicle can be used on the road, the DTCO tachograph must be calibrated. The digital tachograph activation must be completed by an authorized Continental/VDO workshop. The Ford dealer will organise the tachograph calibration.

E-Transit Tachograph Speed Sensor on PDU



F40117

Tachograph and Speed Sensor Aftermarket Parts

Parts Required to Support Aftermarket Retrofitting of a Digital Tachograph and Speed Sensor

Part Number	Description
Mounting Parts	
4C1T-18923-A*	Metal Frame
Tachograph Units	
PK3T-17A266-AB	Digital Head Unit 4.1a EU Countries (May 2024 onwards)
PK3T-17A266-AA	Digital Head Unit 4.1 EU Countries
KK2T-17A266-A*	Digital Head Unit 3.0a AETR Countries
Speed Sensor	
KK2T-17K321-A*	BEV
KK2T-17K321-A*	Manual Transmission FWD and Auto Transmission RWD
KK3T-17K321-A*	Manual Transmission AWD & RWD
Wiring Harness	
KK3T-14K141-K*	Tachograph Jumper Harness (Headliner - All Vehicle types)
KK3T-14303-F*	Speed Sensor Harness into Transmission (RWD Auto Transmission)
KK2T-14K141-L*	Speed Sensor Harness - Manual Transmission FWD
GK3T-14K141-H*	Speed Sensor Harness - Manual Transmission AWD&RWD
NK3T-14A107-F*	Speed Sensor Harness - E-Transit BEV L2 VBK (MWB + HUKAA or HUKAD)
NK3T-14A107-G*	Speed Sensor Harness - E-Transit BEV L3 VBK (LWB + HUKAA or HUKAD)
NK3T-14A107-Z*	Speed Sensor Harness - E-Transit BEV L4 VBK (Jumbo + HUKAA or HUKAD)
NK3T-14A107-T*	Speed Sensor Harness - E-Transit BEV L2 VBK (MWB + HUKAL)
NK3T-14A107-V*	Speed Sensor Harness - E-Transit BEV L3 VBK (LWB + HUKAL)
NK3T-14A107-R*	Speed Sensor Harness - E-Transit BEV L4 VBK (ELWB +HUKAL)
NK3T-14A107-H*	Speed Sensor Harness - E-Transit BEV L3 CAB (LWB)
NK3T-14A107-J*	Speed Sensor Harness - E-Transit BEV L4 CAB (ELWB)

- * 92A000, 90A000, 94A000 harness families tachograph connector and circuits needs to be checked on the vehicle.

DSRC Aftermarket Parts

Parts Required to Support Aftermarket Retrofitting of a DSRC if IPMA Bracket IS NOT Present on Vehicle

Part Number	Description
DSRC Units	
KK3T-19J269-A*	DSRC Antenna
Wiring Harness	
RK3T-18812-EA*	DSRC Harness 1
RK3T-18812-EB*	DSRC Harness 2

Parts Required to Support Aftermarket Retrofitting of a DSRC if IPMA Bracket IS Present on Vehicle

Part Number	Description
Mounting Parts	
KK2V-19H507-A*W	DSRC Carrier Base
KK2V-19H507-B*W	DSRC Carrier Cover
DSRC Units	
KK2V-19J269-A*	DSRC Antenna
Wiring Harness	
RK3T-18812-EA*	DSRC Harness 1
RK3T-18812-EB*	DSRC Harness 2

4.12 Information and Entertainment System

4.12.1 Audio Head Unit (AHU) - Multimedia in Car Entertainment (ICE) Pack Summary

The Multimedia System you have, as a standard fit, will depend on the market region, body style and model of the vehicle.

NOTE: Depending on the vehicle upgrade you are planning it is important to order the right level parts that include new Instrument Panel Harness, Instrument Panel Bezel and Hood.

NOTE: For further details on Information and Entertainment System, parts and signals, please contact your National Sales Company representative, or local Ford dealer. If they are unable to help you then please contact FPSV Technical Support at FPSVHelp@ford.com

AHU/Multimedia ICE Packs

AHU/ICE Pack	Description
2	Radio with SYNC Gen4
3	Navigation (NAV) SYNC Gen4 with DAB

4.12.2 SYNC Radio and SYNC Radio with DAB

NOTE: There is a black co-axial cable for the roof-mounted single AM/FM/DAB antenna that goes to the radio. There are two co-axial cables for diversity antenna. (Diversity antenna only available on kombi M1, N1 and buses).

SYNC Radio is connected to the instrument panel wiring harness via two 32 pin connectors.

SYNC Radio Main Connector J1

Pin	Description	Type	Pin	Description	Type
1	Battery (B+)	Input	17	Not Used	Input
2	Right Front Speaker -	Output	18	Not Used	-
3	Right Front Speaker +	Output	19	CAN-High	Input/ Output
4	Ground	Ground	20	Not Used	-
5	Left Rear Speaker -	Output	21	Not Used	-
6	Left Rear Speaker +	Output	22	Not Used	-
7	Left Front Speaker -	Output	23	Not Used	-
8	Left Front Speaker +	Output	24	Centre Speaker -	Output
9	Right Rear Speaker -	Output	25	Not Used	Input
10	Right Rear Speaker +	Output	26	Not Used	-
11	Not Used	-	27	Not Used	Input
12	Not Used	-	28	Not Used	Input
13	Centre Speaker +	Output	29	Not Used	-
14	Not Used	Input	30	CAN-L	Input/ Output
15	Not Used	-	31	Not Used	-
16	Not Used	Input	32	Not Used	-

SYNC Radio Main Connector J2

Pin	Description	Type	Pin	Description	Type
1	Not Used	-	17	ANC Mic 3+	Input
2	Not Used	-	18	DRDL TX +	Output
3	Not Used	-	19	Alert In +	Input
4	Not Used	-	20	Stereo In 1 Left +	Input
5	Not Used	-	21	Stereo In 1 Right +	Input
6	Not Used	-	22	Not Used	Output
7	Not Used	-	23	Not Used	Input/Output
8	Not Used	-	24	Not Used	-
9	Not Used	-	25	Not Used	-
10	Not Used	-	26	ANC Mic 1 In -	Input
11	Not Used	-	27	ANC Mic 2 In -	Input
12	Not Used	Ground	28	ANC Mic 3 In -	Input
13	Not Used	-	29	DRDL TX -	Output
14	Not Used	-	30	Alert In -	Input
15	ANC Mic 1+	Input	31	Stereo In 1 Left -	Input
16	ANC Mic 2+	Input	32	Stereo In 1 Right -	Input

4.12.3 Additional Speakers

NOTE: The connectors on the Instrument Panel harness (92A000) and the main harness (90A000) are reversed between Left Hand Drive (LHD) and Right Hand Drive (RHD) vehicles, hence different sets of terminals/wires are required to cover all the markets.

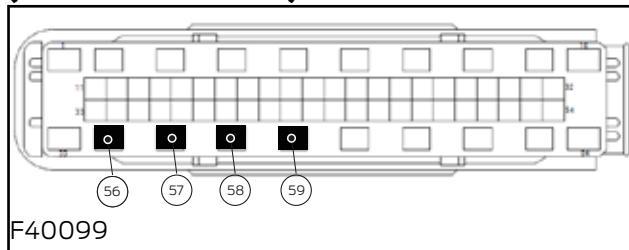
Rear speaker wiring is only present in the instrument panel harness 92A000 when 6 speakers are present. The harnesses 90A000 will only support rear speakers when 6 speakers are requested.

If the rear speakers are not present in the body harness 90A000/IP harness 92A000 in-line connector on low series variants, the rear speakers may be spliced into the Audio Jumper Harness at the rear of the AHU if the harness is supporting 6 speakers.

Each speaker should have a resistance of 4 ohm. If twin speakers per channel are required then each value must be 8ohm.

When installing rear speakers to a camper conversion the Audio Control Module will need re-configuring using FDRS.

Rear Speakers In-line Connector (90A000/92A000)



Item	Description
Pin 56	Rear Speaker Left +
Pin 57	Rear Speaker Left -
Pin 58	Rear Speaker Right +
Pin 59	Rear Speaker Right -

Speaker Options	Feature Code
6 Radio Speakers	IDBAD

4.13 Cellular Phone

 **WARNING: Installation of any non-Ford-approved system is not recommended and operation with associated systems cannot be guaranteed. Any resultant damage will not be covered under warranty.**

Ford offer hands-free and wireless technology (Bluetooth) phone systems (including voice recognition) as factory-fit options, these will also be available as aftermarket accessory kits from your Ford dealership.

These use the Ford MS CAN multimedia bus to operate in conjunction with the Ford audio and navigation systems.

4.14 Exterior Lighting

WARNINGS:

-  **Make sure that the modified vehicle complies with all relevant legal requirements.**
-  **Do not tamper with the base system (controlled by Body Control Module and multiplex architecture) and any feeds taken from the associated wiring or controller.**
-  **Due to significant wiring and control configuration differences between headlamp types, it is not possible to retrofit Bi-Xenon HID (High Intensity Discharge) or LED DRL (Daylight Running Lights) headlamps to vehicles not originally built with them. If Bi-Xenon HID or LED DRL headlamps are required, then these must be specified at time of ordering for factory fitment.**

4.14.1 Reversing Lamps

Reversing lamps are activated by a high side driver in the Body Control Module (BCM). Accessories that add additional load, such as reversing sounders, connected to the reversing lamp circuit, should be connected by a relay. Connecting such loads directly to the reversing lamp circuit could damage the BCM.

The load on the reversing lamps should not exceed a total of 3A (42W), 250mA for a relay.

4.14.2 Lamps – Front and Rear Fog Lamps

NOTE: The maximum width of a vehicle conversion may be restricted below 2400mm in order to comply with installation of Lighting Regulation ECE R48  which specifies widths restrictions for mandatory light components. Fitting optional Front Fog Lamps restricts the vehicle width to 2375mm.

- For non-European Union territories, please refer to local legislation
- For Australia and New Zealand, please refer to ADR43 Vehicle regulations

NOTE: The vehicle's rear fog lights will be switched off if a trailer is connected.

National Regulations regarding inter-connection with other front and rear fog lamps must be checked before designing the wiring circuit. The maximum permissible load with the standard system is:

- Front fog lamp - 2 x 55W (High side driver controlled).
- Rear fog lamp - 2 x 21W (High side driver controlled).

For trailer tow, rear fog lighting, relating to that system.
Refer to: [4.2.19 Trailer Tow Connectivity](#)

4.14.3 Lighting Loads

The BCM exterior lighting outputs have shutdown protection in the event of an overload condition. If the overload condition is not addressed, the output will be shutdown permanently to protect the driver hardware. A dealer visit and/or BCM replacement may be required if overload condition is not removed.

4.14.4 Lamps – Hazard / Direction Indication

NOTE: If LED indicators are used on the rear of a Camper and Ford Skeletal Chassis conversion, the wattage needs to simulate the 21W expected by the bulb outage detection circuit. If LED indicators are supplemental to existing system, then the load resistor may not be required. When adding extra lamps, Vehicle Convertor must check they comply with the legal requirements and that functionality is maintained.

NOTE: For various vehicles CAT 6 repeater lamps must be fitted. See legislation for full details. Check with your local Ford Dealer or National Sales Company representative.

The standard system configuration each side:

- 1 x Front Indicator 21W - max load 27W.
- 1 x Rear Indicator 21W - max load 27W.
- 1 x Side Repeater (Mirror Mounted) either CAT5 (5W) or CAT6 (16W). The whole mirror assembly needs to be changed if moving from CAT5 to CAT6.

BCM Outputs	Controlling Device	Max. Load	Vehicle
Marker Lamp Supply	High Side PWM	27W	14W ⁽¹⁾
Number Plate Lamp Supply	High Side PWM	20W	2 x 5W
Position/Parking Lamp Front - each side	High Side PWM	10W	5W
Position/Parking Lamp Rear - each side	High Side PWM	6W	5W
Direction Indicator Front - each side	High Side PWM	27W	21W ⁽²⁾ or 24W ⁽³⁾
Direction Indicator Rear - each side	High Side PWM	27W	21W ⁽²⁾
Direction Indicator Side Repeater - each side	High Side PWM	32W	5w or 16W ⁽⁴⁾

⁽¹⁾Number Plate and Marker Lamps not to exceed 27W. LED Markers are recommended where available.

⁽²⁾Turn Indicator Supply, smaller load will cause double flashing (bulb outage detection).

⁽³⁾21W Turn bulb fitted to Halogen headlamps and 24W Turn bulb fitted to Xenon HID headlamps

⁽⁴⁾CAT5 = 5W, CAT6 = 16W

4.14.5 Lamps for Wide Vehicles

Lamps - End Outline and Side Marker Lamps

The maximum recommended load with the standard system is:

- 6 x 0.5W - Side Marker.
- 2 x 0.5W - End Outline Marker.
- 2 x 4W - Roof Marker.

Parking Lights

In order to maintain compliance with Lighting Regulations ECE R48 (Parking Lamps), based on the finished vehicle dimensions all Transit Vehicles have single side parking lights disabled. Two side parking lights (including number plate and marker lights) are always available when the headlamp switch is set to POS.

When fitting additional marker it is recommended to use LED's.

4.14.6 Electrically Operated Door Mirrors

WARNING: Do not tamper with the base system (controlled by Body Control Module and multiplex architecture) and any feeds taken from the associated wiring or controller.

NOTE: These options are not suitable for aftermarket or Convertor fit.

4.14.7 Additional External Lamps

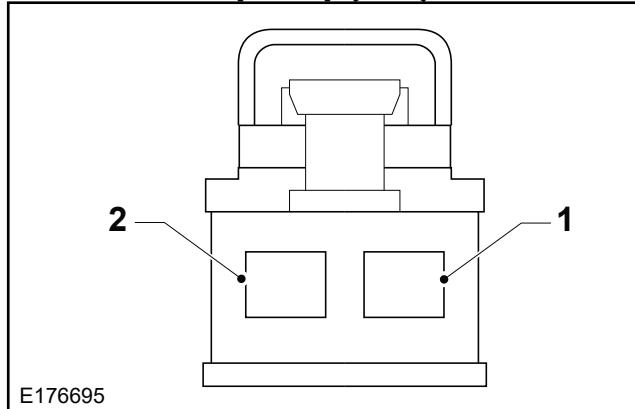
All power for additional exterior lamps must be taken through the Vehicle Integration System (JRSAB) with a suitable switch and/or relay as required.

[Refer to: 4.22 Fuses and Relays](#)

[Refer to: 4.24 Electrical Connectors and Connections](#)

When fitting additional Markers it is recommended to use LED lamps.

Third Brake/Stop Lamp (Van)



Third Brake/Stop Lamp Connector

Pin 1	Third Brake/Stop Lamp on 93A000 Harness - Yellow/Grey
Pin 2	Ground - Black/Grey

A signal for a Third Brake/Stop Lamp is also available on the Rear Lamp connector.

In order to avoid electrical issues due to leakage, and to ensure connector compatibility, a mating connector with seals/plugs and pre-crimped wire and terminal should be used.

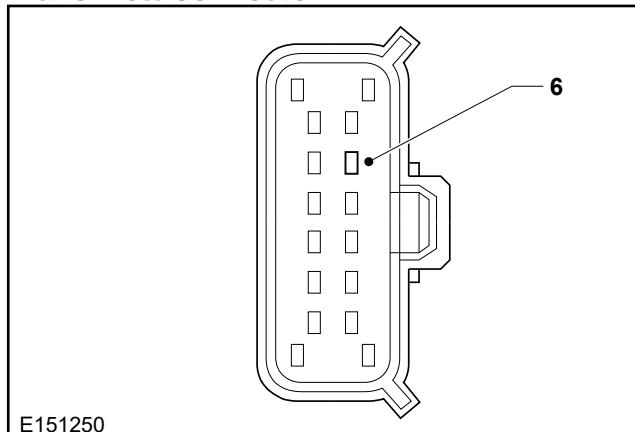
For connectivity, see figure E176695. The Third Brake lamp feed can be accessed from the Third Brake Lamp Connector on 93A000 harness. This connector is centrally located at the rear of the vehicle, above the rear door. For Camper Chassis Cab connectivity

NOTE: Third stop light is not available with the following options (cable is present, but no power):

- Refrigeration unit prep pack
- Motorhome Prep Pack

[Refer to: 4.24 Electrical Connectors and Connections](#)
Camper Central Connectors' section of this manual.
For Chassis Cab connectivity contact your Local Ford Dealer or email FPSVHelp@ford.com

Trailer Tow Connector



Item	Description
Pin 6	Stop Lamp Feed

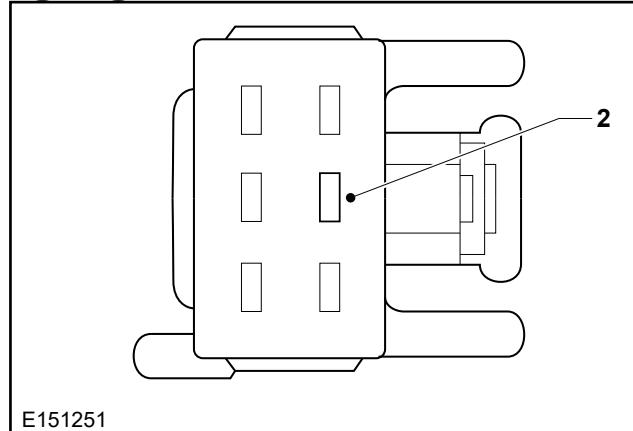
The use of the trailer tow connector is not recommended. In situations where it is necessary, please see the following figure E151250.

This connector can be found at the 14406 interface with the 13B576 harness. Pin 6 is the stop lamp feed. The trailer tow module PZ3T-19H517-AK will need to be fitted to get the system active. For full trailer tow kit, a trailer tow socket jumper is also required, RK3T-13B576-** pending on the vehicle. For additional information on electrics for tow bars:

[Refer to: 4.218 Electrics for Tow Bar](#)

Additional Position Lamps at the Rear of the Vehicle

Lighting Connector



The feed for position lamps can be taken from the lighting connector, at the rear left hand side of the vehicle on 93A000 harness, pin 2 (violet/green), see figure E151251 or direct from the number plate feed connector, see figure E176686. The maximum load is 6W per side.

NOTE: Lighting connector shown in E151251 will require a local ground.

The position and parking functions operate independently.

Where applicable, when the position lamps are extinguished, the side marker and end-outline markers turn off simultaneously, in line with International Regulations No 48, which states the following:

The electrical connections must be such that the front and rear position lamps, the end-outline marker lamps (if they exist), the side-marker lamps (if they exist) and the rear registration plate lamp can only be switched on and off simultaneously. This condition does not apply when using front and rear position lamps, as well as side-marker lamps when combined or reciprocally incorporated with said lamps, as parking lamps and when side-marker lamps are permitted to flash.

Front Fog Lamps

NOTE: In case front fog lamps are required, it is strongly recommended to order the base vehicle with fog lamps fitted already in the plant.

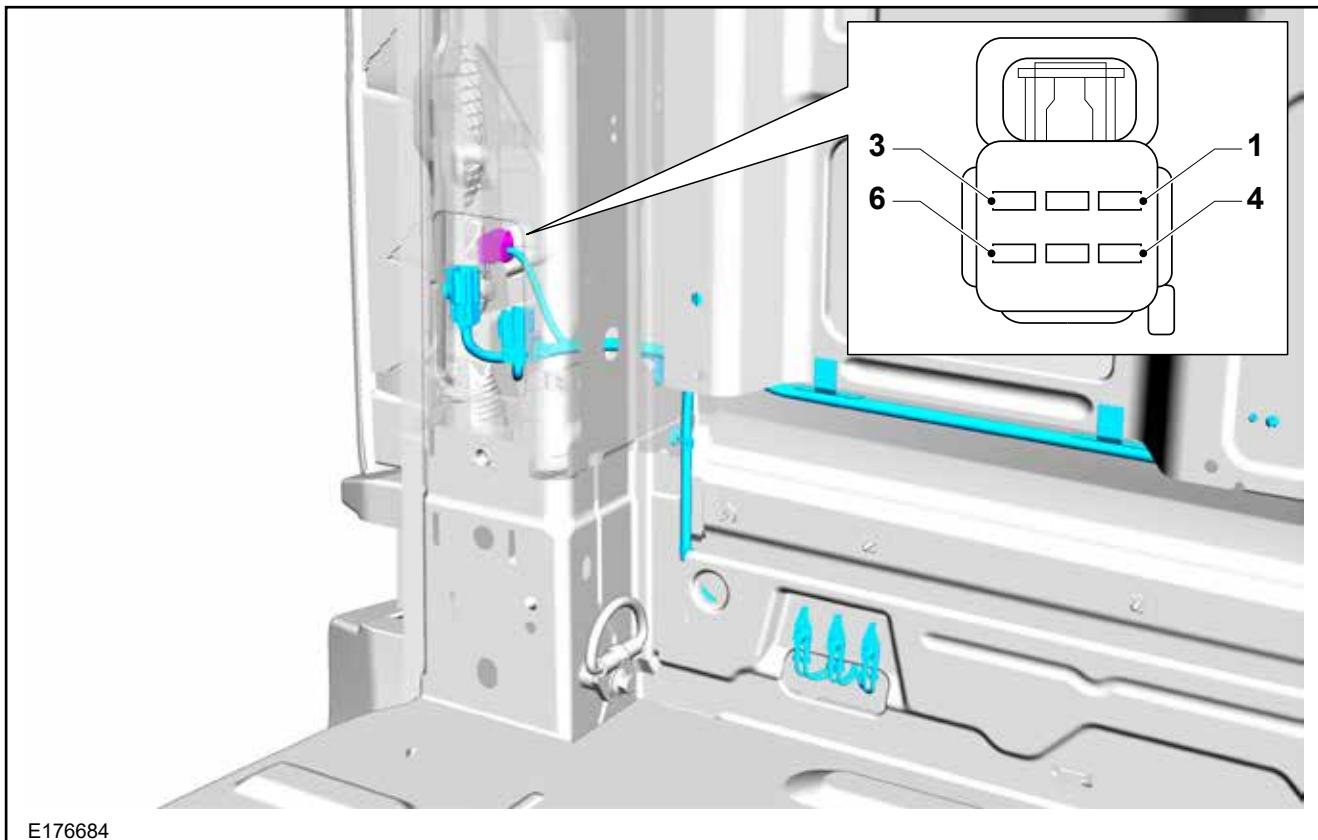
Retrofit of front fog lamps may require major rework, dependent upon the level of features on the vehicle. Please contact FPSVHelp@ford.com for any front fog lamp retrofit questions.

Connecting to Lighting Information

Additional turn indicators must be powered through relays (max 300mA), driven by existing turn lamps.

The maximum load for turn lamps on each side:

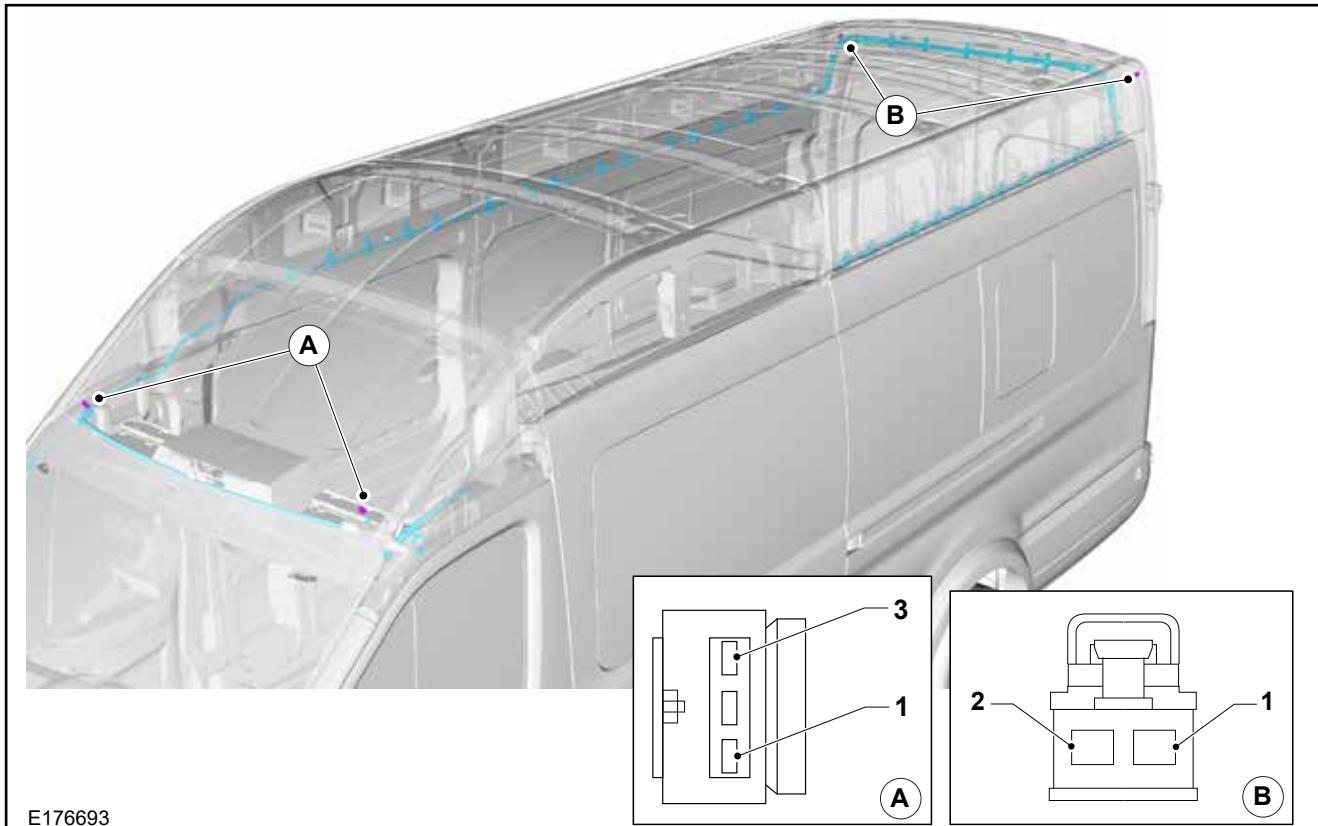
- Front - 27W
- Side (Mirror) - 16W
- Rear - 27W

Rear Lamp Connector - Van, Bus and Kombi (Left Hand Side Shown)


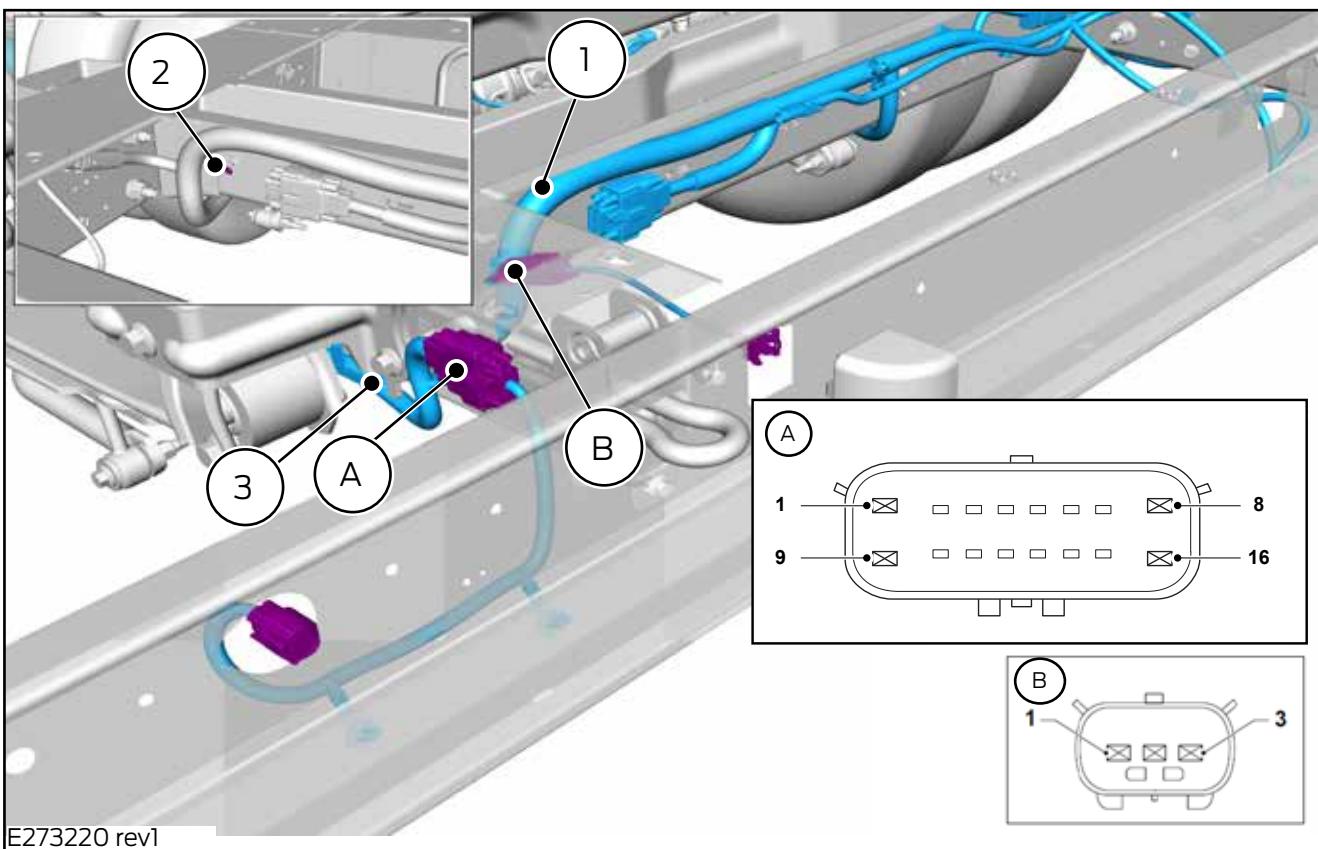
E176684

Rear Lamp Connectors - Van, Bus and Kombi

Lamp Assembly Tail Right		Lamp Assembly Tail Left	
RK3T-93A000-* *	Harness	RK3T-93A000-**	Harness
4S7T-14489-V*	Connector	4S7T-14489-V*	Connector
4S7T-14A459-V*	Mating Connector	4S7T-14A459-V*	Mating Connector
Pin 1	Turn Lamp Right Rear	Pin 1	Stop Right
Pin 2	Stop Left	Pin 2	Park Rear Left
Pin 3	Park Rear Right	Pin 3	Turn Lamp Left Rear
Pin 4	Ground - Pillar D Right 2nd Point	Pin 4	Fog Lamp Rear Left
Pin 5	Reverse Left or Common	Pin 5	Reverse Left or Common
Pin 6	Fog Lamp Rear Right or Common	Pin 6	Ground - Pillar D Left

Roof Marker Lamps - Van, Bus and Kombi

Roof Marker Lamps

'A' Front Roof Markers		'B' Rear Roof Markers	
RK3T-93A000-**	Harness	RK3T-93A000-**	Harness
F3LB-14489-M*	Connector	3M5T-14489-B*	Connector
Pin 1	Marker Lamps	Pin 1	Number Plate Lamps/ Marker Lamps
Pin 2	-	Pin 2	Ground - Pillar D Right/Left
Pin 3	Ground - Pillar D Right/Left	-	-

 **Rear Lamp Connectors - Chassis Cabs (Left Hand Side Shown)**

Rear Lamps - Chassis Cabs (Left and Right Hand Side)

1	Harness - 14406
2	Ground Point
3	Center High Mounted Stop Lamp (CHMSL) wire (Yellow/Grey) ⁽¹⁾

⁽¹⁾ The CHMSL wire located under the convulated sleeve approximately 20mm from the connector

'A' 16-way Rear Lamp Connector 4R3T-14A624-A* ⁽²⁾ on Harness 14406

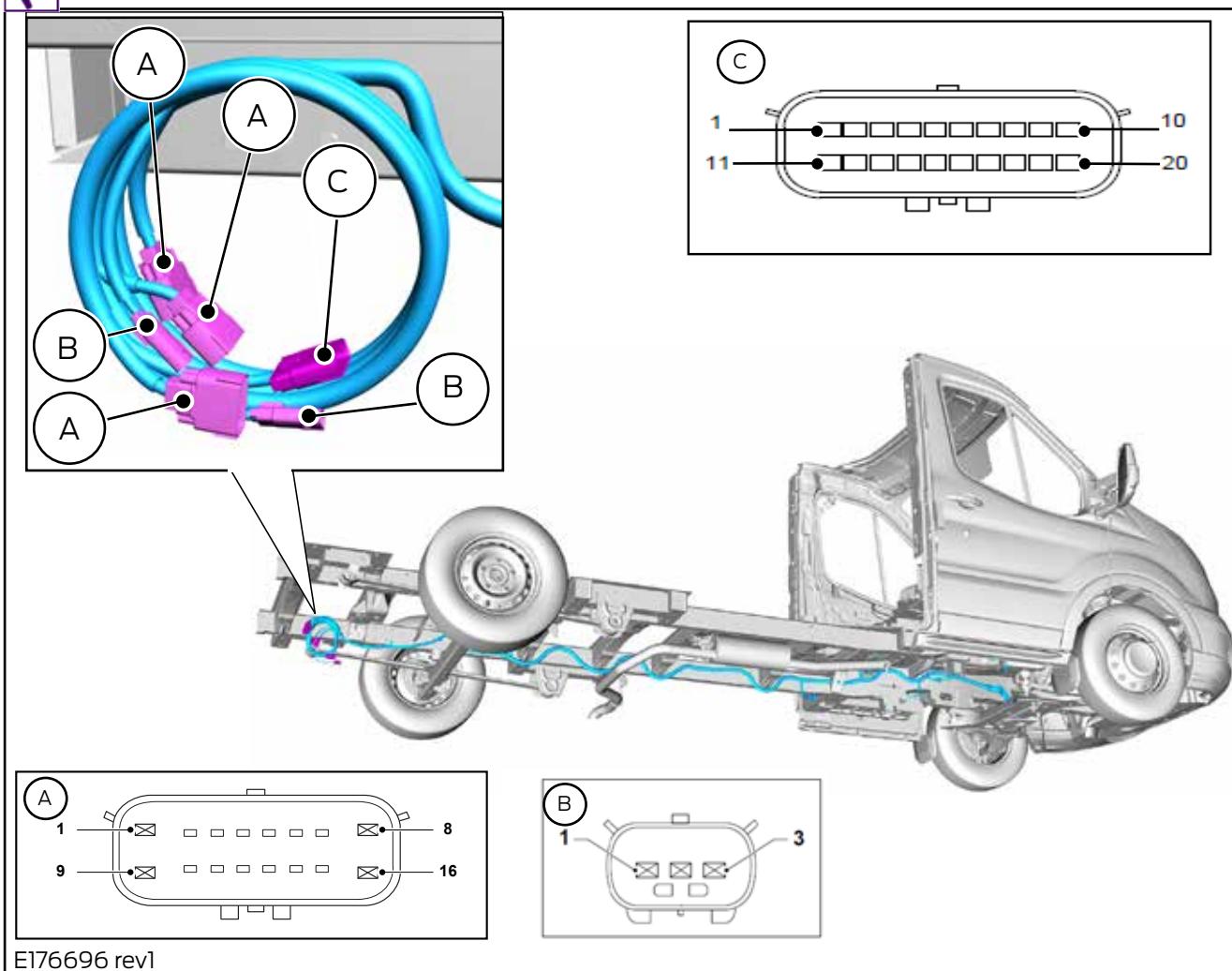
Pin 1	Park Lamp	Pin 9	Radar Connection
Pin 2	Reverse (Back-up) Lamp	Pin 10	Radar Connection
Pin 3	Turn Lamp Rear	Pin 11	Radar Connection
Pin 4	Fog Lamp Rear	Pin 12	-
Pin 5	-	Pin 13	-
Pin 6	Brake Lamp	Pin 14	-
Pin 7	Ground	Pin 15	-
Pin 8	Radar Connection	Pin 16	-

⁽²⁾ Same connector can be found in Skeletal Chassis

'B' Number Plate Lamp Connector 7T4T-14A624-A* ⁽³⁾ on Harness 14406

Pin 1	Number Plate Lamp	Pin 3	Ground - Frame Middle
Pin 2	-		

⁽³⁾ Same connector can be found in Skeletal Chassis

 **Rear Lamp Connectors -Skeletal Chassis**


E176696 rev1

Rear Connectors - Skeletal Chassis

14406	Harness
A	16-way Connector, See figure E178934 ⁽¹⁾
B	3-way Number Plate Lamp Connector ⁽²⁾
C	20-way BLIS Kit Inline Connector (if option is available in the vehicle)

⁽¹⁾ 2 of the 16-way A connectors shown are for rear right and rear left tail lamp connections, see Rear Lamp-Chassis Cab A connector table for pin layout, third 16-way connector pin layout for trailer tow is shown below

⁽²⁾ See Rear Lamps - Chassis Cab B connector table for name plate pin layout

Skeletal Chassis - 16-way Connector for Trailer Tow Connection	
4R3T-14A624-A* Connector	4R3T-14A464-B* Mating Connector
Pin 1	Ground - Headlamp Panel/GOR Right 2nd Point
Pin 2	-
Pin 3	Trailer Tow Turn Signal Left
Pin 4	Trailer Tow Turn Signal Right
Pin 5	Trailer Tow Rear Fog lamp
Pin 6	-
Pin 7	-
Pin 8	KL30 Power
Pin 9	
Pin 10	
Pin 11	Trailer Tow Reverse (Back-up) Lamps
Pin 12	Trailer Tow Stop Lamps
Pin 13	Trailer Tow Pos Left Lamp/Licence & Pos Right Lamp
Pin 14	-
Pin 15	-
Pin 16	KL15 Ignition

4.14.8 Side Marker Lamps

If side marker lamps are required on a chassis cab they can be connected to the dedicated side marker lamp interfaces.

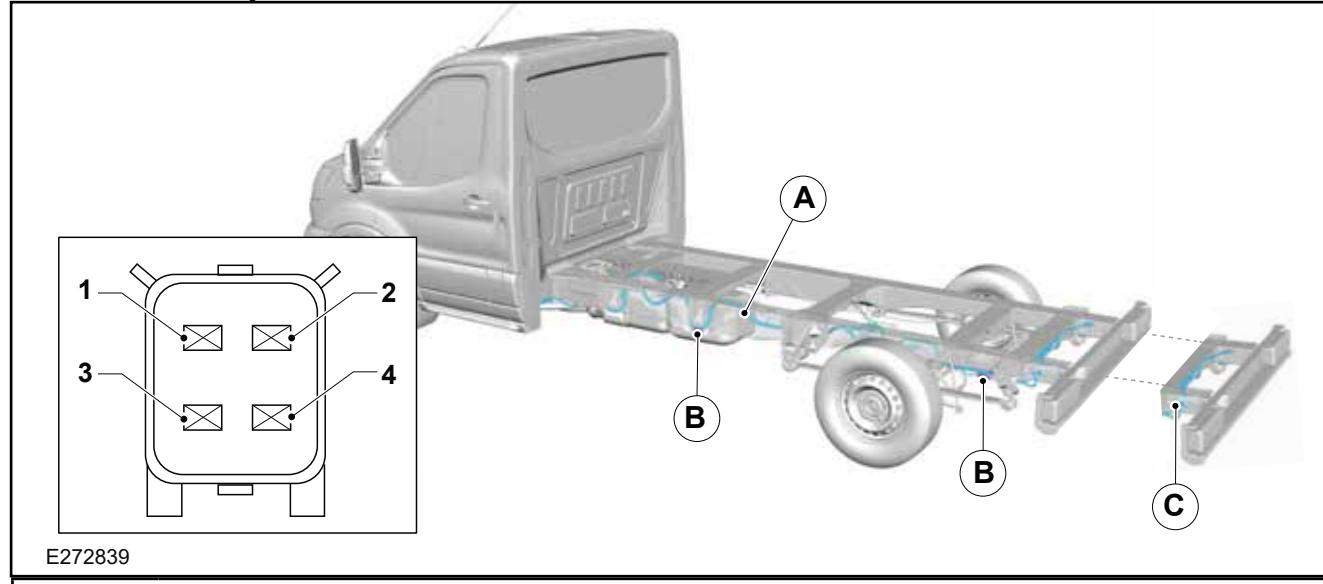
The side marker interface connectors are always located at the main harness along the frame at the LHS.

There are two mating kits available for connection of side marker lamps:

Side Marker Preparation Pack (JDCAH)

The side marker Preparation pack consists of full sets of LED side marker lamps including integral plastic brackets, wiring and mating interface connector. Every set provides two LED lamps (for LHS and RHS) with adequate wiring length to support different conversion types and widths.

Side Marker Lamps - Chassis Cabs



Side Marker Lamps - Chassis Cabs

A	Main Harness
B	Side Marker Interface Connector for L1 - L5
C	Side Marker Interface Connector for L4 - L5
Pin 1	Side Marker Lamp
Pin 2	Not Used
Pin 3	Not Used
Pin 4	Ground

Order Code	Part Number	Description
JDCAH	RK3V-15B484-A*	Side Marker Preparation Pack (including interface connection, wiring and side marker LED lamps)

The amount of sets depends on the wheelbase of the vehicle. There will be two sets for L2-L4 Chassis Cabs and three sets for L5 Chassis Cabs.

If the preparation pack JDCAH will be ordered, the sets will be delivered with the vehicle in plastic bags as loose items. They will be stored in the overhead shelf of the cabin.

Additional single sets (2 LED lamps) can be ordered at Ford dealers.

Side Marker Service Kit

The side marker service kit is to be used to connect third party side marker lamps.

The kit contains mating interface connector and open end wires.

The aftermarket kit is available from Ford dealers.

4.15 Interior Lighting

4.15.1 Additional Internal Lamps

 **CAUTION: The maximum total internal lamp load must not exceed 7A (105W).**

Electrical supply for additional cabin interior lighting may be obtained by directly accessing the connector inside the dome lamp in the cabin.

Electrical supply for additional load space interior lighting may be obtained by directly accessing the connector inside the load space lamps.

For additional information on BCM
[Refer to: 4.3 Communications Network](#)

The battery saver system provides power for the interior lighting for a limited time.

Power Supply for the Interior Lights.

The BCM provides power to the interior lights by two courtesy outputs:

- Cabin light courtesy function - BCM pin C3-2 with maximum load of 5A
- Cargo light courtesy function - BCM pin C3-12 with maximum load of 5A

Each interior light circuit is grounded locally to the lamp. The lamps fitted to the cabin or cargo circuit depend on the vehicle type. To determine the lamps on the rear or cargo circuit:

- Set any lights with a switch to courtesy.
- Close all the doors and allow the lights to switch off.
- Open the door or lift gate at the rear of the vehicle.
- Any interior lights that switch on are in the rear cargo or rear zone.
- Some vehicle types may have no lamps on the rear circuit

If fluorescent lighting is required it must not be connected to the existing interior cabin or cargo lighting as it is not compatible with the pulse width modulated (PWM) lighting circuit and may cause premature failure of the fluorescent lighting.

If enhanced bright lights are required for the cargo area of a van, it is recommended to fit the Ford Enhanced Load Space Lighting. Option JCMAD and LED lamp part numbers BK2V-13776-A*, 4x on medium (L2) and long (L3) wheelbase vehicles and 5x on extra long (L4) wheelbase vehicles. These are controlled from the side load or rear door being ajar or manual demand from the dome lamp in the front cabin. For further information on required parts and configurations to order contact your Local Ford Dealer.

4.15.2 Additional Lighting for Rear of Vehicle Interior

Where higher wattage installations are required, these should be taken through the Vehicle Integration System (JRSAB) and CCP1 or CCP2 with a suitable switch and/or relay as required.

For additional information [Refer to: 4.24 Electrical Connectors and Connections](#)

4.16 Relocation of GNSS/5G Antenna

NOTE: Reception testing or loss of performance due to poor conversion/reinstallation are not the responsibility of Ford Motor Company.

NOTE: For Ford Skeletal Chassis Vehicles the antenna kit will be stored in the glove box.

NOTE: For further information please contact your National Sales Company representative or local Ford dealer. If they are unable to help you then please contact FPSV Technical Support at FPSVHelp@ford.com

Conversions where antenna doesn't need a relocation:

- Air deflectors above the roof (Convertor must ensure that the part is non-metallic)
- Cooling unit mounted at front of box structure (minimum clearance of 100mm to antenna, max. dimensions from the box to the front of the vehicle: width: 1300mm, depth: 500mm)
- Other non-metallic structures above the roof
- Discontinuous metallic structures above the roof (e.g. ladders)

Conversions where antenna does need a relocation:

- Cabin above the roof containing metallic components.
- Other continuous metallic structures above the antenna that are bigger and nearer to the antenna as a cooling unit (e.g. deflectors)

If the conversion requires the Antenna to be relocated, the recommendation is that the existing antenna should be disconnected and left in place for waterproofing. The disconnected fly-lead must be parked to avoid squeak and rattle issues. Alternatively,

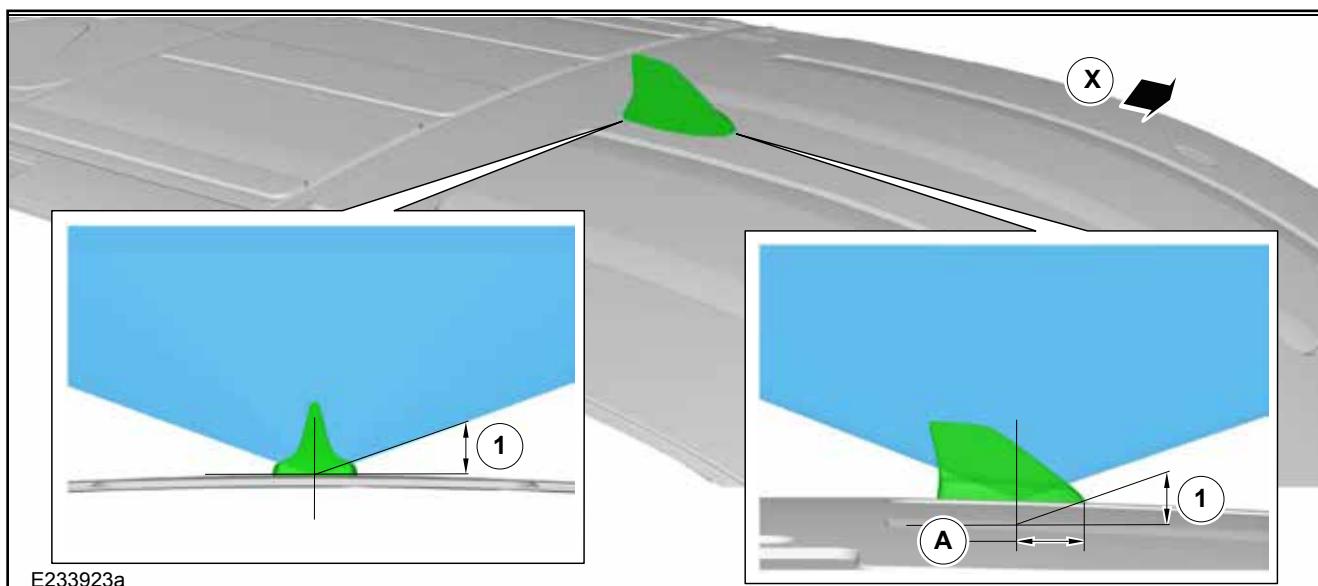
the roof hole of the old antenna position must be sealed waterproof by the Vehicle Convertor.

A new Antenna should be used for the alternative location, due to design intent for a single crimp fitment. The Antenna recommended for relocation is part number PCPT – 19K351 – Z* for vehicles without modem and PCPT-19K351-E* for vehicles with modem, as these are designed to fix to a flat roof design, and fulfills the requirements of the vehicle's infotainment system.

NOTE: The antenna is provided with a seal that fits to the roof surface, but it is the responsibility of the Vehicle Convertor to ensure an adequate waterproof seal is achieved.

If it is unavoidable and necessary to fit an antenna, the following instructions are recommended:

- The antenna must be mounted on sheet metal (ground surface/plane). A metal roof is preferred, the antenna should still function if the ground plane is fitted to a plastic/fibreglass roof. The antenna includes two functions:
 - GNSS (GPS) required for vehicle location, which is dependent on receiving satellite signals from overhead
 - GSM (cellular) required for 'phone' communication, which is dependent on a clear line of sight from ground towers, for example: 'horizontal' transmission path. Hence a repositioned antenna needs to take these requirements into account and should be positioned on the highest possible packaging location, avoiding depressions wherever possible



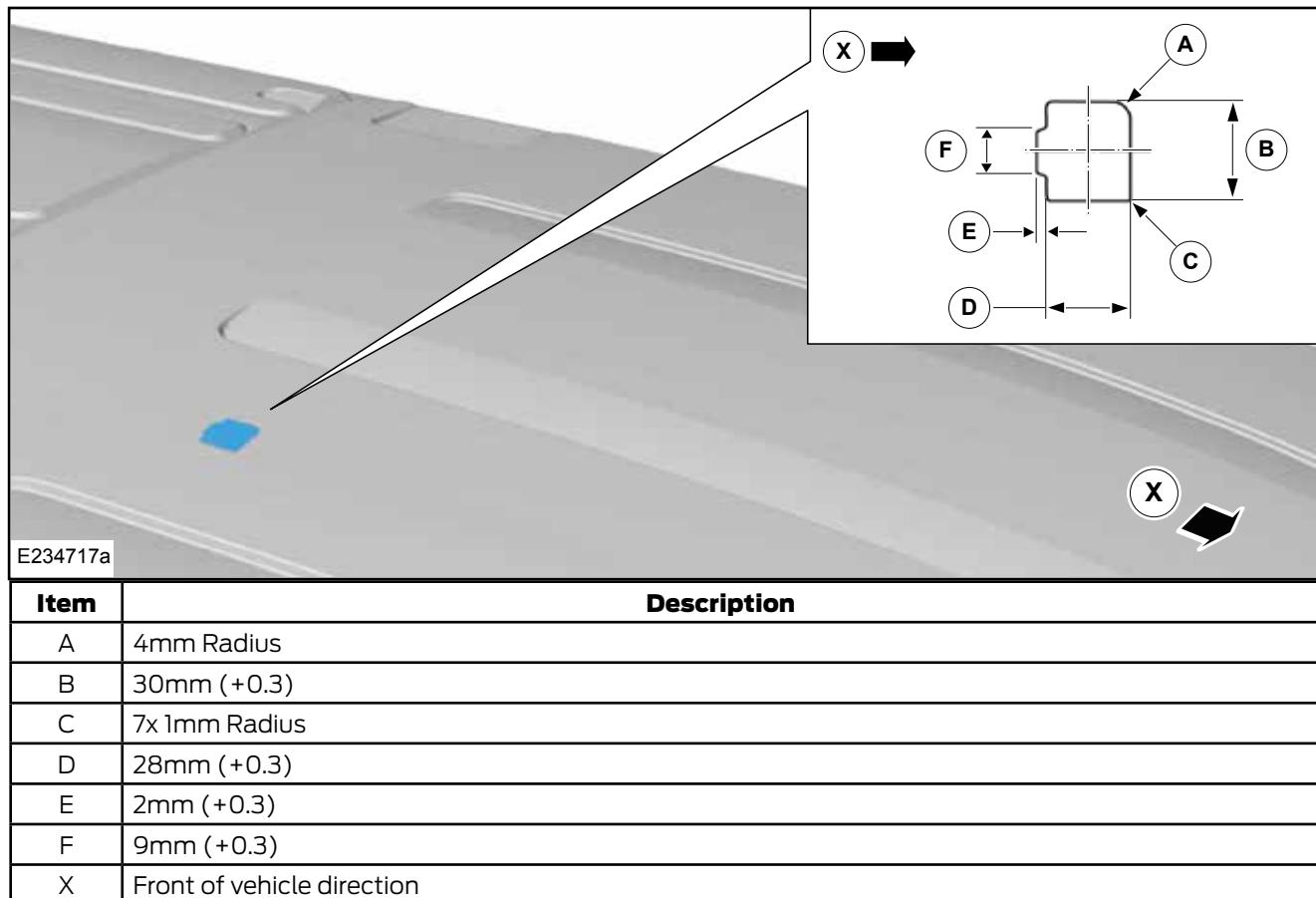
Item	Description
1	20°
A	68.8 ± 1mm
X	Front of vehicle direction

- Provide a minimum clearance of 50mm from all electronic (powered) devices and any wiring harness not related to the antenna
- When mounting the antenna, place it on sheet metal at the highest possible metallic packaging location
- The ground surface does not require any further grounding to the vehicle, it provides a reflective surface rather than acting as a grounding element
- Suitable fixings and sealing are required to secure the ground plane to the roof panel, for example 4x rivets

The antenna base design/mounting requires a specific hole shape to ensure anti-rotation and orientation (figure E234717a). The roof and the position on the roof shown in figures E234717a and E233923a are exemplary only

- The mounting on the antenna (bull shark fin variant) will accommodate sheet metal thicknesses from 0.7mm to 1.5mm
- The antenna family requires a **minimum** of a 150mm radius uninterrupted metallic ground surface area surrounding the mounting hole. No interruptions are allowed
- The antenna must have a **minimum** clearance of 250mm from any other antenna located on the vehicle roof and from any metallic structures above the ground plane (if present)

Bull Shark Fin Antenna Anti-Rotation Mounting Hole



- The antenna must be as close to horizontal as possible, <20° to horizon
- The antenna is attached to the ground surface with a driven fastener from the underside of the plane. The fastener is a captured component on the antenna base

A range of reception tests will need to be conducted outside of a building by the Vehicle Convertor to ensure system performance.

GNSS (free space):

- Check if a DTC is set for a non-connected antenna
- For vehicles with navigation system: Search for a route in the onboard navigation system to verify GNSS connection in a reasonable time
- For vehicles without navigation system: Disconnect battery, re-connect it and check if time is set correctly.

GSM:

- Check if a DTC is set for a non-connected antenna
- Check if the screen is showing a 4G symbol and signal strength

Cable Extension (to be prepared by Convertor)

The overall cable run from the Connected component (Audio Head Unit/SYNC module/Telematics Control Unit) to the antenna must not be longer than 8m for GNSS connections and 6m for cellular connections. For GNSS connections RTK031 cables and for GSM connections RTK044 cables must be used.

Vehicle Condition Before Conversion C/Cab

Cable Lengths from Module to A Pillar Connection:		
LHD/RHD	(GNSS)	(GSM)
LHD with Modem	2234mm	2234mm
RHD with Modem	1079mm	1079mm
LHD without Modem	1413mm	NA
RHD without Modem	NA	NA
Cable Lengths from A Pillar Connection to Antenna:		
LHD/RHD	(GNSS)	(GSM)
LHD & RHD	2132mm	2132mm

Extensions must utilise materials and direction from the table and diagram below:

Prefix	Base	Suffix	Rosenberger No	Function	Single/ Dual/ Quad	Colour	Key code	Connected/ Placeholder
Bull Shark Fin Connection:								
Without Modem								
PU5T	19C041	BA	AMZ010-C00-D	GSM	Single	Bordeaux	D	Placeholder
PU5T	19C041	EA	AMZ032-C00-C	GNSS/GSM	Dual	Blue	C	GNSS Connected
With Modem								
PU5T	19C041	EA	AMZ032-C00-C	GNSS/GSM	Dual	Blue	C	Connected
NU5T	19C041	DA	AMZ040-C00-D	3X GSM	Quad	Bordeaux	D	Connected
A Pillar Harness Connection:								
Without Modem								
BU5T	19C041	AEA	59Z074-000-C	GNSS	Single	Blue	C	Connected
With Modem								
PU5T	19C041	EA	AMZ032-C00-C	GNSS/GSM	Dual	Blue	C	Connected
NU5T	19C041	DA	AMZ040-C00-D	3X GSM	Quad	Bordeaux	D	Connected

4.17 Adaptive Cruise Control

! **CAUTION: For converted vehicles fitted with adaptive cruise control, where vehicle mass or geometry is significantly altered, it is recommended that the radar vertical alignment and system functionality is checked by a Ford dealer. For further information refer to Workshop Manual or Owner Manual.**

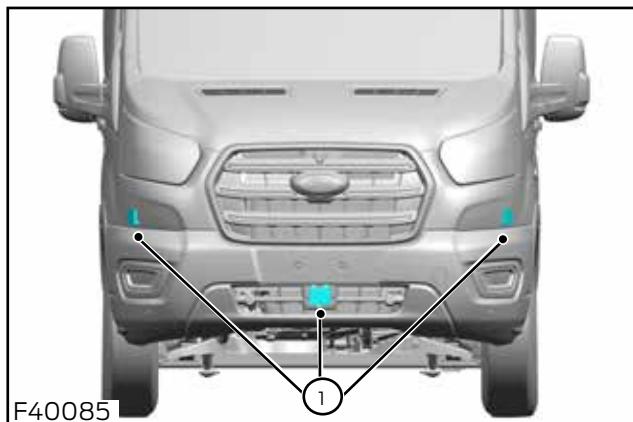
NOTE: Do not obstruct the cruise control radars, see Figure F40085.

NOTE: The vehicle needs to remain within the design axle limits and load latitude condition to prevent adjustment

NOTE: For converted vehicles fitted with an Adaptive Cruise Control Radar, where vehicle mass or geometry is significantly altered, vertical adjustment - via the screw provided - and calibration for the radar sensor needs to be carried out.

NOTE: Do not paint the front grille of the vehicle as this may affect the functionality of the cruise control radar.

Adaptive Cruise Control Radar



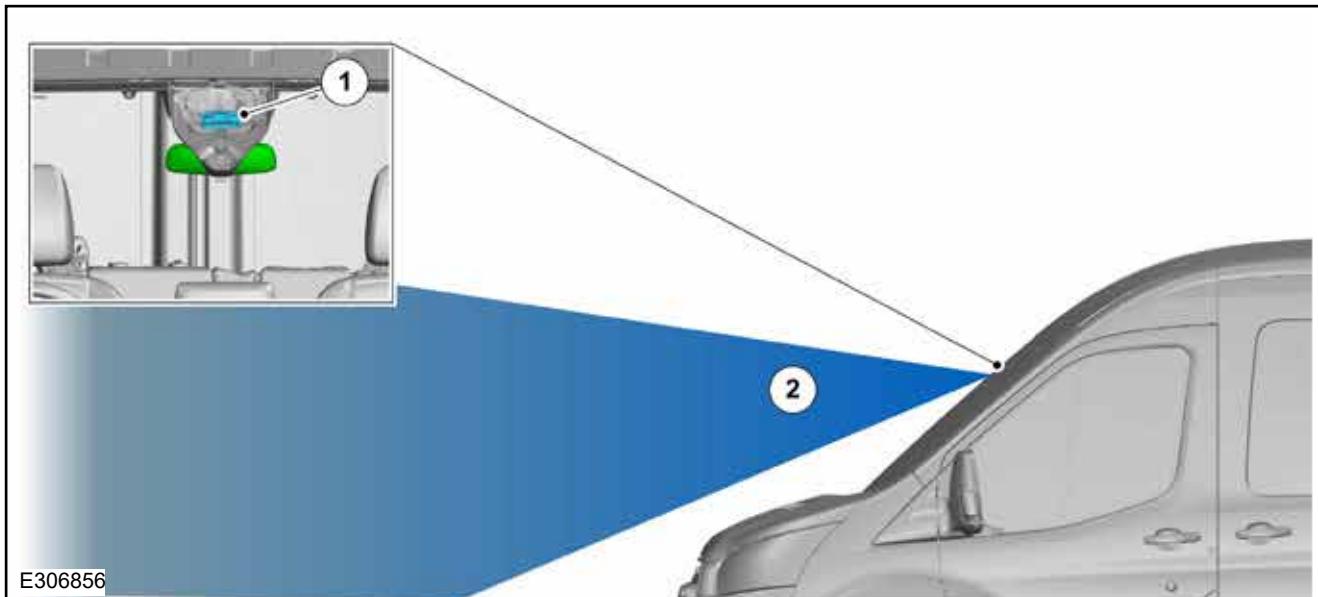
Item	Description
1	Adaptive Cruise Control Radars

4.18 Front Windscreen Camera

NOTE: The Front Windscreen Camera features (if available: Pre-Collision Assist, Lane Keeping System, Auto High Beam, Traffic Sign Recognition, Intelligent Speed Assist, Wrong Way Alert, Adaptive Cruise Control, Intelligent Adaptive Cruise Control) will not function if any conversion or installation is in the field of view from the Front Windscreen Camera.

NOTE: For converted vehicles fitted with Front Windscreen Camera, where vehicle mass or geometry is significantly altered, a new calibration for the camera sensor needs to be made.

For additional information for vehicles with large overhangs [Refer to: 4.22.3 Windscreen Wipers](#)



Item	Description
1	Front Windscreen Camera located behind the interior rear view mirror trim
2	View cone from camera, horizontal direction and downwards to the bonnet edge of the vehicle

4.19 Auto Wipe and Auto Lamp for Vehicles with Large Overhangs

NOTE: Where the modified vehicle has an overhang likely to cover part or all of the rain/light sensor position on the screen, see figure E175197, this may affect the sensor's ability to detect light or moisture to the defined calibration and will not function correctly.

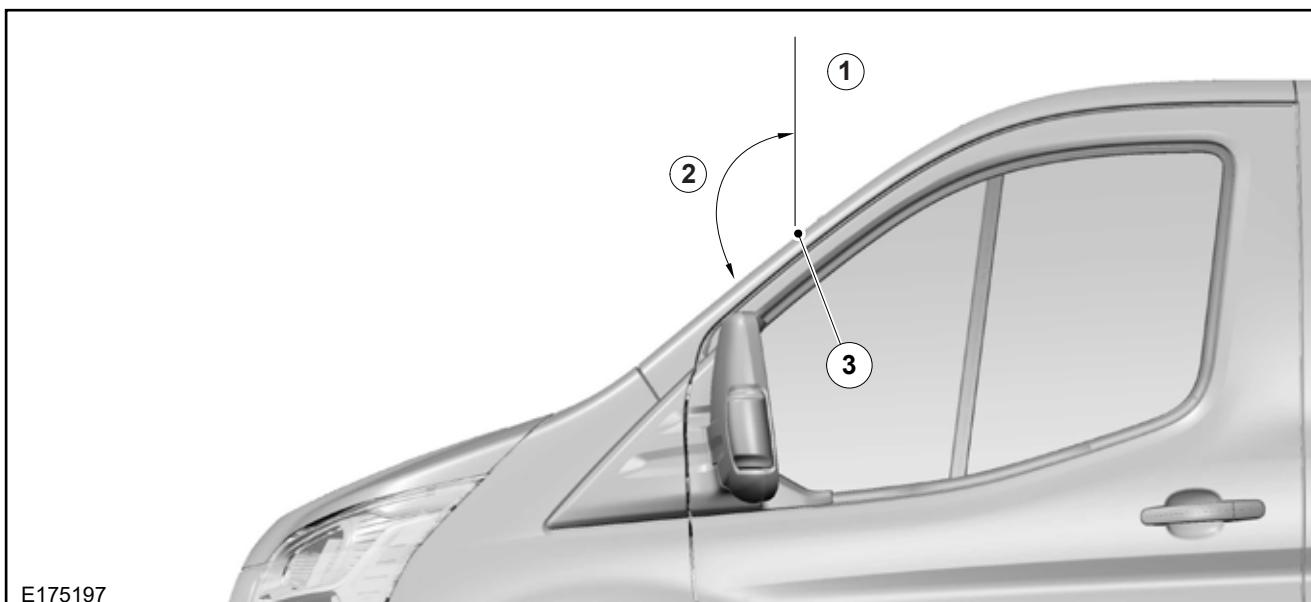
In the event that a donor vehicle has been supplied with these features, the vehicle can be modified to have manual wipers and headlamps in the following way:

For wipers, there is a cluster menu option to switch wipers to variable intermittent rather than rain sensing. Use this setting instead.

For Auto Lamps, changing the headlamp switch to a non-auto switch will remove the auto position and the system will operate as if no sensor was present.

If the Auto Lamp headlamp switch remains, the customer may experience dipped beam remaining lit instead of daytime running lights with the ignition on and the switch in Auto. A Ford dealer can help advise which switch should be ordered and fitted, starting with part number MRK31-13D061-**

Be aware, when no headlamp switch Auto position is available (or Auto is not selected on the original switch), auto high beam (provided with forward facing camera) will also not be available or shown in the cluster.



Item	Description
1	Conversion or installation rearward where Auto Lamp and Wipe feature will function correctly
2	Conversion or installation forward (132°) where Auto Lamp and Wipe feature will NOT function correctly — the feature is not to be specified with the donor or configured Off by the Ford dealer
3	Auto sensor location

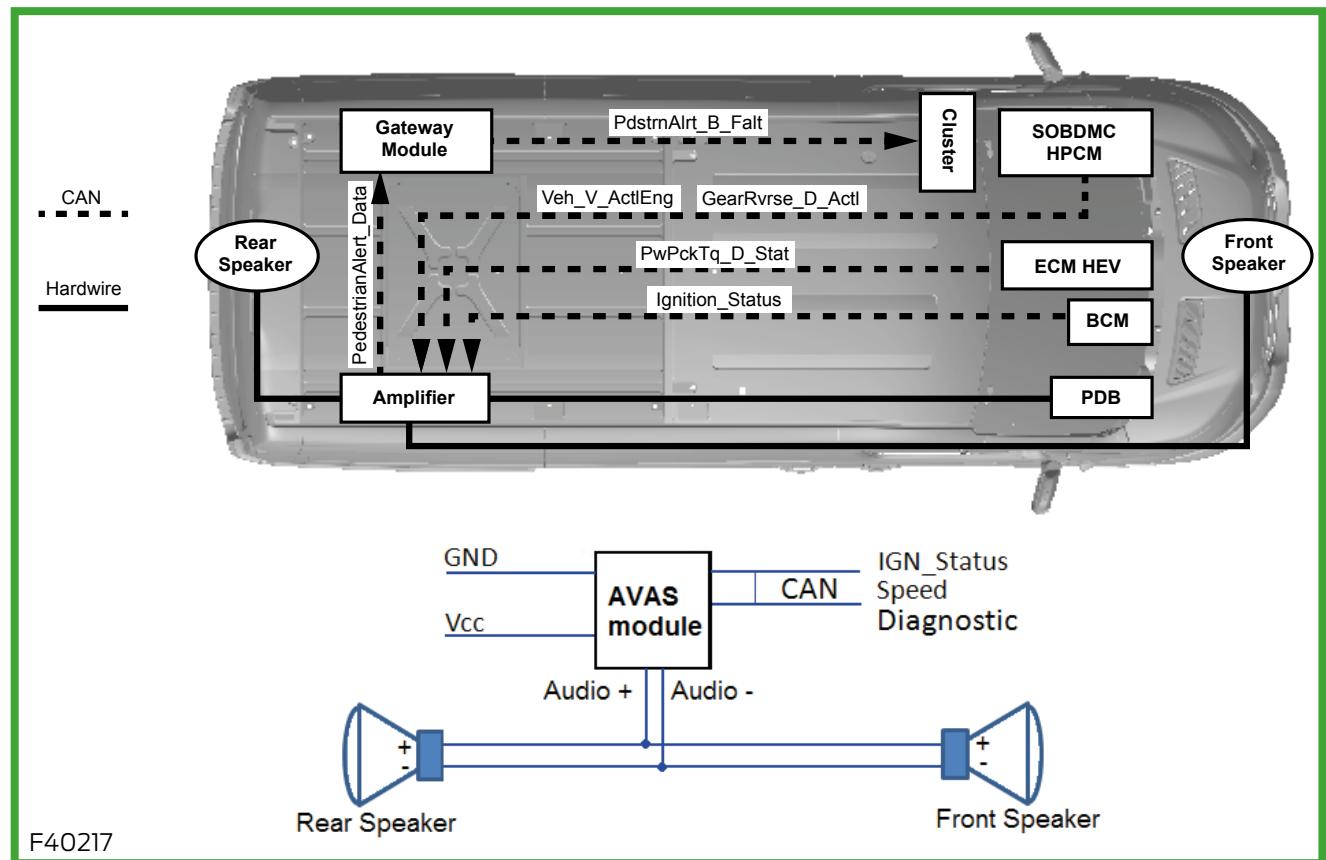
4.20 Acoustic Vehicle Alerting System (AVAS)

WARNING: Do not move or modify the components of the AVAS system. The Acoustic Vehicle Alerting System warning is a legal requirement.

All E-Transit BEV vehicles are equipped with AVAS (acoustic Vehicle Alerting System).

It is not permitted to remove, change position or obscure the AVAS speaker.

Converted vehicles, on the basis of a Chassis Cab or Cutaway, must not exceed the geometrical limits of a Van vehicle.



4.21 Handles, Locks, Latches and Entry Systems

4.21.1 Door Removal or Modification

CAUTION: If an additional third party control system is incorporated into the Ford Locking/Unlocking System the Crash Event Mid Speed Can Signal must be utilised to override the third party control system to trigger a crash unlock feature within the locking system in case of a relevant event.

WARNING: Door outer handles should not be replaced, removed or modified due to Passive Entry/Passive Start (PEPS) function (Keyless Entry with Push button Start).

NOTE: If any modified doors have ajar switches fitted and operating in accordance with the above, the original alarm and interior lighting functions can be maintained.

NOTE: For further information please contact your National Sales Company representative or local Ford dealer. If they are unable to help you then please contact FPSV Technical Support at FPSVHelp@ford.com

In the event of the requirement to remove the doors for derivatives requiring no doors, certain circuits will need to be linked to ensure door ajar warnings do not appear on the Instrument Cluster. The interior light will also stay on if this is not done.

It is possible to maintain a certain state by configuring the Body Control Module (BCM) in the following way. Door ajar circuits should be ground when door is closed except hood ajar:

- C1-5:Hood Ajar Switch in OEM Hood Latch Only
- C4-30 Front Left Ajar - Ground
- C4-24 Front Right Ajar - Ground
- C4-43 Right Rear Hinged Door Ajar
- C6-18 Left Rear Hinged Door Ajar (spliced)
- C1-9: Rear Hinged Door Ajar (spliced)
- C4-45 Left Sliding Door Ajar (or normal door for Double Chassis Cab)
- C4-15 Right Sliding Door Ajar (or normal door for Double Chassis Cab)

Following circuits should be ground when latch is locked & open circuit when unlocked or, always ground. If not ground when locked, lock may not complete:

- C4-44 Front Left Door Latch feedback
- C4-22 Front Right Door Latch feedback
- C4-42 Right Rear Sliding Door Latch feedback (or normal door for Double Chassis Cab)
- C4-07 Left Rear Sliding Door Latch feedback (or normal door for Double Chassis Cab)

Vehicles ordered with only the kerb side sliding door, only the kerb side sliding door ajar switch will be supported.

Lock reconfiguration into no deadlocks – this can be reconfigured to be central-locking only by a Ford Dealer (via Dealership hotline, as requires vehicle As-Built to be updated).

4.21.2 Central Locking

NOTE: Each unlock circuit supports 1 production type Latch. If more than 1 latch needs to be fitted, additional relays will need to be used (max 300mA coil current permitted) per unlock circuit.

NOTE: All latch lock and unlock pulse durations are 110ms.

Locking is controlled by the BCM. There is current sensing on certain locking circuit pins as part of the security system – if these are tampered with, locking performance cannot be guaranteed. However, it is possible to add additional lock(s) via relays (max 300mA coil current permitted) per unlock circuit. All latch lock and unlock pulse durations are 110ms.

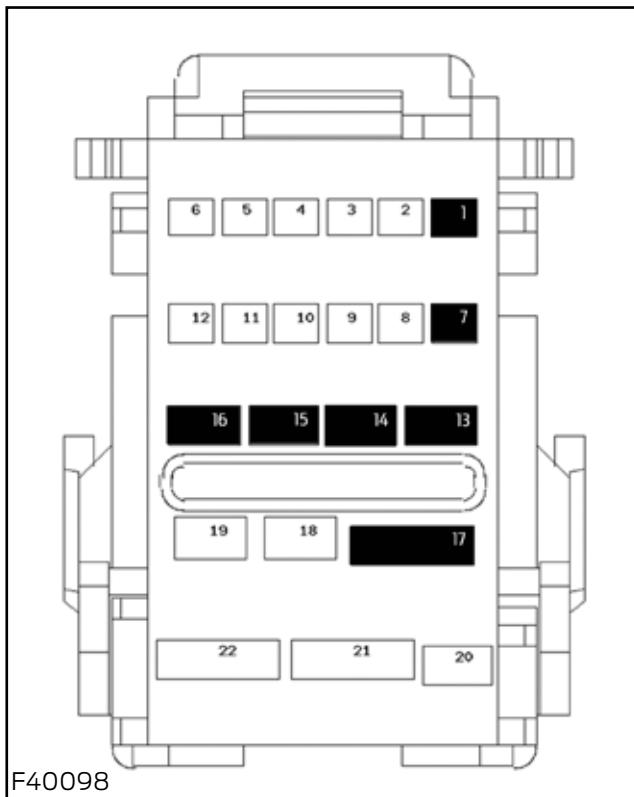
The use of Ford Transit lock mechanisms is strongly recommended as the BCM is designed to drive these latches for the correct amount of time.

See also the sections: [4.21.3 Third Button on Key Fob](#), and [4.24 Electrical Connectors and Connections](#), for more locking interface options.

Locking Configurations The following list details specific locking scenarios that have been noted by customers:

1. Slam locking – this is a configurable parameter in the BCM (dealerships can only switch off this feature, but not switch on).
2. Lock reconfiguration into no deadlocks – this can be reconfigured to be central-locking only by a Ford Dealer (via Dealership hotline, as requires vehicle As-Built to be updated).

Pins to Control Additional Door Locks



4.21.4 Remote Keyless Entry/Tyre Pressure Monitoring System Receiver (RKE/TPMS Receiver)



WARNING: For best performance, the RKE/TPMS receiver must be a minimum distance of 25mm away from any metal objects and 100mm away from high switch loads.

NOTE: It is recommended that the RKE/TPMS has a dedicated ground wire and ground stud, do not splice with other modules.

NOTE: If the RKE/TPMS receiver is removed during an upfitting/conversion process, the backup slot/pocket must be used to start the vehicle. To locate the backup slot, refer to your vehicle Owner's Manual.

The RKE/TPMS receiver is fed via a connection to the 92A000 harness and then earthed at the ground point located on the 'A' Pillar.

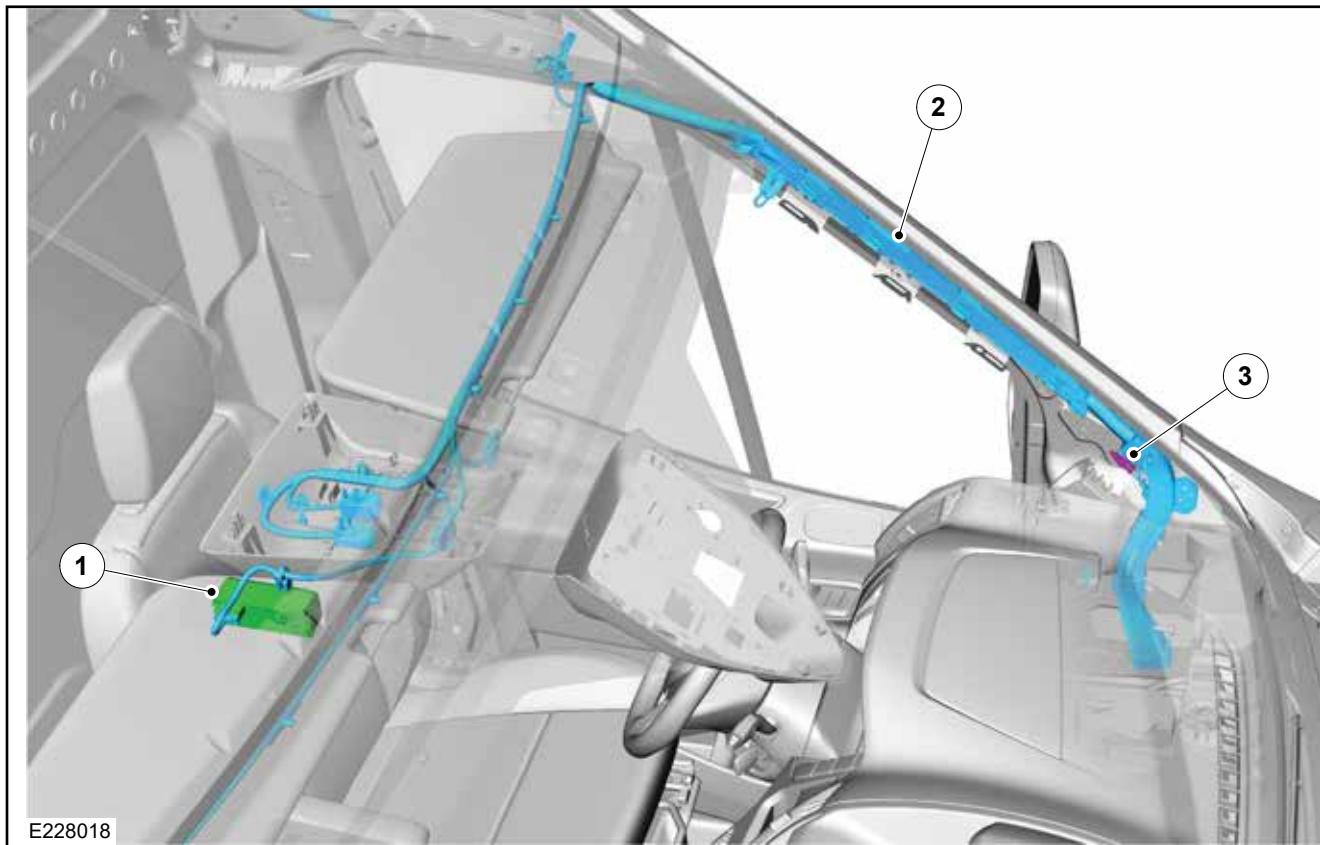
Refer to: [4.26 Grounding](#) For additional information
Refer to: [2.4 Wheels and Tyres](#)

Item	Description
C3-01	Unlock Rear Right/Child Lock 2nd Row
C3-07	Driver's Door Unlock
C3-13	Passenger Door Unlock
C3-14	Unlock Driver Side Sliding Door
C3-15	Rear Hinged Cargo Door Unlock
C3-16	Central Lock
C3-17	Front Doors Double Lock

4.21.3 Third Button on Key Fob - Single Chassis Cab and Skeletal Chassis for Camper and Non Camper

NOTE: There are no micro switches, no current sensing, or any alarm system functionality associated with this pin, or any lock set driven by it. C3-31 on the BCM is controlled by the third button on the key fob. This provides a 12V 110ms pulse when pressed. The signal can be used via an external relay for a variety of Convertor applications, subject to load required.

Pin R11-3 is part of the circuit protected by a 15A fuse (F19).

Remote Keyless Entry/Tyre Pressure Monitoring System Receiver

Item	Description
1	RKE/TPMS Receiver
2	Harness 92A000
3	Ground Point Location

4.22 Fuses and Relays

 **WARNING: Increase in existing vehicle standard fuse capacity is not allowed under any circumstances. There are no spare fuses in the Power Distribution Box (PDB), Smart Relay Box (SRB) or Body Control Module (BCM). The Vehicle Convertor must provide additional fuses as required. Please refer to Owner's Manual for further information on fuses and relays.**

NOTE: Only use Ford fuses. Other fuses may interfere with the validated fusing strategy.

Windscreen Wipers

The base wiper system should not be tampered with (controlled by Steering Column Control Module and multiplex architecture with LIN technology).

NOTE: Power to wiper motors is limited by the size of the wiring and associated relays. If any alternative wiper installation is made, it must have a specification equivalent to Ford components.

Refer to: [5.10 Glass, Frames and Mechanisms](#)

4.23 Special Vehicle Options (SVO) Harnesses and Aftermarket Kits

 **WARNING: Only Ford release wiring should be used to support added vehicle functionality. If the implementation of wiring other than this is required, Ford guidelines must be followed.**

A number of kits are available to meet customer needs, see the 'Special Vehicle Option Harnesses and Aftermarket Kits' table below.



Special Vehicle Option Harnesses and Aftermarket Kits

Part Number	FINIS	Description
KU5T-14A464-AJA		Mating kit for 12-way Vehicle Interface Connector (Aptiv Part No: 15532138)
PZ3T-19H517-AK	2777857	Trailer Tow Module (TTM)
NK3V-14G371-AA		SYNC Integration Module - SYNC 3 8 in (pre-2022)
NK3V-14G371-AB		SYNC Integration Module- SYNC 2.5/3 8 in
PZ3V-14F664-AA		SYNC Integration Module LVDS Harness
PZ3V-14517-AA		Vehicle Power Harness -12 way
RK3T-14G589-A*	2793825	Vehicle Integration System Module LHD
RK3T-14G589-B*	2759777	Vehicle Integration System Module RHD
RK3T-14A303-CB**	2767591	Vehicle Integration System Jumper Harness LHD
RK3T-14A303-DB*	2767592	Vehicle Integration System Jumper Harness RHD Auto
RK3T-14A303-DC*	2767593	Vehicle Integration System Jumper Harness RHD Manual
RK3T-14A303-BB*	2763124	Vehicle Integration System Customer Connection Harness
PZ3V-18B955-A*		Camper Touchscreen
PZ3V-14G371-A*	2689631	Smart Hub
PZ3V-14517-A*		Harness Smart Fuse Box to Smart Hub (required Smart Fuse Box)
PZ3V-14517-B*		Harness Smart Hub to Touchscreen

4.24 Electrical Connectors and Connections

WARNINGS:

 **The CAN-Bus should not be tampered with as this may lead to failure of safety critical components such as Anti-Lock Braking System (ABS). To access the CAN, ensure Vehicle Integration System (JRSAB) is ordered and the procedure followed, see later in this section for more details.**

 **Do not use connectors which cut through the outer covering and into the core wire.**

 **CAUTION: Only use Ford approved connectors.**

NOTE: For further information please contact your National Sales Company representative or local Ford dealer. If they are unable to help you then please contact FPSV Technical Support at FPSVHelp@ford.com

4.24.1 General Information

Main Fuses

In order to protect the battery system from direct ground shorts or continuous high current loads, a 470A main fuse is fitted in the Pre Fuse Box under the driver's seat. Vehicle Convertor fit peripherals must not use this fuse as its sole purpose is protection of the starting and charging system.

This main fuse is not repairable; use only a Ford replacement part.

Wiring

NOTE: Ford approved jumper harnesses should be used.

It is not recommended to cut into vehicle wiring because:

- The base vehicle specification is unsuitable for incremental loads
- Long term risk of a faulty connection developing
- Potential fire risk from over-loading

All connections into existing wiring must be permanently insulated. Exterior connections must be waterproof and with a drip loop.

Where wires are required to be extended, break in points should only be at existing connector points. If splicing into existing wiring is unavoidable, see wiring splicing procedures in this manual.

[Refer to: 4.2 Wiring Installation and Routing Guides](#)

4.24.2 Customer Connection Points (CCP)

WARNINGS:

 **Before connecting to the vehicle you must remove the main vehicle ground to isolate the 12V system.**

 **Only use the Ford approved kit for adding fuses to the CCPs.**

 **DO NOT connect the same load to both CCP1 and CCP2. The system is not designed to work together as the fuses have different values.**

 **CAUTION: When connecting to the CCP, it is recommended to disconnect the battery ground so as to avoid a short circuit. The fixing torque for CCP1 (M5) is 3.5–4.5Nm and for CCP2 (M8) is 12Nm.**

NOTE: When fitting additional power wiring feeds, the protective cover will need to be revised to allow routing for the extra wires. The cover is pre marked with the relevant areas so that they can be easily removed.

NOTE: There is a maximum of two CCPs. These points are always located on the driver's seat pedestal and are protected by a cover. CCP1 which is capable of supplying a max current of 60A and CCP2 which is capable of supplying a max current of 175A.

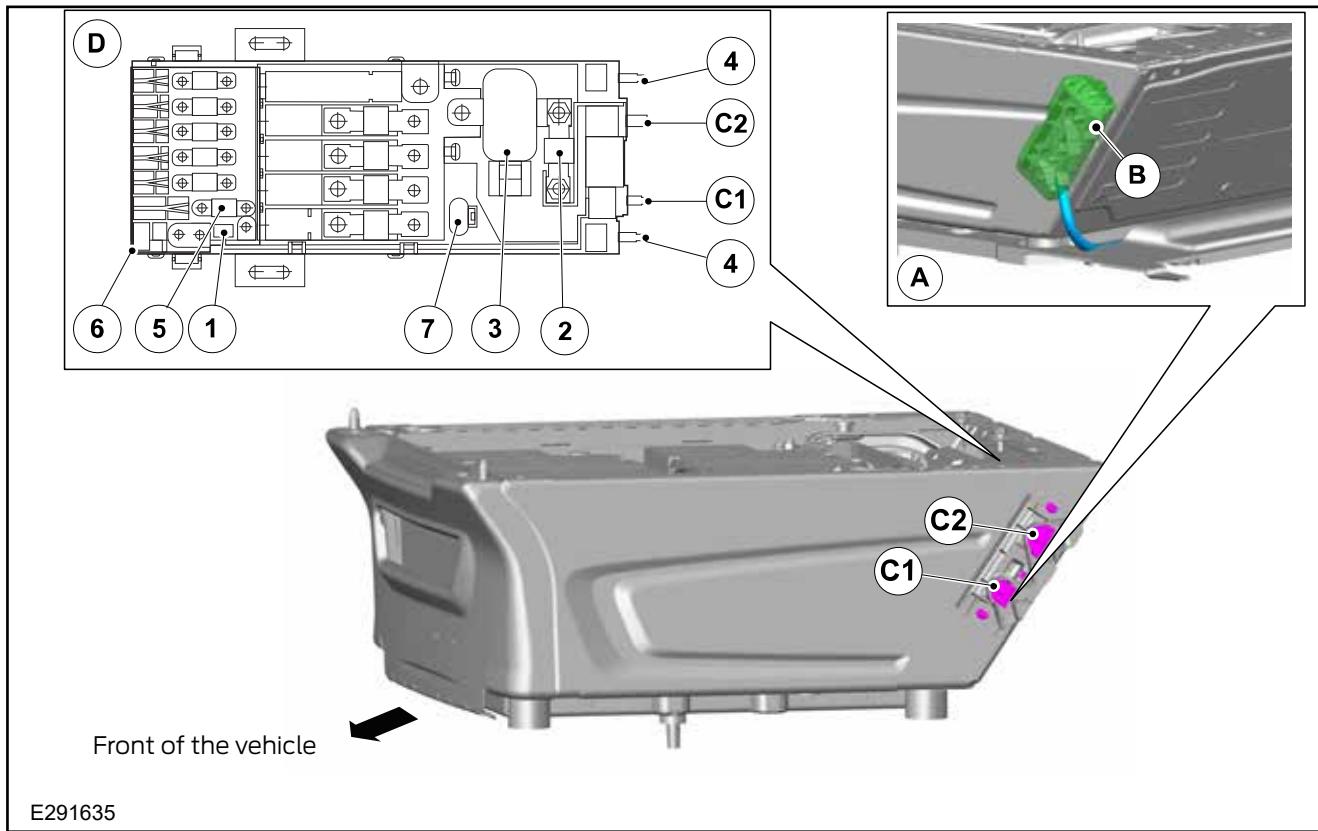
NOTE: Most vehicles with single battery will not have CCP2. Only those vehicles with twin batteries or certain SVO options will have CCP2, check with your local Ford dealer for details. If CCP2 is required then order kit KU5T-14D089-B*.

NOTE: CCP2 follows the Standard Battery Guard [SBG] function. Refer to: [4.6.4 SBG and Load Shedding -Functionality](#) for functional behaviour

NOTE: Before removing the CCP cover, move the driver's seat pedestal forward to provide sufficient access, avoiding the need to remove any body trim.

E291635 shows the left hand drive situation where CCP2 is in the upper position. On a right hand drive vehicle the high current fuse box is rotated 180 degrees so CCP2 will be in the lower position.

For high current supply and ground connections Refer to: [4.5 Battery Systems](#)

Customer Connection Points (CCP) Left Hand Drive


E291635

Item	Description
A	Suggested wiring location
B	CCP Cover
D	Pre Fuse Panel
C1	CCP1 (60A)
C2	CCP2 (175A)
1	60A fuse - supplies CCP1, Camper
2	175A fuse - supplies CCP2
3	CCP2 Load-shedding, and Standard Battery Guard (SBG) Relay
4	CCP cassette fixing studs (NOT to be used as grounding points)
5	150A SVO Auxiliary Fuse Panel feed
6	If any of the fuses in this area have failed, this section of the Pre-Fuse Panel will need replacing. Please contact FPSVHelp@ford.com for service kit number.
7	Park position for relay connector control when single battery donor

4.24.3 High Current Supply and Ground Connections

WARNINGS:

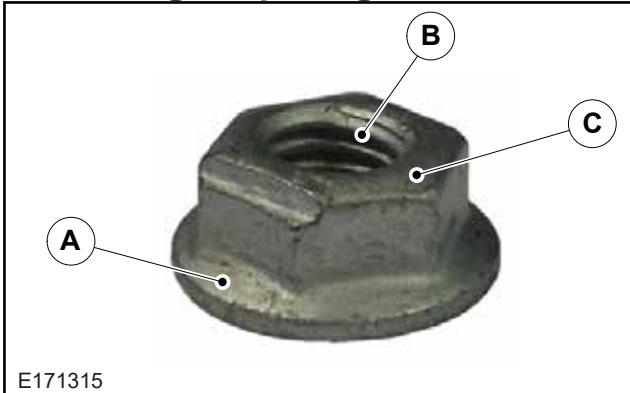
 **A self locking crimp hexagonal nut MUST be used for high current terminal stud connections, for battery positive and negative or chassis ground. Do not use locking, split washers or nylon lock type nuts.**

 **It is recommended to only use one eyelet per stud for high current applications. If more than one eyelet per stud is unavoidable, the highest current eyelet feed should be connected closest to the supply terminal. Do not exceed two eyelets or crimp terminals per stud connection.**

For additional information

[Refer to 4.24.2 Customer Connection Points \(CCP\)](#)

Self-Locking Crimp Hexagonal Nut



E171315

Item	Description
A	Large flange for maximum surface area current flow and large clamp force area.
B	Crimp / locking feature is obtained by deformed female thread only
C	Finish must be a low resistance material which complies with the Restricted Substance Management Standards (RSMS).

For additional third party ground and +12V power cable connections to the Ford system

[Refer to: 4.5 Battery Systems](#)

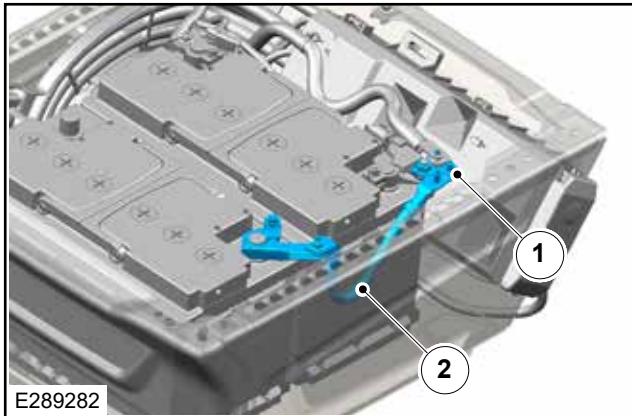
Any peripherals totalling more than 60A added to the power supply must be connected via the CCPs. When the vehicle does not offer adequate power from the CCPs,

[Refer to 4.5.8 Third Party 12+ PTO for Loads Exceeding 175A](#)

Camper vehicles: When fitting an additional battery, and an auxiliary battery circuit, if high loads are to be supplied, exceeding the CCP supplies or high in general, especially at ignition off loads, then an isolation switch disconnect relay should be fitted and controlled via the load-shedding signal.

This is to protect the vehicle start battery from a failed start and to protect system voltage when vehicle is moving. Suitable capacity in the wiring, fuses and alternator will be required. If unsure of which battery to interface with or what system requirements are needed, please contact your National Sales Company representative or local Ford dealer. If they are unable to help you then please contact FPSV Technical Support at FPSVHelp@ford.com.

Auxiliary Ground Stud Eyelet - Twin Battery System shown



Item	Description
1	6mm Auxiliary Ground Stud for Convertor Equipment - Torque 8Nm ± 0.8Nm
2	Battery Ground Jumper Cable part number KK2V-14301-K* for Twin Battery System

4.24.4 Camper Central Connectors

WARNING: If multiple systems are to use this supply, the total system load must not exceed the 60A short term loading.

NOTE: To maintain vehicle security, it is recommended to utilise the Door Ajar pin on the 15-pin camper connector so that the camper conversion is included in the security system. This will eliminate the auto-relock, turn on interior lights and provide the door non-closure warning.

Camper conversions are fitted with a dedicated main wiring harness. There is no CCP. Instead 3 connectors are located within the passenger seat pedestal to support camper installations. The connector to power up the 2-way connector underneath the passenger

pedestal is securely taped back to the main wire branch running behind the front seats and would need to be connected by the Vehicle Convertor during the installation. See CCP in this section for further information. The Vehicle Convertor is responsible for good protection of the exposed wire to the CCP, protecting the wire against chafing.

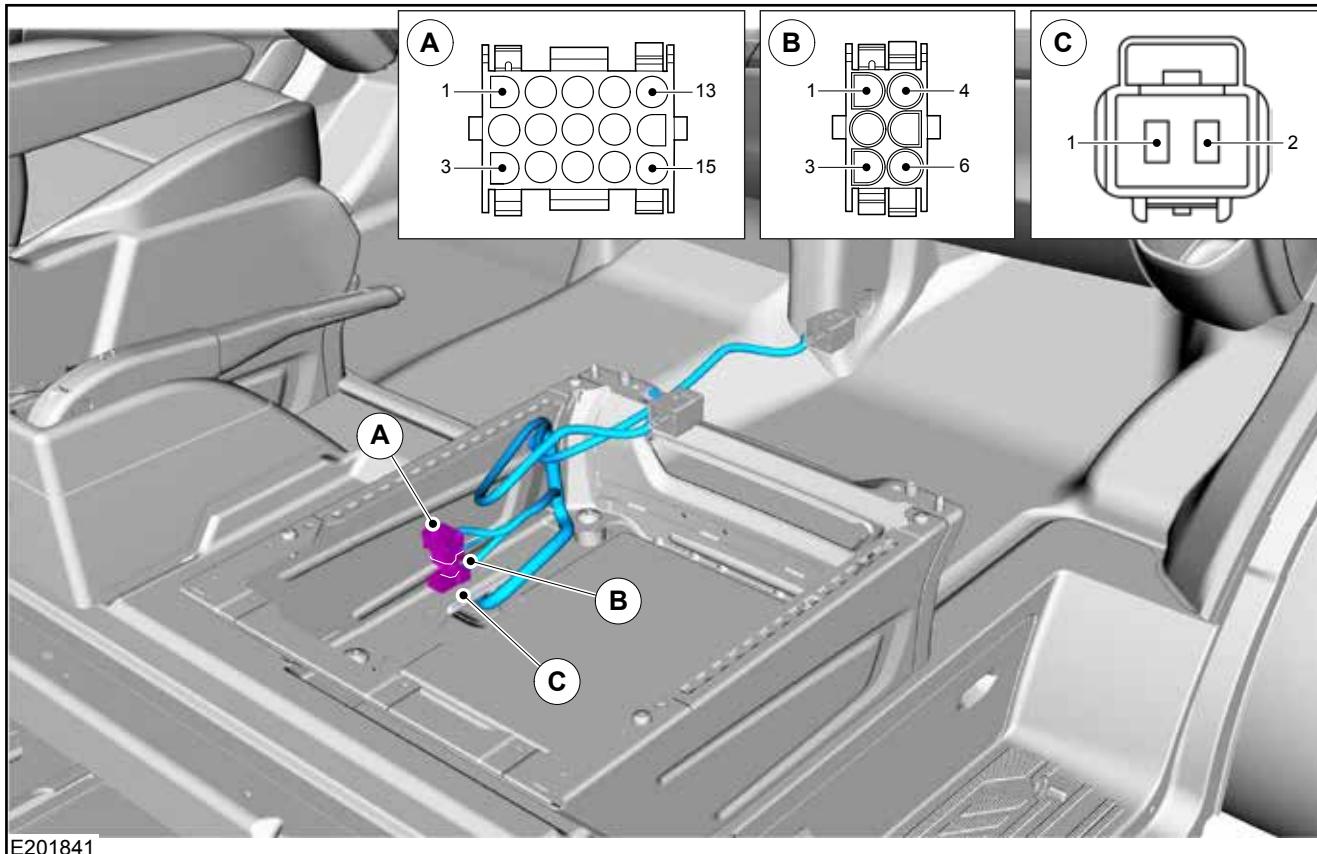
For a Camper Van on a Kombi derivative, rear speaker wiring and Camper speaker connectivity is provided at 2.5mm CSA. It is recommended to only connect one 4ohm speaker to each channel either from the Camper interface connector or the body wiring. If twin speakers per channel are required then each value must be 8ohm.

For additional information

[Refer to: 4.2 Wiring Installation and Routing Guides](#)

Wiring Specification table for characteristics on continuous loads versus temperature.

Camper Central Connectors



E201841

Item	Description
A	C2-1 - 15 way connector (face view)
B	C2-2 - 6 way connector (face view)
C	C2-3 - KL30 connector (face view) 60A fed from Pre Fuse Box + Ground

Part Numbers for Vehicle Connectors and Mating Connectors

Vehicle Connectors			Mating Connectors	
Connector	Tyco Connector	Tyco Terminal	Tyco Connector	Tyco Terminal
15-way (C2-1)	0-926647-1	926882-1 (socket)	1-480710-0	926883-1 (pin)
6-way (C2-2)	0-480705-0	926882-1 (socket)	1-480704-0	926883-1 (pin)
Connector	MTA Connector	MTA Terminal	MTA Connector	MTA Terminal
2-way (C2-3)	44.403	11.077	44.404	17.077

 **Pin** **Function** **Wire CSA** **Colour** **Comments**

Connector C2-1 (Figure E201841 - Item A)				
Pin	Function	Wire CSA	Colour	Comments
1	Stop lamp (CHMSL)	0.5	Yellow/Grey	2.5A including existing lamps
2	Engine Run	0.5	Brown/Yellow	300mA, Ground switching
3	Vehicle Speed Output	0.5	Yellow/Green	138Hz@100KPH, 50% duty cycle
4	Interior Lock Switch Input ⁽¹⁾	0.5	Grey/Yellow	Lock switch momentary signal to ground
5	Interior Unlock Switch Input ⁽¹⁾	0.5	Violet/Grey	Unlock switch momentary signal to ground
6	Rear Door Ajar	0.5	Yellow/Orange	Local switch to ground. Base vehicle with rear door (circuit closed=door closed). Base vehicle less rear door (circuit open=door closed).
7	Interior feed ⁽²⁾	0.75	Grey/Yellow	300mA max
8	-	-	-	-
9	Lock Motor Output ⁽¹⁾	1.5	Grey/Brown	15A Total (3A per latch) - Total load for locking all vehicle latches
10	Unlock Motor Output ⁽¹⁾	1.0	Grey/Blue	15A Total (3A per latch) - Total load for unlocking all vehicle latches
11	Courtesy Light Dimming High Side Rear	0.75	White/Blue	PWM +12V 5A max including all existing rear interior lights
12	-	-	-	-
13	Ignition (KL15)	0.75	White/Violet	10A/F21 (SRB)
14	Third Party High Power mode	0.5	Violet/Grey	Grounded = Third Party High Power mode is Active
15	Reverse Signal	0.75	Green/Brown	+12V 300mA max

⁽¹⁾ The lock and unlock signals are intended to operate with Ford lock sets, or components with equivalent function and operational characteristics: – Central Locking and unlocking are a 110ms high side pulse. There is no double locking available via this connector.

⁽²⁾ Interior light feed is a high side output used for demand lighting. It is battery saver timed to switch off after 30 minutes. Do not use this high demand load which will re-energise every time the door is opened.

Note: There are no additional ground wires in either C2-1 or C2-2 auxiliary devices and systems; local grounds should be used.

 **Pin** **Function** **Wire CSA** **Colour** **Comments**

Connector C2-2 (Figure E201841 - Item B)				
Pin	Function	Wire CSA	Colour	Comments
1	Load-shedding control	0.75	Black/White	Switched ground
2	Rear Speaker Left +	1.5	White/Green	Twisted pair
3	Rear Speaker Left -	1.5	Brown/Yellow	-
4	Rear Speaker Right +	1.5	Brown/White	twisted pair
5	Rear Speaker Right -	1.5	Brown/Blue	-
6	Switch Illumination ⁽¹⁾	0.5	Violet/Grey	PWM +12V 300mA nominal

Connector C2-3 (Figure E201841 - Item C)				
Pin	Function	Wire CSA	Colour	Comments
1 (A)	B+ (KL30)	6.0	Green/Red	60A Fed from Pre Fuse Box
2 (B)	B-	6.0	Black/Grey	Ground

PWM= Pulse Width Modulation

⁽¹⁾ PWM output optimised for LED switch back lighting & dimmable when vehicle has IP dimmer fitted. Do not fit relays to this output.

4.24.5 Vehicle Interface Connector

WARNINGS:

 **Signals 3 and 5 on the Vehicle Interface Connector are for sensing purposes only and not to be loaded by high current consumers.**

 **The max current rating for signal 6 is 10A and signal 8 is 15A. These are not to be exceeded in any situation, this includes the total of the Ford system and third party system requirements.**

 **Unused wires in the service kit must have cable ends insulated to avoid shorting on any ground points.**

The Vehicle Interface Connector provides a direct interface to signals. See figure F40092 for location and the following table for signals.

Vehicle Interface connector mating part number is KU5T-14A464-AJA and it can be found in the vehicle. In order to access the vehicle signals through this connector, the convertor needs to follow the wiring installation and routing guidelines, and install terminals into the mating connector.

[Refer to: 4.2 Wiring Installation and Routing Guides](#)

The terminal has the Aptiv part number 35493302. The mating connector Aptiv part number 15532138

Vehicle Speed

 **WARNING: Do not interface with the CAN (Controller Area Network) for vehicle speed.**

Pin 5: Vehicle Speed signal is a direct current coupled square wave that varies in frequency in proportion to vehicle speed. This provides a square waveform (50% duty cycle) signal, where a frequency of 138Hz equates to 100km/h.

Ignition

Pin 6: Ignition signal is protected by a 10A fuse. It is +12V active at ignition positions: Accessory (1) and Run (2). It is not active at Ignition Off (0) or Crank (3). Whilst it can drive equipment directly it is

recommended to use this feed to control a Convertor fitted relay, especially for high current applications.

Switch Illumination

Pin 7: Switch illumination signal is only to be used for sensing. It is a PWM signal only for low current illumination 300mA max, that can be dimmed and not used to drive a relay.

Engine Run

 **WARNING: Do not cut into the alternator wires or use the alternator as a source to obtain a 'D+ Signal'.**

The load-shedding 10A ground signal must be used for power control. The engine run feature can only be used to control power if the load-shedding signal has overall control, for example to activate a power relay. Engine run can be used for other systems such as telematics and data loggers.

Pin 4: Load-shedding with Battery SOC Protection switched ground signal is a signal that must always be the primary controlling signal to be used to handle third party loads totalling over 60A.

[Refer to: 4.6 Battery Protection](#)

The engine run feature can only be used to control power if the load-shedding signal has overall control, for example through a power relay.

Engine run can be used for other systems such as telematics and data loggers. This feature will supply power at engine run, and at engine off it will isolate when the battery reaches the timer or SOC value. At engine run, the signal will extinguish if voltage drops to below 11V. This is to protect critical systems such as EPAS. The voltage of the system should not drop below 13V for continuous periods. If this occurs, the extra equipment added, is exceeding supply and supplemental energy sources may be required, such as additional alternators.

Pin 2: Engine run signal will only support a sense line or relay control that is in **AND** logic with the load-shedding signal.

Square Wave Characteristics

Specifications	
Max High Signal	Battery Voltage
Min High Signal	3.67V
Max Low Signal	1.1V
Min Low Signal	-1.1V
Max Ground Offset	± 1.0V
Rise Time	10µs <= tr <= 250µs
Fall Time	10µs <= tf <= 250µs
Duty Cycle	50% ± 10%
Pulse Rate	2.2Hz/MPH (1.3808Hz/KPH)

This engine run signal is ground switching (max current sink 250mA), it provides no positive output (open circuit) and is only active when the engine is running.

The signal will not be present when:

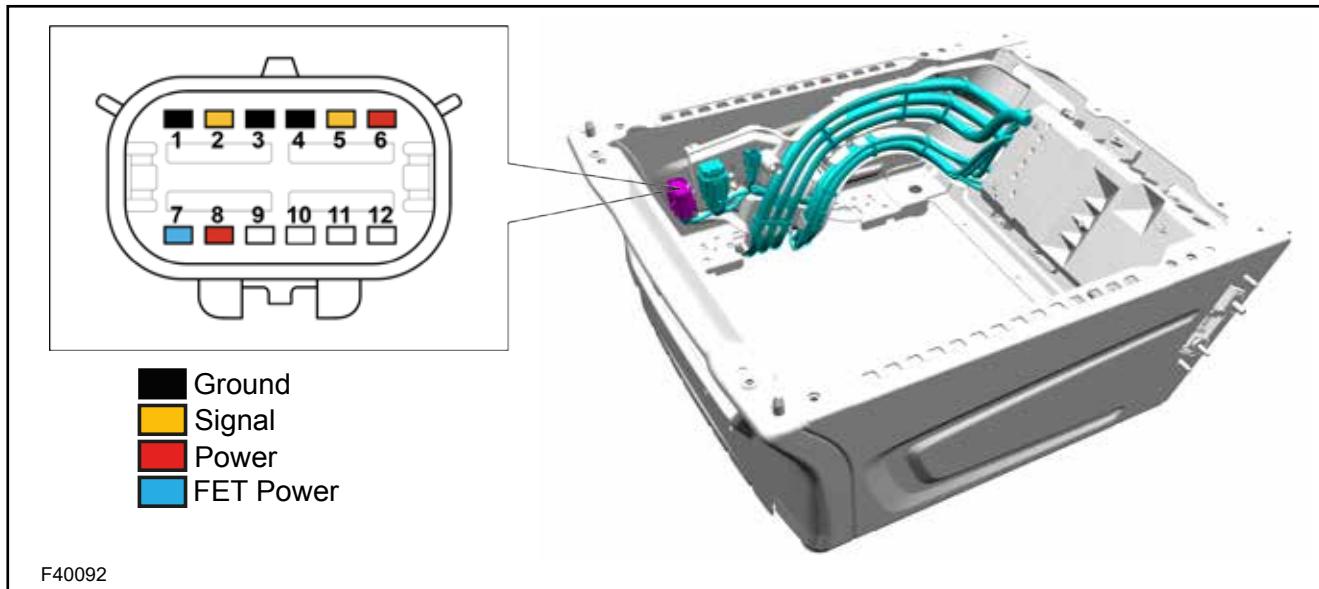
- Key states - Off (0), Accessory (1), Run but Engine Off (2), Crank (3)
- Key in Run position, where Start-Stop vehicle has

auto stopped the engine

- Engine running but load is greater than 250mA (driving two or more relays in error)

Due to Start-Stop vehicles, the signal may switch up to 300,000 times. Provision is required for control relays switched by this signal to meet this durability cycle.

12 Way Vehicle Interface Connector-



F40092

12 Way Vehicle Interface Connector Signals

1	Ground
2	Engine Run
3	SRC Inhibit/Third Party High Power Mode
4	Load Shed/Standard Battery Guard
5	Vehicle Speed
6	Run Start KL15 (10A)
7	IP Switch Illumination
8	+12V KL30 (15A)
9	No Connection
10	No Connection
11	No Connection
12	No Connection

4.24.6 Vehicle Integration System (JRSAB)

⚠️ WARNING: It is the responsibility of the convertor to ensure all safety checks have been carried out prior to installation of any 3rd party systems/configuration to the vehicle.

NOTE: The wiring harness of the base vehicle consists of giveaway circuits and interface connector(s) to allow for the retrofitting of the Vehicle Integration System module.

NOTE: Vehicle Integration System can be installed to a vehicle if it was not ordered or equipped from factory (module installation referenced later in this document). Installation of Vehicle Integration System should be done through Ford authorised dealers.

NOTE: The Vehicle Integration System has limited functionality from factory fit. The Vehicle Integration System (that includes UCIM and APIM if soft switch functionality is planned) must be flashed with Upfitter Configuration created by the Vehicle Integration System programming tool to enable the Vehicle Integration System functions.

For further details on configuration and technical support please contact FPSV Technical Support at FPSVHelp@ford.com

The Vehicle Integration System module is a programmable I/O controller which communicates on the vehicle CAN network.

The Vehicle Integration System module can control various vehicle functions via Upfitter Configuration.

Vehicle Integration System Module Location - RHD



F40095

Vehicle Integration System Module Location - LHD



F40096

Users should consult the Vehicle Integration System programming tool manual for further information.

Vehicle Integration System provides two methods of accessing CAN output:

- 1) through the Vehicle Integration System programming tool or
- 2) through an additional hardwired connection in the SAE J1939 format

SAE J1939 Output Customer CAN Signal Access

1. Vehicle Integration System and connectors can be accessed in the instrument panel.
2. Reference the Vehicle Integration System module and 2 connectors: Black 20-Way & Blue 6-Way (highlighted below) and disconnect both the Black 20-Way and Blue 6-Way from the module to ensure no power is being delivered to module.
3. Focusing on the Black 20-Way connector, begin to unravel/unwrap the flocked tape around the harness such that enough workable length is available to expose the wire circuits. Stow away the unravelled/unwrapped flock tape so it can be reused for reinstallation later.

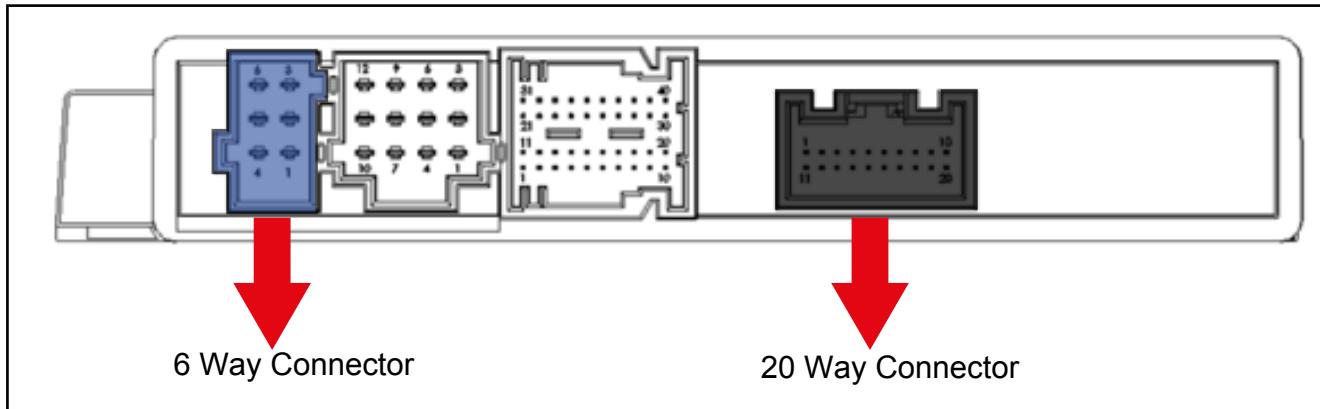
4. Locate the SAE J1939 wired circuits 3 and 4. These 2 circuits will be used in order to perform the cut and splice to obtain the signals.

NOTE: The circuits remaining in the harness will not be used and no longer need to be connected. Recommend taping the circuits back securely and stowed away from the splice.

NOTE: Follow the Ford approved procedure for soldering circuits to complete the splice. These are CAN network circuits that are a twisted pair, and for the added length ensure it meets the twists per foot requirement (4 twists per 50mm)

5. Complete the splice, following the Ford Repair Guidelines, rewrap the flock tape removed (Step 4) or use an acceptable substitute ensuring that circuits are wrapped within 50mm from the back of the connector
6. Reconnect the Black 20-way, and Blue 6-way to the Vehicle Integration System module

Vehicle Integration System Module Connectors



Vehicle Integration System Connectors

Upfitter electrical loads should not exceed stated limits in the following tables:

C1 Connector (6-way) Module Power and Ground

Pin	Signal Name	Description	Voltage (V)		Current (A)	
			Min	Max	Min	Max
Power						
2	KL30_2	Power Supply 2	9	16	-	20
4	KL30_1	Power Supply 1	9	16	-	20
5	KL30_2	Power Supply 2	9	16	-	20
6	KL30_1	Power Supply 1	9	16	-	20
Ground						
1	KL31	Ground	9	16	-	24
4	KL31	Ground	9	16	-	24

C2 Connector (12-way) High Current Outputs

Pin	Signal Name	Description	Voltage (V)		Current (A)	PWM		Power Supply
			Min	Max		Max Steady State	Frequency	
High Side Switch								
1	MFA_7	5A HS Switch	9	16	5	-	-	2
2	MFA_5	5A HS Switch	9	16	5	-	-	1
3	MFA_6	5A HS Switch	9	16	5	-	-	1
4	MFA_8	5A HS Switch	9	16	5	-	-	2
5	MFA_4	10A HS Switch	9	16	10	-	-	2
6	MFA_1	5A HS Switch	9	16	5	-	-	1
7	MFA_3	5A HS Switch	9	16	5	-	-	2
12	MFA_2	10A HS Switch	9	16	10	-	-	1
Half Bridge								
8	MFA_20	5A HB	9	16	5	<= 3KHz	3-100	1
9	MFA_19	5A HB	9	16	5	<= 3KHz	3-100	1
10	MFA_22	5A HB	9	16	5	<= 3KHz	3-100	2
11	MFA_21	5A HB	9	16	5	<= 3KHz	3-100	2

C3 Connector (40-way) Low Current Outputs

Pin	Signal Name	Description	Voltage (V)		Current (A)	PWM	Duty %	Power Supply
			Min	Max				
Low Side Switch								
1	MFA_15	0.5A LS Switch	-	-	0.5	<=300Hz	3-100	-
2	MFA_16	0.5A LS Switch	-	-	0.5	<=300Hz	3-100	-
3	MFA_13	1A LS Switch	-	-	1	<=5KHz	5-100	-
11	MFA_17	0.5A LS Switch	-	-	0.5	<=300Hz	3-100	-
12	MFA_18	0.5A LS Switch	-	-	0.5	<=300Hz	3-100	-
13	MFA_14	1A LS Switch	-	-	1	<=5KHz	5-100	-
High Side Switch								
21	MFA_11	0.5A HS Switch	9	16	0.5	<=300Hz	3-100	2
22	MFA_12	0.5A HS Switch	9	16	0.5	<=300Hz	3-100	2
31	MFA_9	0.5A HS Switch	9	16	0.5	<=300Hz	3-100	1
32	MFA_10	0.5A HS Switch	9	16	0.5	<=300Hz	3-100	1

C3 Connector (40-way) Inputs

Pin	Signal Name	Description	Voltage (V)		Voltage level for digital Input detection (V)		Sink Current (mA)		Sampling Rate	Resolution
			Min	Max	Non-Active	Active	Min @9V	Max @16V		
Digital Input Active HIGH										
7	MFE_17	Digital High	0	16	<2.8	>6.1	6.7	12.82	5ms	N/A
8	MFE_19	Digital High	0	16	<2.8	>6.1	6.7	12.82	5ms	N/A
9	MFE_21	Digital High	0	16	<2.8	>6.1	6.7	12.82	5ms	N/A
10	MFE_23	Digital High	0	16	<2.8	>6.1	6.7	12.82	5ms	N/A
17	MFE_18	Digital High	0	16	<2.8	>6.1	6.7	12.82	5ms	N/A
18	MFE_20	Digital High	0	16	<2.8	>6.1	6.7	12.82	5ms	N/A
19	MFE_22	Digital High	0	16	<2.8	>6.1	6.7	12.82	5ms	N/A
20	MFE_24	Digital High	0	16	<2.8	>6.1	6.7	12.82	5ms	N/A
Digital Input Active LOW										
23	MFE_9	Digital Low	0	16	>6.1	<2.8	5.3	11.81	5ms	N/A
24	MFE_11	Digital Low	0	16	>6.1	<2.8	5.3	11.81	5ms	N/A
25	MFE_13	Digital Low	0	16	>6.1	<2.8	5.3	11.81	5ms	N/A
26	MFE_15	Digital Low	0	16	>6.1	<2.8	5.3	11.81	5ms	N/A
33	MFE_10	Digital Low	0	16	>6.1	<2.8	5.3	11.81	5ms	N/A
34	MFE_12	Digital Low	0	16	>6.1	<2.8	5.3	11.81	5ms	N/A
35	MFE_14	Digital Low	0	16	>6.1	<2.8	5.3	11.81	5ms	N/A
36	MFE_16	Digital Low	0	16	>6.1	<2.8	5.3	11.81	5ms	N/A
Analog Input										
27	MFE_1	Analog Input	0	19.95	Dependant on Upfitter Configuration	5.3	11.81	5ms	12-bit	
28	MFE_3	Analog Input	0	19.95		5.3	11.81	5ms	12-bit	
29	MFE_5	Analog Input	0	19.95		5.3	11.81	5ms	12-bit	
30	MFE_7	Analog Input	0	19.95		5.3	11.81	5ms	12-bit	
37	MFE_2	Analog Input	0	19.95		5.3	11.81	5ms	12-bit	
38	MFE_4	Analog Input	0	19.95		5.3	11.81	5ms	12-bit	
39	MFE_6	Analog Input	0	19.95		5.3	11.81	5ms	12-bit	
40	MFE_8	Analog Input	0	19.95		5.3	11.81	5ms	12-bit	

C4 Connector (20-way) Module Communications

Pin	Signal Name	Description
1	Vehicle CAN High	Vehicle CAN coms with Upfitter module – DO NOT SPLIC
2	Vehicle CAN Low	Vehicle CAN coms with Upfitter module – DO NOT SPLIC
3	J1939 CAN High	J1939 CAN – blunt cut circuit available on vehicle
4	J1939 CAN Low	J1939 CAN – blunt cut circuit available on vehicle

ECU Sleep States (Quiescent Current)

The Vehicle Integration System Module has 2 sleep states depending on Upfitter Configuration. Default sleep state will only wake from vehicle CAN messages and has the lowest power consumption possible. If configured, the Upfitter Module can wake from Digital and Analog Inputs. During this sleep state the module will have higher quiescent current than in Default. Recommendations regarding Key Off Load should be followed when configuring the Upfitter Module.

Electrical Load Shedding

Vehicle Load Shedding strategy will command Upfitter Module outputs to be switched OFF if it deems it necessary to maintain system Voltage. A total of 60A has been allocated to customer loads. This allocation should be considered when connecting loads to both the Upfitter Module and the non-switched Customer Connection Point 1.

If >60A of electrical consumers have been fitted to the vehicle, there is higher potential for Upfitter Module outputs to be switched OFF.

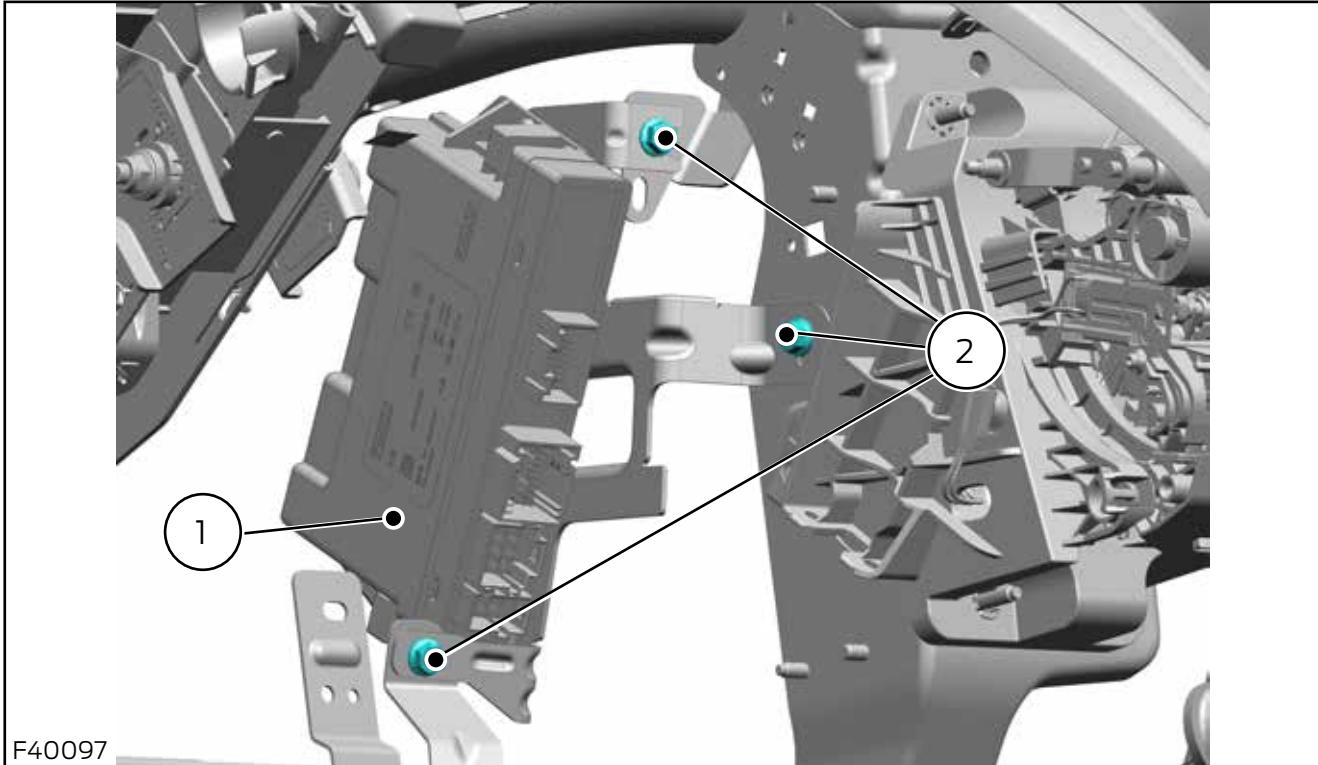
Ordering and Retrofitting

If the Vehicle Integration System (JRSAB) is ordered as factory fit, the vehicle will be provided with the module fitted and the Upfitter Blunt Cut wiring stowed in the glovebox. It is possible to retrofit the module and wiring to a vehicle. The Matrix below shows list of parts to be ordered for retrofitting the Vehicle Integration System.

Installation Steps to follow:

1. Fit Module (1)
2. Secure Module with 3 x nuts – torque 5.4Nm ± 0.9Nm (2)
3. Connect Wiring Harness to Module and Vehicle
4. Update Vehicle Configuration – see dealer

Vehicle Integration System Installation - LHD shown



Parts Required for Retrofitting Vehicle Integration System

Vehicle Specification	Module	Module Wiring	Upfitter Wiring	Fixings
LHD	RK3T-14G589-A* FINIS 2793825	R3KT-14A303-CB* FINIS 2767591	RK3T-14A303-BB* FINIS 2763124	3x W520412-S442 FINIS 1381975
RHD	RK3T-14G589-B* FINIS 2759777	R3KT-14A303-DC* FINIS 2767593	RK3T-14A303-BB* FINIS 2763124	2x W520412-S442 FINIS 1381975

Application on Sync/ Soft Switches

Ford infotainment system (centre stack display) contains Upfit Controls Application.

This application shall be only used for driver /user secondary control of Upfitter Equipment such as Auxiliary Air Conditioning Systems, sub compartment locking, sirens, beacon lights, chimes which do not directly affect the normal vehicle functions.

For configuration of soft switches and usage of Upfit Controls Application, please contact FPSV Technical Support at FPSVHelp@ford.com

Convertors shall not configure soft switches in Upfit Controls Application that may affect safe operation of the equipment.

Auxiliary Switches

Convertors must install hard wired buttons or switches where necessary to control functions of heavy equipment like snow plough, salt spreader, lifts, ramps etc that may affect normal vehicle function.

It is the convertor's responsibility to make sure that additional safety counter measures related to the operation of heavy equipment are in place.

For further information regarding Vehicle Integration System Features and programming of the input/output of the module, please contact FPSV Technical Support at FPSVHelp@ford.com

4.24.7 Additional Vehicle Signals/Features



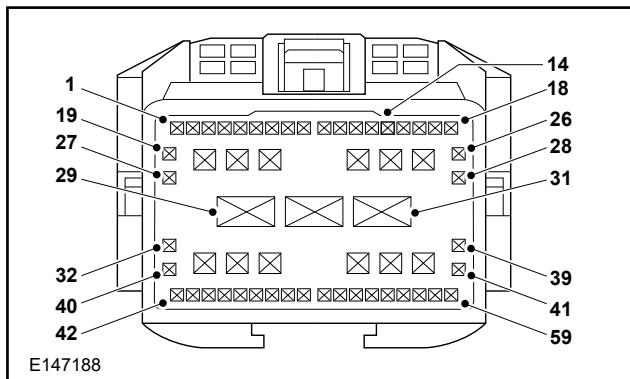
WARNING: When interfacing with specific lighting high side driver outputs, additional supplemental signal access, relays and peripherals fitted, must be compatible with a Pulse Width Modulation (PWM) frequency of 200Hz.

For list of lighting circuits that are PWM supplied:
[Refer to: 4.3 Communications Network](#) BCM Output Information table.

For additional information on lighting loads
[Refer to: 4.14 Exterior Lighting](#)

4.24.8 Adding Connectors

Marker Lamps



Item	Description
Pin 14	Side Marker Supply - Yellow/Violet

⚠ WARNING: Maximum load on pin 14 is 2.5A, including existing number plate bulbs. Do not exceed 2.5A on this circuit. Recommend only LED side markers be added.

Unused Connectors

The harnesses may have a number of unused connectors. These are dedicated to other features and options, e.g. heated seats, but are **not** always present depending on level of harness fitted. Ford **do not** recommend the use of these connectors for any other purpose than that intended by design.

Power Outlet/Cigar Lighter

NOTE: The timer is reset when a door is opened, the vehicle is unlocked or ignition is switched on.

Both features adopt a 20A fusing strategy. Continued loading on these outlets will lead to battery drain, and risk the vehicle not starting.

At engine Off, all power outlets will switch off after 30 minutes.

If longer duration electrical power is required after ignition off, a second battery option should be installed and the CCPs, where fitted, utilised.

4.25 Pro Power Onboard Chassis Cab

The cab outlet (single) is installed in the Passenger seat pedestal.

The rear outlet (duplex) is required and will need to be installed in the Second Unit Body.

Parts required:

NK4T-19J289-FA for European 2 pin plugs

NK4T-19J289-MC for UK 3 pin plugs

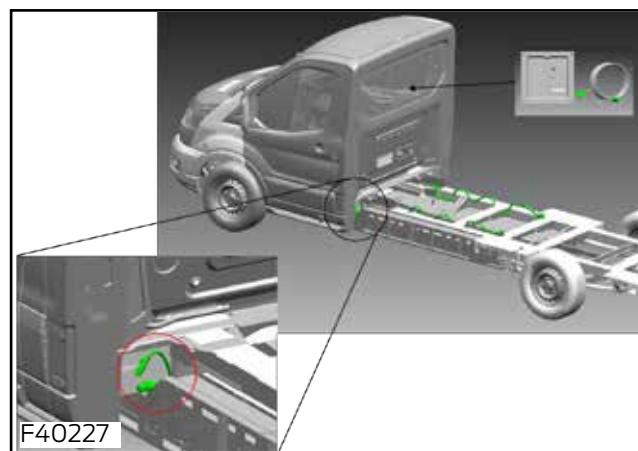
The Pro Power Onboard feature will not be functional until the rear outlet is installed (will reset on next key cycle).

- The rear outlet is water resistant but should be installed such that it is protected from direct spray or flow of water. The wiring connectors are sealed and do not need to be protected from the elements.
- The rear outlet should be installed on a vertical surface.
- The rear outlet has a ~550mm wiring pigtails. The included grommet and retaining clip may be carefully removed if desired.

A 6m (18 ft) extension wiring harness is also provided in dunnage to allow flexibility in placement of the rear outlet. The rear outlet pigtails can also connect directly to the chassis wiring if preferred.

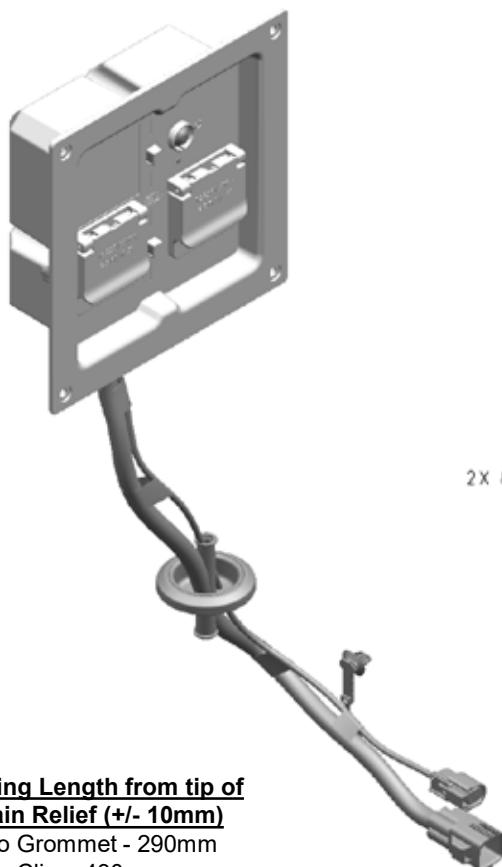
Chassis wiring connectors are located near the LH frame rail at back of cab. These connectors have sealed caps which should remain in place until the rear outlet is plugged in (directly or via extension harness) to prevent contamination and potential shock hazard.

If the rear outlet cannot be installed in the SUB, the Pro Power Onboard feature should be disabled, which requires use of the Ford Diagnostic and Repair System (FDRS) tool to reconfigure the Inverter Module.

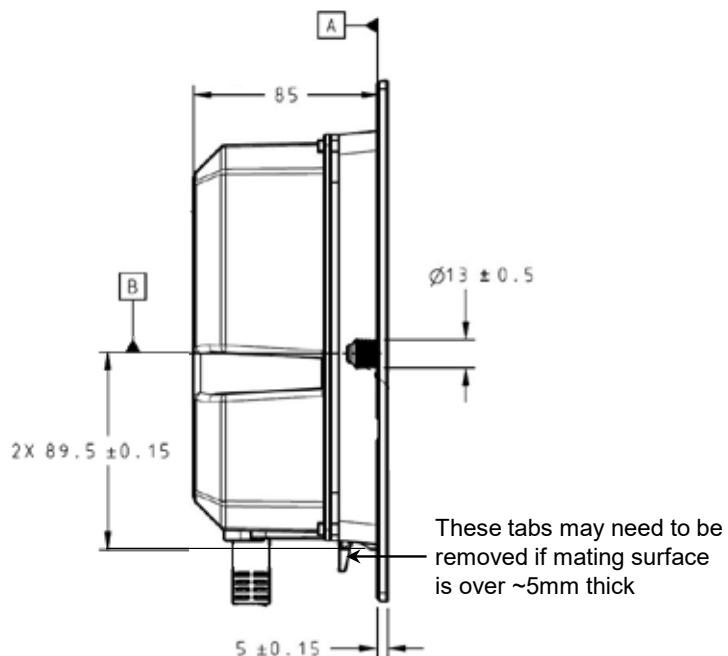


PRO POWER ONBOARD

All Dimensions in mm



Aux Outlet Side View



Wiring Length from tip of Strain Relief (+/- 10mm)

- to Grommet - 290mm
- to Clip - 430mm
- to Signal connector – 550mm
- to Power connector – 580mm

Wiring Clip Mating Surface

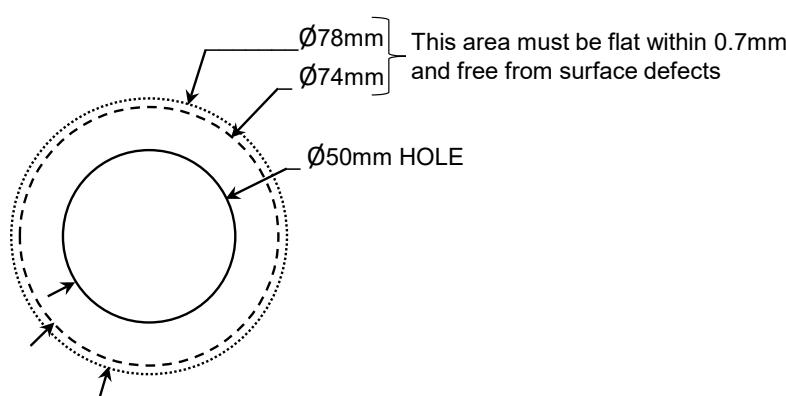
Sheet Metal Thickness Range: 0.60mm – 6.75mm

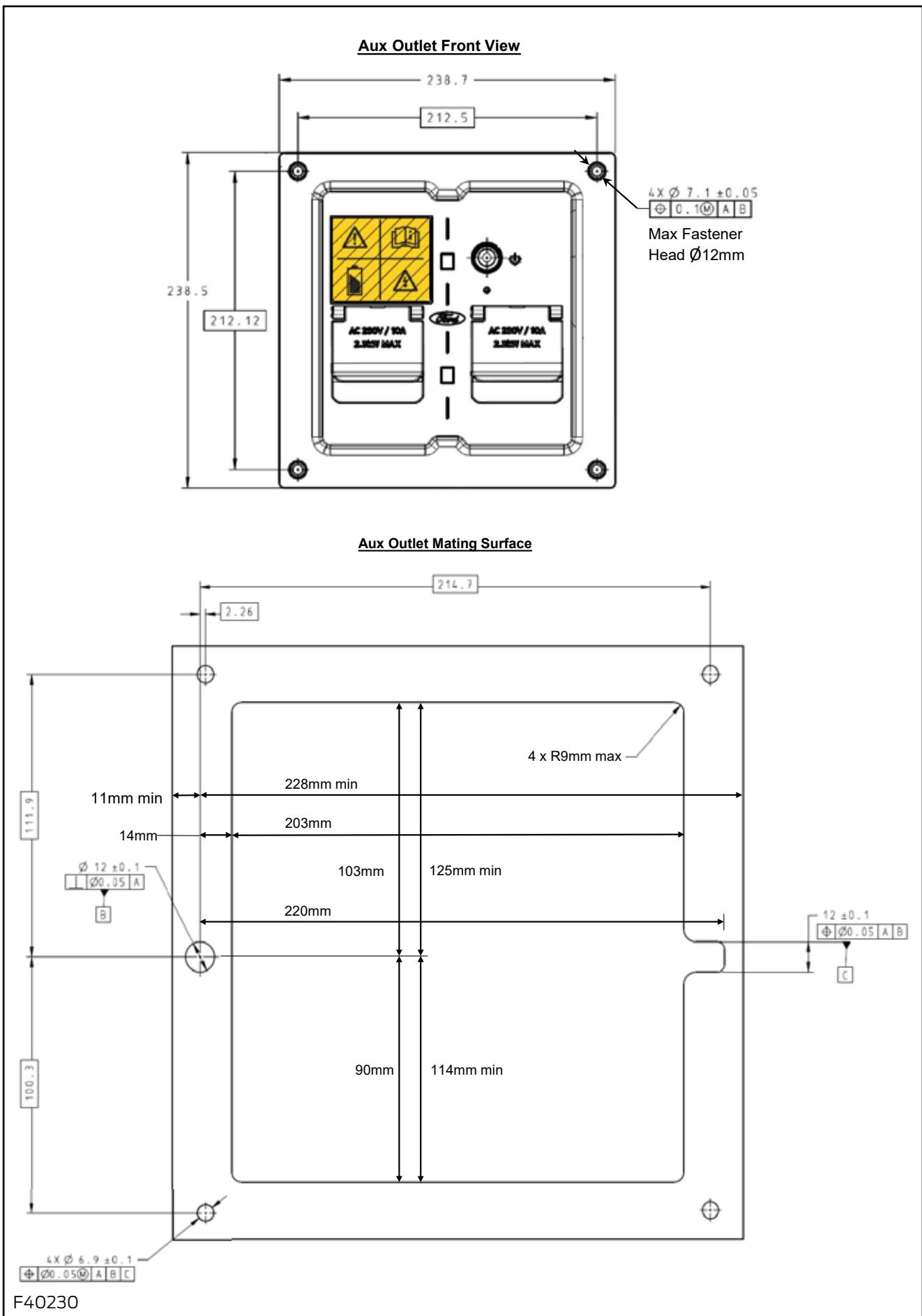
Applicable Oval Hole Sizes:

- | | |
|----|--------------|
| A. | 6.2 x 12.2mm |
| B. | 6.5 x 12.5mm |
| C. | 6.5 x 13.0mm |
| D. | 7.0 x 12.0mm |

Wiring Grommet Mating Surface

Mating surface thickness 0.5 – 3.0mm





F40230

4.26 Grounding

WARNING: It is recommended to only use one eyelet per stud for high current applications. If more than one eyelet per stud is unavoidable, the highest current eyelet feed should be connected closest to the supply terminal. Do not exceed two eyelets or crimp terminals per stud connection. See figures E296416, E228189 and the following table for recommended ground points that can be used.

CAUTIONS:

- ! Only use the ground points indicated. Using alternative points may affect the vehicle integrity.
- ! Make sure that all ground points are tightened to the correct torque.

NOTE: The Ground Point (GP) numbers are only for reference to show the location of the GP.

Ground wires should be brought back to the Ford ground points provided, please refer to the following figures. For very high current users, it is recommended that the ground connection is made directly to the ground point close to the battery ground point. An auxiliary ground stud eyelet can be ordered

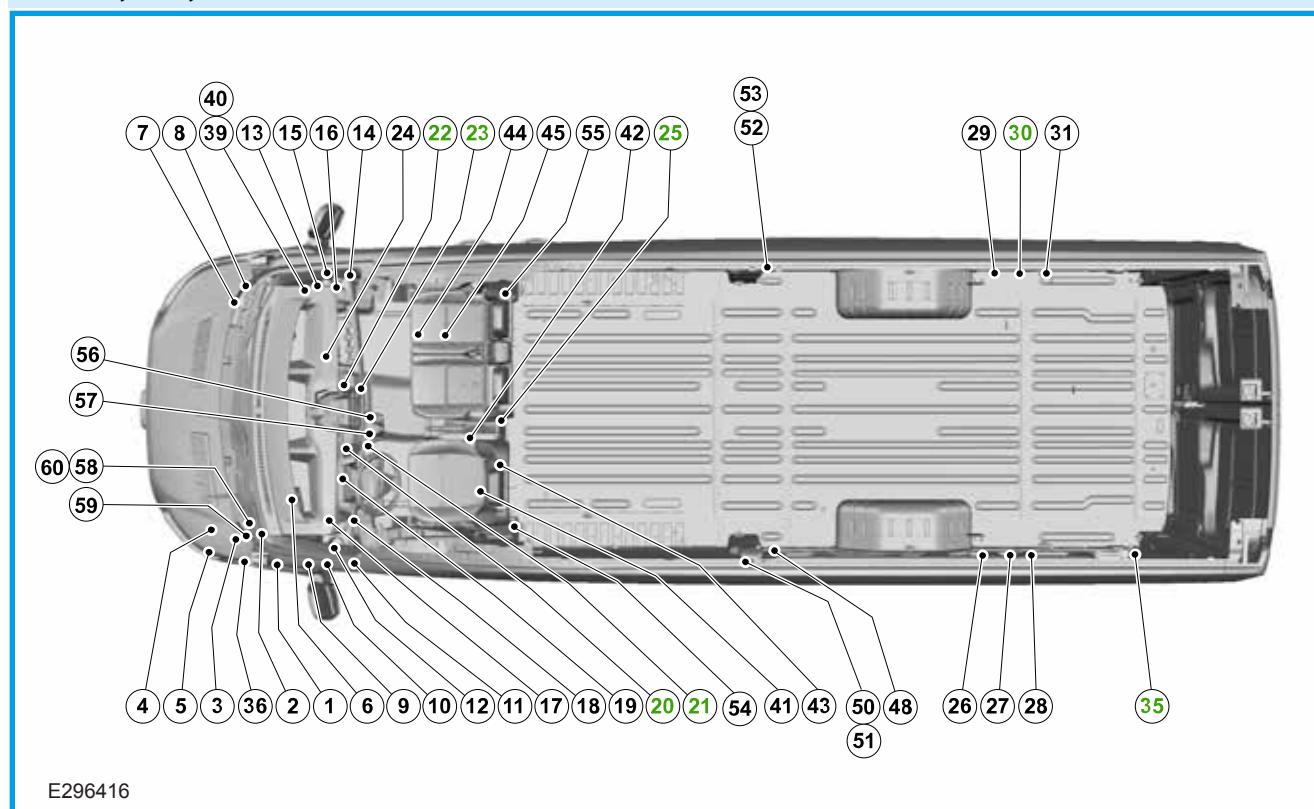
Refer to: [4.6 Battery Protection Additional Loads and Charging Systems](#) section for additional information.

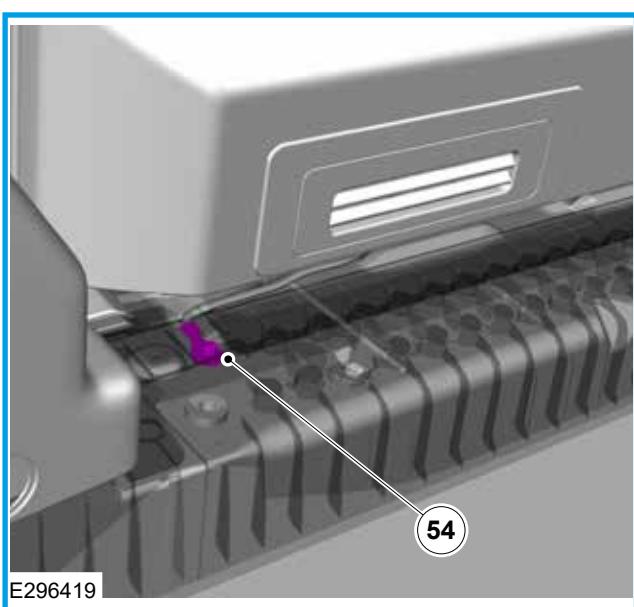
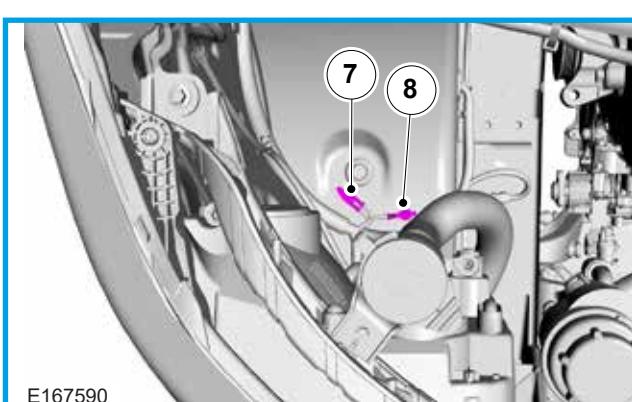
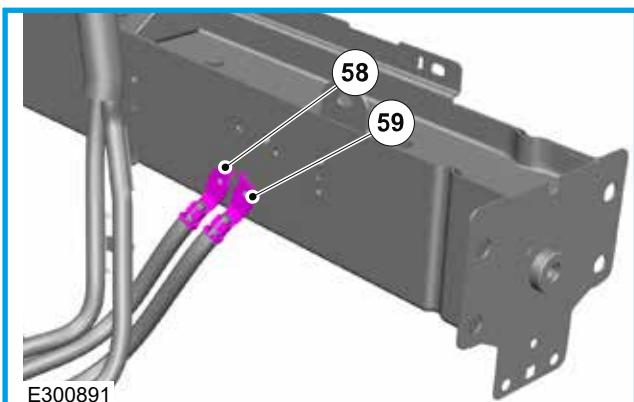
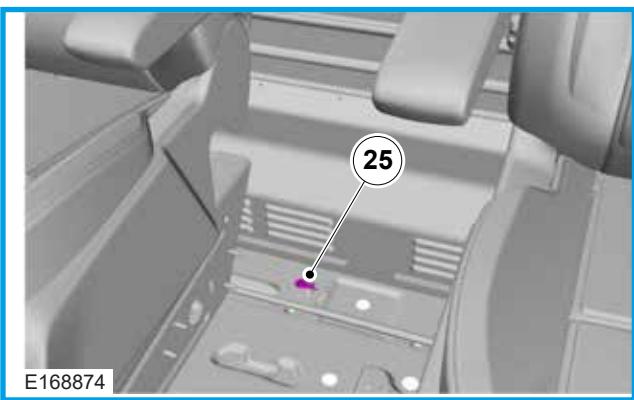
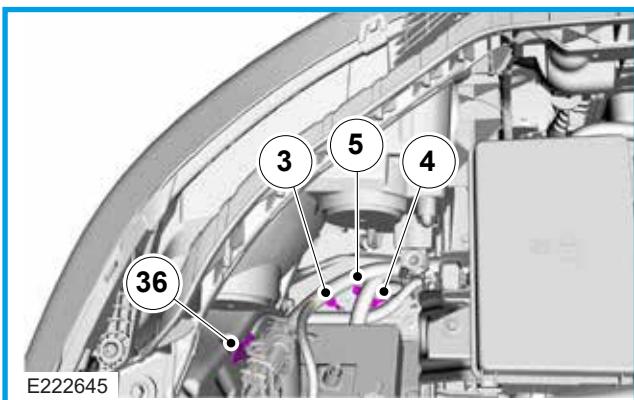
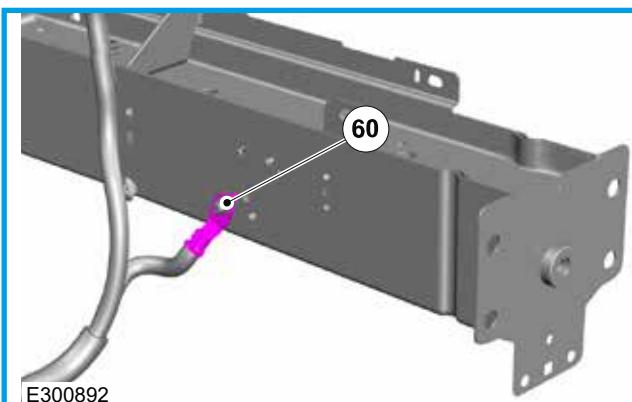
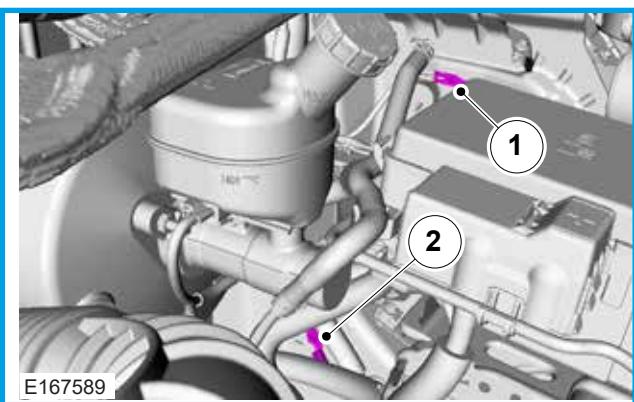
If a new grounding point is required, avoid weather zones, especially for high current grounds. Ground connections should be routed back close to the location of the +12V supply. This helps to reduce the electromagnetic field particularly generated by inrush current and improve electromagnetic compatibility.

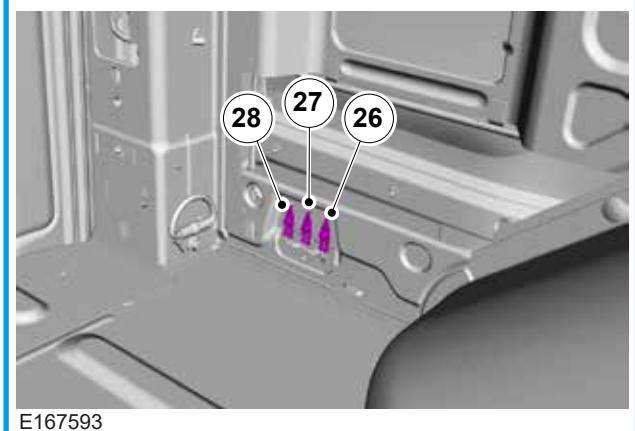
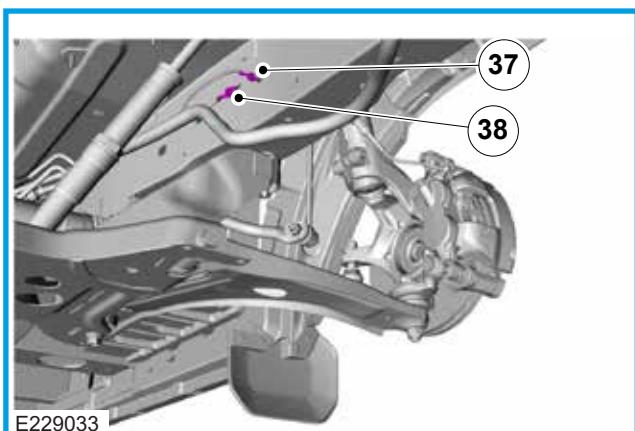
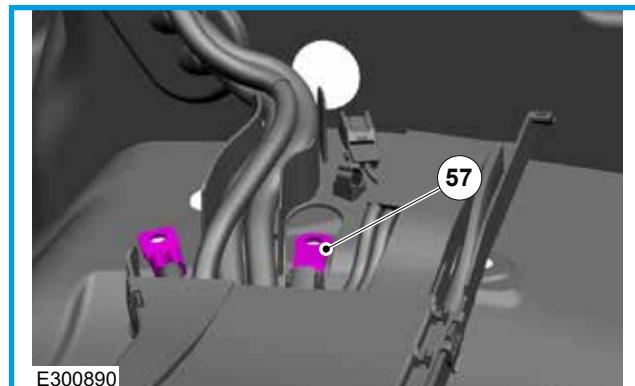
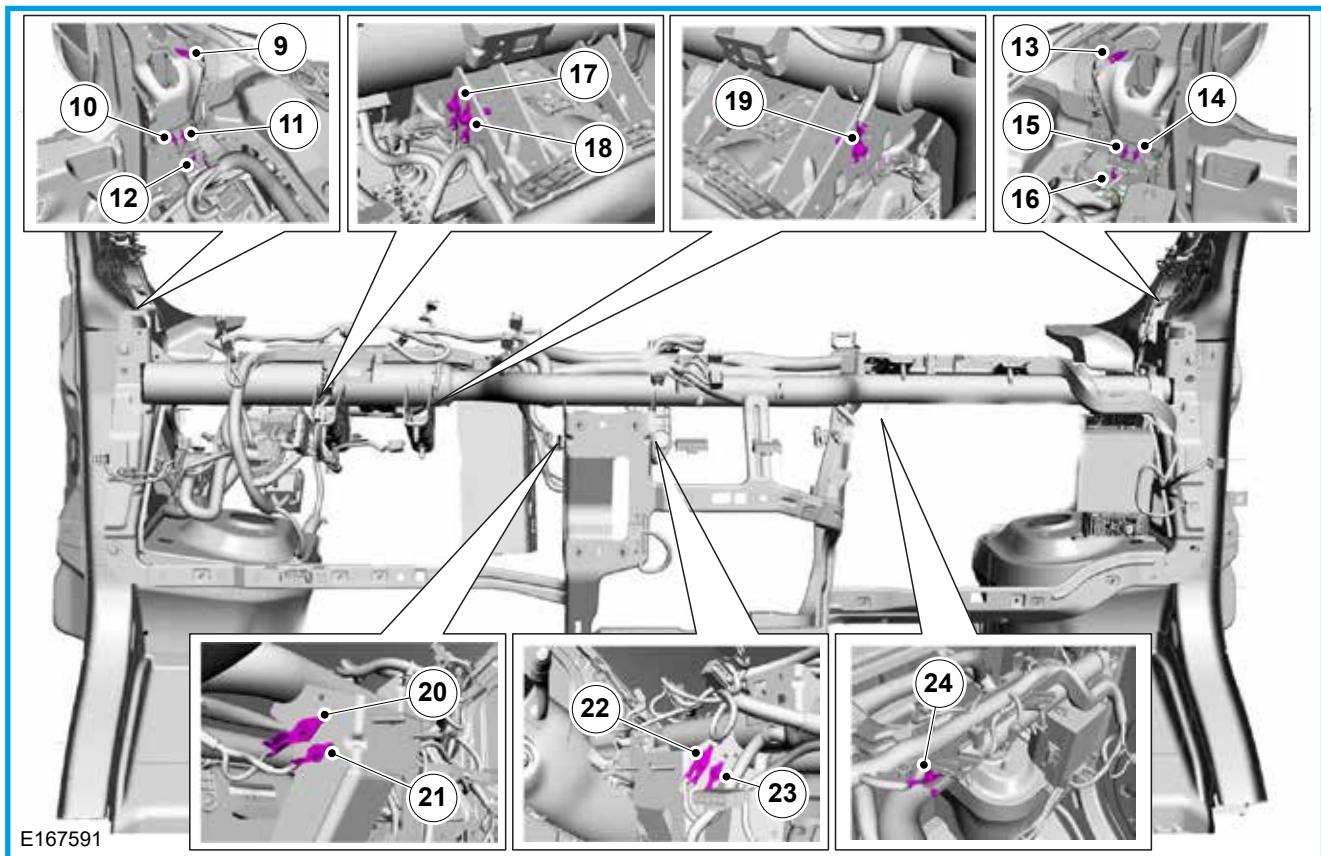
For further information [Refer to: 4.2 Wiring Installation and Routing Guides](#)

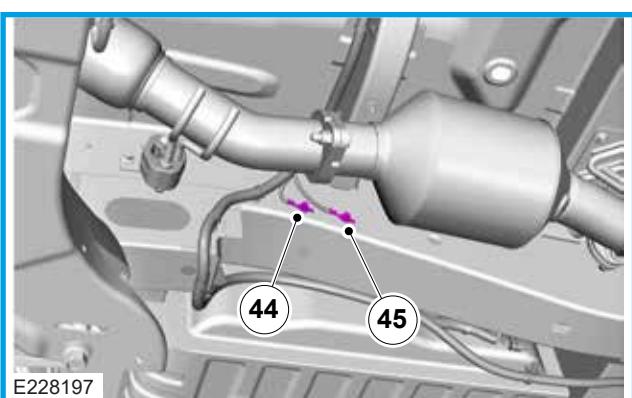
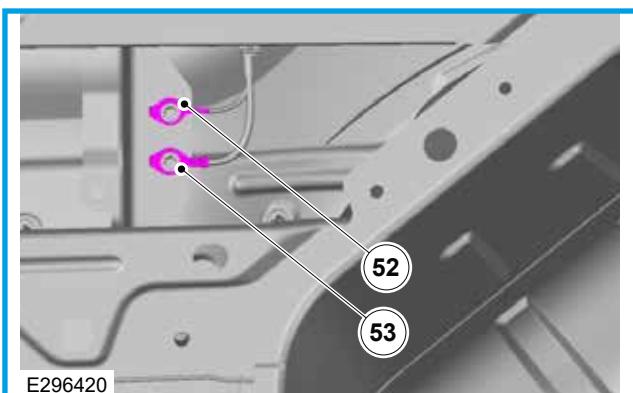
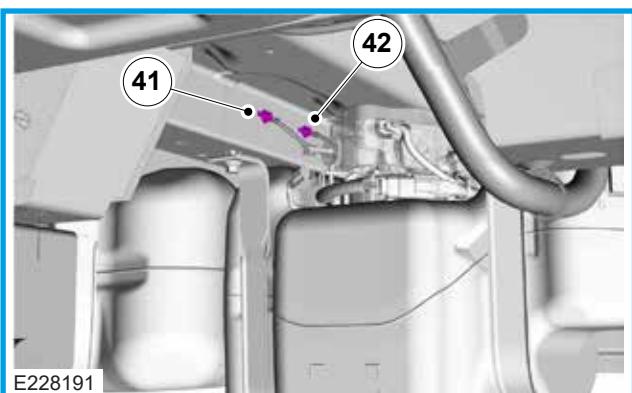
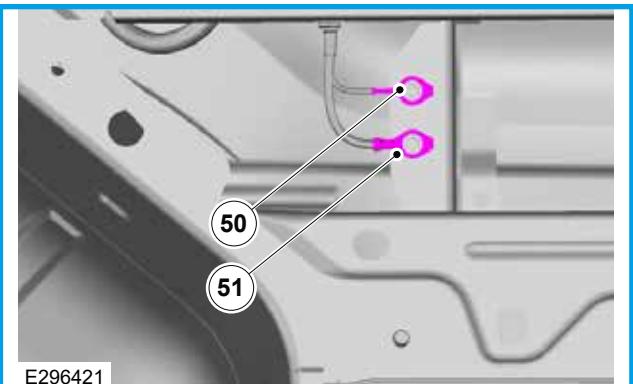
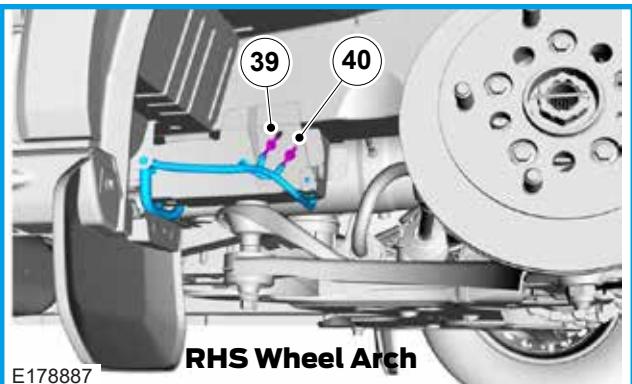
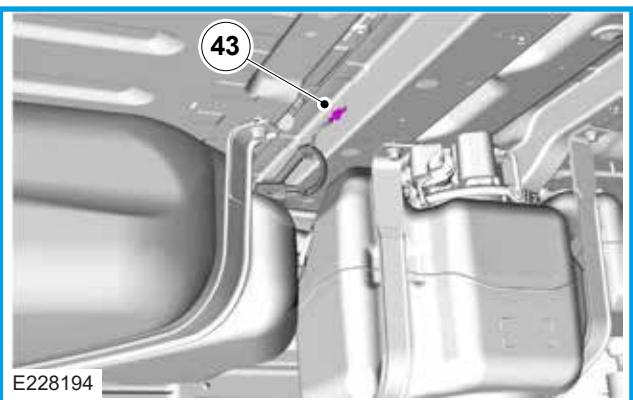
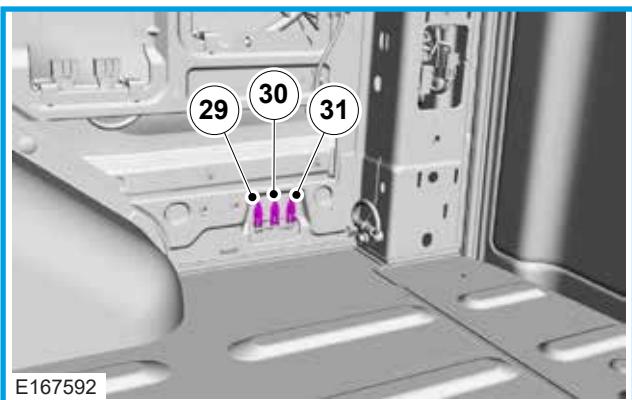
4.26.1 Ground Points - ICE

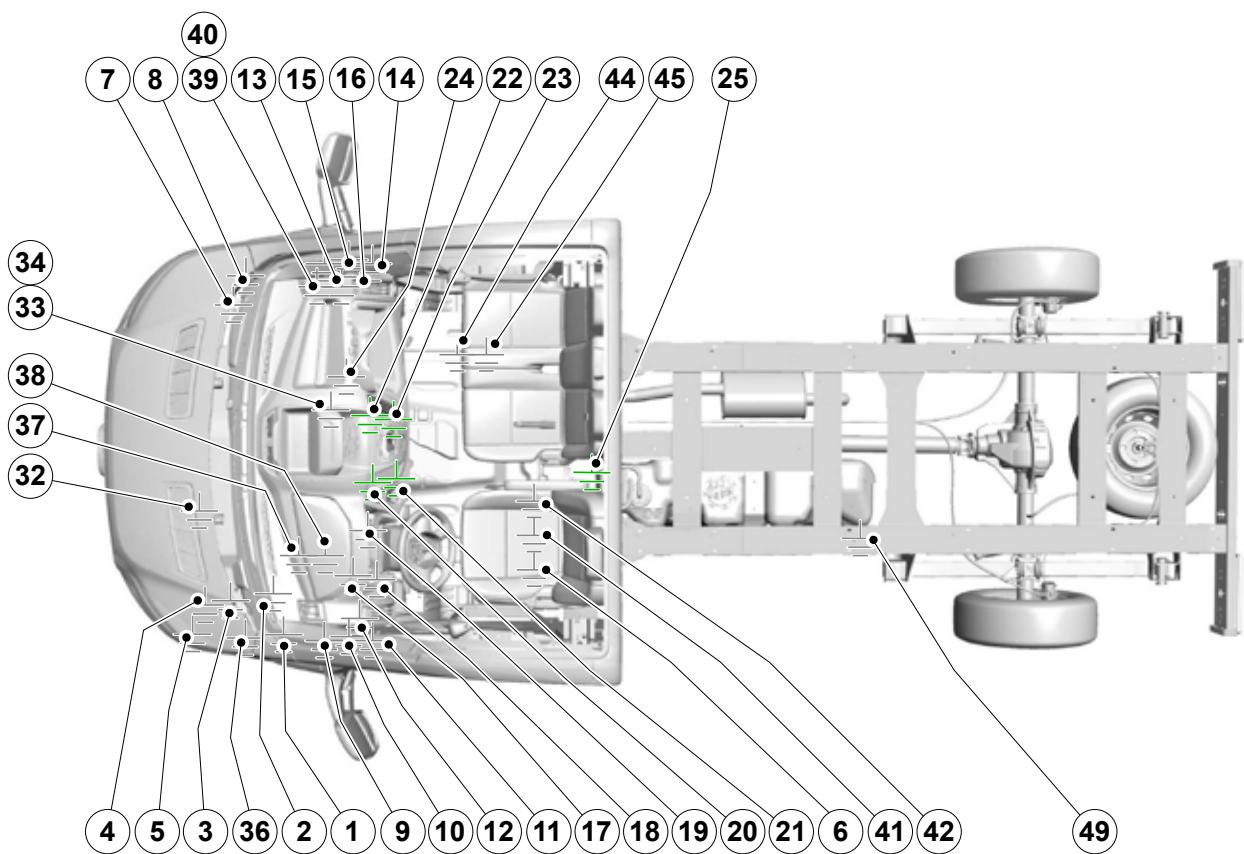
ICE Van, Bus, Kombi Ground Points



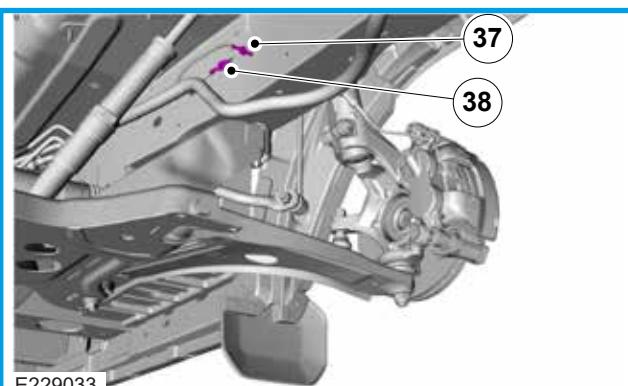
Abc = BEV Only Abc = ICE Only



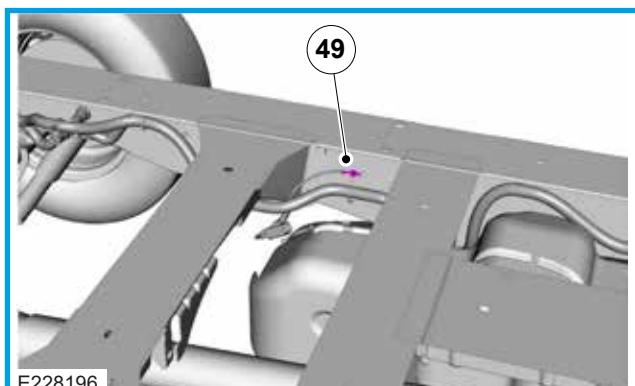
Abc = BEV Only Abc = ICE Only

ICE Chassis Cab Ground Points

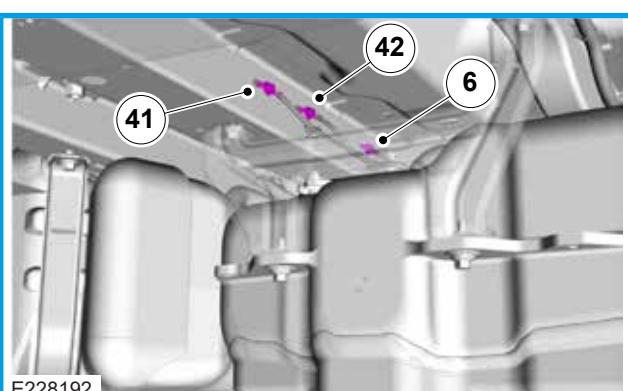
E228189



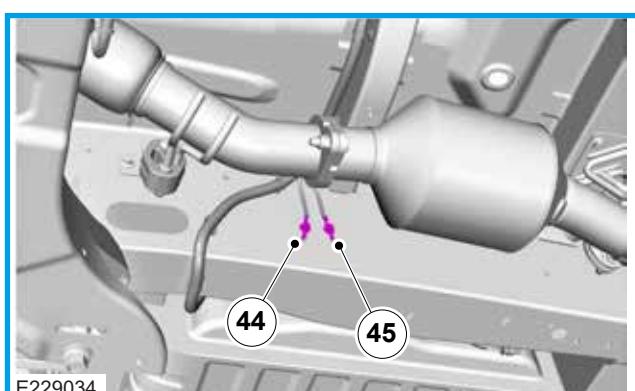
E229033



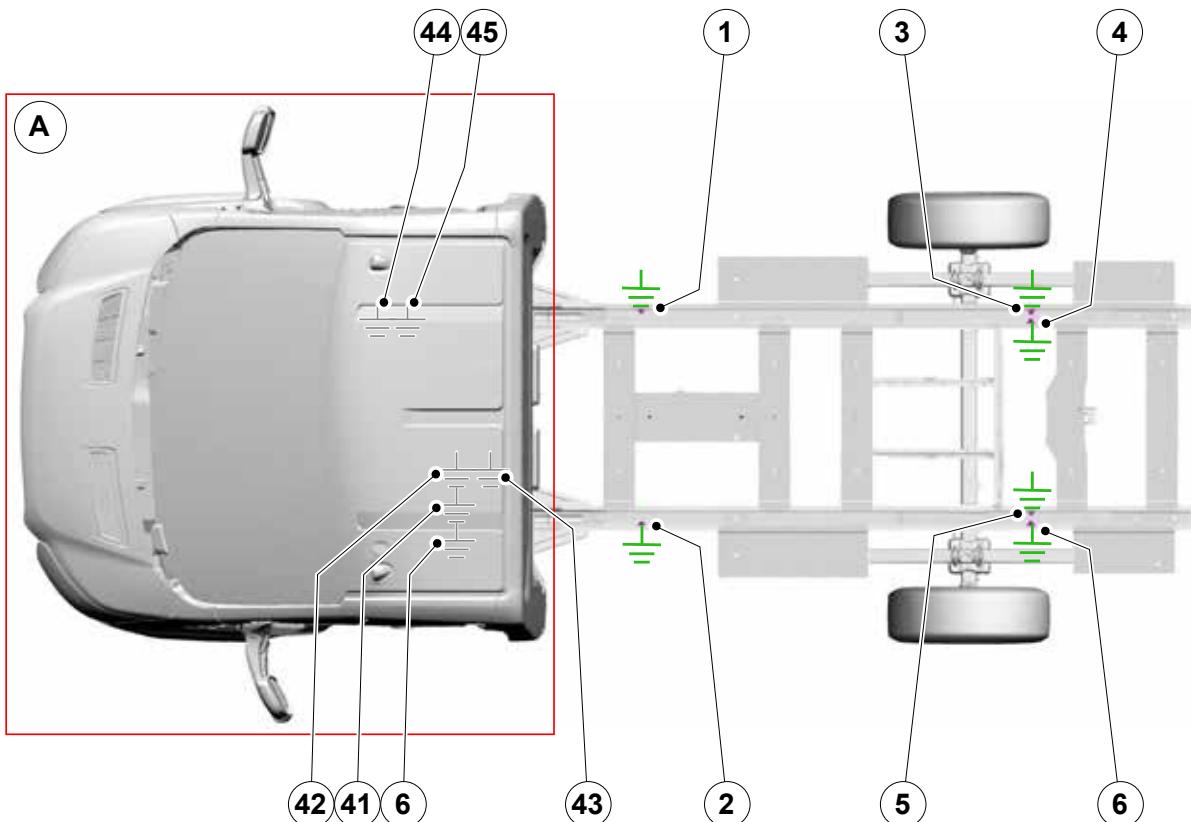
E228196



E228192

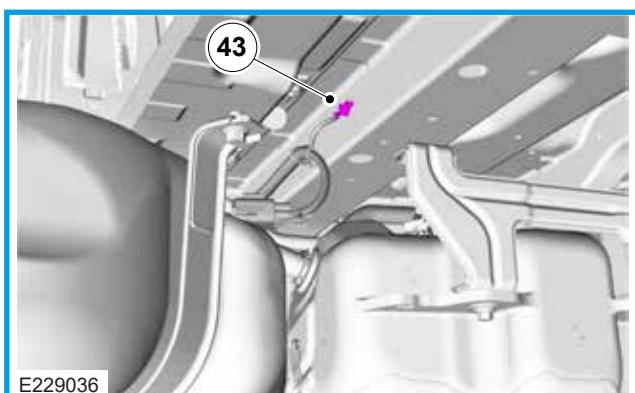
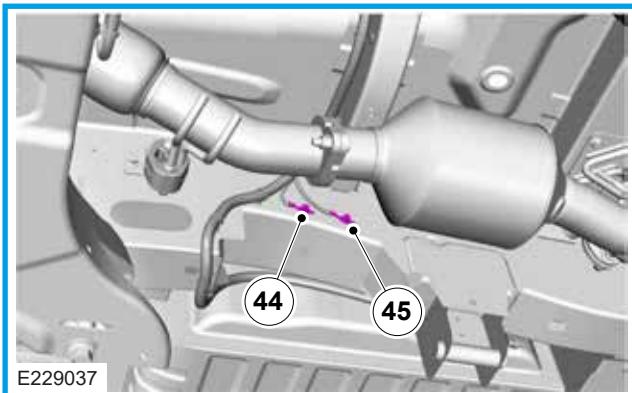
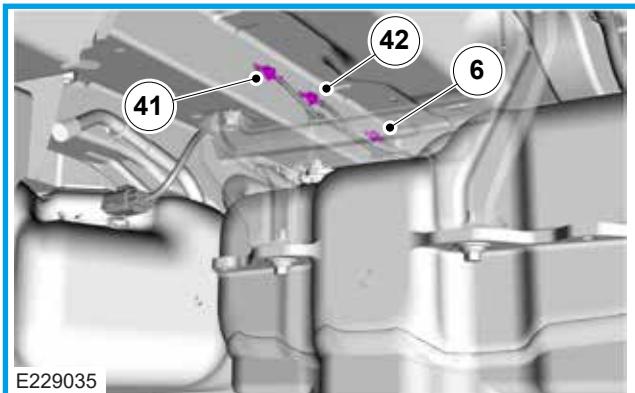


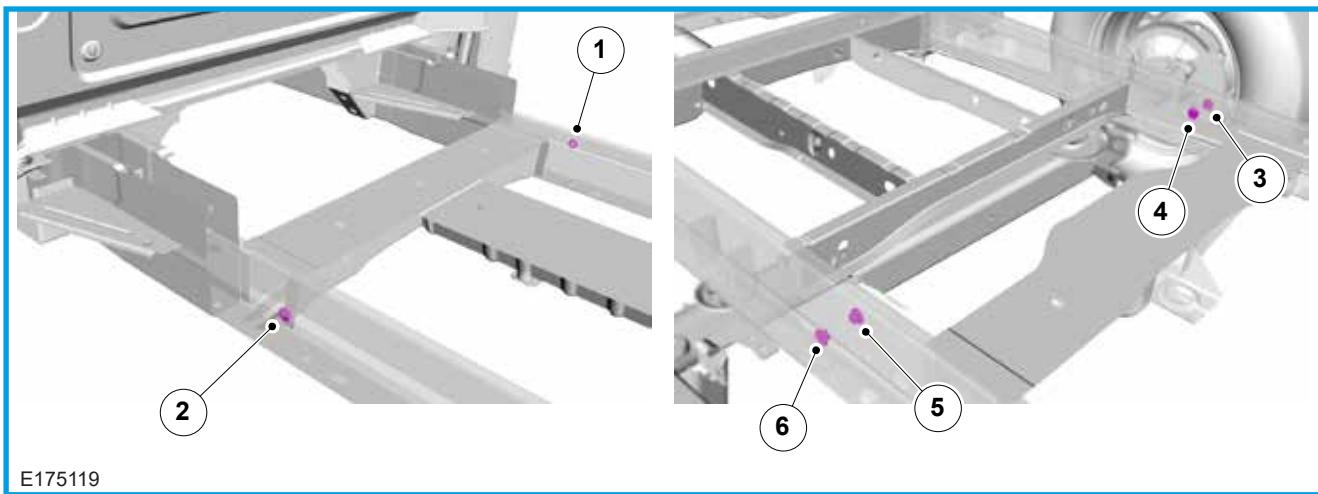
E229034

ICE Skeletal Chassis for Camper and Non Camper


E228190

Item	Description
A	All ground points are the same as Van, Bus, Kombi, except GP6.
1 - 6	Additional ground points (Locations 1 and 2 use the outer rail positions only). M8 threadless weld nuts requiring M8 thread rolling screws.





E175119

Ground Point	Location	Type	Harness
Ground Points - ICE Chassis Cabs and Van, Bus, Kombi			
1	Engine Bay LHS	Misc Power Electric	90A000
2	Engine Bay LHS	Misc Power Electric	90A000
3	Engine Bay LHS Front	Exhaust Emissions Control	14290
4	Engine Bay LHS Front	Exhaust Emissions Control	14290
5	Engine Bay LHS Front	Exhaust Emissions Control	14290
7	Engine Bay RHS Front	Misc. Power Electric	90A000
8	Engine Bay RHS Front	Misc. Power Electric	90A000
9	A Pillar LHS Upper	Rear Air Condition Control	93A000
10	A Pillar LHS Lower	Misc. Power Electric	90A000
11	A Pillar LHS Lower	Misc. Power Electric	90A000
12	A Pillar LHS Lower	Misc. Power Electric	90A000
13 ⁽¹⁾	A Pillar RHS Upper	Misc. Power Electric	94A000
14	A Pillar RHS Lower	Misc. Power Electric	90A000
15	A Pillar RHS Lower	Misc. Power Electric	90A000
16	A Pillar RHS Lower	Misc. Power Electric	90A000
17	Cross Car Beam LHS	Misc. Power Electric	92A000
18	Cross Car Beam LHS	Misc. Power Electric	92A000
19	Cross Car Beam LHS	Misc. Power Electric	92A000
20 ⁽¹⁾	Cross Car Beam LHS	Misc. Power Electric	92A000
21 ⁽¹⁾	Cross Car Beam LHS	Misc. Power Electric	92A000
22	Cross Car Beam LHS	Misc. Power Electric	92A000/14C007
23 ⁽¹⁾	Cross Car Beam LHS	Misc. Power Electric	92A000
24 ⁽¹⁾	Cross Car Beam RHS	Misc. Power Electric	92A000
25 ⁽¹⁾	Floor Pan	Power Inverter	90A000
26	Bodyside Rear LHS	Misc. Power Electric	93A000
31	Engine Bay LHS	Engine Control Sensor and Fuel Charge	12B637
36	Engine Bay LHS Front	Engine Control Sensor and Fuel Charge	12B637
39	RHS Wheel Arch	Exhaust Emissions Control	15K868
40	RHS Wheel Arch	Exhaust Emissions Control	15K868
41	Frame Middle Left	Trailer Tow	14406
42	Frame Middle Left	Fuel Fired Heater & Filter Heater	14406
44	Frame Middle Right	NOx Sensor	14406

Ground Point	Location	Type	Harness
45	Frame Middle Right	NOx Sensor	14406
57	Floor Pan	12V Body Main	90A000
58	Engine Bay LHS Front	Misc. Power Electric	14300
59	Engine Bay LHS Front	Misc. Power Electric	14300
60	Engine Bay LHS Front	Misc. Power Electric	14305

Ground Points - ICE Van, Bus, Kombi Only

27	Bodyside Rear LHS	Misc. Power Electric	93A000
28	Bodyside Rear LHS	Misc. Power Electric	93A000
29	Bodyside Rear RHS	Misc. Power Electric	93A000
30	Bodyside Rear RHS	Misc. Power Electric	93A000
31	Bodyside Rear RHS	Misc. Power Electric	93A000
35 ⁽¹⁾	D Pillar LHS Middle	Misc. Power Electric	94A000
48	Frame Middle Right	PEM (Fuel Pump Control Module) RWD	14406
50	Bodyside Middle LHS	Misc. Power Electric	90A000
51	Bodyside Middle LHS	Misc. Power Electric	90A000
52	Bodyside Middle RHS	Misc. Power Electric	90A000
53	Bodyside Middle RHS	Misc. Power Electric	90A000
54	LHS under seat Pedestal	Misc. Power Electric	90A000

Ground Points - ICE Chassis Cabs Only

37	Engine Bay LHS	Fuel Tank Sender	14406
38	Engine Bay LHS	Fuel Tank Sender	14406
49	Frame Middle Left	PEM (Fuel Pump Control Module)	14406

Ground Points - ICE Van, Bus, Kombi and Skeletal Chassis for Camper and Non Camper

43	Frame Middle Left	PEM (Fuel Pump Control Module)	14406
Ground Points - ICE Chassis Cab and Skeletal Chassis for Camper and Non Camper			
6	Frame Middle Left	Lighting	14406

⁽¹⁾ Recommended Ground Points that can be used.

Ford Part Number W505255-S450M, M6 screw type fixing - torque 12Nm ± 1.8

4.26.2 Ground Points - BEV

WARNINGS:

 **Electrical ground paths for High Voltage components (includes Low Voltage ground points for the High Voltage system) must not be utilised as additional ground points for 12 volt system applications.**

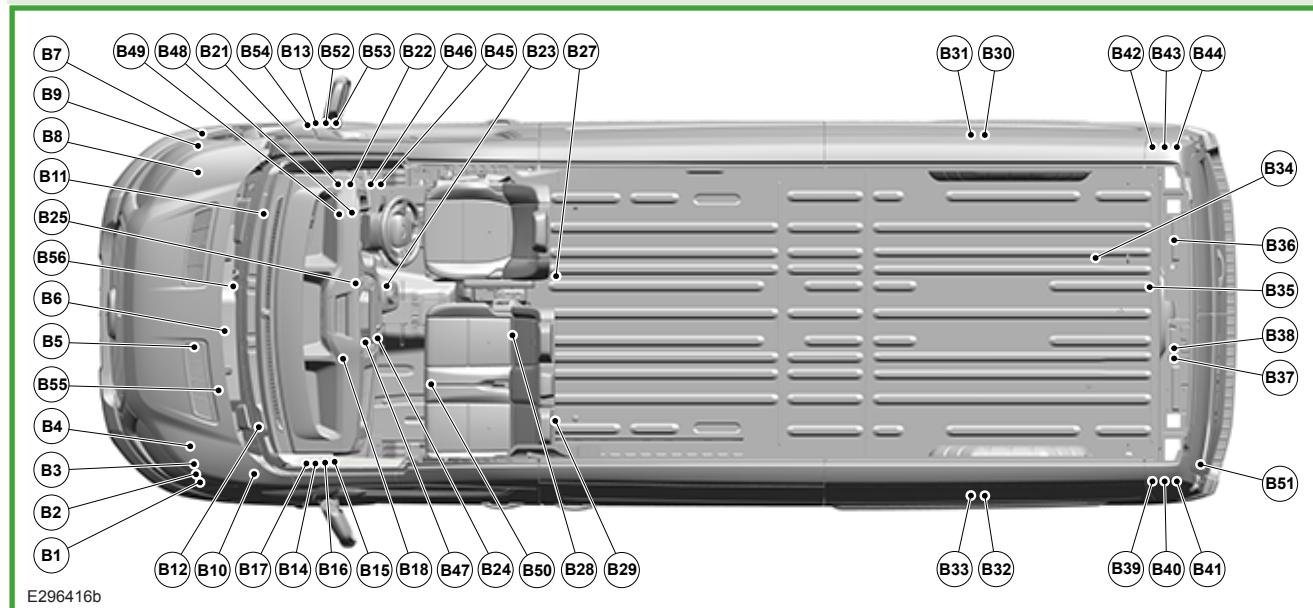
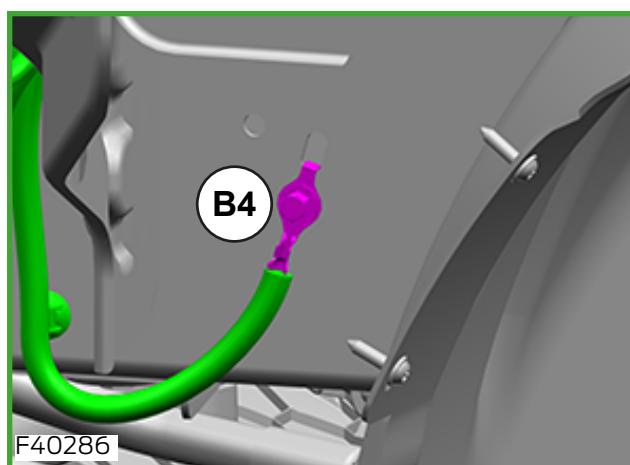
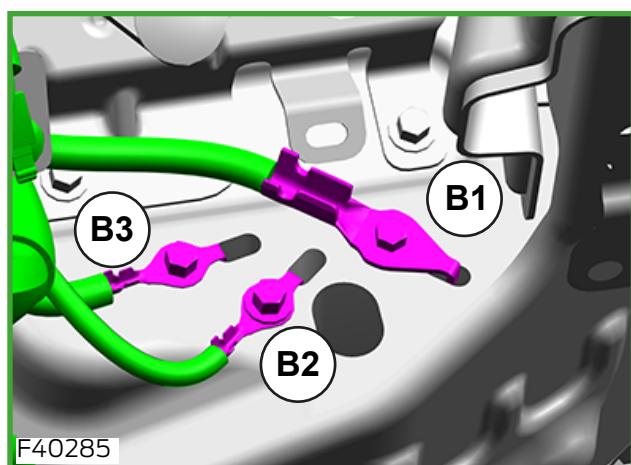
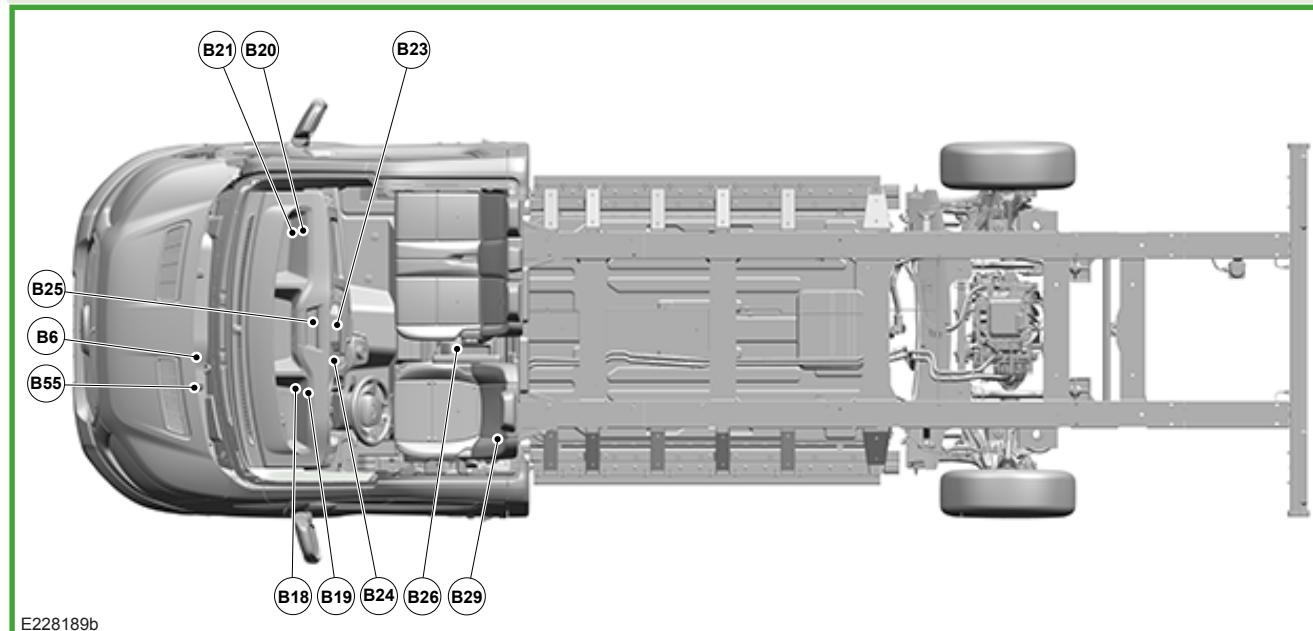
 **All the High Voltage components on the E-Transit BEV are either grounded through the metallic case or through a ground cable/wire or a EMC ground strap. Do not tamper with or modify any of these HV component fastener joints or grounding points**

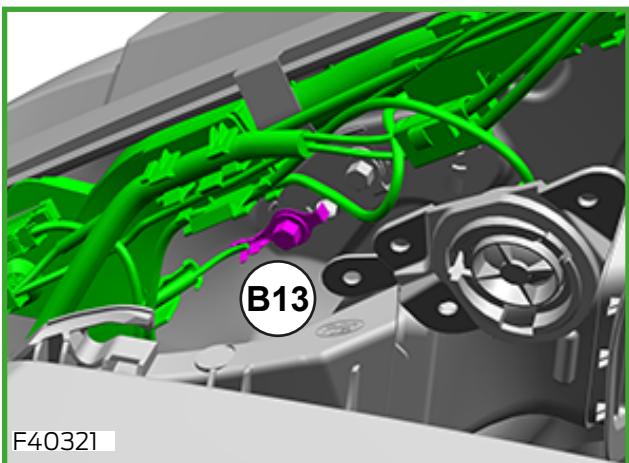
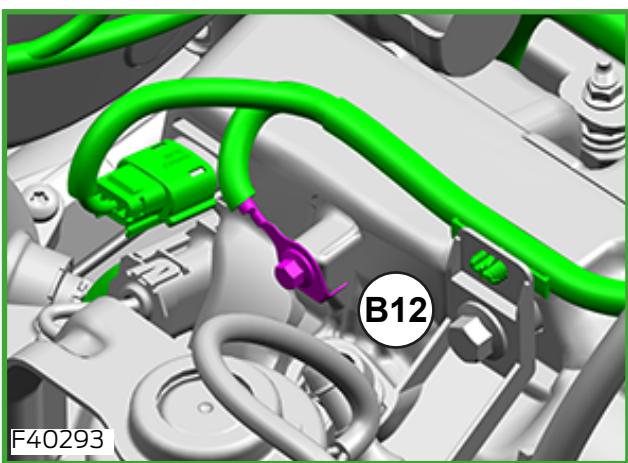
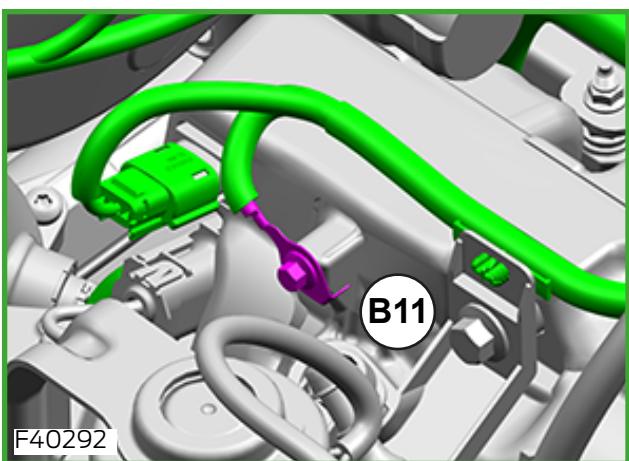
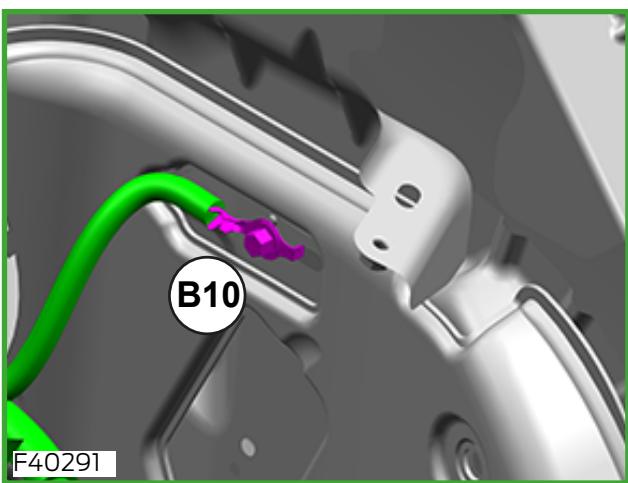
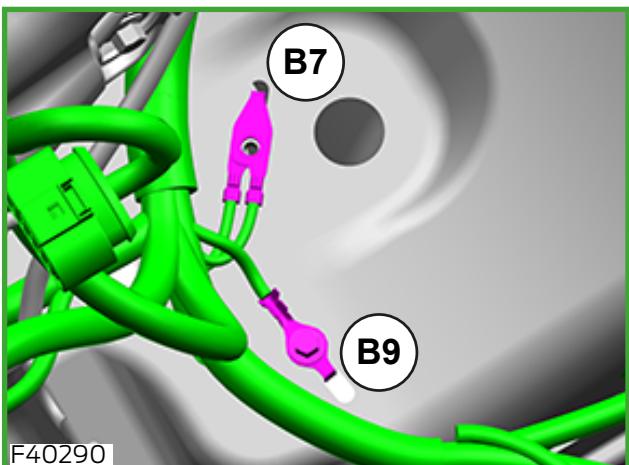
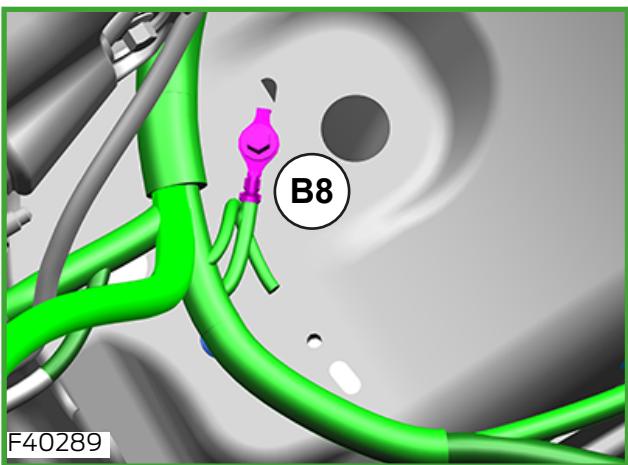
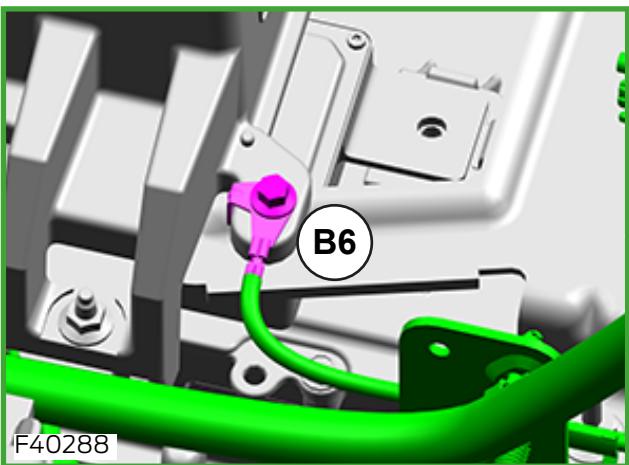
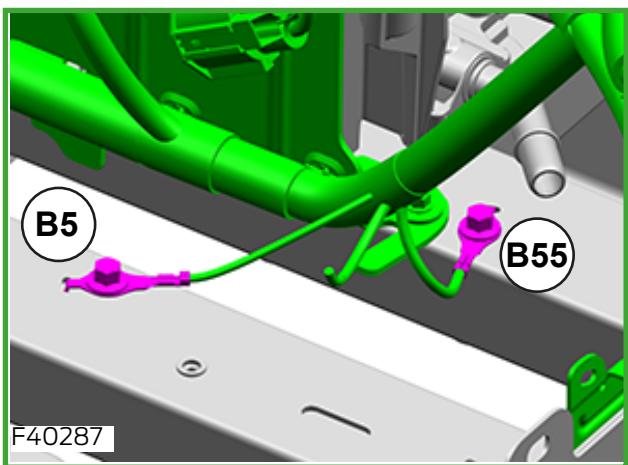
NOTE: Please refer to the following diagrams for the E-Transit BEV 12V system ground points. Additional ground points can be created by convertors on the body (preferable) or chassis. This may be the use of a welded on stud or nut secured to body sheet metal. Requirements for a clean surface to weld to, and for corrosion protection afterwards, should be followed.

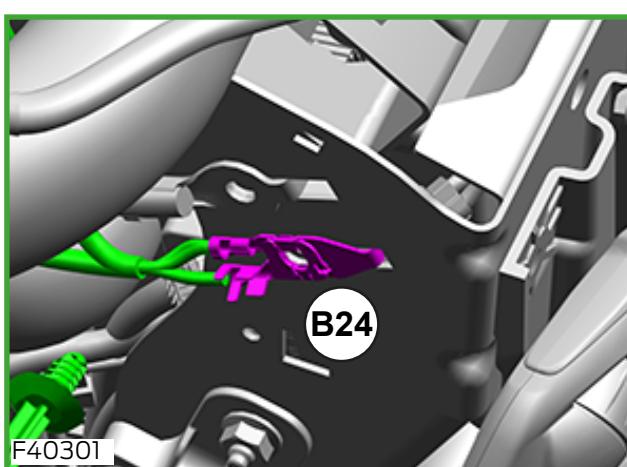
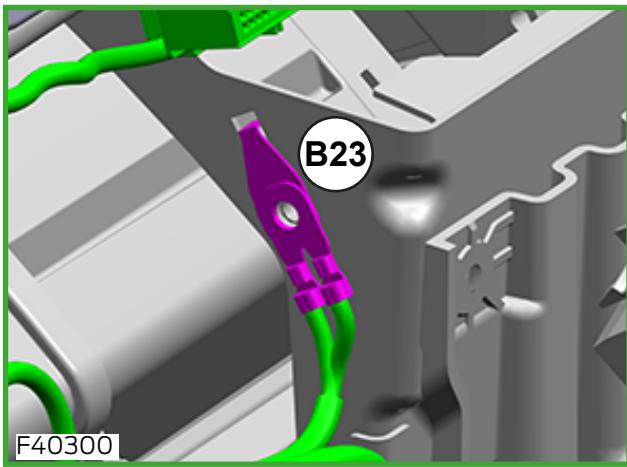
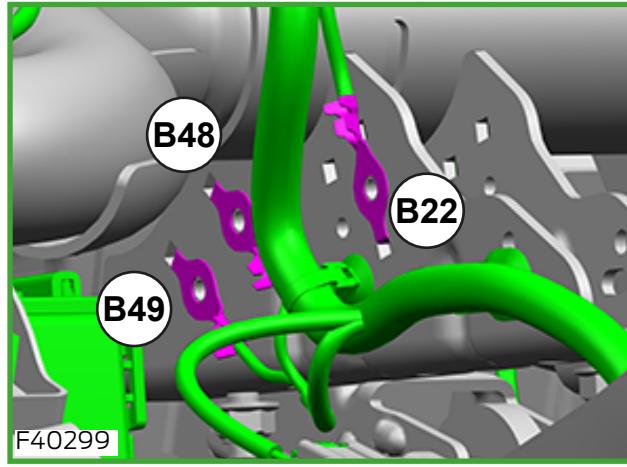
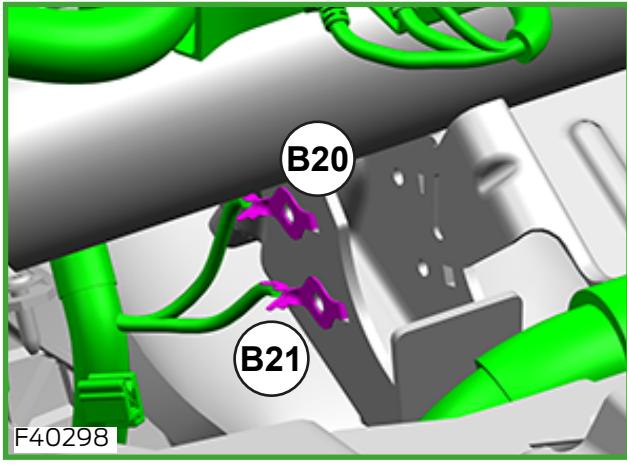
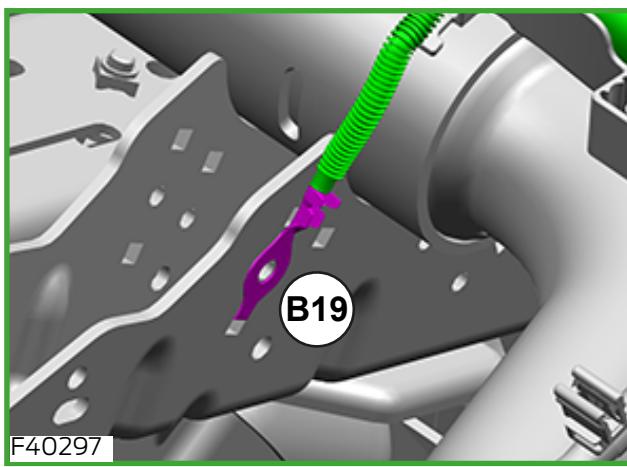
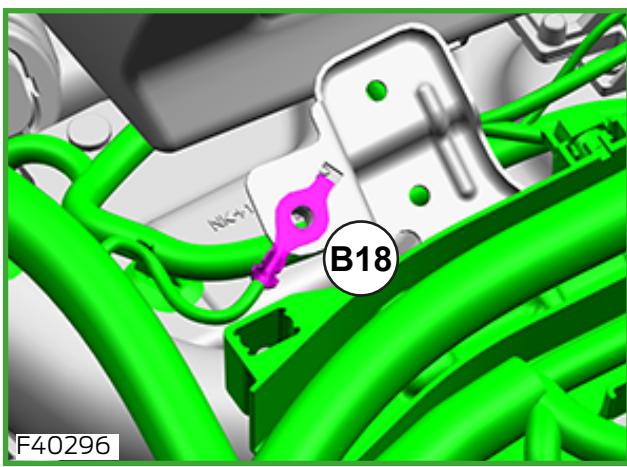
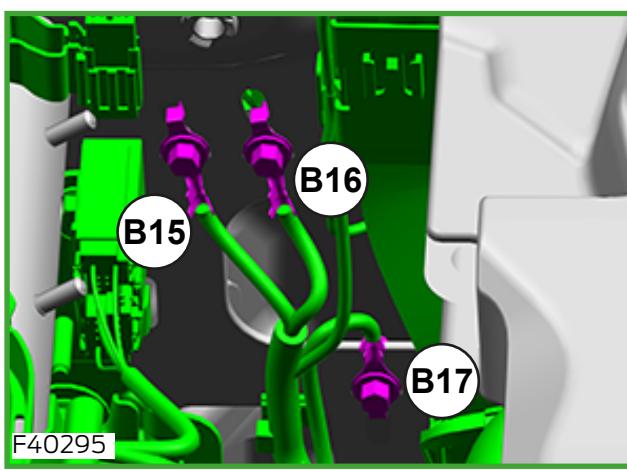
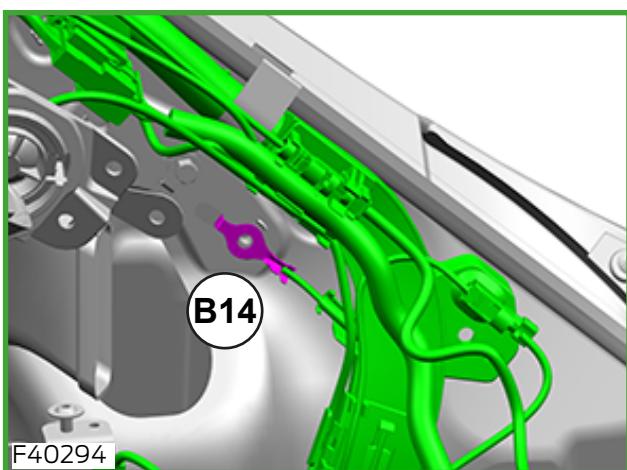
Refer to:

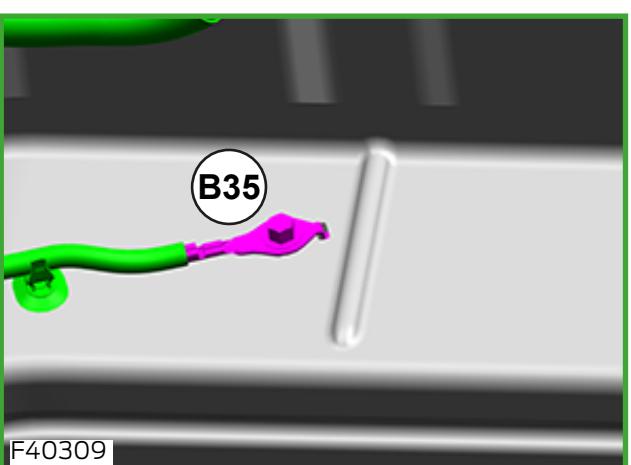
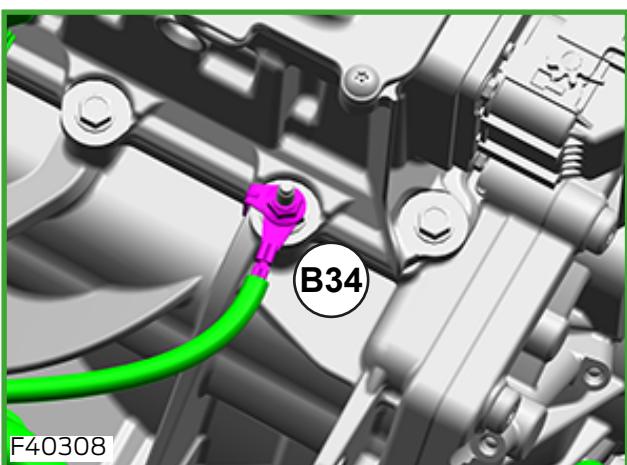
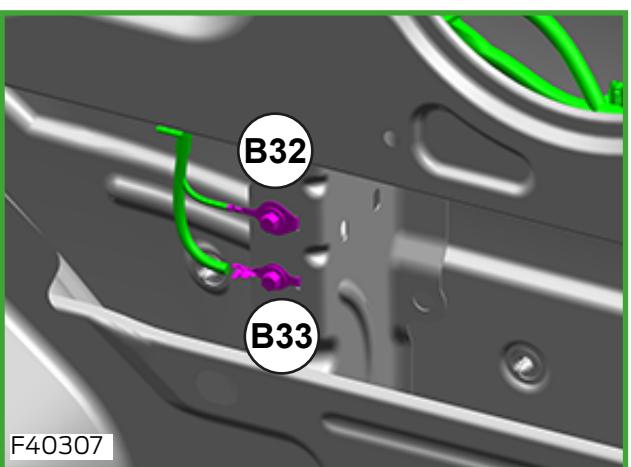
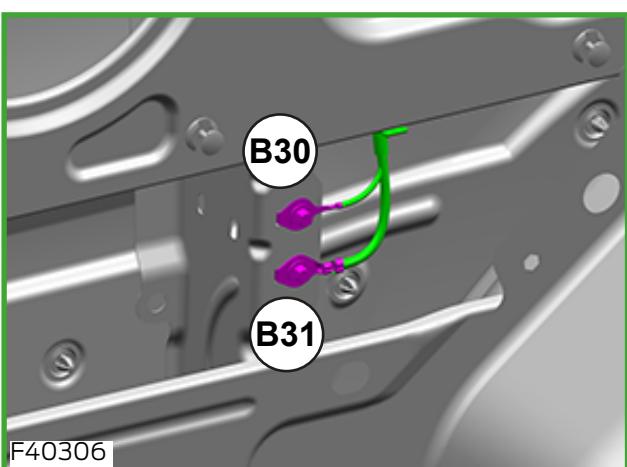
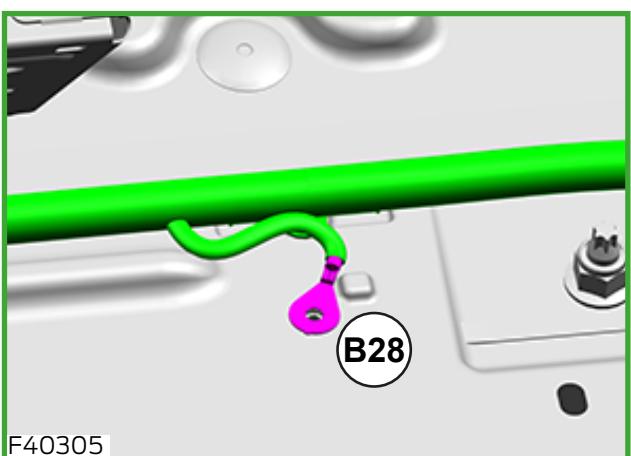
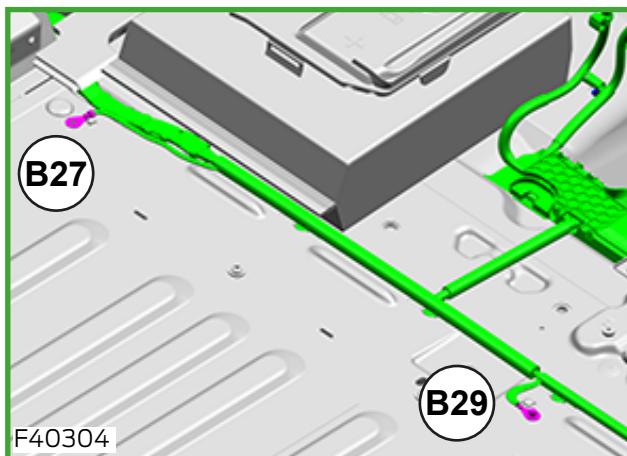
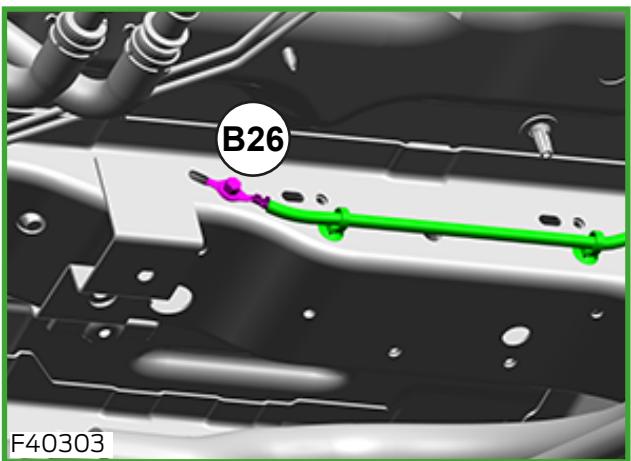
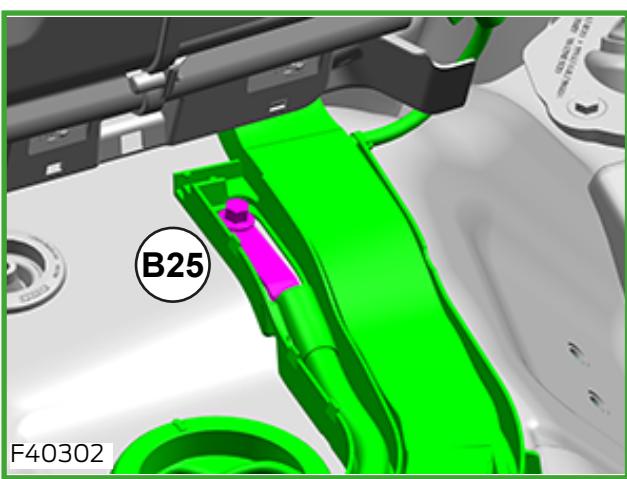
[5.1.2 Welding](#)

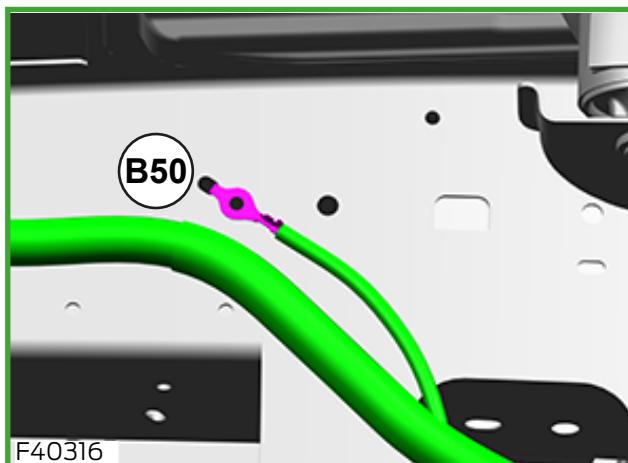
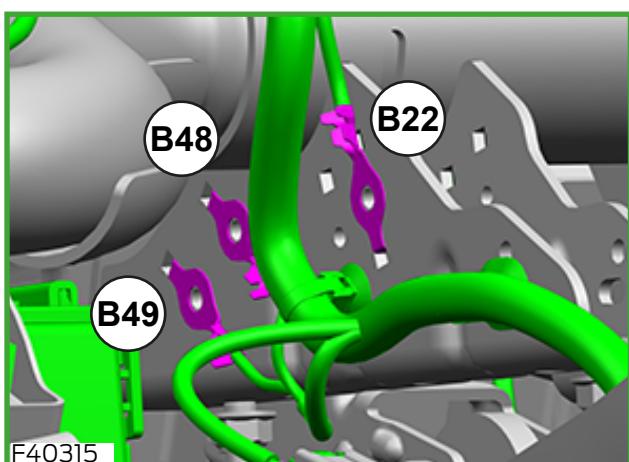
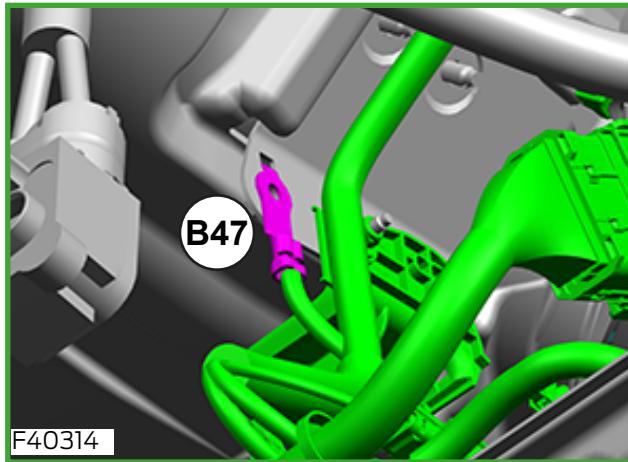
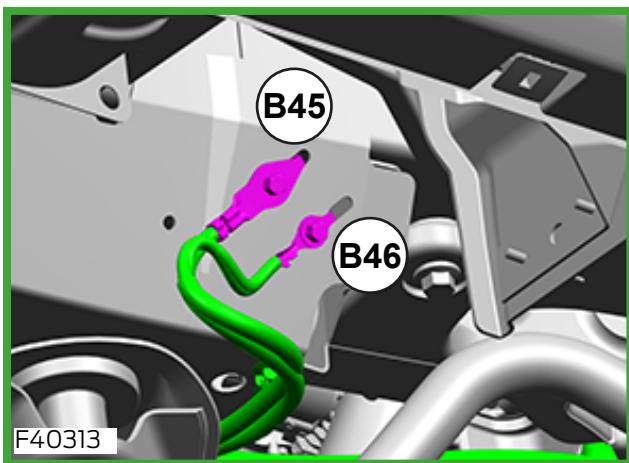
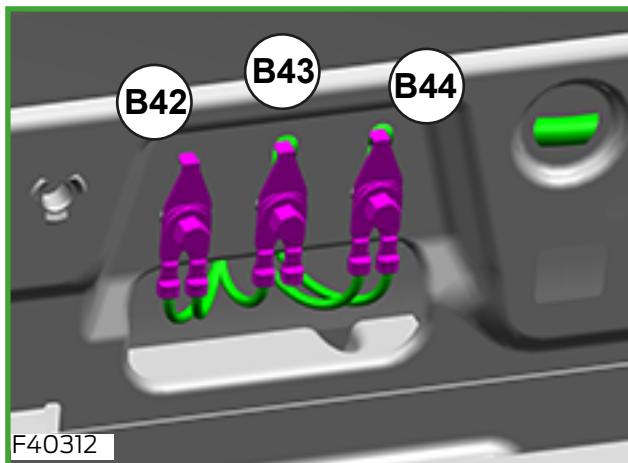
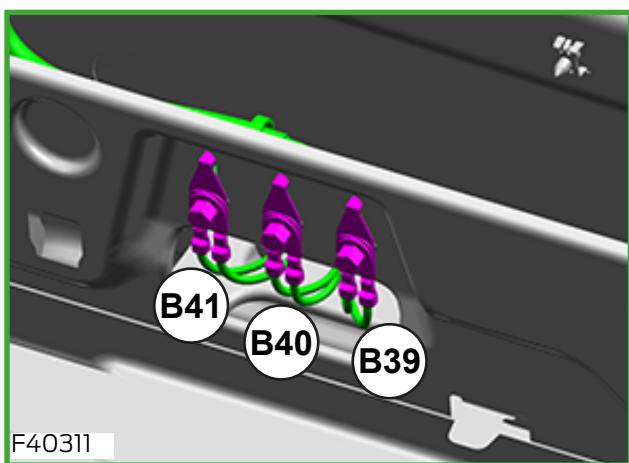
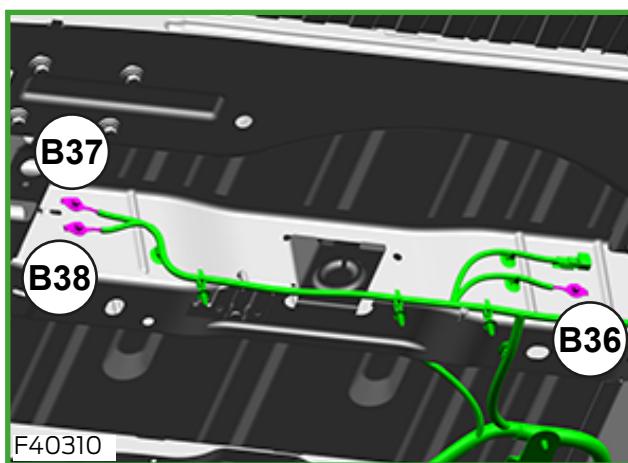
[5.14 Corrosion Prevention](#)

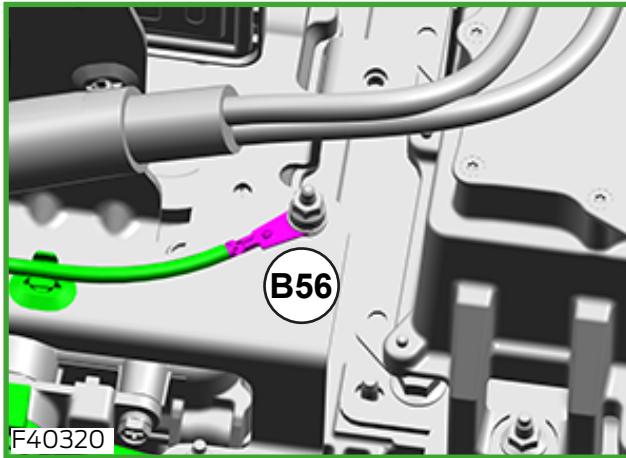
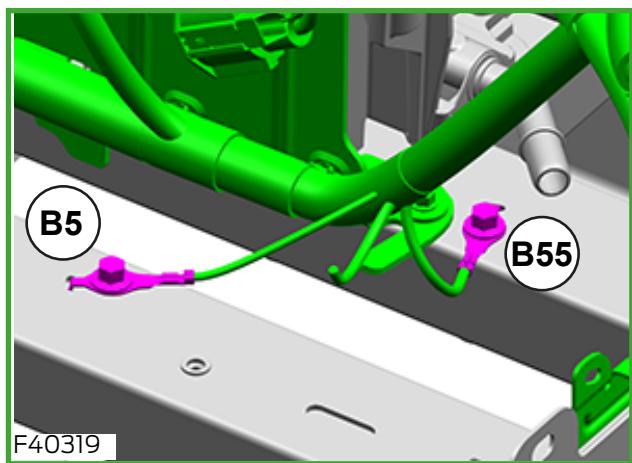
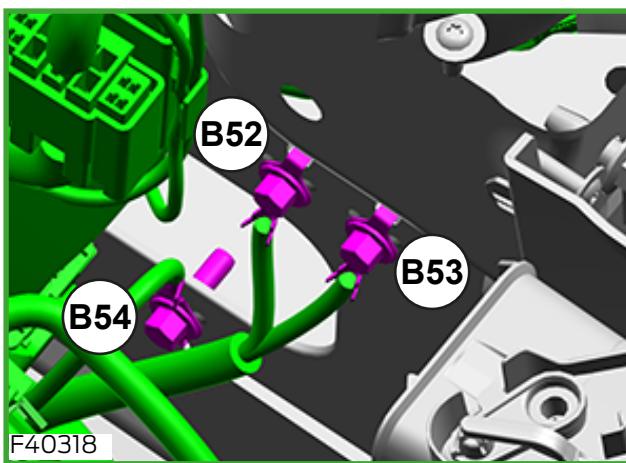
BEV Van, Bus, Kombi and Common Ground Points

BEV Chassis Cab Specific Ground Points


Abc = BEV Only Abc = ICE Only



Abc = BEV Only Abc = ICE Only





Point No.	Location	Type (Use of Ground Point)	Vehicle Type	Harness No.
B1	Engine Bay LHS	9K INT to BEV	Common BEV	90A000
B2	Engine Bay LHS	9K INT to BEV	Common BEV	90A000
B3	Engine Bay LHS	9K INT to BEV	Common BEV	90A000
B4	Side Member Front LHS	HV Charger Connect Ground	Common BEV	90A000
B5	Engine Bay Front	Mega Brace Common	Common BEV	NK3T-14K011
B6	Engine Bay Front	OBGI	Common BEV	NK3T-14K011
B7	Engine Bay RHS	HV Charger Connect Ground	Common BEV	90A000
B8	Engine Bay RHS	HV Charger Connect Ground	Common BEV	90A000
B9	Engine Bay RHS	HV Charger Connect Ground	Common BEV	90A000
B10	Engine Bay LHS	9K INT to BEV	Common BEV	90A000
B11	Engine Bay RHS	Air Conditioning	Common BEV	NK3T-14K011
B12	Engine Bay LHS	HV Charger Connect Ground	Common BEV	90A000
B13	A Pillar RHS	RR ACC	Common BEV	94A000
B14	A Pillar LHS	RR ACC	Common BEV	94A000
B15	Cowl Panel LHS	IP Harness Ground	Common BEV	90A000
B16	Cowl Panel LHS	IP Harness Ground	Common BEV	90A000
B17	Cowl Panel LHS	IP Harness Ground	Common BEV	90A000
B18	Cross Car Beam LHS	IP Harness Ground	Common BEV	92A000

Point No.	Location	Type (Use of Ground Point)	Vehicle Type	Harness No.
B19	Cross Car Beam LHS	IP Harness Ground	CCAB	92A000
B20	Cross Car Beam RHS	BCM Ground	Common BEV	92A000
B21	Cross Car Beam RHS	BCM Ground	Common BEV	92A000
B22	Cross Car Beam RHS	IP Harness Ground	VBK	92A000
B23	Cross Car Beam Middle	Single DIN stereo grounds	Common BEV	92A000
B24	Cross Car Beam LHS	PTC Heater	CCAB	92A000
B25	Floor Pan Front	Center Channel Ground	Common BEV	90A000
B26	Cross Member 2	CCAB Grounds	CCAB	NK3T-14406
B27	Floor Pan Front	B Pillar grounds	Common BEV	90A000
B28	Floor Pan Front	B Pillar grounds	VBK	90A000
B29	Floor Pan Front	RR LHS Main harness	Common BEV	90A000
B30	Bodyside Rear RHS	RHS PSLD/ECU and 14C128	Common BEV	KK3T-14A333
B31	Bodyside Rear RHS	RHS PSLD/ECU and 14C128	Common BEV	KK3T-14A333
B32	Bodyside Rear LHS	LHS PSLD/ECU and 14C128	VBK	NK3T-14A333
B33	Bodyside Rear LHS	LHS PSLD/ECU and 14C128	VBK	NK3T-14A333
B34	Primary Drive Unit	BEV VBK ISC Ground	Common BEV	NK3T-14A107
B35	Cross Member 2	BEV VBK ISC Ground	VBK	NK3T-14A107
B36	Cross Member 2	RR Grounds	VBK	NK3T-14A107
B37	Cross Member 2	RR Grounds	VBK	NK3T-14A107
B38	Cross Member 2	RR Grounds	VBK	NK3T-14A107
B39	Bodyside Rear LHS	RR LP Con	VBK	93A000
B40	Bodyside Rear LHS	RR LP Con	VBK	93A000
B41	Bodyside Rear LHS	RR LP Con	VBK	93A000
B42	Bodyside Rear RHS	RR LP Con	VBK	93A000
B43	Bodyside Rear RHS	RR LP Con	VBK	93A000
B44	Bodyside Rear RHS	RR LP Con	VBK	93A000
B45	Side Member Front RHS	Main Harness Ground	Common BEV	NK3T-14K011
B46	Side Member Front RHS	Main Harness Ground	Common BEV	NK3T-14K011
B47	Cross Car Beam RHS	GB Ground	Common BEV	90A000
B48	Cross Car Beam RHS	GB Ground	VBK	92A000
B49	Cross Car Beam RHS	GB Ground	VBK	92A000
B50	Side Member Front LHS	Fuel Tank Sender	VBK	NK3T-14406
B51	D Pillar LHS	RR ACC	VBK	94A000
B52	Cowl Panel RHS	IP Harness Ground	Common BEV	90A000
B53	Cowl Panel RHS	IP Harness Ground	Common BEV	90A000
B54	Cowl Panel RHS	IP Harness Ground	Common BEV	90A000
B55	Engine Bay Front	OBGI	Common BEV	NK3T-14K011
B56	Engine Bay Front	Mega Brace Common	Common BEV	NK3T-14K011

4.27 Blind Spot Information System (BLIS) Installation for Skeletal

CAUTIONS:

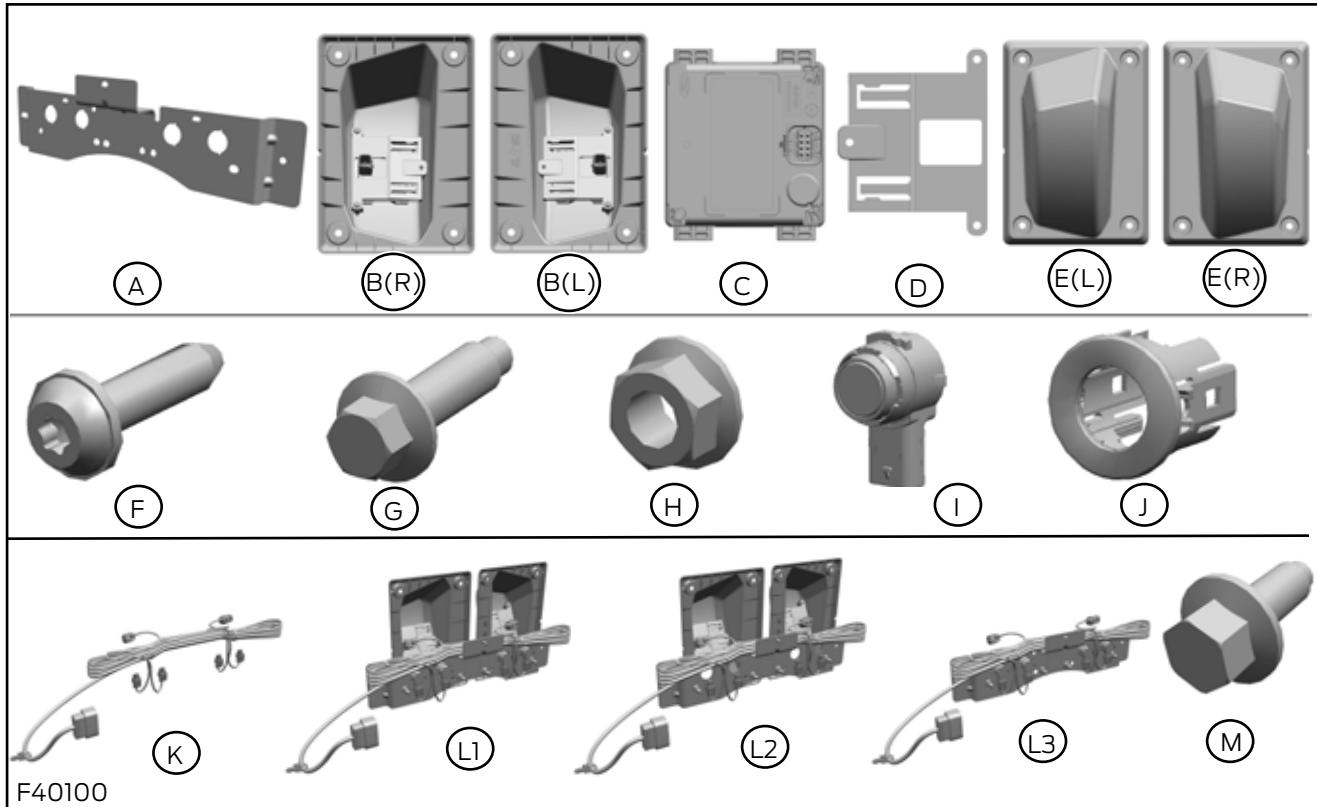
 **The instructions in this section must be followed to guarantee performance of the systems. Any deviations to the instructions may result in failure or reduced functionality of the systems for which Ford Motor Company cannot be held responsible.** Appropriate tests to be conducted by

Vehicle Convertor to ensure durability and functionality of the system after installation.

 **It is the Vehicle Convertor's responsibility to obtain the approval for the fully converted vehicle and meet BLIS requirements as per Reg 151.**

Refer to [Section 1.6 Conversion Homologation](#)

4.27.1 Blind Spot Information (BLIS) and Park Aid installation Kit



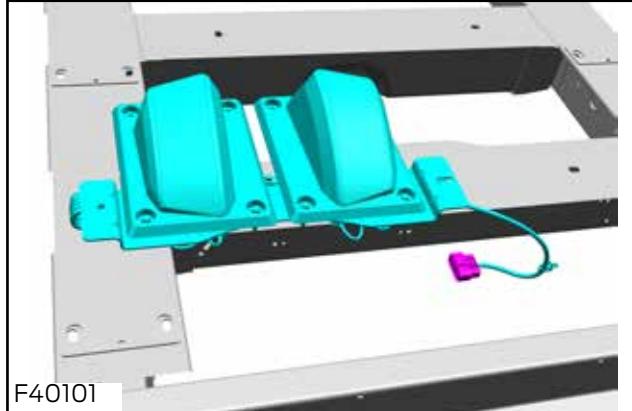
ITEM	QUANTITY	PART NUMBER	DESCRIPTION
BRACKET			
A	1	RK3T-14D190-A*	Sensor Bracket BLIS and PDC
BLIS			
B (R)	1	RK3T-14D453-A*	BLIS Sub Assy Right
B (L)	1	RK3T-14D454-A*	BLIS Sub Assy Left
C	2	ML3T-14H031-A*	BLIS Radar
D	2	RK3T-14D189-B	Radar Bracket
E (R)	1	RK3T-14D188-A*	BLIS Housing Right
E (L)	1	RK3T-14D189-A*	BLIS Housing Left
F	4	W506945-S450B	Screw 4x16 PC TI TFP TH
G	4	W520413-S450B	SC M08x1.25x25.0 HEX FLNG HD PIL
H	4	W500224-S439	NUT M8 HF 8
PARK AID			
I	4	NU5T-15K859-C*	Park Aid Sensor
J	4	JK2T-15K872-C*	PA Sensor Bracket Holders

ITEM	QUANTITY	PART NUMBER	DESCRIPTION
WIRING HARNESS			
K	1	RK3T-15K868-AD*	Wiring Harness
L1	1	RK3T-14D599-A*	BLIS and PDC total assembly
L2	1	RK3T-14D599-B*	BLIS only total assembly
L3	1	RK3T-14D599-C*	PDC only total assembly
KIT FASTENER			
M	1	W712146-S437	Bolt M6X15 HF

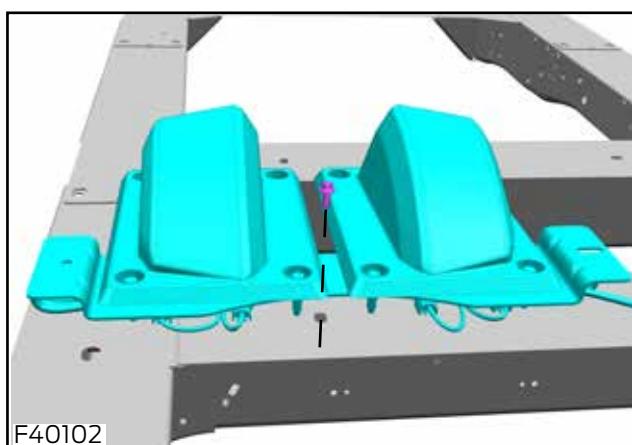
4.27.2 Disassembly Instructions for Delivered BLIS & Park Aid Packaging

BLIS and Park aid wiring harness is located on the rear floor cross member assembly and found already connected to the vehicle main harness. In order to install BLIS assembly the steps below must be followed :

1-Disconnect BLIS & Park aid harness connector from main vehicle harness in figure F40101



2- Remove BLIS & Park aid (RK3T-14D599-*) assembly from the vehicle. Unscrew 1 bolt W712146-S437 in figure F40102



3- Remove RK3T-15K868-ADB wiring harness

- Disconnect connectors – 2x BLIS Radar & 4x PA sensors depending on the ordered package.
- Take out 2x fir tree fasteners.

4-Remove 2x BLIS assembly (Housing + Radar + Radar Bracket) if BLIS is ordered.

- Unscrew 4x W500224-S439 screws and 4x W520413-S450 nuts.

5-Remove 4x PA sensors and holders if PA is ordered.

6-The EOL Bracket (RK3T-14D190-A*) part is no longer required and can be recycled.

7-Please find an instruction giving key guidelines to where to install, for a fully functional system.

4.27.3 BLIS Installation Instructions

CAUTIONS:

! Before beginning to drill holes ensure that the placements of the BLIS Sensor Pods are within the tolerances specified. Area and placement are crucial.

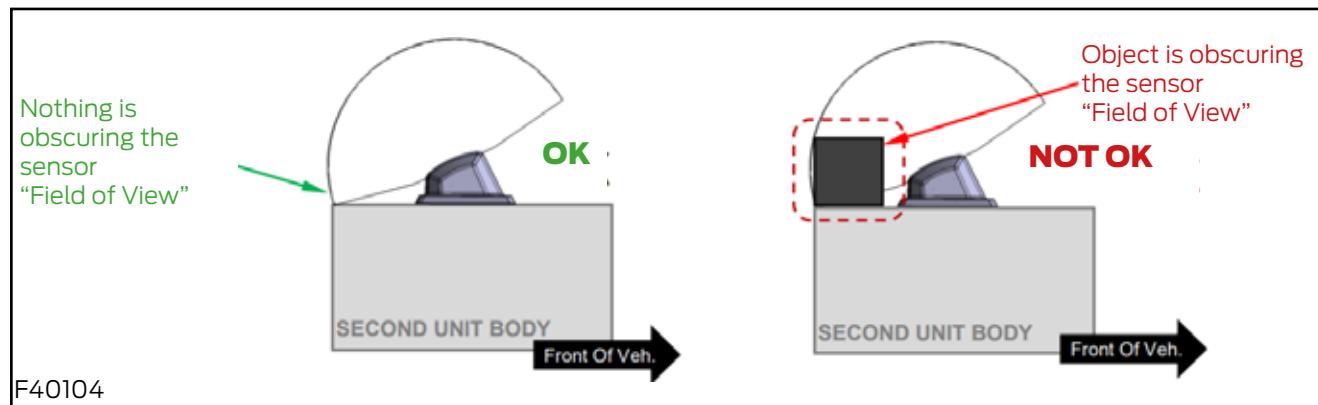
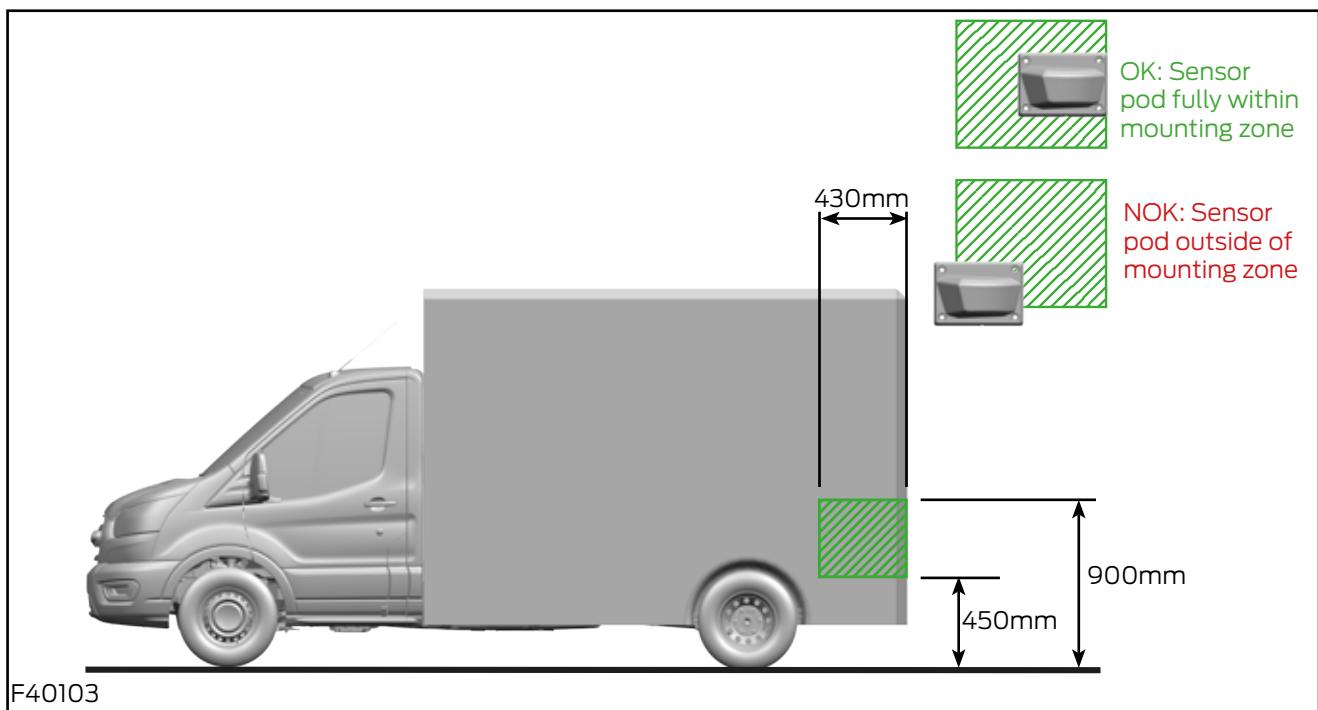
! See below the required tolerances and angles that should be used to achieve required placement.

! The Sensor Field of View, Angle, Pitch and Roll need to be considered.

Field of View

! CAUTION: Please consider the maximum allowable vehicle width including the BLIS sensor pods during conversion The Sensor Field needs to be free of obstructions.

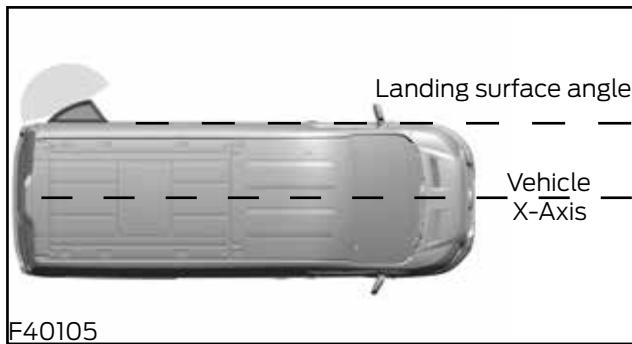
BLIS Housing and Radar Assembly Mounting Zone



Angle

Landing surface of sensor pods should be mounted on surface parallel to vehicle X-Axis

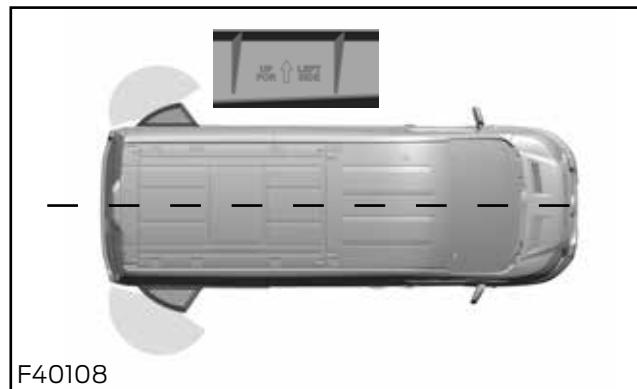
Allowed tolerance deviations are +/- 3°.



Sensor Pod Side Selection

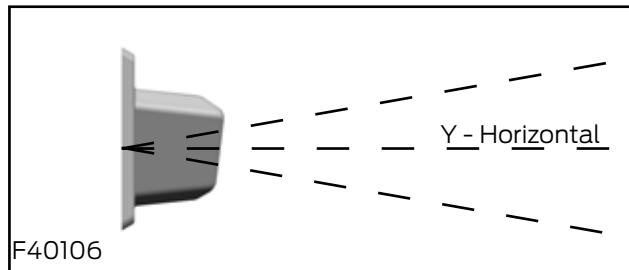
Sensor pods needs to be positioned according to markings and direction arrows

2 different sensor pods are supplied and left hand side pod marked as shown in Figure F40108 and F40110.



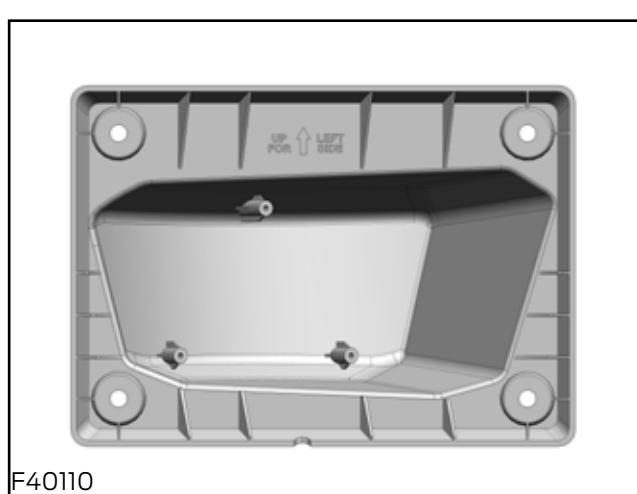
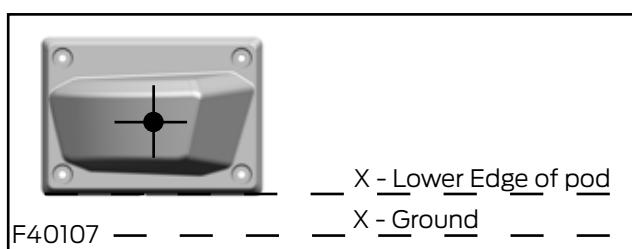
Pitch Angle

Sensor Pitch Angle should be 0° = horizontal
Allowed tolerance deviations are +/- 3°.



Sensor Roll Angle

Sensor Roll Angle should be horizontally 0°
Allowed tolerance deviations +/- 3°

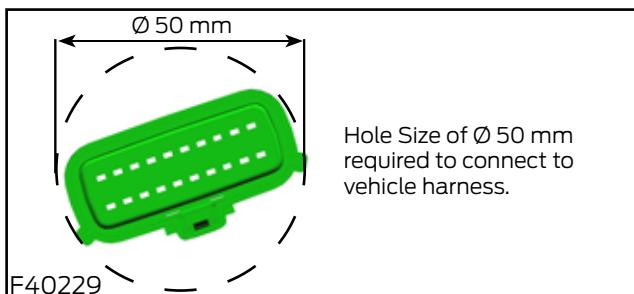
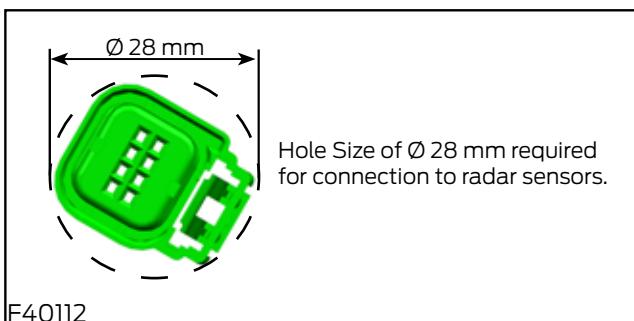
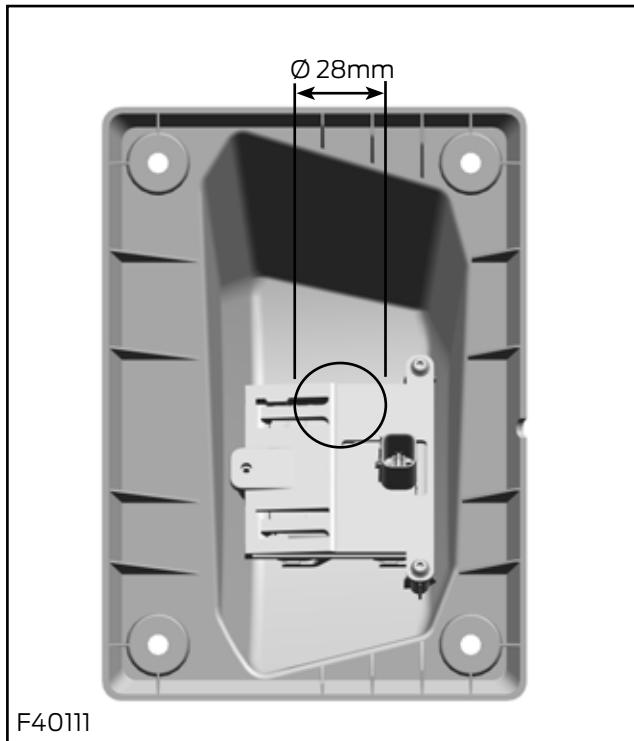


Hole Placement to Connect Sensor Pod

A hole is needed in the side of the vehicle to make connection to the radar sensor. The hole needs to be placed in the centre of the sensor pod.

The hole should be fully covered by the sensor pod and not be visible from outside. The Vehicle Convertor must ensure they install a grommet or any other sealing concept to avoid water ingress into vehicle through the wiring hole.

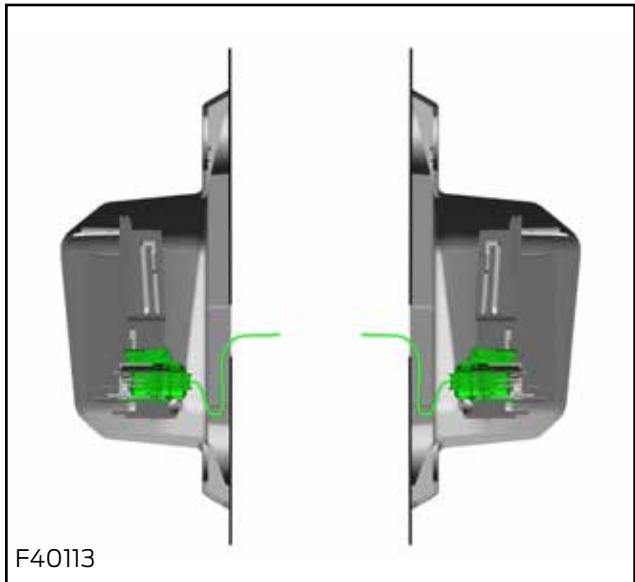
Before drilling the hole take into consideration that an anticorrosive will need to be used where drilling will have removed current protective coating in this area



Cable Management

For the hole position and wiring length outside of vehicle side, ensure a dripping-loop to avoid water exposition of radar connector.

[Refer to 4.2 Wiring Installation and Routing Guides](#)



4.27.4 BLIS Check After Retrofit

BLIS System Interface Check:

1. Perform an ignition cycle. The BLIS LEDs in the exterior mirrors (or in A-Pillar in case vehicle has been ordered without mirrors/doors), shall perform a 3 seconds prove-out
2. Switch BLIS ON and OFF via Center Stack display or Instrument Cluster menu. The BLIS LEDs shall confirm each user action with a twice flash
3. No faulty message shall appear on Center Stack display or Instrument Cluster .

BLIS Performance Check:

(Short pass/fail real world road evaluation after System Interface Check has been performed)

1. Start the vehicle. Drive above 10kph (The system does not operate in park/P or reverse/R)
2. Verify that the BLIS LEDs are being switched ON while a different vehicle is in the Blind Spot Zone.
NOTE: System is intended to alert only on vehicles. It is not designed to detect parked vehicles, pedestrians, animals, or other infrastructures .
3. Repeat verification for the following use cases:
 - Other vehicles overtaking the retrofitted vehicle
 - Retrofitted vehicle overtakes another vehicle

4.28 Park Aid Sensor Installation Guidance

! **CAUTION: The instructions in this section must be followed to guarantee performance of the systems. Any deviations to the instructions may result in failure or reduced functionality of the systems for which Ford Motor Company cannot be held responsible. Appropriate tests to be conducted by Vehicle Convertor to ensure durability and functionality of the system after installation.**

4.28.1 General Requirements

The sensor holder JK2T-15K872-C* and park aid sensor NU7T-15K859-A need to be used. Refer to F40100 for kit part list.

The sensor holder is designed for typical bumper assembly (material modulus of elasticity range from PP to ASA). If surrounding material is harder, another sensor and holder may need to be used.

The sensor holder is designed for a material thickness: 2,8+/-0,1 mm.

The minimum distance of PWM wires to sensors must be 200 mm to avoid magnetic or electric fields.

4.28.2 Sensor Positions and Tolerances

The sensor holder needs to be positioned on flat surfaces. If the sensor is placed into a pocket or next to sharp edge, this might influence the performance of the system.

The proposed Parking sensor holder itself is angled at 8° facing upwards. The sensor connector direction cannot be changed/rotated because this would lead to a facing down sensor.

Distance height from sensor to ground = Z

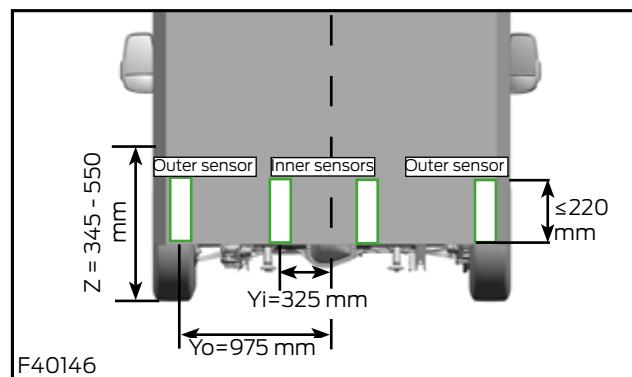
- Z - min worst case 345 mm.
- Z - max defined by distance to bumper lowest edge - should not be more than 220 mm. If 220 mm cannot be fulfilled, lowest point of the bumper may not be covered in certain driving manoeuvres. Besides of that Z - max can go up to 550 mm from the ground. Higher is possible but will compromise lower object detection.
- Z - same height for inner and outer assumed. If variance required - should be minimized (~30 mm) to avoid wrong distance between the sensors

Distance width between vehicle middle point and sensor = Y

- Y - Inner 325 mm (Y_i), outer 975 mm +/-25 mm (Y_o)
- Y - mirrored installation for left/right.

Distance between sensor and rear axle = X

X= 1208 mm, same distance for all sensors. Overhang can vary to the defined X value (1m, more is possible - with small limitations in turning scenarios)



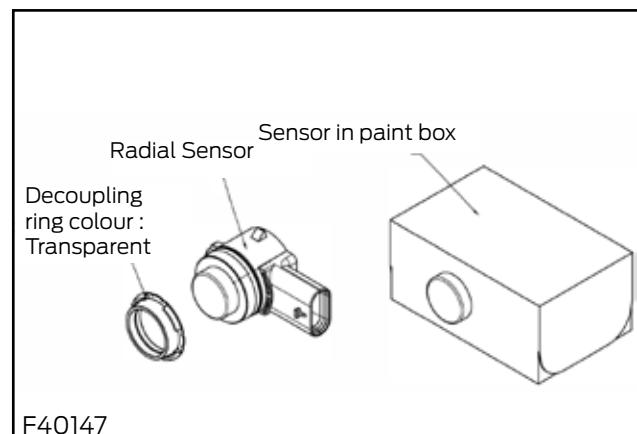
Sensor angles

- Beta Angle (angle to the ground) of the Bumper assumed with 0 +/- 2° -> deviation would require threshold verification (=7° with the holder)
- Alpha Angle (angle to the side) of the bumper installation position assumed with 0 +/- 2°

4.28.3 Sensor and Sensor Holder Painting Requirements

Before painting, decoupling ring needs to be disassembled (ring does not allow any paint on it). A paint box may be used to ensure that only the correct area of sensor is painted. An example is shown in Figure F40147.

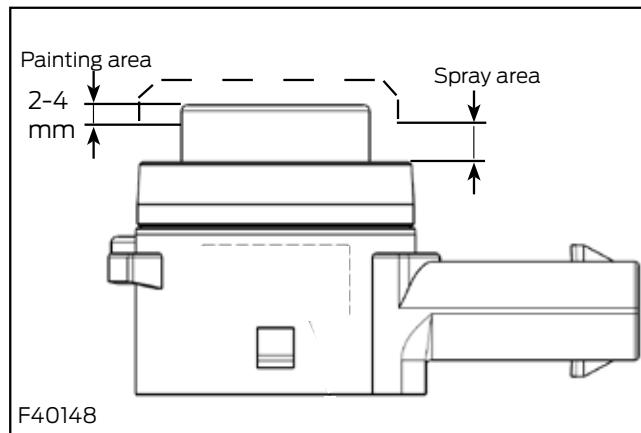
Sensor Paint Box



The painting area of the sensor is the front, transition radius and shell surface of the membrane. The shell surface is painted from the front surface to the sides. In spray area, only spray is permissible. A continuous coating layer between membrane and cover is not permissible.

Painting area without spray area is 2-4 mm. For the spray painting (state-of-the-art), the coating in Figure F40148 must be met.

Sensor Paint and Spray Area



Minimum layer thickness coating: The minimal layer thickness stems from the minimum layer thickness of acrylic and minimum layer thickness of the used coating depending on colour and required coverage.

Maximum layer thickness coating must be 160 µm (including acrylic powder layer). Layer thickness can be measured with ECT.

The total layer thickness of the coating can vary between a minimum and a maximum.

The minimum layer thickness is the necessary measure to comply with color matching and quality.

The maximum layer thickness is a necessary measure to guarantee the functionality of the transducer.

Ensure that the layer thickness of the entire coating area (front, transition radius, shell surface) does not exceed the maximum layer thickness. If the coverage/colour matching and quality of the whole coating area is already achieved at a lower layer thickness, this thickness is permitted.

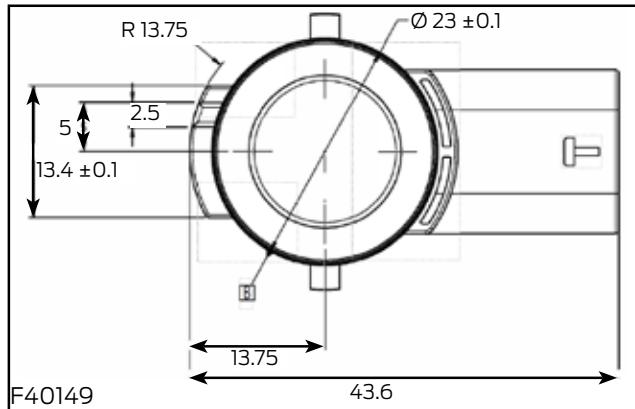
Coating or coating veils are inadmissible beyond the defined area (e.g. plug prephery, plug contacts) Coating and coating veils must not form a strap between membrane and bordering components.

Immersion treatment / power-wash is not permitted without prior sealing of the whole plug.

Parameters

Acrylic Powder Layer Thickness	30 µm - 5 µm to 45 µm +5 µm
Ideal Storage Conditions	Ambient temperature (18°C-28°C) without being exposed to UV rays

Sensor Surface Dimensions



Sensor Holder

Overall minimum and maximum holder dimensions must be guaranteed even with the added paint layers to the sensor interface to avoid any risk of sensor malfunction.

4.28.4 Park Aid System Check After Retrofitting

1. Place an object 20 - 30 cm away from each sensor. Shift to reverse gear and verify that a red indication on display is visible and a continuous tone will be requested
2. Place an object 35 - 50 cm away from each sensor. Shift to reverse gear and verify that a yellow/orange indication on display is visible and a chime will be requested
3. Place an object 70 - 140 cm away the inner sensors only. Shift to reverse gear and verify that a green indication on display is visible and a chime will be requested

4.29 Cameras

4.29.1 Rear View Camera Connector Changes

On Transit Skeletal, a change has been made from analog rear connector to digital to include the SVO Rear View Camera option J3KAQ.

Brown FAKRA F Coax cable connector (HU5T-18D813-A*) is used to connect to camera connector RK3T-19G490-E*. It is a 2-way connector with pin 1 for signal and pin 2 for ground/shield.

4.29.2 General Information for Rear View Camera on Chassis Cab/Skeletal



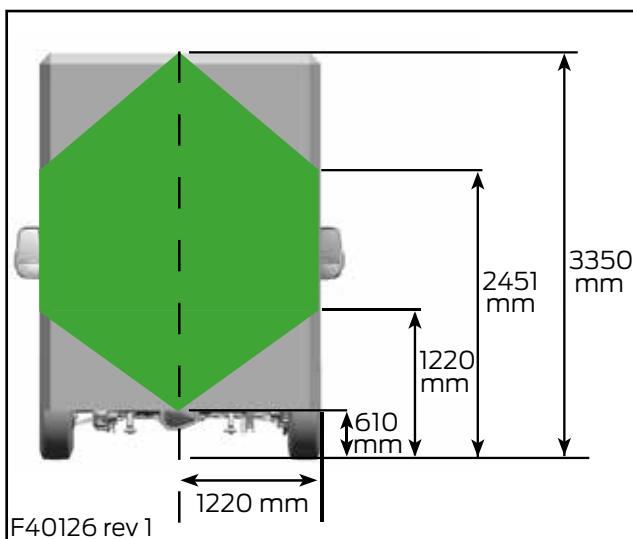
CAUTION:
If the vehicle is not equipped with Rear View Camera as factory fit, compliance to ECE-158 with required test and approvals will be the responsibility of the Vehicle Convertor who alters the vehicle.

This information is provided for directional purposes only, based on testing done by Ford.

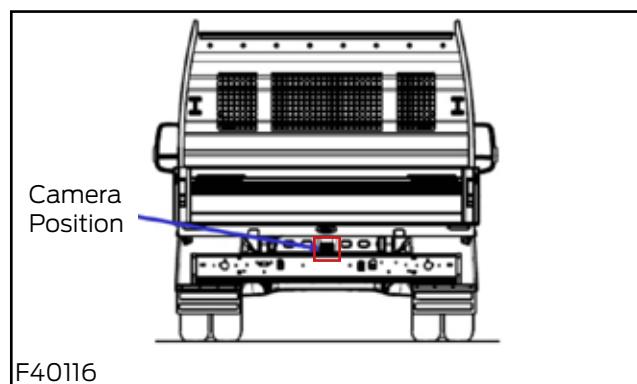
The camera included in the kit is capable of complying with ECE-158 Reversing Safety requirements when it is mounted in the green areas defined in Figure F40126 on Stage2 skeletal/chassis cab conversions or above the light bar as shown in Figure F40116 on chassis cabs with underrun bar.

It is recommended to order camera assembly installed on Chassis Cabs already at the Ford plant with the order code J3KAX.

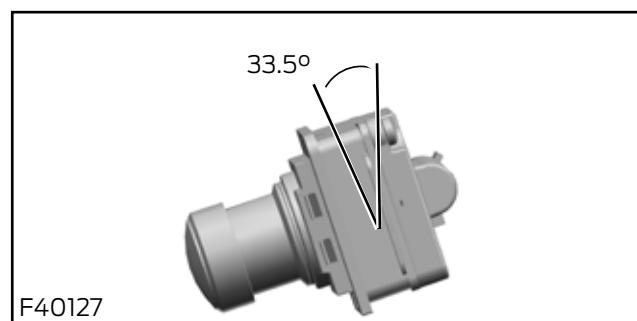
Rear View Camera Mounting Location for Stage 2 Skeletal and Chassis Cab Conversions



Rear View Camera Mounting Location for Stage 1 Chassis Cabs with Underrun Bar



Camera Viewing Angle



4.29.3 Rear View Camera Installation Kit for Chassis Cab/Skeletal

A rear-view camera and prep kit for incomplete vehicles is available as an orderable option (J3KAQ) with all Chassis Cab and Skeletal vehicles.

If the rear view camera kit (J3KAQ) is not ordered with the vehicle, it cannot be retrofitted later.

Camera and Coax cable assembly are located in the glovebox.

Rear View Camera Kit (J3KAQ)



Part Number	Description
RK3T-19G490-E*	A- Camera
SK4J-14H057-A*	B- Coax Cable
SK4J-19J236-A*	Camera Housing (exterior mount collar & interior mounted bracket are not included in the kit but orderable)

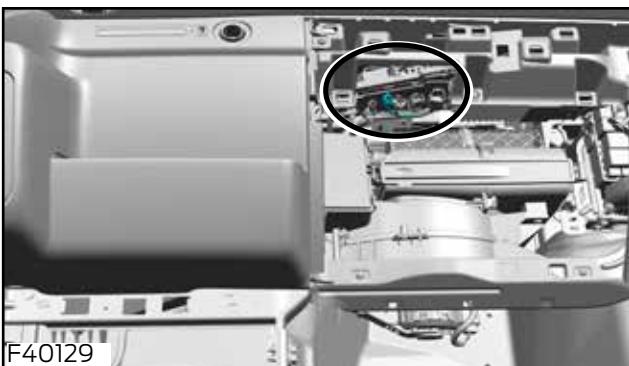
Rear View Camera Assembly Parts

Item	Quantity	Description
A	1	Camera
B	1	Coax Cable
C*	1	Y-Bracket
D*	1	Wing Nut
E*	3	Screws (shorter, for use with Y-Bracket)
F*	3	Screws (longer, for use with collar)
G*	1	Camera Cover Front
H*	1	Camera Cover Rear (Collar)
I*	1	Camera Retainer
J	1	Template (used for mounting hole positions)

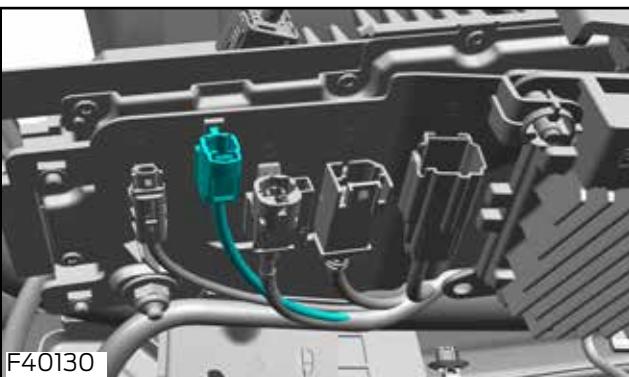
* Part to be ordered separately

4.29.4 Rear View Camera Coax Cable Routing for Chassis Cab/Skeletal

1. Plan the routing of coax cable for your conversion
2. Route coax cable (black connector end) in such a way that is not exposed or bent. For routing guidelines [Refer to 4.2 Wiring Installation and Routing Guidelines](#)
3. Remove glovebox per workshop manual instructions
4. Locate SYNC module jumper harness under the SYNC module

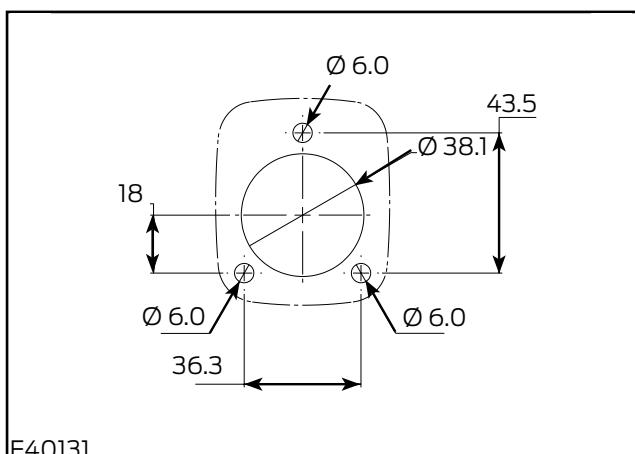


5. Disconnect the black FAKRA connectors. Connect the black connector on the coax cable to the black connector secured on the bracket. That is the connector to the SYNC module jumper harness. See F40130 for the connector highlighted



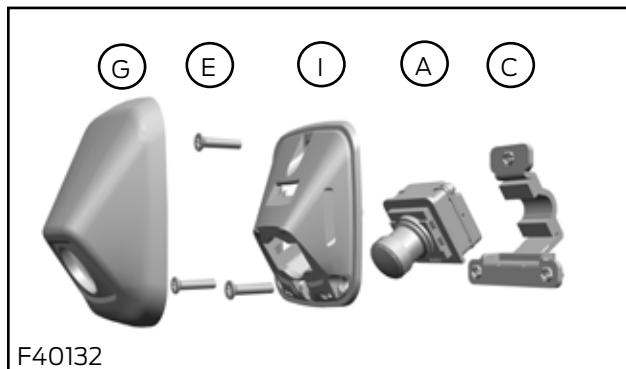
6. Once harness is routed, connected, and secured inside of the cabin, ensure the necessary sealing is made

4.29.5 Rear View Camera Interior Mount for Chassis Cab/Skeletal



1. Place template (J) onto mounting location level with the ground and the vehicle. Refer to F40131 for the template dimensions
2. Mark the 4 drilling locations using a center punch
3. Remove the template, drill out and deburr the holes marked in previous steps
 - 6 mm Drill Bit
 - 38.1 mm Hole Saw
4. Align the holes to the Y-bracket (C) and apply the Y bracket (C) to the back side of the mounting surface
5. Install the retainer (I) / camera (A) assembly through the front of the mounting surface
6. Install the screws (E) into the retainer (I) / camera (A) assembly
7. Install the camera cover (G)
8. Connect the coax cable (B) to the camera (A)

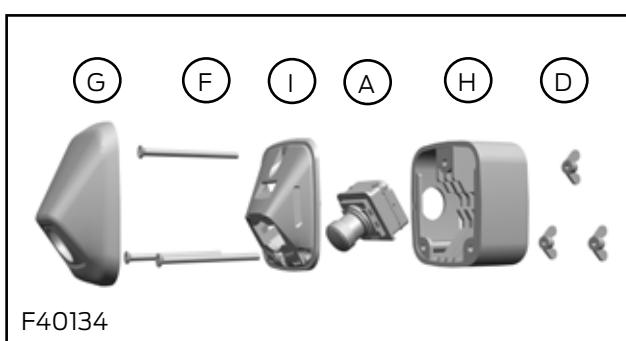
Rear View Camera Interior Mounting Assembly



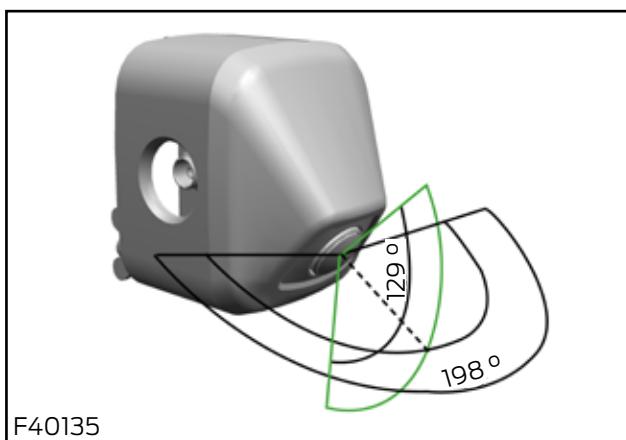
4.29.6 Rear View Camera Exterior Mount for Chassis Cab/Skeletal

1. Place template (J) onto mounting location level with the ground and the vehicle
2. Mark the 3 drilling locations using a center punch
3. Remove the template, drill out and deburr the holes marked in previous steps
4. Align the Camera Cover Rear (Collar) (H) to the drill holes on the front side of the mounting surface
5. Install the retainer (I) / camera (A) assembly into the collar (H)
6. Install the screws (F) into the retainer (I) / camera (A) assembly and secure using the wing nuts (D) on the back side of the mounting surface

Rear View Camera Exterior Mount Assembly



Rear View Camera Field of View



4.29.7 Reverse Brake Assist

NOTE: Do not paint or modify the rear camera or rear bumper as this will impede the Reverse Brake Assist functionality.

NOTE: No change to power steering system is supported by Reverse Brake Assist.

NOTE: No modification to the traction control system or ABS system is supported by Reverse Brake Assist.

NOTE: Modification to door latching system or removal of doors may interfere with Reverse Brake Assist.

NOTE: Fitting of accessories to the rear of the vehicle will impede the functionality of Reverse Brake Assist, in these instances the feature should not be used - False Reverse Brake Assist events may occur.

NOTE: Do not obstruct the rear camera.

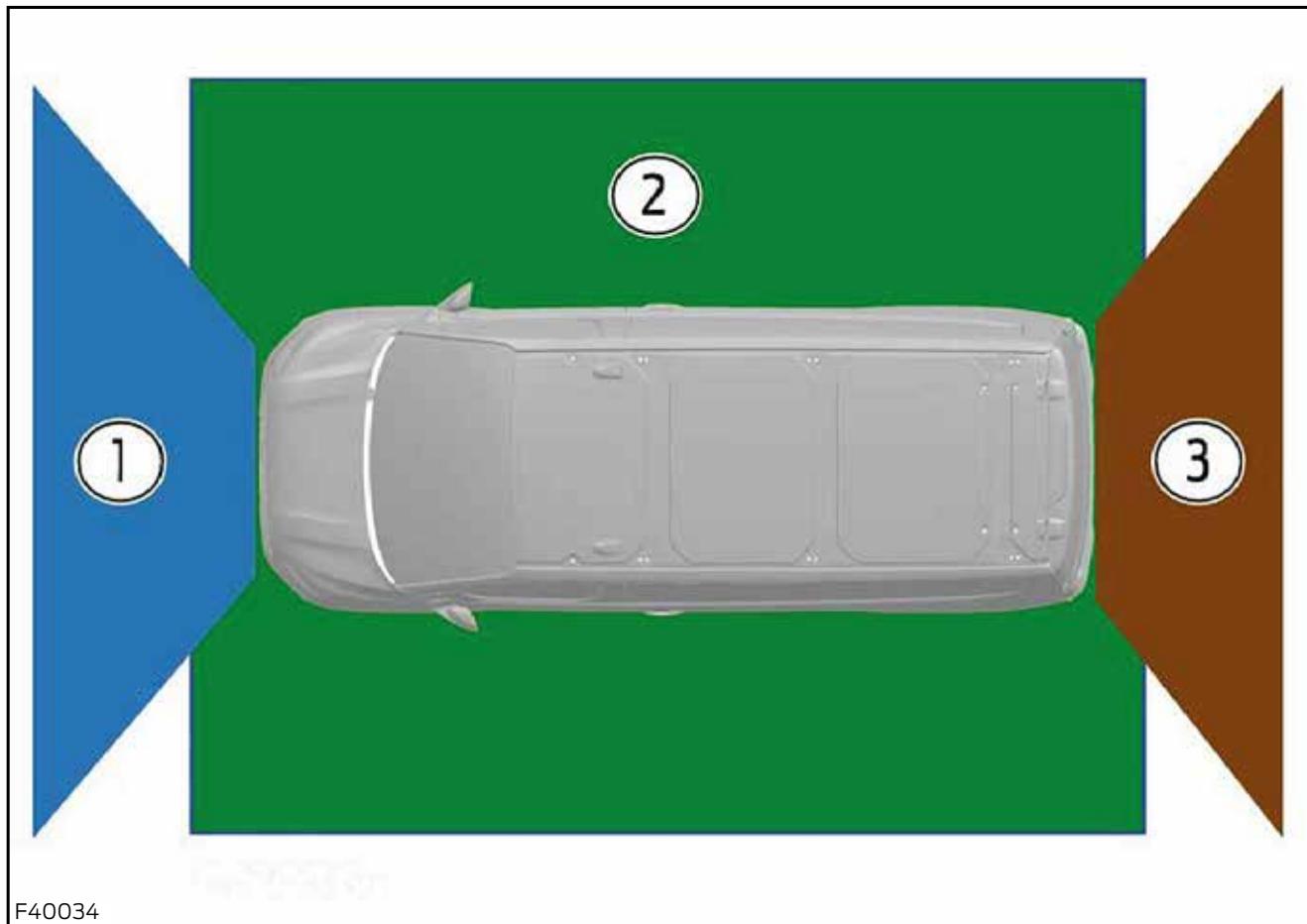
NOTE: Do not move or modify any camera mounting positions or brackets, as this will impede on camera and Reverse Brake Assist functionality.

NOTE: Do not disconnect or remove any cameras fitted to the vehicle.

NOTE: Do not interfere with the full field of view cone of the rear camera.

NOTE: Any object mounted within the field of view cones of the front and side-mirror cameras will obstruct the 360-camera visibility.

NOTE: Change to track width is not recommended and will result in the dynamic guidelines not being representative of vehicle turning circle.

Cameras Field of View**4.29.8 360° Camera**

NOTE: Any change to track width will result in the dynamic guidelines not being representative of vehicle turning circle.

NOTE: Attachment of towing extensions to side mirrors may impede on 360 camera visibility.

NOTE: Do not interfere with the full field of view cones of the 360° camera.

NOTE: Any object mounted within the field of view cones of the front and side-mirror cameras will obstruct the 360-camera visibility.

5.1 Body

NOTE: For further information please contact your National Sales Company representative, or local Ford dealer. If they are unable to help you then please contact FPSV Technical Support at FPSVHelp@ford.com

5.1.1 Body Structures - General Information

WARNINGS:

! Before drilling see figure E167660 for Boron Steel parts, in this section of the manual.

! Before drilling the floor, check the Precautionary Drill Zones, see Figure E224824 in this section.

! All fixings through the floor, sides or roof must be sealed.

! Extreme heat, such as paint drying ovens, will cause the damage of the High Voltage battery. The High Voltage battery must be removed before using paint drying ovens longer than 45 minutes or with temperatures above 60°C (140°F). Failure to follow this instruction may result in damaging the High Voltage battery, which could cause serious personal injury or death in a fire or explosion. Please refer to the Ford E-Transit workshop manual.

! The following components, as installed by Ford Motor Company, should not be removed, relocated, altered, or modified in any way:

- High voltage battery, battery connectors, battery cradle (carrying structure), outriggers, energy absorption members, brackets, and attachment hardware.
- Front-end structure, including aluminum extrusion assembly ("Megabrace"), attachment brackets, and attachment hardware.

! The Ford side protection must not be removed as part of any conversion.

! CAUTION: Uneven load distribution could result in unacceptable handling and braking characteristics.

When carrying out vehicle conversions the following points should be considered:

- Make sure that the vehicle structural integrity is maintained
- Do not drill into closed frame body members
- Make sure that the design for the body alterations or additional structure disperses the load evenly
- Repaint metal edges after cutting or drilling. All metal edges must comply with exterior and interior protection legislation

Ensure proper sealing against ingress of water, salt, dust, after cutting or drilling the body. Use Ford approved sealing and finishing materials, and underbody corrosion protection.

[Refer to: 5.14 Corrosion Prevention](#)

- Make sure that fixings in the B pillar area do not encroach on the seat belts or seat belt reels

For unique floor fixings, see (Frame Drilling and Tube Reinforcing) [Refer to: 5.15 Frame and Body Mounting](#)

For Load Compartment Tie Downs (Load Lashing Points). For additional Precautionary Drill Zones

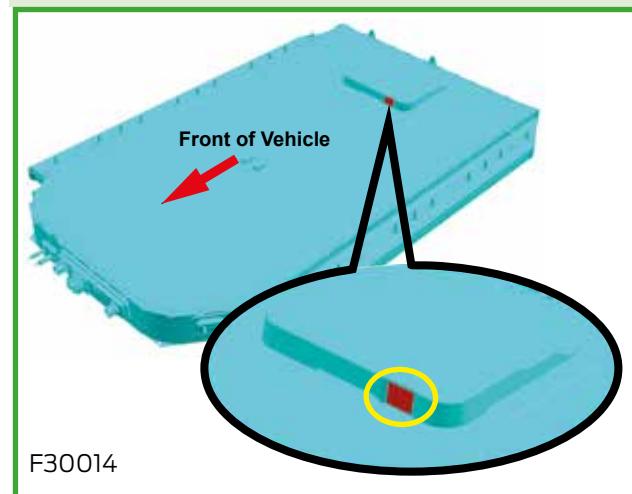
[Refer to: 4.2 Wiring Installation and Routing Guides](#)

[Refer to: 5.6 Body Closures](#)

Specific to the E-Transit BEV:

1. The E-Transit BEV HV Battery is equipped with an exhaust vent. No additional components nor obstructions (beyond any installed by Ford) shall be located in the same environment as the battery (e.g., underbody) and within 150 mm of these features. Additionally, no components which may contain combustible liquids or gases at any time shall be added by Vehicle Convertor within 300 mm of these features.
2. There shall be no modifications or installed components which confine the air space near the outside of the HV Battery or obstruct the free flow of air about the battery (beyond any installed by Ford).
3. Any cut outs or openings created between the occupant space and the vehicle underbody shall be sealed such that air is not free to pass from under the vehicle into the occupant space.
4. If any primary ingress/egress paths for occupant spaces are located above or rearward of the rear axle(s), a metallic shielding shall be added to obstruct any airflow from the battery towards those ingress/egress paths, and redirect that air flow towards a side/rear area that is not a primary ingress/egress path.

HV Battery Vent



5.1.2 Welding

 **WARNING: Before welding see figure E167660 for Boron Steel parts, in this section of the manual.**

Before welding work is performed on a vehicle body, all safety measures for the protection of people, modules and electrical components must be observed.

Electronic Components

NOTE: After disconnecting the power supply and before performing further work, a wait time of up to 15 minutes must be maintained, depending on the vehicle. Work on airbag systems may only be performed by personnel who have a relevant certificate of competence.

Increased use of comfort and safety electronics in modern motor vehicles also requires the greatest attention to be paid during body work. Over voltages produced during welding and in alignment work during body shell rectification, may cause electronic systems to be damaged. In particular, the safety instructions for performing welding work on vehicles with airbag systems must be adhered to.

Pay attention to the following points:

- Disconnect the battery negative clamp and cover the battery terminal
- Disconnect the electrical connector at the airbag control module
- If welding is to be performed directly near a control module, it must be removed beforehand
- Never connect the negative cable of the welder near an airbag or a control module
- Connect the negative cable of the welder close to the location of the weld

Before Welding

Interior surfaces of new bodywork components which will no longer be accessible after installation, must be painted beforehand. The welding flanges are treated with a special welding primer. The joint areas are not always accessible from inside later, therefore, prepare these areas so that no soot is produced by burning paint during welding.

NOTE: In order to ensure that the corrosion protection produced in production is not destroyed, the working area must be kept as small as possible.

NOTE: Do not touch cleaned bare metal with bare hands. The dampness of your hands will corrode the metal.

Procedure:

- Remove the primer or paint/zinc layer in the welding area using a tress wire brush to prevent the formation of soot from the paint
- Thoroughly clean the welding area with a metal cleaning agent and rub dry

- Coat the welding flange with welding primer on all sides and allow to dry

NOTE: The welding primer must only be applied thinly to the spot welding area, to minimise spattering when welding.

The following points must be noted when welding:

- Zinc starts to melt at about 420°C
- Zinc vaporises at a temperature of about 900°C
- The amount of heating determines the damage to the zinc coating, and therefore to the corrosion protection
- Resistance spot welding is particularly suitable for welding zinc coated panels, because no widespread warming occurs
- With electrolytically zinc-plated panels there is no need for any special preparation because the zinc coating does not need to be removed

After Welding

During work, body panels are often heated at very high temperatures, which results in the destruction of the corrosion protection. Working of the affected areas is therefore vital:

- Grind the welded seams flat and clean thoroughly with silicone remover. Dry with a lint-free cloth
- If the join area is accessible from the inside, the transition area to the paint must be abraded for all types of join, so that good adhesion of the primer is achieved later
- If the join area is not accessible from the inside and the cleaning and sanding work cannot be done, ensure that there is as little contamination as possible in the area of the repair. This allows the cavity wax applied later to penetrate the join area without hindrance

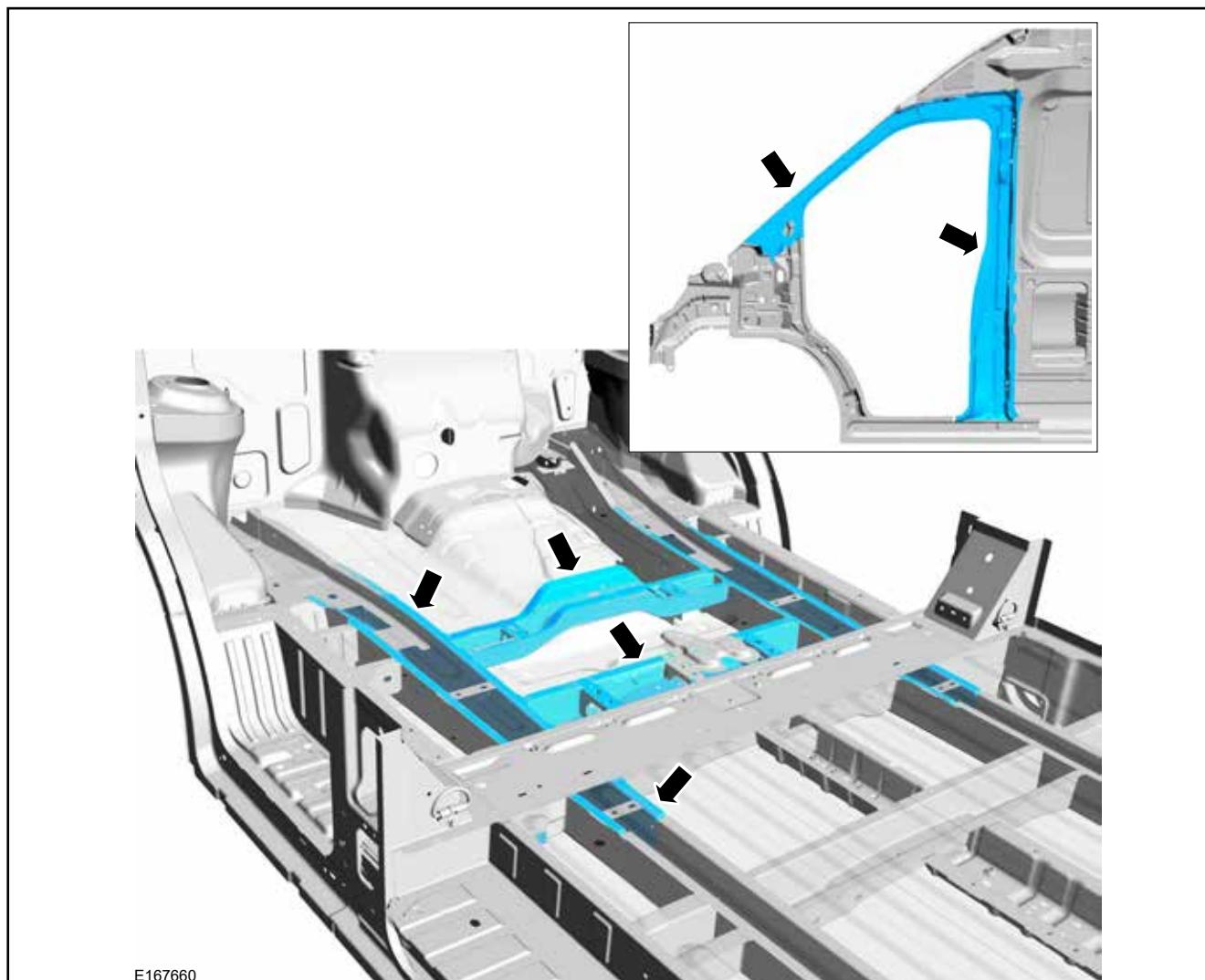
NOTE: Only apply a small amount of panel cleaner to the cleaning cloth when cleaning the area. Make sure that no cleaner reaches the connecting flange, so that the welding primer is not washed away.

Priming After Welding

Primer should be applied to the welded flanges after cleaning. A check must also be made that the production corrosion protection is present in the area of the flanges. Any damage must also be re-primed.

5.1.3 Boron Steel Parts

Boron Steel Parts - Precautionary Drill or Weld Zones



5.1.4 Floor Precautionary Drill Zones: Diesel Vans

WARNING: All fixings through the floor, sides or roof must be sealed.

CAUTION: Care should be taken when drilling the floor of the passenger compartment and rear cargo area. The fuel tank, DEF (Urea) tank, brake lines and electric cables are present below the floor.

It is recommended that Transit Van CAD is obtained to understand vehicle component placement/location of Fuel/DEF tanks, fuel filler, wire harness routing, coolant line routing and hydraulic brake line routing. CAD can be obtained from FPSV Technical Support at FPSVHelp@ford.com

When adding holes/fasteners to the floor of the vehicle, consideration must be given to all components below the floor.

It is strongly recommended that drill-depth stops be used. Drill stop depth shall not exceed 25mm (1.0") maximum depth.

Fuel tanks come in Standard and Extended range. Both are shown for exemplary purposes.

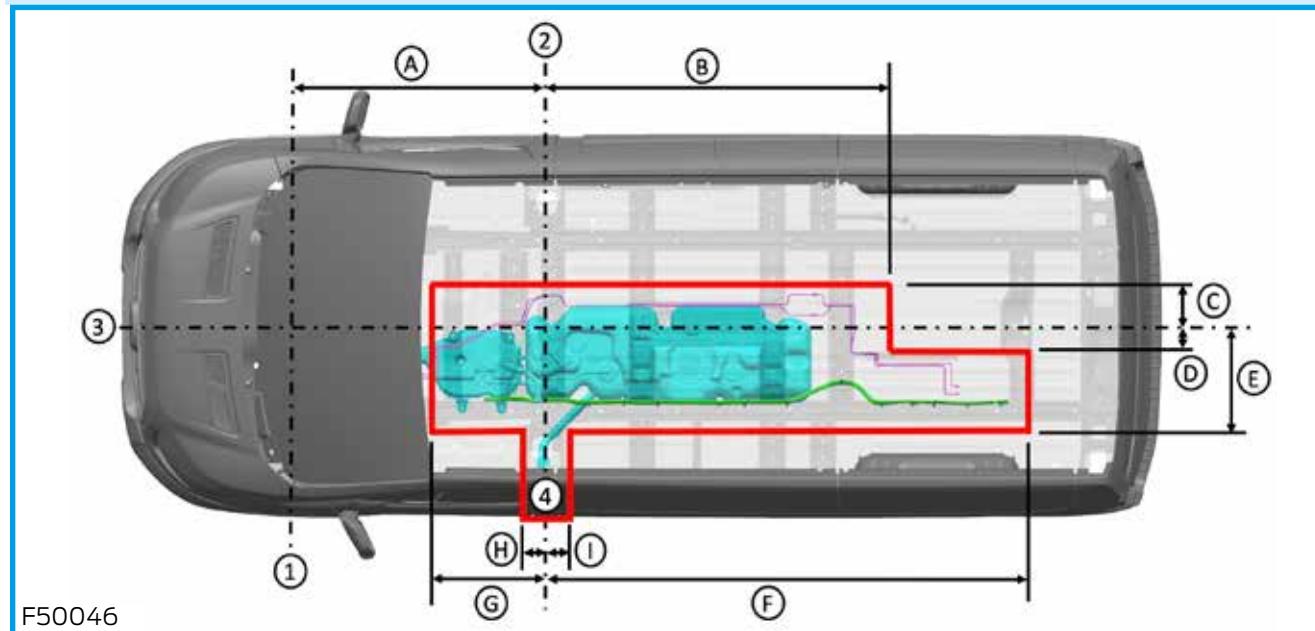
NOTE: Re-paint metal edges after cutting or drilling. All metal edges must comply with exterior and interior protection requirements.

Refer to:

[5.1.1 Body Structures - General Info](#)

[5.1.4 Corrosion Prevention](#)

Front Wheel Drive Vans - L2

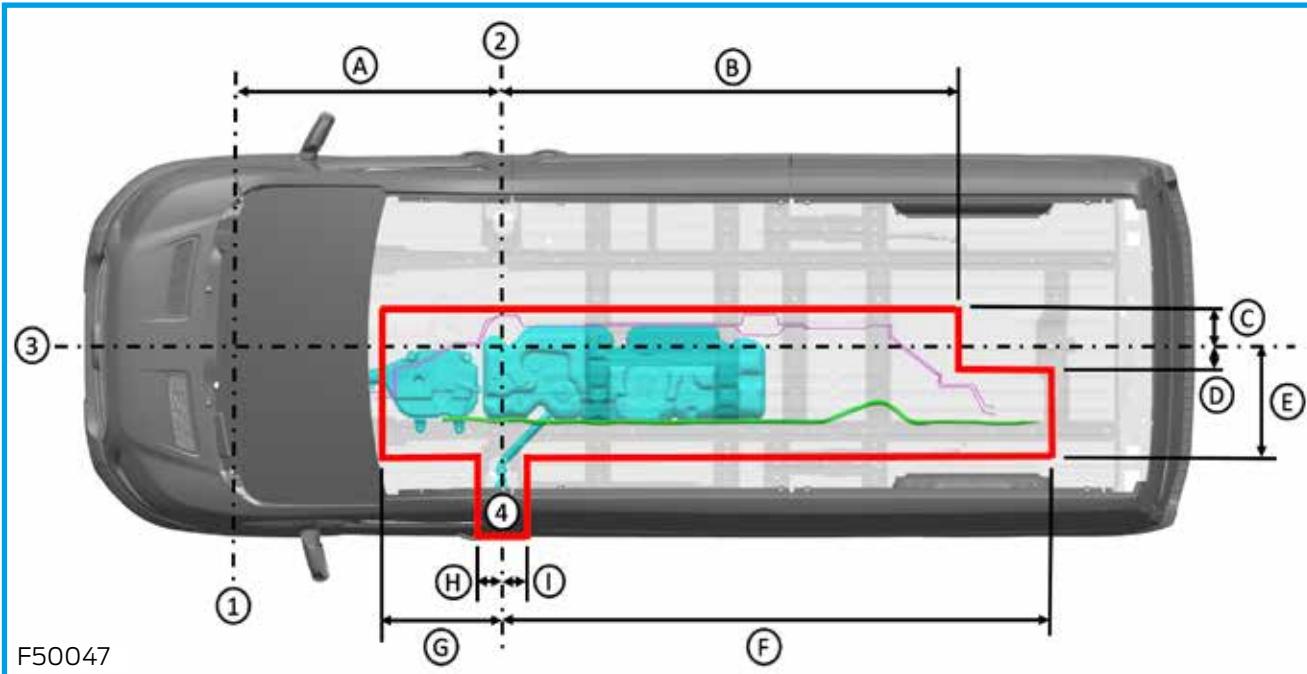


Floor Precautionary Drill Zone Dimensions (mm)

1	Centre Line Front Wheel Axle
2	Centre of 'B' Pillar
3	Centre Line of Vehicle
4	Fuel Filler - Driver's Side 'B' Pillar
A	1235
B	1820
C	215
D	150
E	505
F	2515
G	625
H	75
I	75

Colour Key

	Fuel/DEF Tanks		Brake Lines
	Electrical Harness		

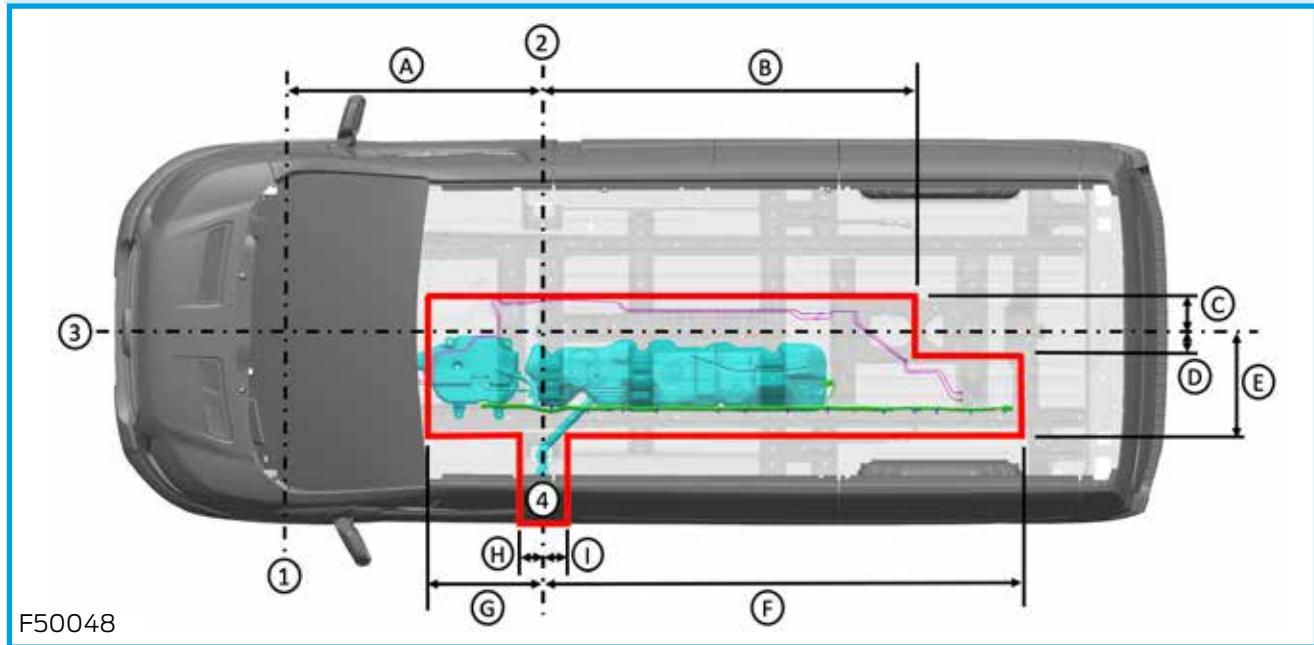
Front Wheel Drive Vans - L3/L4

Floor Precautionary Drill Zone Dimensions (mm)

1	Centre Line Front Wheel Axle
2	Centre of 'B' Pillar
3	Centre Line of Vehicle
4	Fuel Filler - Driver's Side 'B' Pillar
A	1235
B	2410
C	215
D	95
E	555
F	3045
G	625
H	75
I	75

Colour Key

	Fuel/DEF Tanks		Brake Lines
	Electrical Harness		

Rear Wheel Drive Vans - L2



Floor Precautionary Drill Zone Dimensions (mm)

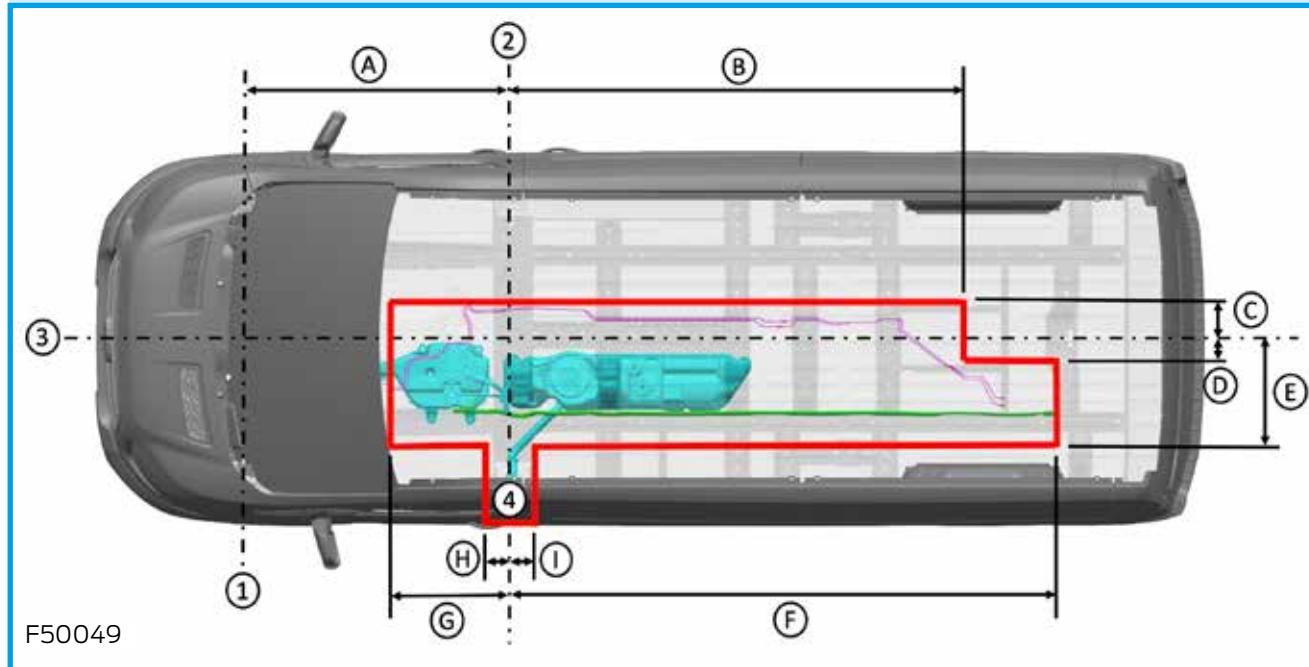
1	Centre Line Front Wheel Axle
2	Centre of 'B' Pillar
3	Centre Line of Vehicle
4	Fuel Filler - Driver's Side 'B' Pillar
A	1235
B	1705
C	220
D	150
E	555
F	2595
G	625
H	75
I	75

Extended Range Fuel Tank shown

Colour Key

	Fuel/DEF Tanks		Brake Lines
	Electrical Harness		

Rear Wheel Drive Vans - L3/L4

**Floor Precautionary Drill Zone Dimensions (mm)**

1	Centre Line Front Wheel Axle
2	Centre of 'B' Pillar
3	Centre Line of Vehicle
4	Fuel Filler - Driver's Side 'B' Pillar
A	1235
B	2400
C	220
D	95
E	555
F	3050
G	325
H	75
I	75

Standard Range Fuel Tank shown

Colour Key

	Fuel/DEF Tanks		Brake Lines
	Electrical Harness		

5.1.5 No Drill/No Weld Zones - BEV

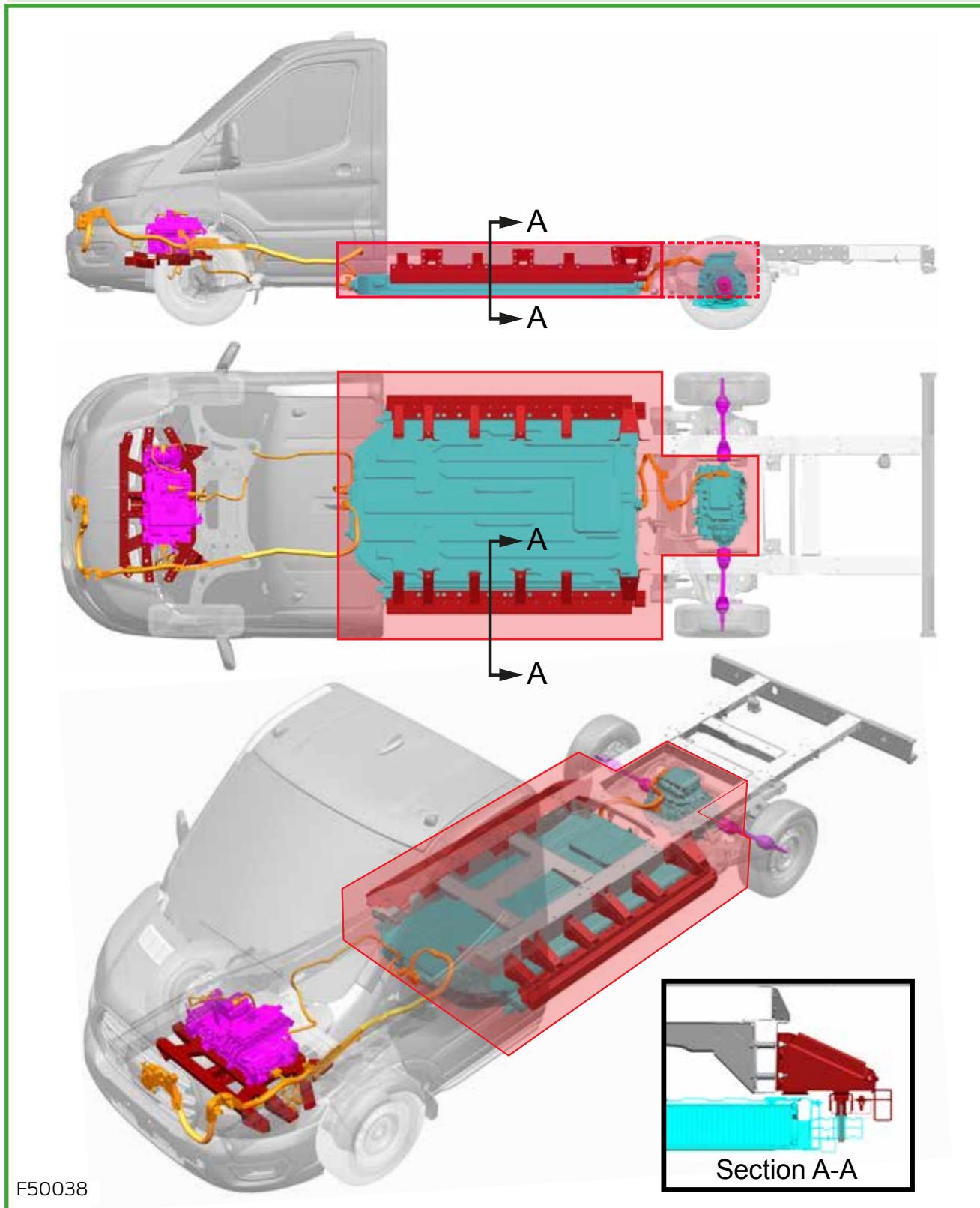
WARNINGS:

! Do not undertake drilling*, welding, or any other operation, in the red marked zone in order to prevent damage to the components placed underneath the floor, in particular battery and high voltage system components.

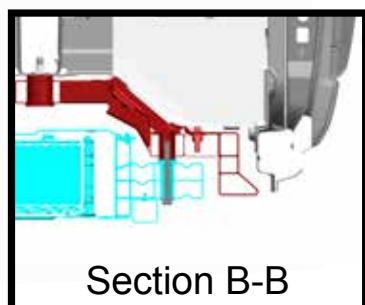
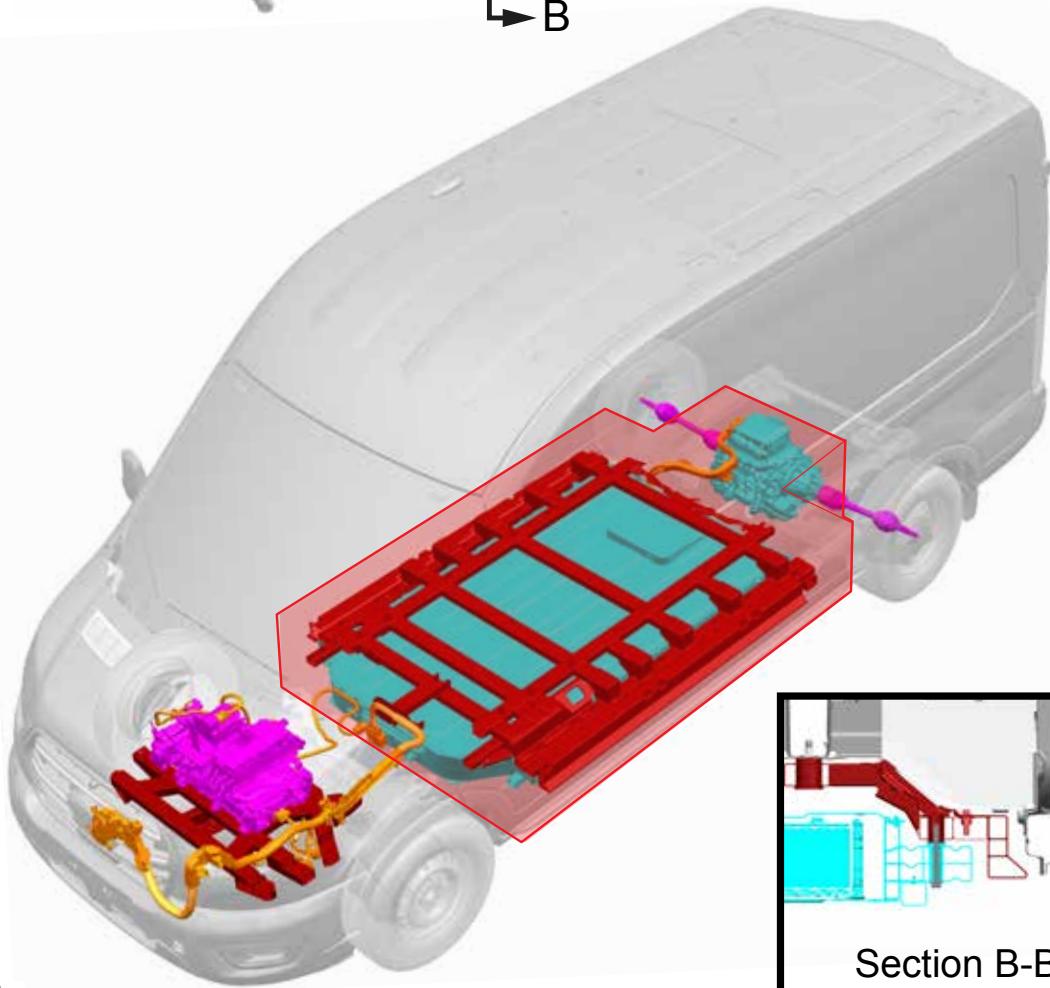
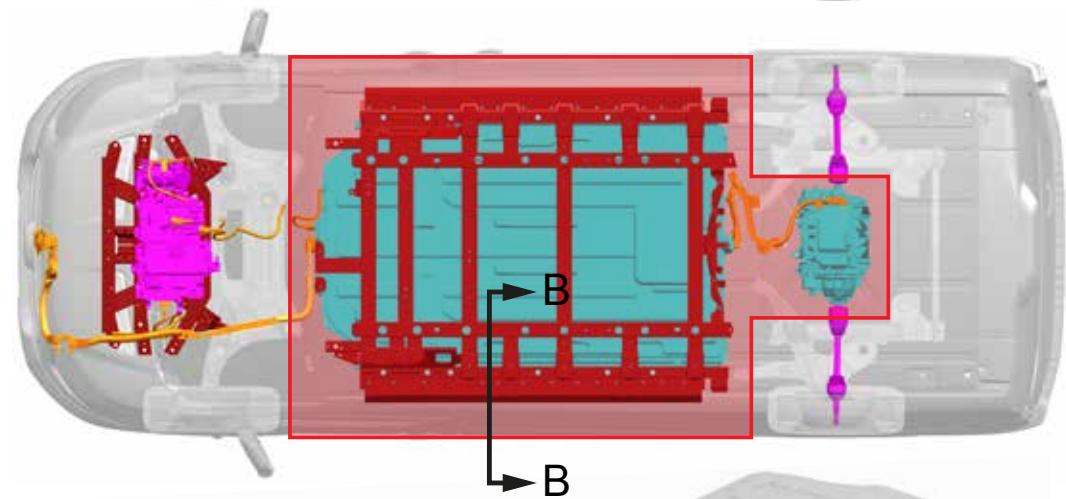
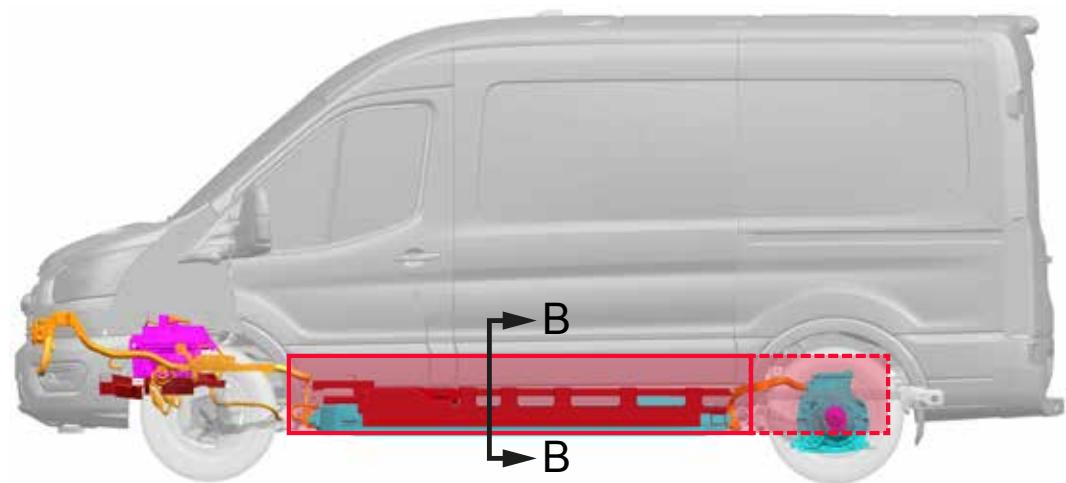
Refer to separate guidance in [Section 5.1.6 BEV Van Floor Drilling](#) and [Section 5.1.7 BEV Side Step](#)

- !** Do not drill the Side Impact Bars or Side Energy Absorption Members
- !** Do not weld to the High Voltage Battery, casing or cradle
- !** Do not ground welding equipment to the Battery, Battery Casing, or Battery Cradle

Floor No Drill/No Weld Zones - Chassis Cab



Floor No Drill/No Weld Zones: Van, Bus, Kombi



F50039

Section B-B

5.1.6 BEV Van Floor Drilling

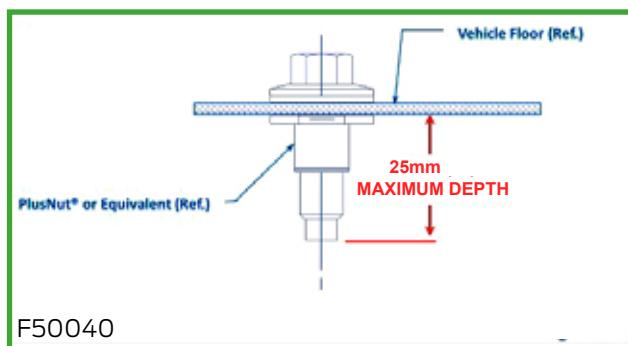
Whilst it is recommended that no drilling is undertaken in the marked zones in **Section 5.1.5**, some limited drilling and fixing is permissible on the cargo floor area of the BEV Van variant; providing the following guidelines are explicitly followed:

It is STRONGLY recommended that E-Transit Van CAD is obtained for convertor use to understand vehicle component placement/location of High/Low voltage wire harness routing, coolant line routing, hydraulic brake line routing, rear drive unit placement, etc. CAD can be obtained from **FPSV Technical Support** at FPSVHelp@ford.com

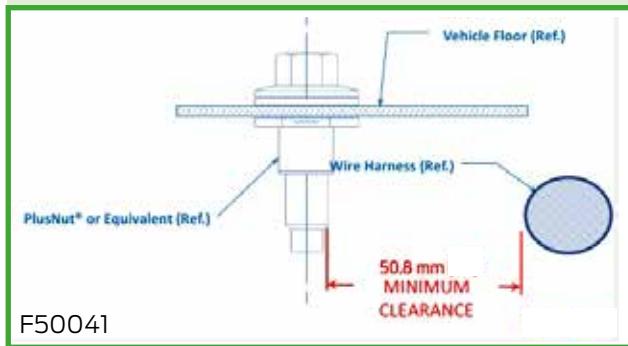
Figures F50042 and F50043 show a marked area on the MWB/LWB Van Cargo Area Floor that indicates the paths of Low/High Voltage Cables, Coolant Lines, Brake Lines and the location of the Battery/Cradle and Electric Drive Assembly. **It is strongly recommended that no drilling or fixing should take place within this area.**

Take precautions when undertaking drilling, or any other operation, rearward of the B Pillar in order to prevent damage to any components under the Van floor. HV grounding points in the vehicle are not to be touched:

- When adding holes/fasteners to the floor of the vehicle to secure upfits, consideration must be given to all components below the floor.
- It is strongly recommended that drill-depth stops be used. Drill stop depth shall not exceed 25mm MAXIMUM DEPTH
- Fasteners (including PlusNut® or equivalent) extending below the floor of the vehicle shall not exceed 25mm MAXIMUM DEPTH (F50040)

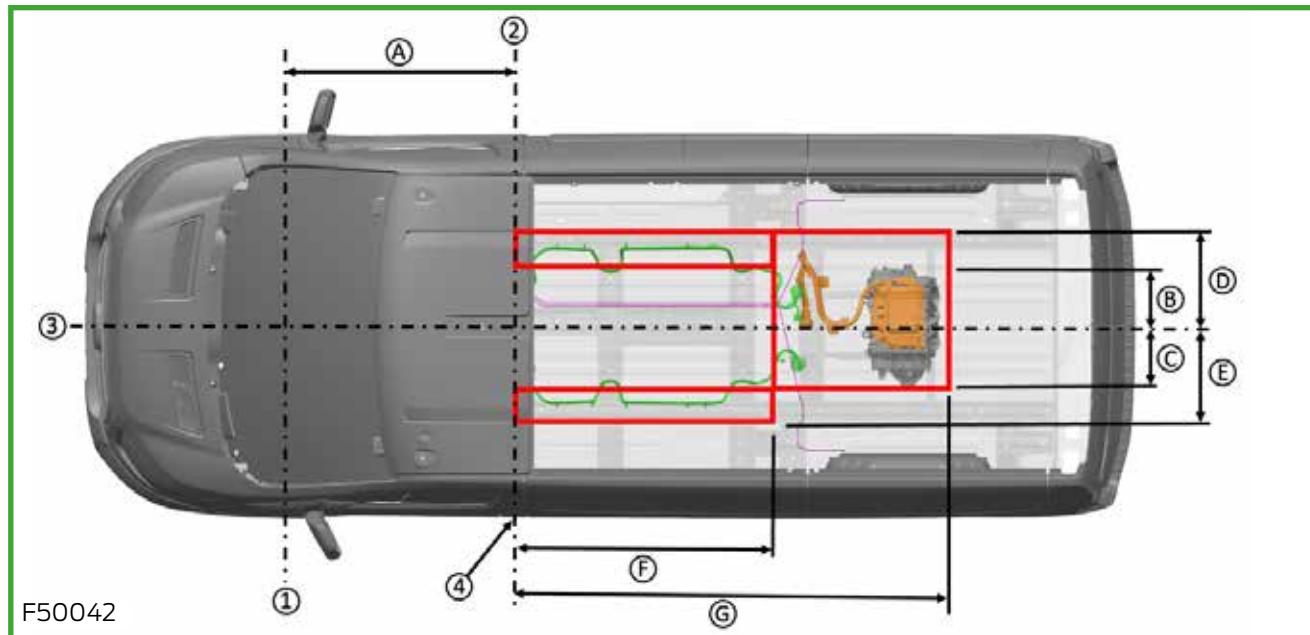


- Fasteners (and/or alternative fastening method) extending below the floor of the vehicle shall have 50.8 mm MINIMUM CLEARANCE to any surrounding High/Low Voltage wiring and/or coolant line routing and/or hydraulic brake line routing to prevent any damage/chafing. (F50041)



NOTE: Re-paint metal edges after cutting or drilling. All metal edges must comply with exterior and interior protection requirements.

Refer to:
[5.1.1 Body Structures - General Info](#)
[5.14 Corrosion Prevention](#)

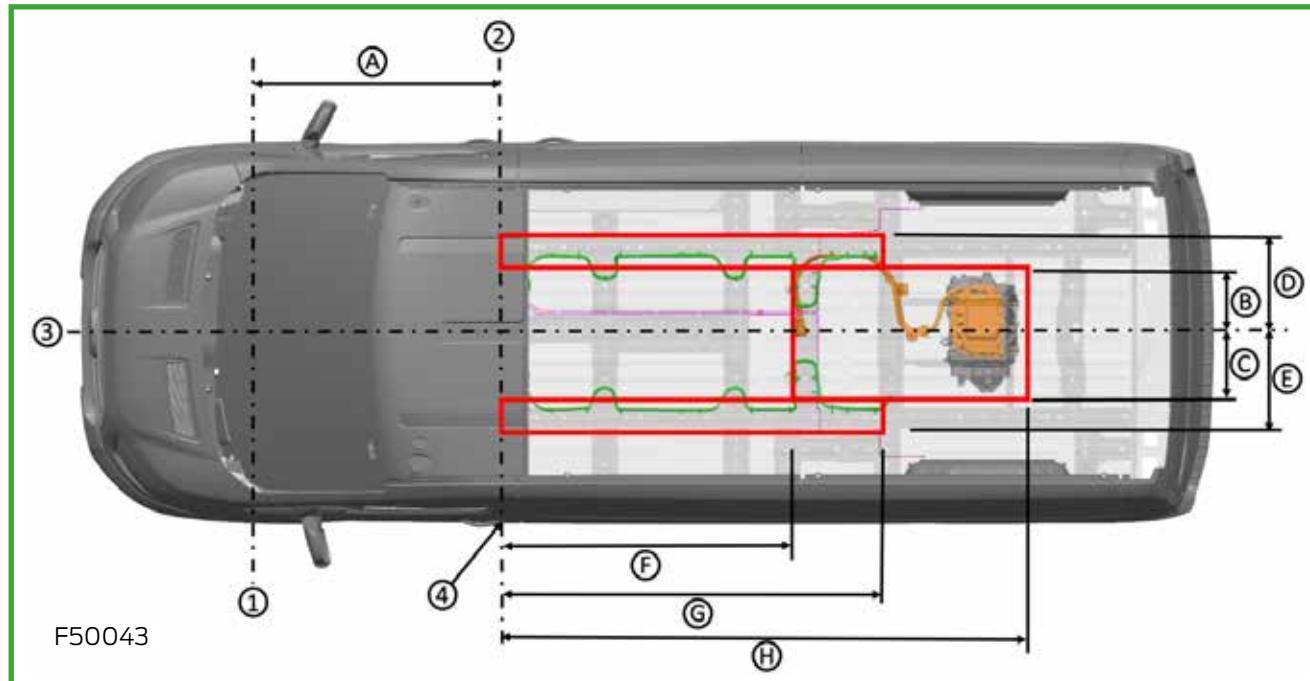
Precautionary Drill Zones: MWB E-Transit BEV Van Cargo Area Floor

Floor Precautionary Drill Zones

1	Centre Line Front Wheel Axle	C	345 mm (14")
2	Centre Line B Pillar	D	555 mm (22")
3	Centre Line of Vehicle	E	555 mm (22")
4	Fuel Filler - B Pillar	F	1280 mm (50")
A	1235 mm (49")	G	2260 mm (89")
B	345 mm (14")		

Colour Key

	High Voltage Cables		Brake Lines
	Low Voltage Cables		Coolant Lines

Precautionary Drill Zones: LWB E-Transit BEV Van Cargo Area Floor



Floor Precautionary Drill Zones

1	Centre Line Front Wheel Axle	C	345 mm (14")
2	Centre Line B Pillar	D	555 mm (22")
3	Centre Line of Vehicle	E	555 mm (22")
4	Fuel Filler - B Pillar	F	1505 mm (59")
A	1235 mm (49")	G	1960 mm (77")
B	345 mm (14")	H	2710 mm (107")

Colour Key

	High Voltage Cables		Brake Lines
	Low Voltage Cables		Coolant Lines

5.1.7 BEV Side Step

If fitting a side step to a BEV VAN, please refer to the illustration below to identify the areas where it is permissible to make modifications, such as drilling, welding or cutting.

It is recommended to centre fixings or brackets at the centrelines shown to align with existing vehicle structure.

WARNINGS:

- !** All additional components that are attached to the body structure must not contain sharp edges that point towards the traction battery. This is to minimise the potential risk of damage to components within the traction battery itself.
- !** Fasteners that upfitters install must point away from the battery so as to not to cause damage to the battery. Do not add a fastener into the vehicle that would point toward the HV Battery.
- !** Remove all sharp edges or burrs after cutting or drilling.

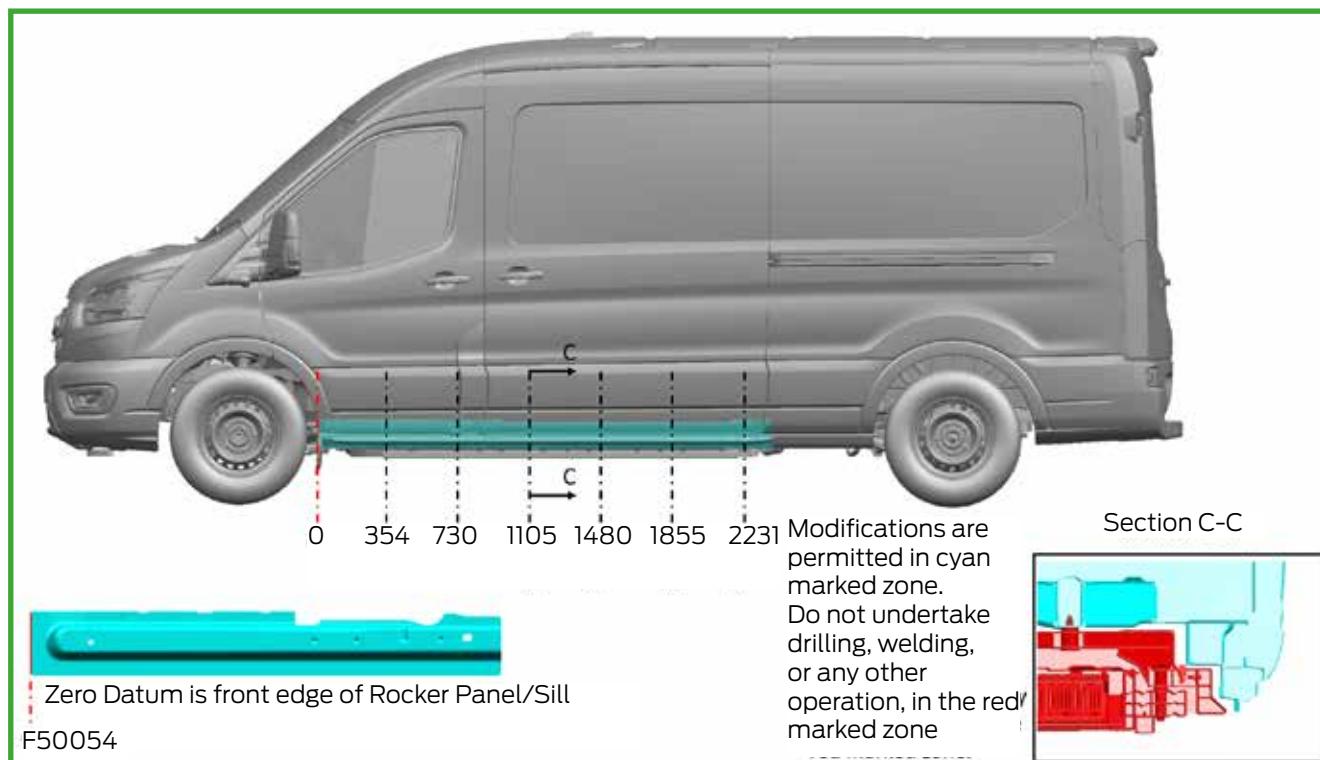
! Re-paint metal edges after cutting or drilling. All metal edges must comply with exterior and interior protection requirements.

! All fixing or wiring holes through the floor, sides or roof must be sealed with plugs, grommets, or tape to prevent the ingress of harmful liquids and gases.

CAUTIONS:

- !** Do not drill into the vehicle before checking the precautionary drill zones and electrical wire routing.
- !** It is strongly recommended that drill-depth stops be used.

Dimensions from Zero Datum



5.1.8 Integrated Bodies and Conversions

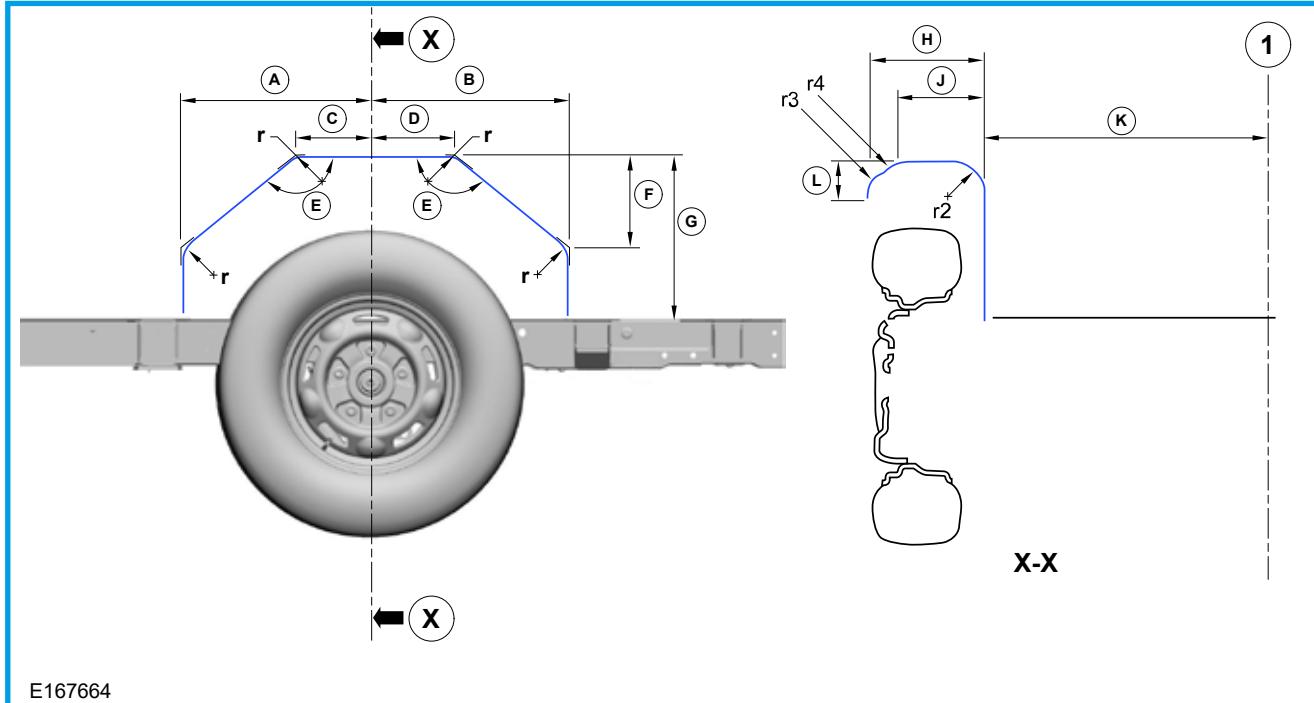
For integral structures such as ambulances or motorhomes, with increased rear overhang built onto the chassis, the following applies:

- Reduced departure angles, e.g. rear entry step, should be discussed with the end user/customer. Consider removable components to avoid damage on ferries or lowloaders
- Unique spare wheel stowage may be required if

obscured by rear step, check for accessibility

- The recommended dimensions for wheelhouses on conversions are outlined in Figures E74529, E74530 and E167664. However, in case a specific conversion requires wheelhouse dimensions smaller than described, please contact your National Sales Company representative, or local Ford dealer. If they are unable to help you then please contact FPSV Technical Support at FPSVHelp@ford.com for an individual solution

Skeletal Chassis for Camper and Non Camper

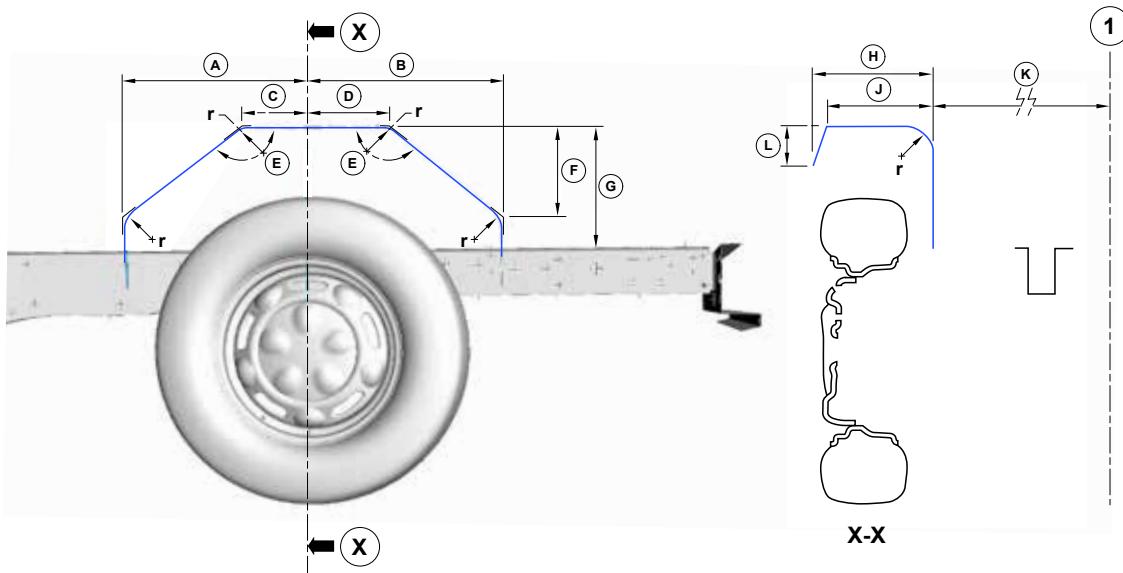


E167664

Wheelhouse Dimensions

Rear Track Width	Skeletal Chassis for Camper and Non Camper	
	1759 mm Standard	1980 mm Wide
A	420 mm	420 mm
B	449 mm	449 mm
C	176 mm	176 mm
D	205 mm	205 mm
E	141°	141°
F	197 mm	197 mm
G	362 mm	364 mm
H	302 mm	302 mm
J	236 mm	236 mm
K	696 mm	803 mm
L	72 mm	72 mm
r1	75 mm radius	75 mm radius
r2	75 mm radius	75 mm radius
r3	50 mm radius	50 mm radius
r4	42 mm radius	42 mm radius
1 - Centre line of Vehicle		X - Section through Centre of Wheelhouse

ICE Chassis Cab - Single Rear Wheel Axle for FWD and RWD Vehicles



E74529

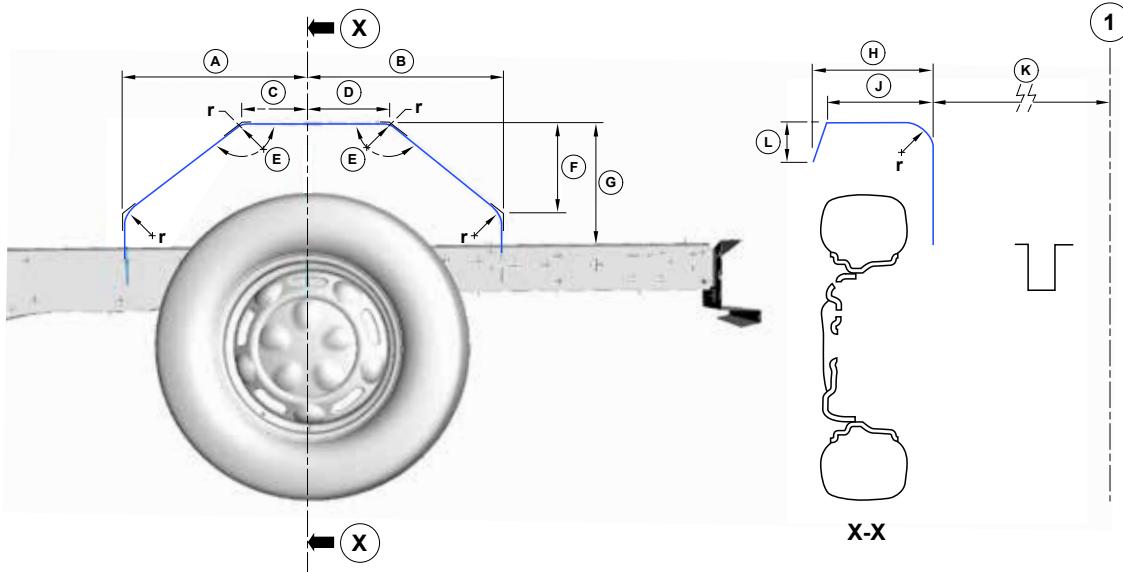
Wheelhouse Dimensions for Chassis Cab with Single Rear Wheel Axle for FWD and RWD Vehicles

A	418 mm	G	265 mm
B	448 mm	H	268 mm
C	165 mm	J	242 mm
D	194 mm	K	696 mm
E	141°	L	80 mm
F	197 mm	r	75 mm

1 - Centre Line of Vehicle

X - Section through Centre of Wheelhouse

BEV Chassis Cab - Single Rear Wheel RWD Vehicles with IRS (steel coil springs only)



E74529

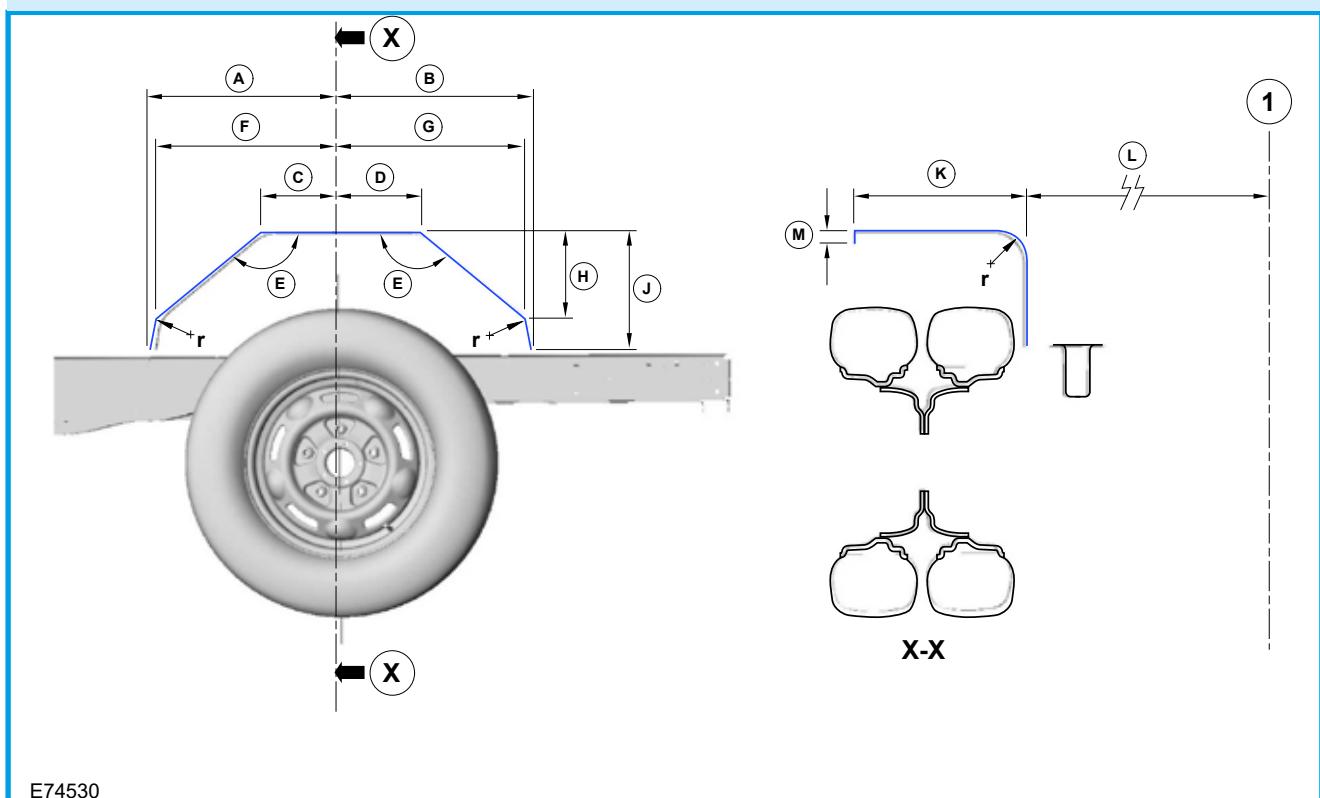
Wheelhouse Dimensions for BEV Chassis Cab Single Rear Wheel Vehicles with RWD and IRS

A	418 mm	G	246 mm
B	449 mm	H	268 mm
C	165 mm	J	242 mm
D	200 mm	K	696 mm
E	141°	L	80 mm
F	197 mm	r	75 mm

1 - Centre Line of Vehicle

X - Section through Centre of Wheelhouse

ICE Chassis Cab - Dual Rear Wheel Drive Axle



E74530

Wheelhouse Dimensions for Chassis Cab with Dual Rear Wheel Drive Axle			
A	418 mm	H	197 mm
B	448 mm	J	265 mm
C	164 mm	K	403 mm
D	194 mm	L	577 mm
E	141°	M	27 mm
F	406 mm	r	75 mm
G	436 mm		
1 - Centre line of Vehicle		X - Section through Centre of Wheelhouse	

5.1.9 Chassis Cab

WARNINGS:



Excessive heat can build up from the exhaust system, in particular from the catalytic convertor. Ensure adequate heat shields are maintained.



All fixings through the floor, sides or roof must be sealed.

CAUTIONS:



Uneven load distribution could result in unacceptable handling and braking characteristics.



For E-Transit Battery Electric Vehicle Chassis Cab, conversions behind the B-pillar may exhibit low mass inertia, resulting in longitudinal vibrations of the cabin (nodding). These can be addressed by applying a Tuned Mass Damper, please consult your dealer for availability.

NOTE: E-Transit BEV Single Chassis Cab Variant

1. Vehicles sold with the float body will already have a Tuned Mass Damper (TMD) fitted as standard. This must NOT be removed. The TMD is fitted in the region where the towbar would normally be located. If towing is required the Vehicle Convertor will need to find an alternative solution.
2. Vehicles sold without a float body have no TMD fitted. If fitting a platform/float style body, Ford Motor Company REQUIRES a Tuned Mass Damper system to be fitted.

The required part numbers and quantities are as follows:

NK31-110867-AD (FINIS 2677680) (x1)

NK31-7458-AC (FINIS 2673159) (x2)

W714735-S439 (FINIS 5103006) (x2)

When carrying out vehicle conversions/modifications the following points should be considered:

- Make sure that all of the reinforced holes provided in the chassis frame top surface are used for full

- length bodies or subframes, see Figures E167667, E167668, E167669 and E167670
- Make sure that the vehicle structural integrity is maintained
 - Do not drill into closed frame body members
 - Make sure that the design for the body alterations or additional structure disperses the load evenly
 - Re-paint metal edges after cutting or drilling. All metal edges must comply with exterior and interior protection legislation
 - [Refer to: 5.14 Corrosion Prevention](#)

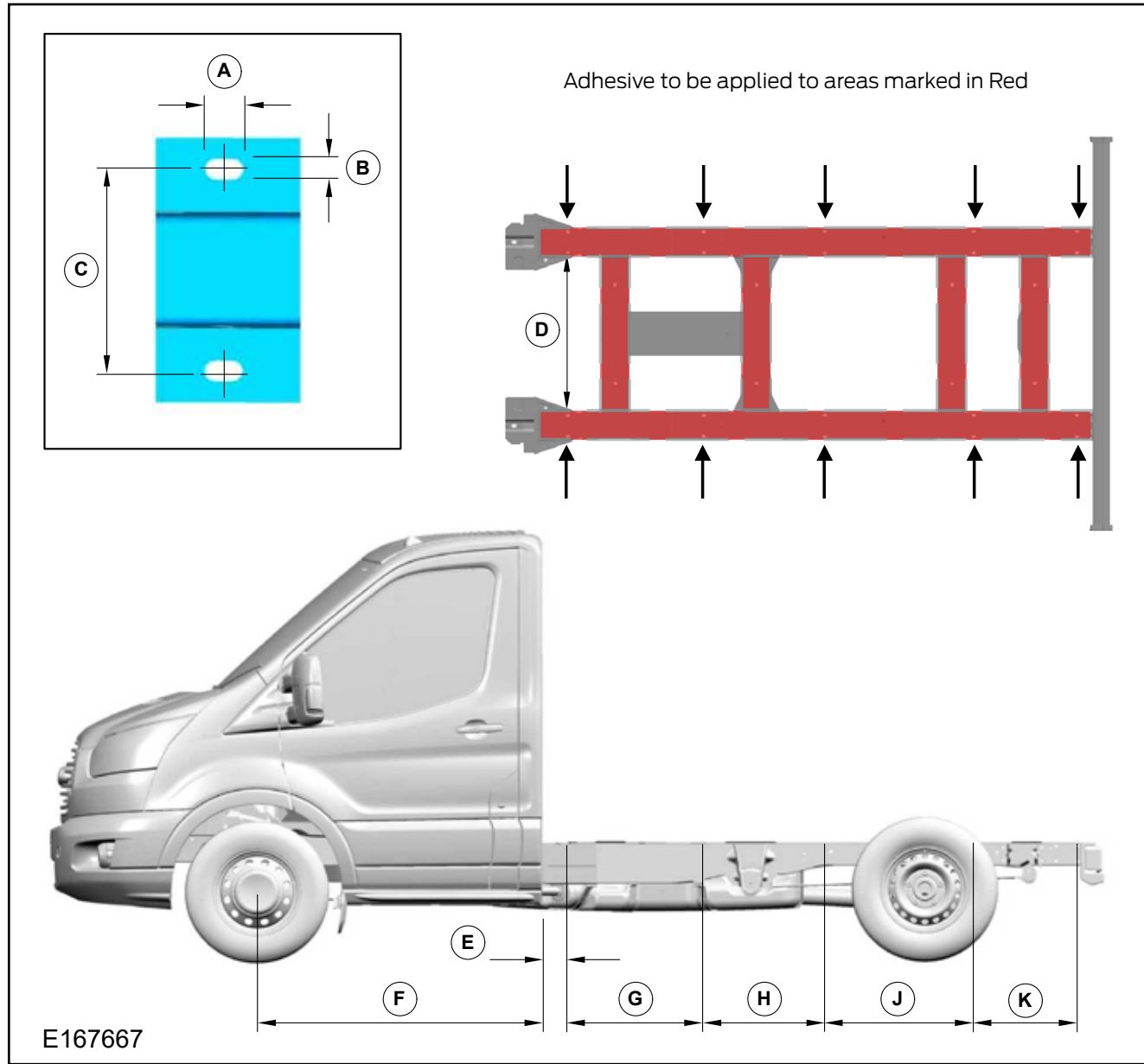
- Ensure that any additional equipment in the vicinity of the fuel tank will not damage the tank in a crash condition

NOTE: The reinforcement plate in cab back panel to chassis member area must be maintained. Do not drill or cut into this area, see figure E167672.

For additional information: [Refer to: 5.15 Frame and Body Mounting](#)

For any conversion structure attached to - or mounted onto - the base vehicle cab structure, the following applies:

Body Attachment Holes - Chassis Frame Top Flange L1 Wheelbase



Body Attachment Holes -Chassis Frame Top Flange L1 Wheelbase

A	19 mm	F	1407 mm
B	11 mm	G	665 mm
C	100 mm	H	592 mm
D	800 mm	J	730 mm
E	108 mm	K	506 mm

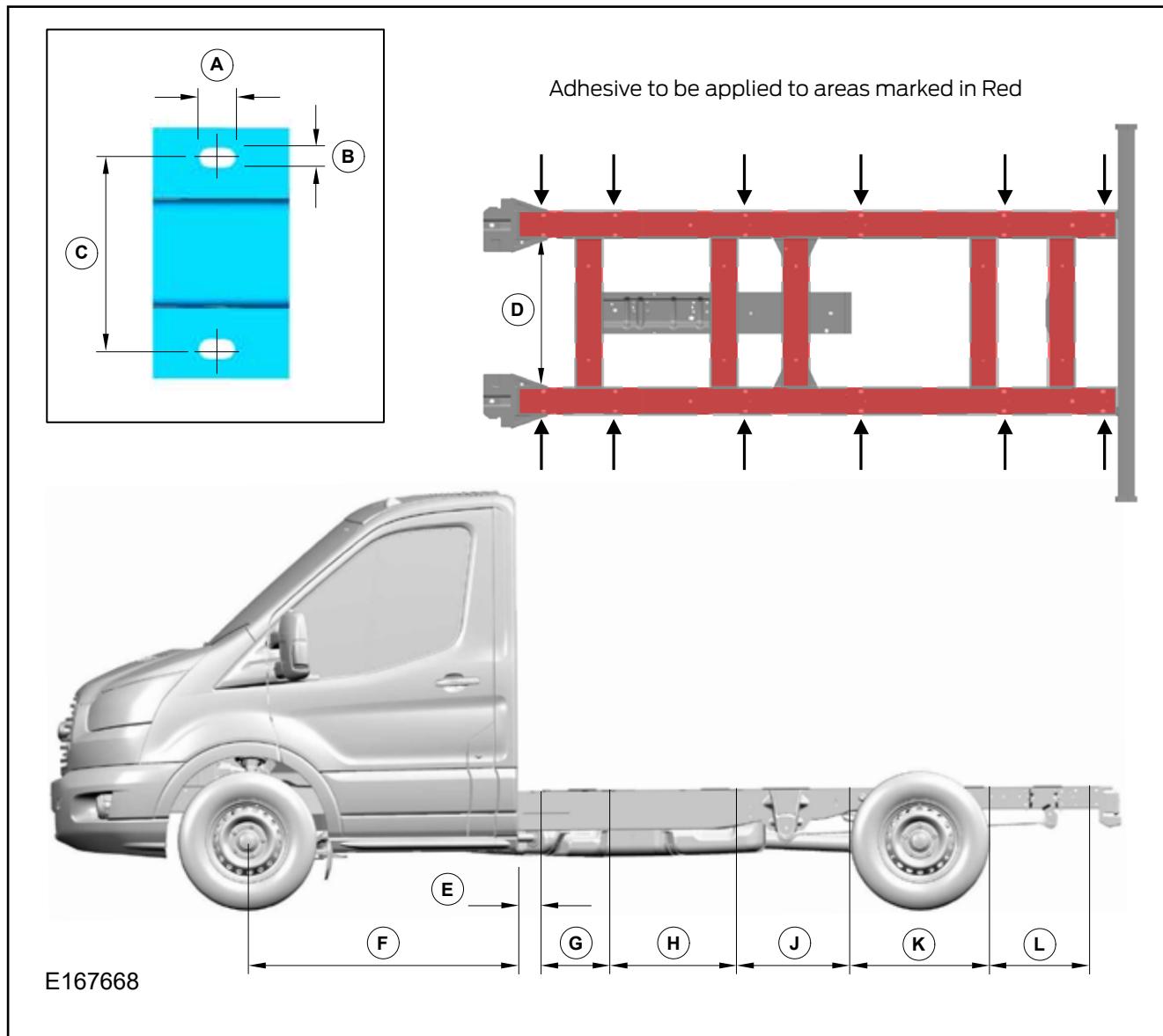
- Ensure that neither the conversion structure nor the existing vehicle structure get pre-loaded by the assembly process
- Adhesive jointing is recommended but should be supplemented with mechanical fasteners to prevent initial peel and long term failure
- When attaching a second unit body on Lightweight Chassis SVO (AALA1) applications, it is mandatory to apply adhesive to the top surface of both chassis rails and all cross members, as well as bolting to the chassis rails at all the existing fixing points. The adhesive specification used must be

either a combination of Betaprime 5404 AND Betaseal 1858-1, or an equivalent that meets the material specification, WSS-M11P57-A5

- Spread bolt loads to minimise local stress

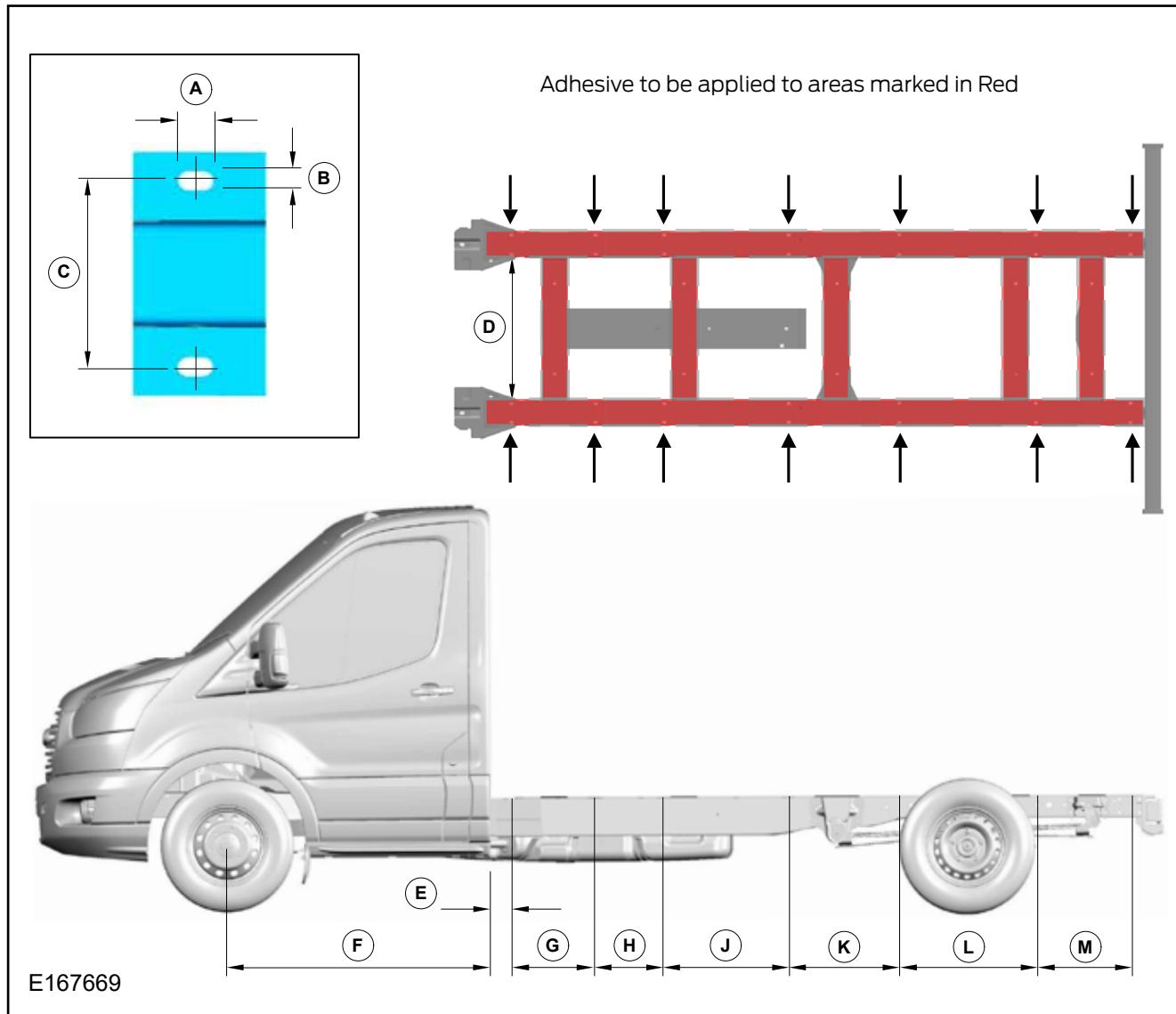
When mounting a Second Unit Body all of the attachment holes shown in figures E167667, E167668, E167669, E167670 or E167674 should be used unless specified they can be omitted.

Body Attachment Holes - Chassis Frame Top Flange L2 Wheelbase

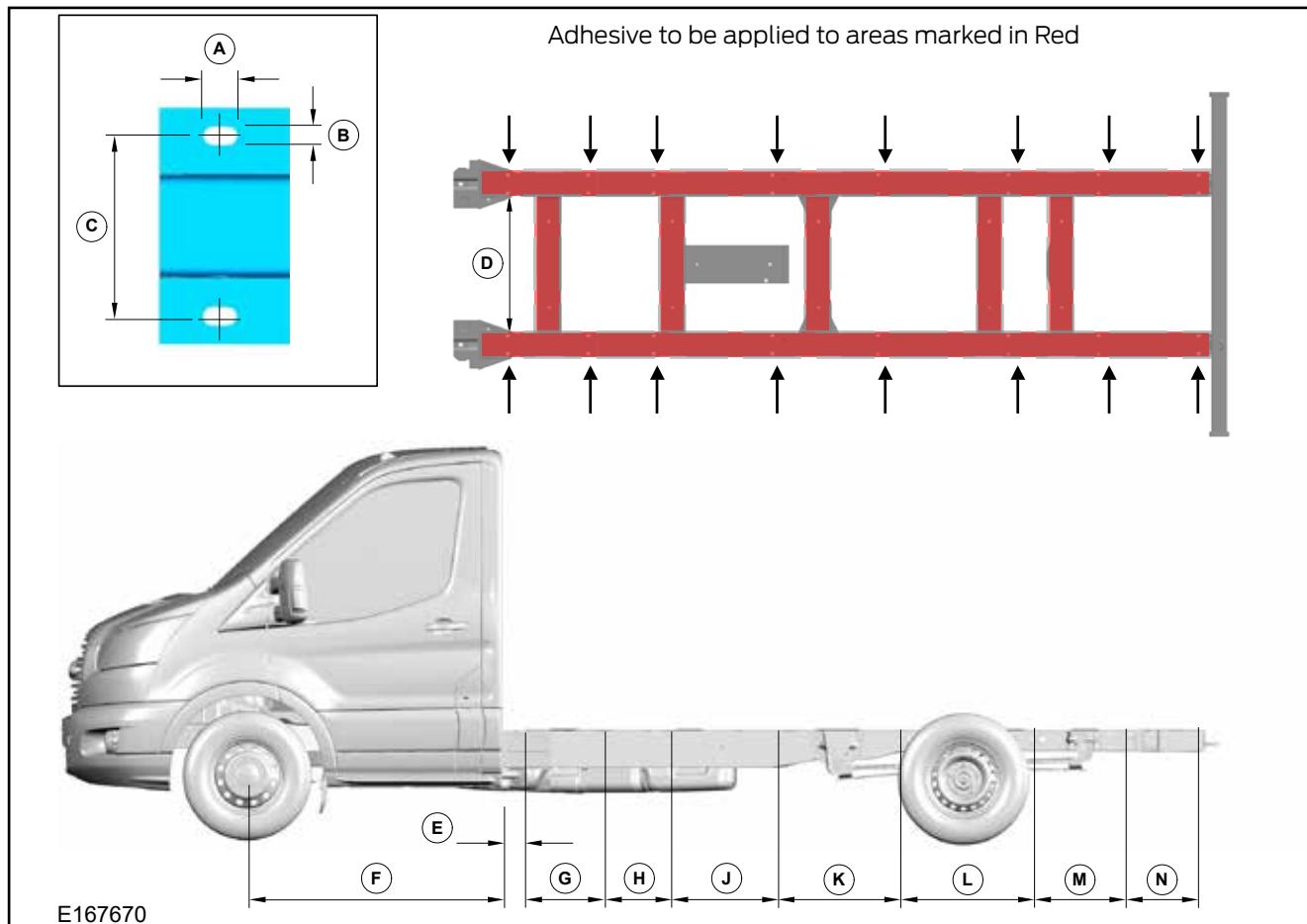


Body Attachment Holes -Chassis Frame Top Flange L2 Wheelbase

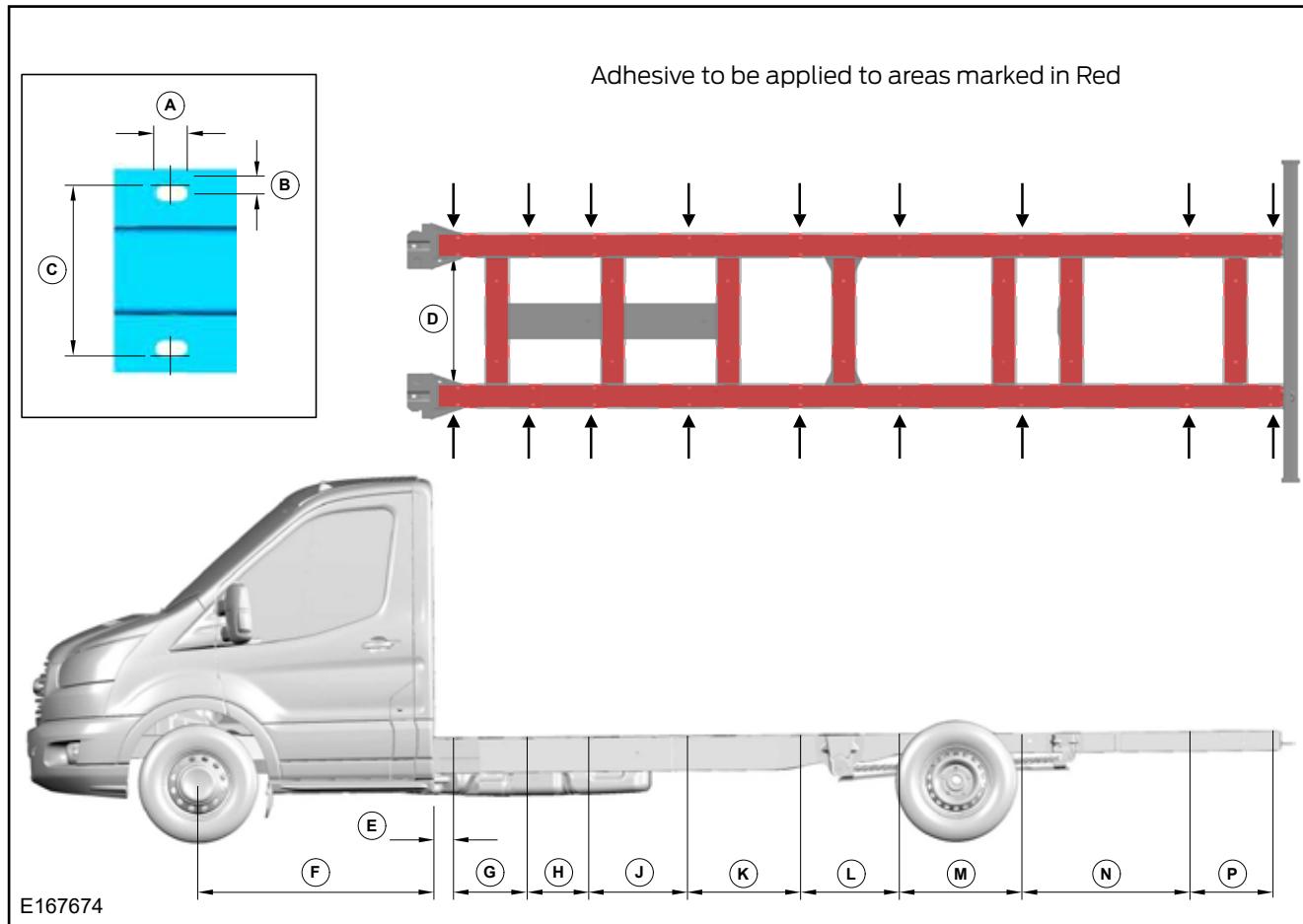
A	19 mm	G	367 mm
B	11 mm	H	665 mm
C	100 mm	J	592 mm
D	800 mm	K	730 mm
E	108 mm	L	506 mm
F	1407 mm	-	-

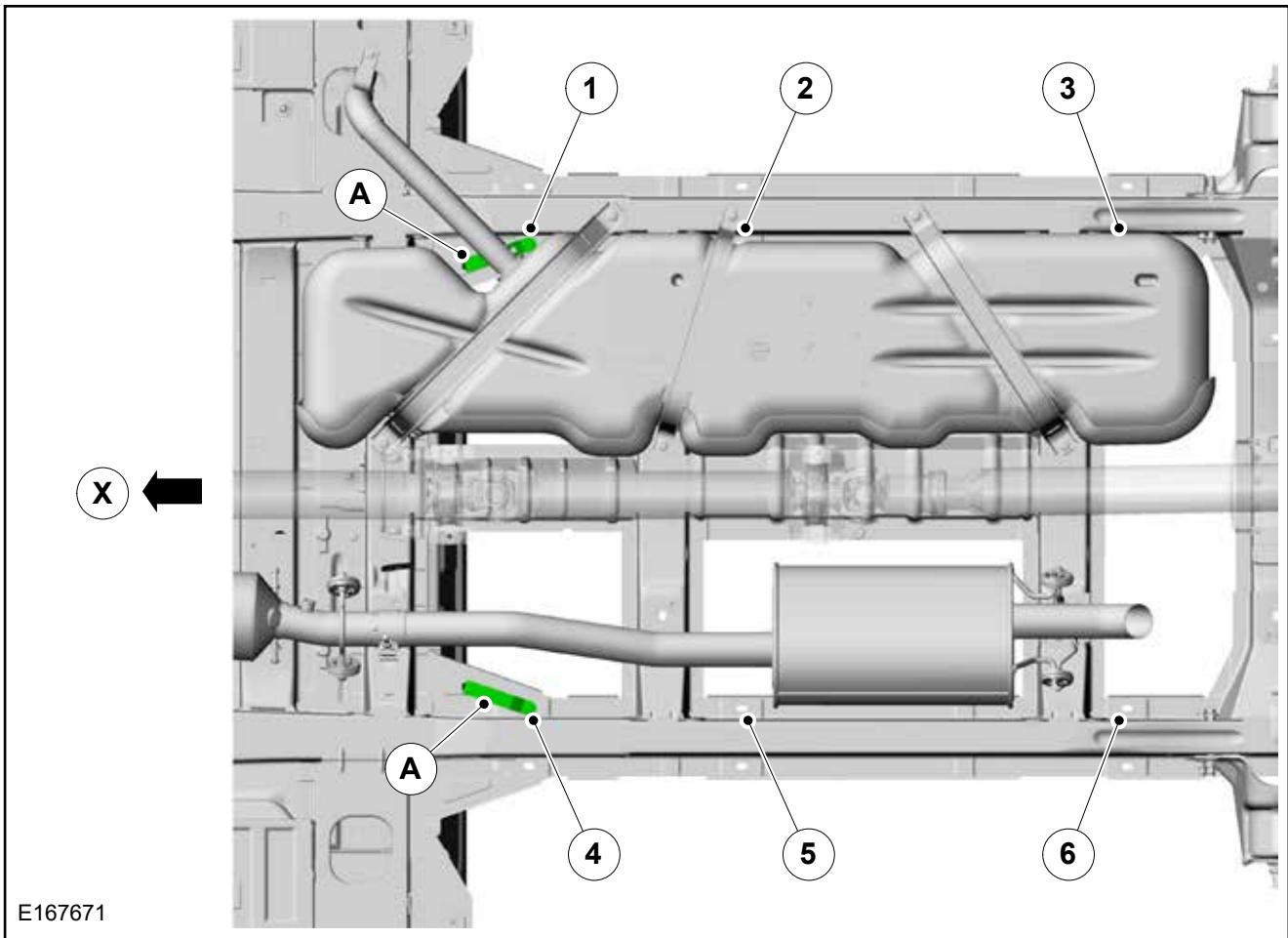
Body Attachment Holes - Chassis Frame Top Flange L3 Wheelbase

Body Attachment Holes - Chassis Frame Top Flange L3 Wheelbase

A	19 mm	G	450 mm
B	11 mm	H	367 mm
C	100 mm	J	665 mm
D	800 mm	K	592 mm
E	108 mm	L	730 mm
F	1407 mm	M	506 mm

Body Attachment Holes - Chassis Frame Top Flange L4 Wheelbase

Body Attachment Holes Chassis Frame Top Flange L4 Wheelbase

A	19 mm	H	367 mm
B	11 mm	J	665 mm
C	100 mm	K	592 mm
D	800 mm	L	730 mm
E	108 mm	M	506 mm
F	1407 mm	N	561 mm
G	450 mm	-	-

Body Attachment Holes - Chassis Frame Top Flange L5 Wheelbase


Recommended Second Unit Body Fixing Strategy - Single Chassis Cabs


Item	Description
A	Anti Rotation Bolt - EK31-101D80-A*
1	Restricted access to inner attachment hole due to fuel tank. Must use Anti Rotation Bolt 'A'
2 and 3	Inner attachment holes can be omitted.
4	Restricted access to inner attachment hole due to heat shield. Recommended to use Anti Rotation Bolt 'A'
5 and 6	Inner attachment holes can be omitted.

NOTE: Some of the attachment holes are difficult to reach or obscured by the fuel tank and can be omitted, EXCEPT attachment hole 1 which must be used, a special anti-rotation bolt is available - EK31-101D80-A*. It is recommended to use this special bolt in both the inner first positions 1 and 4, see figure E176671 'Recommended Second Unit Body Fixing Strategy'.

NOTE: So that the bolt can be tightened from outside the vehicle, a cut out in the lower rail of the second unit body may be necessary for tool access.

Fitting the Anti-rotation Bolt

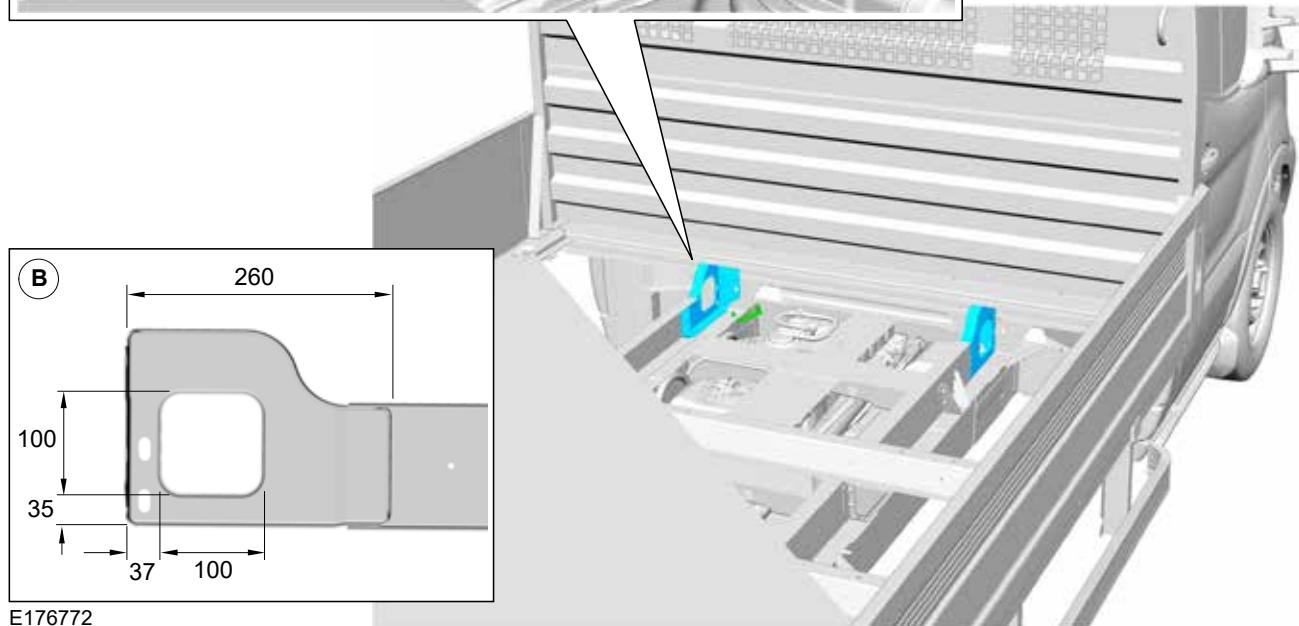
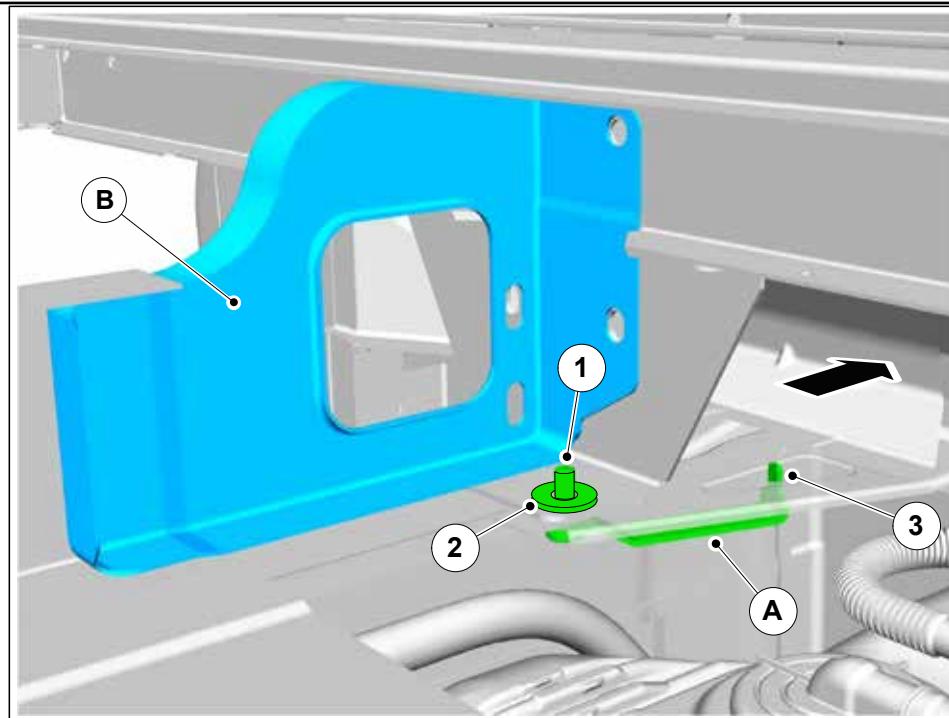
- Insert anti-rotation bolt from underneath into hole 1 and insert the anti-rotation pin into hole 3, see

figure E1766712, repeat for other side

- Temporarily secure the bolt using the locking/grip washer on the upper side of the chassis rail, see item 2 in figure E176672
- Mount the float, box body ensuring the bolt aligns with the hole in the second unit body
- Complete the joint by tightening the bolt, torque 55Nm

When fitting a second unit body to a Medium Wheelbase (MWB) Double Chassis Cab not all the attachment points are accessible, position 1, shown in figure E176673 is obscured by the fuel tank and can be omitted. All other fixing points should be used.

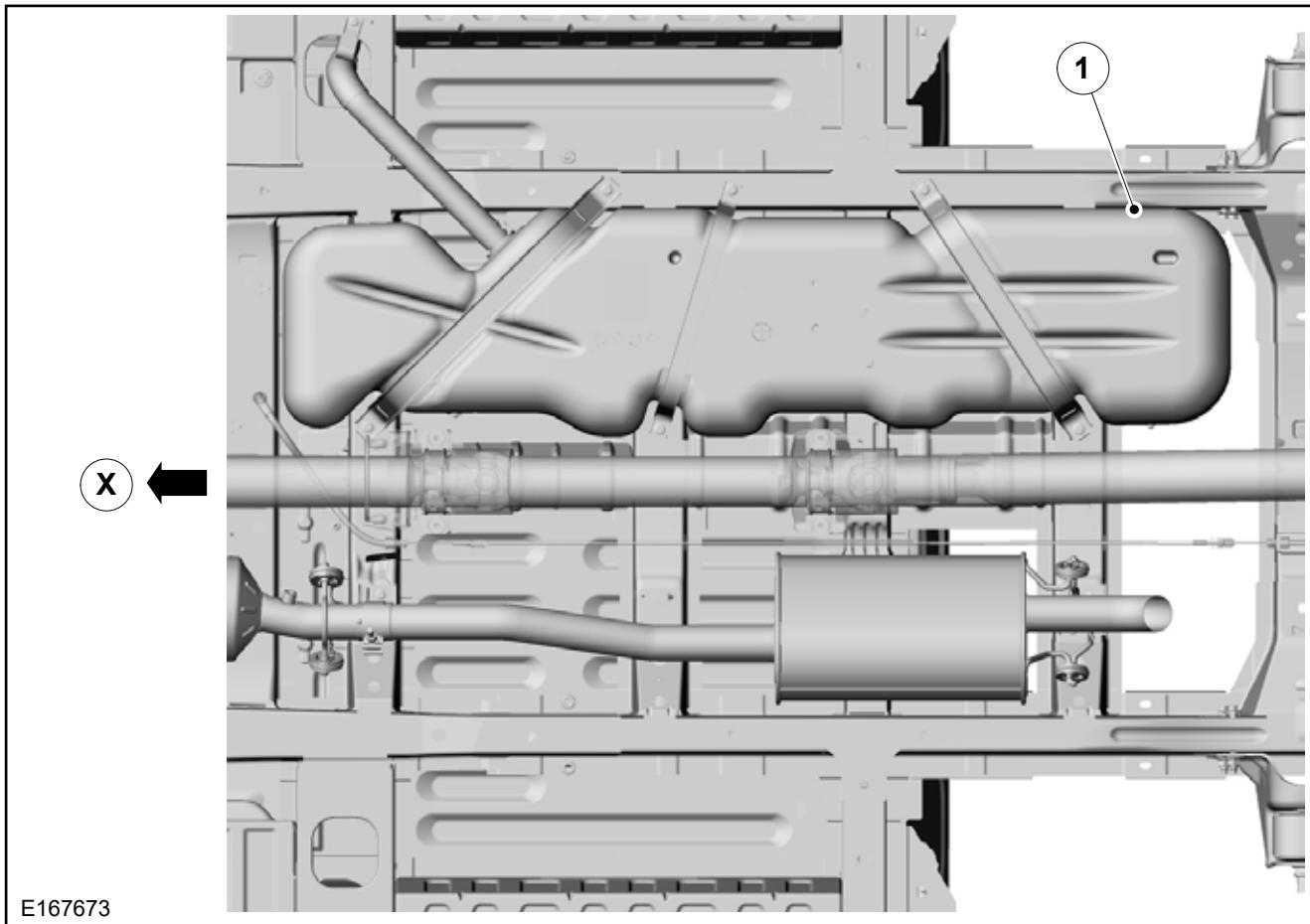
Recommended Fixing Strategy - Second Unit Body to Chassis Frame

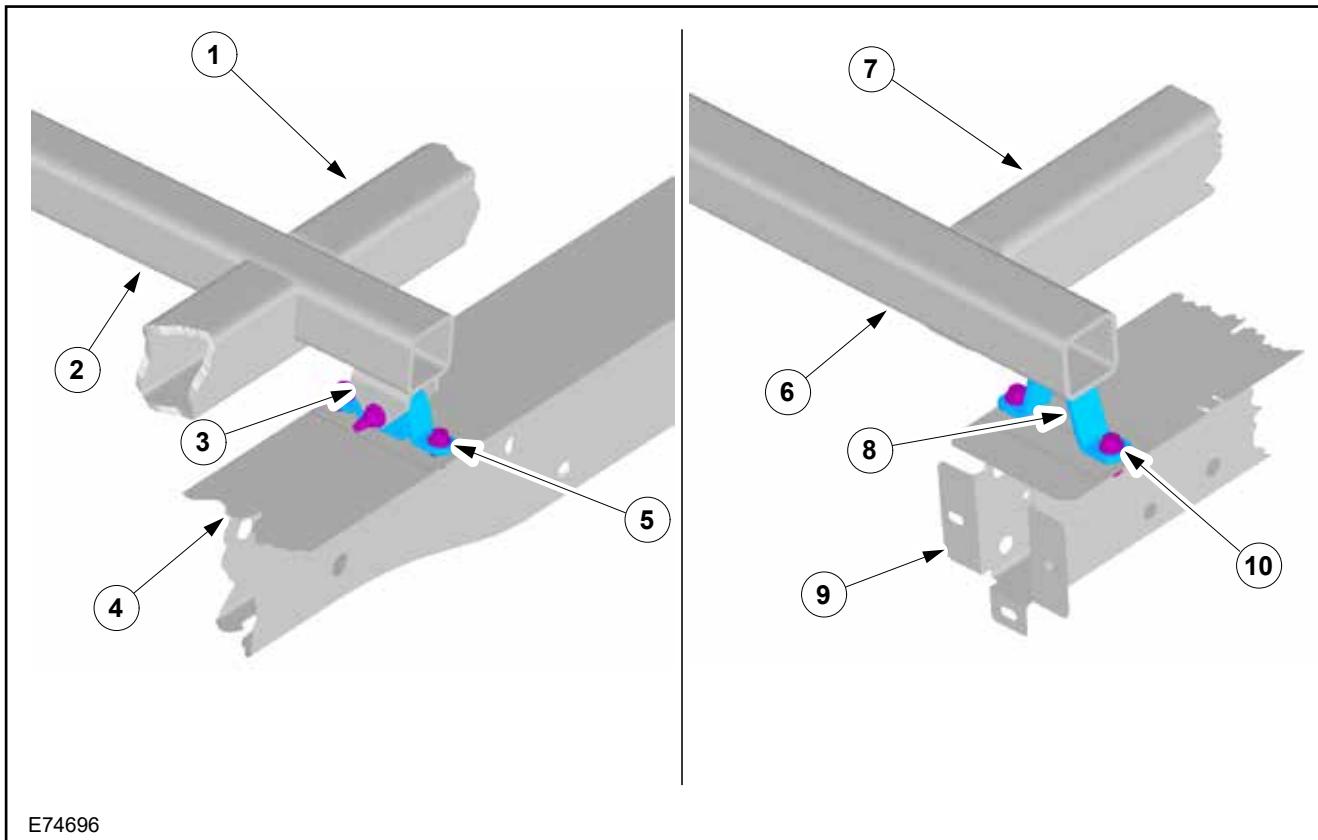


E176772

Item	Description
A	Anti-rotation bolt -EK31-101D80-A*
B	Cut out in lower rail of second unit body to allow tool access to tighten bolt
1	Anti-rotation bolt
2	Locking/Grip Washer
3	Anti-rotation pin

Recommended Second Unit Body Fixing Strategy - Double Chassis Cabs MWB only

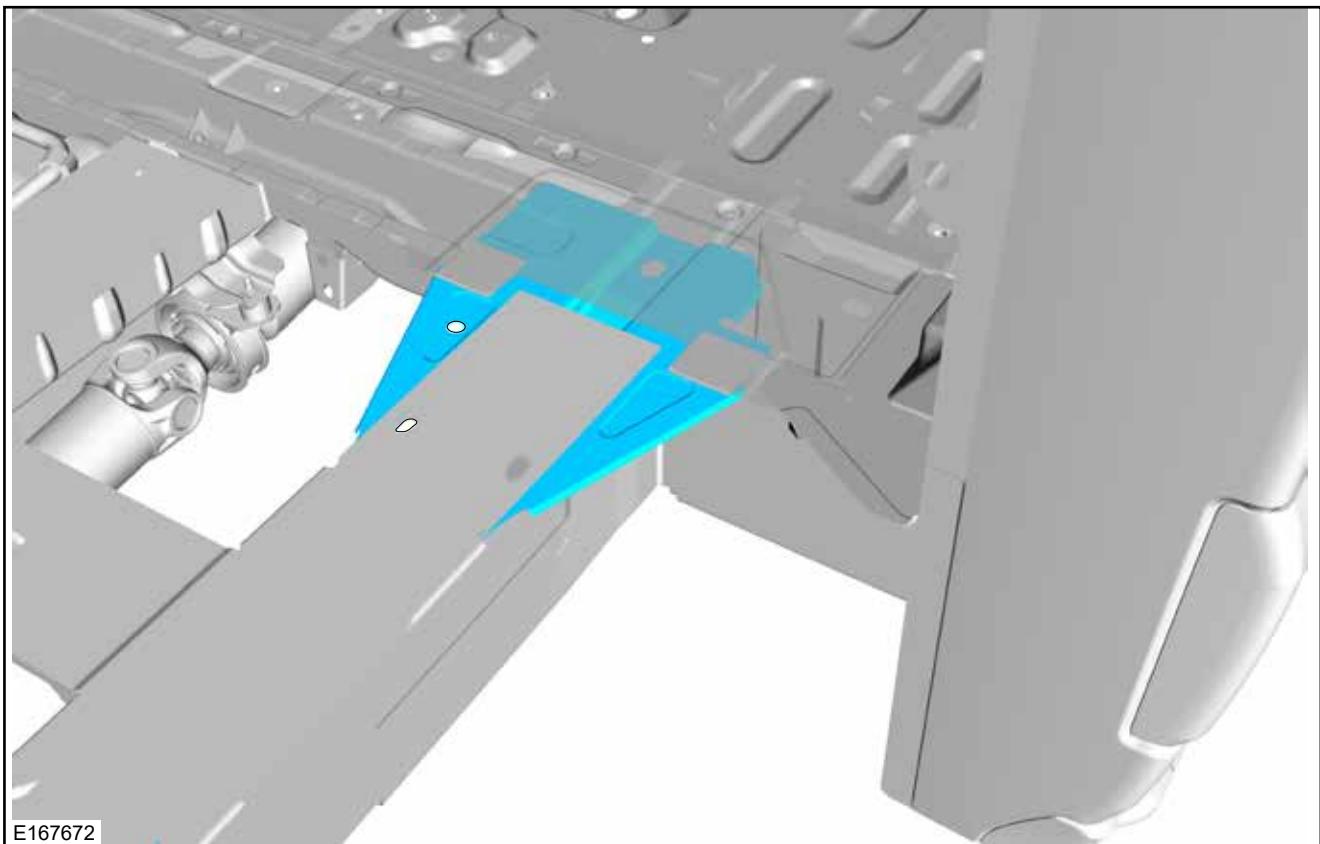


Subframe Attachment to Chassis Frame

E74696

Item	Description
1	Subframe Longitudinal
2	Subframe Outriggers
3	Compliant Mount
4	Chassis Frame
5	M10 Bolts and Self Locking Nuts
6	Subframe Outriggers
7	Subframe Longitudinal
8	Solid or Fixed Mount
9	Chassis Frame
10	M10 Bolts and Self Locking Nuts

Reinforcement Plate on Single Chassis Cab Vehicles



5.1.10 Skeletal Chassis for Camper and Non Camper

NOTE: Please contact your National Sales Company representative, or local Ford dealer. If they are unable to help you then please contact the FPSV Technical Support at FPSVHelp@ford.com

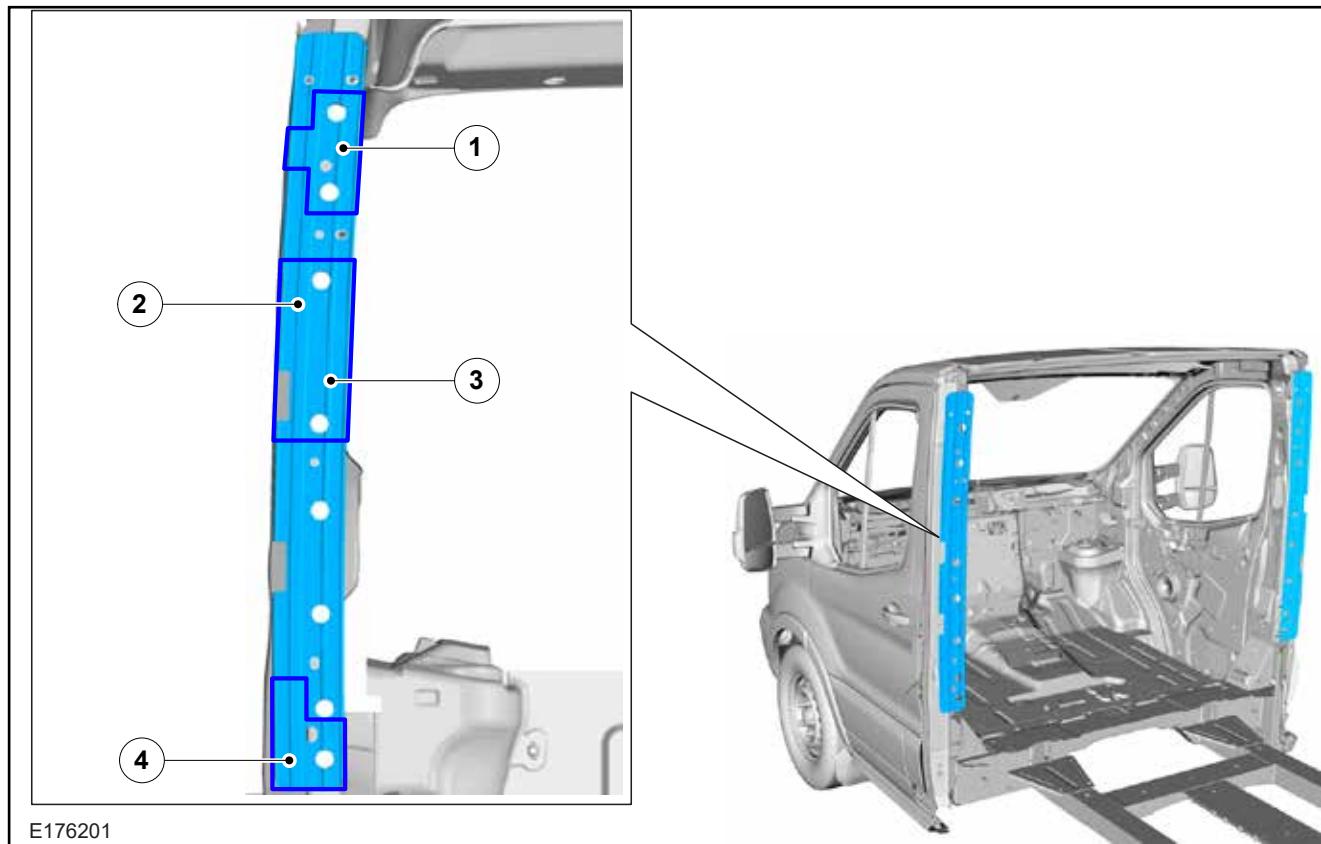
Please refer to general advice and warnings for Chassis Cab. For Skeletal Chassis for camper and non camper the following additional guidelines apply:

- Refer to: 1.5 Conversion Type (page 14). for reference table
- The Skeletal Chassis for Camper and Non Camper are incomplete vehicles and do not offer a self-supporting body structure. A box body or equivalent structure must be added and appropriate attachments to the frame and cabin

must be provided to ensure structural integrity of the converted vehicle

- Design a sufficient connection to the 'B' pillar bracket (sidewall to cab connection), by using at least 4x M8 screws per side, see figure E176201 for the areas that can be used for bolting the body to the 'B' pillar bracket
- Do not drill into B pillar flange behind bracket. Leave sufficient space between drilled hole and outer border of bracket
- Add appropriate reinforcements to the frame, frame rails and outriggers of the base vehicle to provide sufficient structural integrity of the converted vehicle

Provide sufficient clearance between the drill hole and edge of the B pillar bracket

Body to 'B' Pillar Bracket - Recommended Attachment Area

- If implementing a fully sealed body air extraction is required, the recommendation is the use of one Ford service part 6G91-A280B62-A* on each side of the vehicle. If this is not possible the alternative extractor should provide 150cmx2 of cross sectional area on each side of the vehicle. An ideal position for the extractors would be in the back panel of the cab. If this is not feasible, then the extractors should be situated rearwards of 'B' pillar such that there is a free airflow path equating to the extractor effective CSA maintained both upstream and downstream of each extractor to maintain windscreens defogging performance and door closing efforts. Extraction should not be installed near exhaust components, or areas exposed to potential fuel spillage.
- It is recommended to fix the Convertors floor by using additional U-type fixings around the main rails and cross members or by using screws running vertically through floor and rails, cross members and outriggers. To eliminate deformation of the rails during screwing process, we recommend to use tubing

[Refer to: 5.15 Frame and Body Mounting](#)

- The Skeletal Chassis for camper and non camper offers most design flexibility for adding a sidestep
- Due to the wide side overhang it is recommended to support the Vehicle Convertors floor

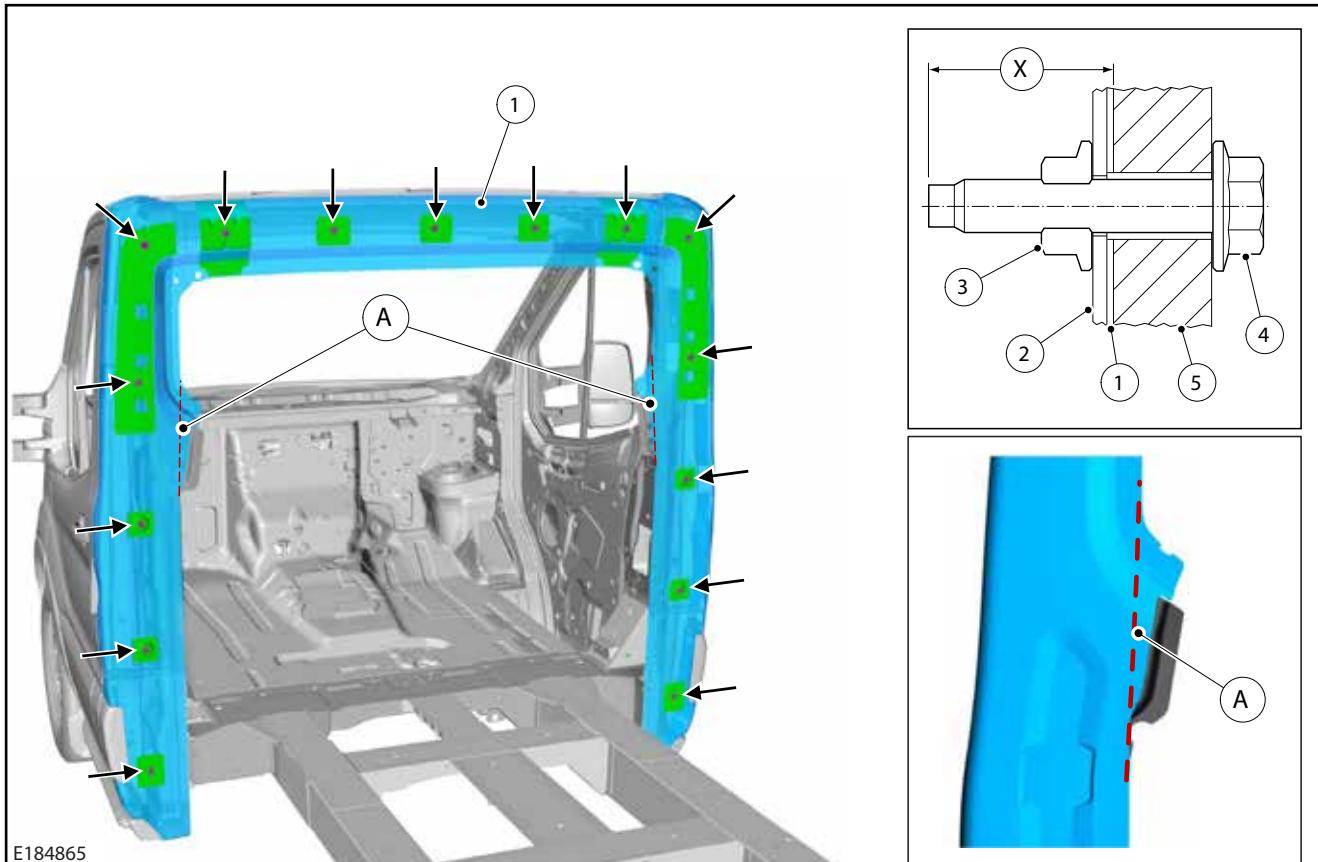
[Refer to: 5.15 Frame and Body Mounting](#)

- Do not cut or drill into areas as shown in figure E168875
- Drill only through the centre line of rails and ensure no spot weld is drilled out
- The vehicle structure must not get preloaded by the conversion structure or the assembly process.
- For attachment to the base vehicle

[Refer to: 1.17 Towing](#)

- For basic dimensions and weights see figure E176200 and table
- For standard track and wide track width rear axle see figure E131488
- See also Exhaust Heat Shields

[Refer to: 3.7 Exhaust System](#)

Closed Roof Skeletal (A1GAJ)


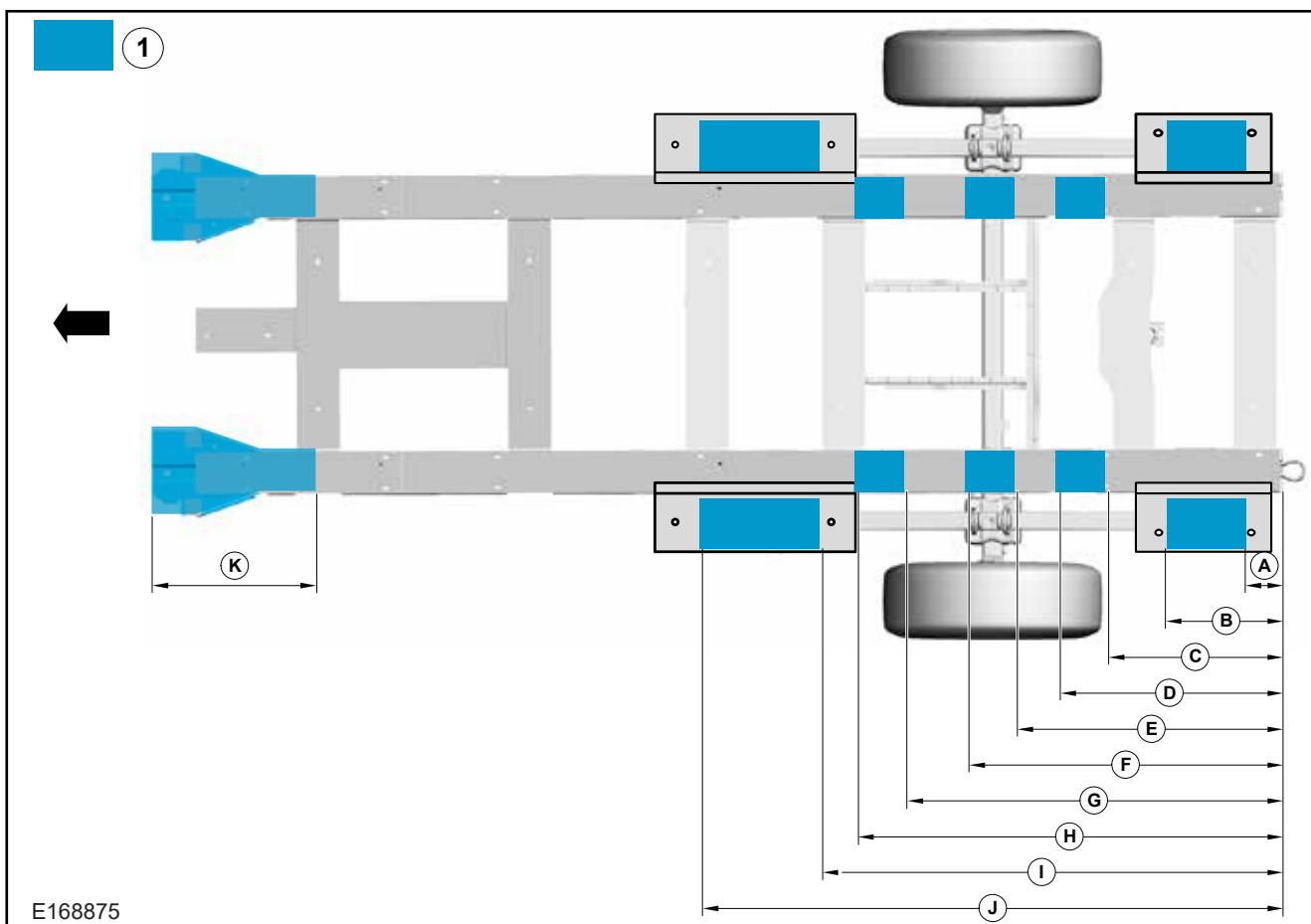
Item	Description
A	Flange trim line
1	Cutaway flange with added reinforcement
2	Reinforcement plate (see positions arrowed)
3	Non-threaded weld nuts (x15, see positions arrowed)
4	Use MR8 TAPTITE 2000® bolts - not supplied (x15 positions) or equivalent size, gauge, self-tapping fastener
5	Second unit body
X	Maximum intrusion 25mm (1")

NOTE: When trimming the edge, do not cut further outboard than the trim line 'A' (Left hand side shown, right hand side symmetrically opposite) as shown in figure E184865. Do not cut outboard of the last spotweld joining the 2 panels together on each flange. The cut must be more than 5mm away from the last weld.

For attaching a second unit body to the Closed Roof Skeletal (A1GAJ) cabin, fifteen weld nuts are provided, see figure E184865. All fifteen weld nuts must be used. The bolts must not exceed 25mm intrusion into the vehicle cabin structure.

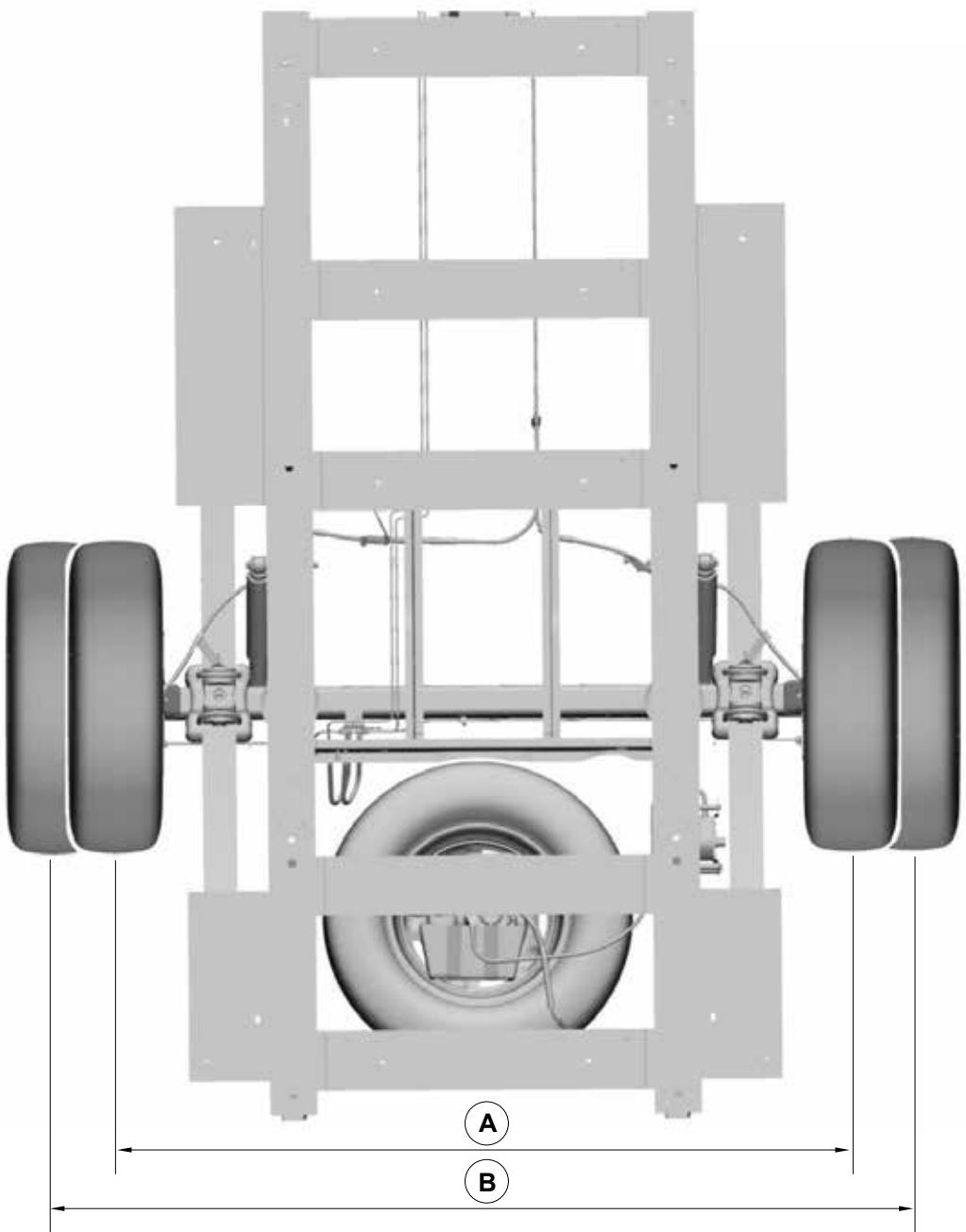
NOTE: If implementing a fully sealed body, a minimum of 150cm² air extraction cross sectional area is required on each side of the vehicle cab. An ideal position for the extractors would be in the back panel of the cab.

If this is not feasible, then extractors should be situated rearward of the B Pillars such that there is a free airflow path equating to at least the minimum extractor effective cross sectional area, both upstream and downstream of each extractor, to maintain windshield defogging performance and door closing efforts. Extraction should not be installed near exhaust components nor areas exposed to potential fuel spillage.

Skeletal Chassis for camper and non camper Rails - No Drill Zones (1)


Item	Wheelbase (mm)			
	L2 - 3300	L3 - 3750	L4 - 3954	L5 - 4522
A	166	166	166	166
B	396	396	396	396
C	596	596	596	596
D	754	754	754	754
E	926	926	926	926
F	1066	1066	1066	1066
G	1356	1356	1356	1356
H	1442	1442	1442	1442
I	1580	1580	1580	1580
J	2020	2020	2020	2020
K	430	430	430	430

Skeletal Chassis for Camper and Non Camper Track Widths



Item	Description
A	Standard Track Width - 1759 mm
B	Wide Track Width - 1980 mm

5.1.11 Front End Integrity for Cooling, Crash, Aerodynamics and Lighting

NOTE: The WLTP calculator can be accessed at <https://www.fordserviceinfo.com/>. You will need to register or login to use it.

For WLTP information:

[Refer to: 1.14 Package and Ergonomics.](#)

[Refer to: 1.8 Vehicle Duty Cycle Guidelines.](#)

Cooling: Continuous air flow through the front end and engine compartment is not to be hindered by adding any additional equipment.

Lighting: Do not alter the lighting system.

Crash: Do not cut, drill or weld any parts that are load path relevant in case of crash. Do not add material in the crash zone. This could affect the crash sensor calibration.

The side airbag system is not permitted if:

- A swivelling device is fitted on the front seats
- Any additional material or structure is attached to the B pillar inner and/or outer area

5.1.12 Tipper Bodies

For tipper conversions single and double Chassis Cab versions can be used. All variants allow single and three way tipping.

It is recommended to have the tipping system operative only when the engine is running. It is also recommended to have the master control switch in the security of the cab. According routing of wires and hydraulic lines please refer to section hydraulic lift.

Ensure that axle plated weights including the front axle minimum are not exceeded.

For tipper sub-frames please refer to the following guidelines:

- Design for full length continuous frame with mountings for motor, pump unit, reservoir, pivot points and ram
- Use all mounting points on the chassis frame to mount sub-frame, see Chassis Cab - Body Attachment figures E167671 and E176772 for fixing strategy
- The rear two sets of chassis frame mounting brackets should have a full torque with 100% grip. The attachment to the remaining forward chassis frame brackets must be precisely located and retained, but allow some relative flexing between the sub-frame and chassis frame. That is clamp control devices such as conical washer stacks or machine springs with self-locking fastenings
- Very stiff sub-frames may damage the chassis frame by preventing its natural flexing, therefore appropriate and captive fail safe compliant mounts should be used. See figures E74696 sub-frame attachment to chassis frame and figure E175999 rigid or torsion stiff sub-frame for chassis cab
- Use two M10 grade 8.8 minimum bolts, washers and self-locking nuts at each solid and compliant chassis frame location
- Sub-frame must extend to the back of the cab and attach to all mounting locations, with the forward end designed to minimise local frame stress, see figures E167671 and E176772 for fixing strategy and figure E74575 sub-frame for low floor or other equipment. However, it is preferable to mount the sub-frame onto the mounting brackets with a clearance to the chassis frame top surface
- Side tipping loads/forces must be resolved by the sub-frame. It is not recommended to strain the chassis frame

To fit a Tipper body on an Extended Frame Chassis, use the following process:

1. Fit the Tipper Subframe to the Chassis
2. Untighten the Rear Chassis Extension Frame from the Chassis
3. Tighten all Tipper Subframe bolts on the Chassis and Chassis Extension
4. Tighten the Extension Frame to the chassis

This will realign the Chassis Extension with the Tipper Frame and the Chassis, and will avoid Chassis preload.

5.1.13 Dropside Bodies



WARNING: On E-Transit BEV, where a dropside body is fitted to a vehicle with the charge port located behind the rear wheel: to avoid clash, parts breakage or serious injury, DO NOT open the side float and tipper side panels while the vehicle is being charged. Disconnect the Charge Port first, close the Charge Port door, then open the side panels. This warning MUST be communicated to the end user in the Convertor's user documentation and by the application of warning decals.

5.1.14 Tank and Dry Bulk Carriers

Due to the high rigidity of tanks it is necessary to isolate the tank and its sub-frame from the chassis frame allowing the chassis frame to naturally flex. Please refer to the following guidelines:

- Mount tank to full length of sub-frame
- Use all mounting points on the chassis frame to mount sub-frame, see Chassis Cab - Body Attachment figures E167671 and E176772 for fixing strategy
- Brackets should have solid full bolts torque with 100% grip
- The remaining forward location mounts must be compliant to allow relative chassis frame to sub-frame deflections
- Sub-frame must extend to the back of the cab and not contact chassis frame at forward end under worst case deflection
- Use appropriate and captive fail safe compliant mounts, please refer to figures E74696 Sub-frame attachment to Chassis frame and figure E175999 Rigid or Torsion Stiff sub-frame for Chassis Cab
- Use two M10 grade 8.8 minimum bolts, washers and self lock nuts per chassis frame mount bracket at each solid and compliant location

5.2 Hydraulic Lifting Equipment

NOTE: For further information please contact your National Sales Company representative or local Ford dealer. If they are unable to help you then please contact FPSV Technical Support at FPSVHelp@ford.com

5.2.1 General Information

WARNINGS:

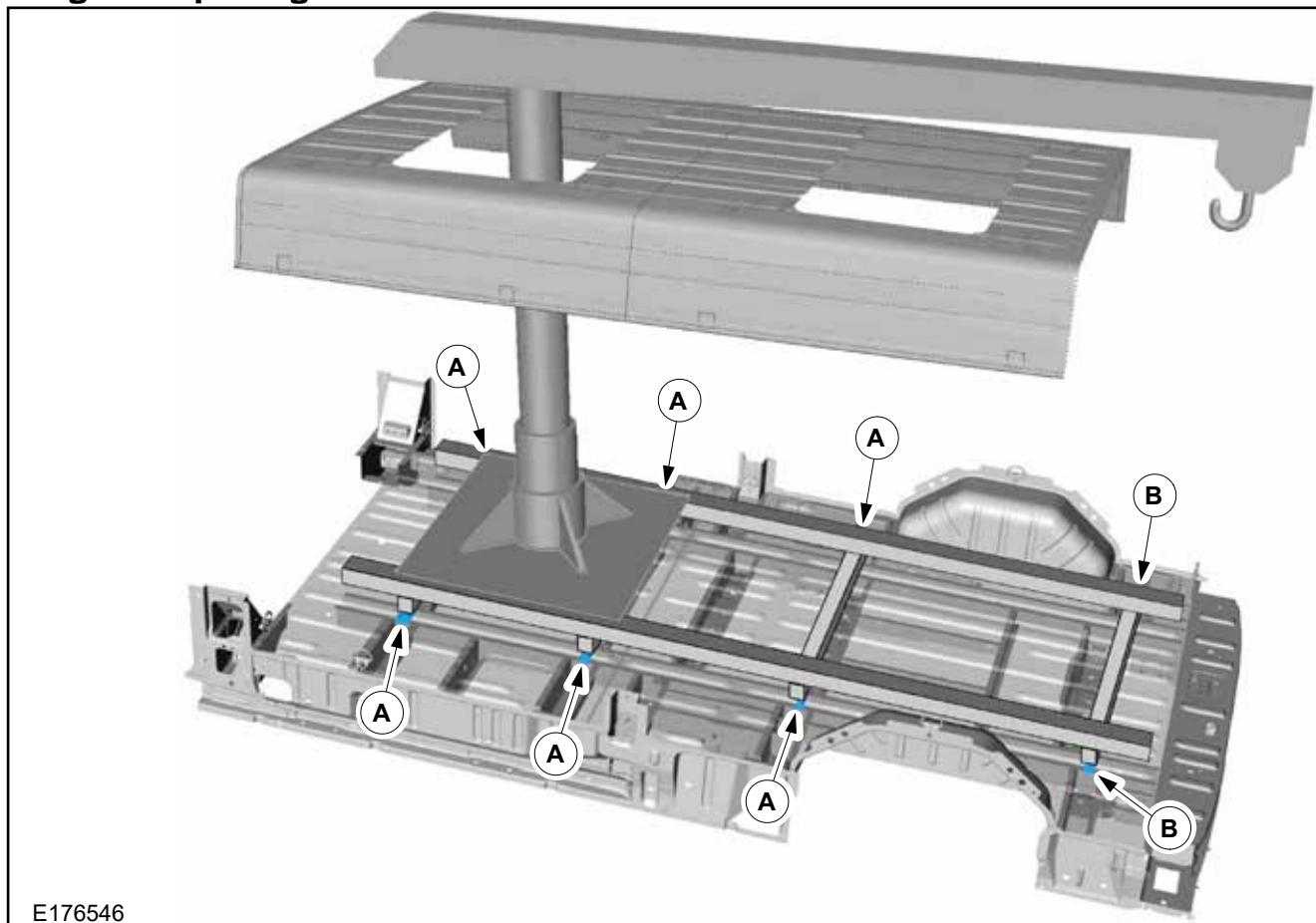
-  **Do not cut away any structural member.**
-  **Equipped vehicles must be designed to be stable under 'worst case' operating conditions with support legs extended, if fitted.**

CAUTIONS:

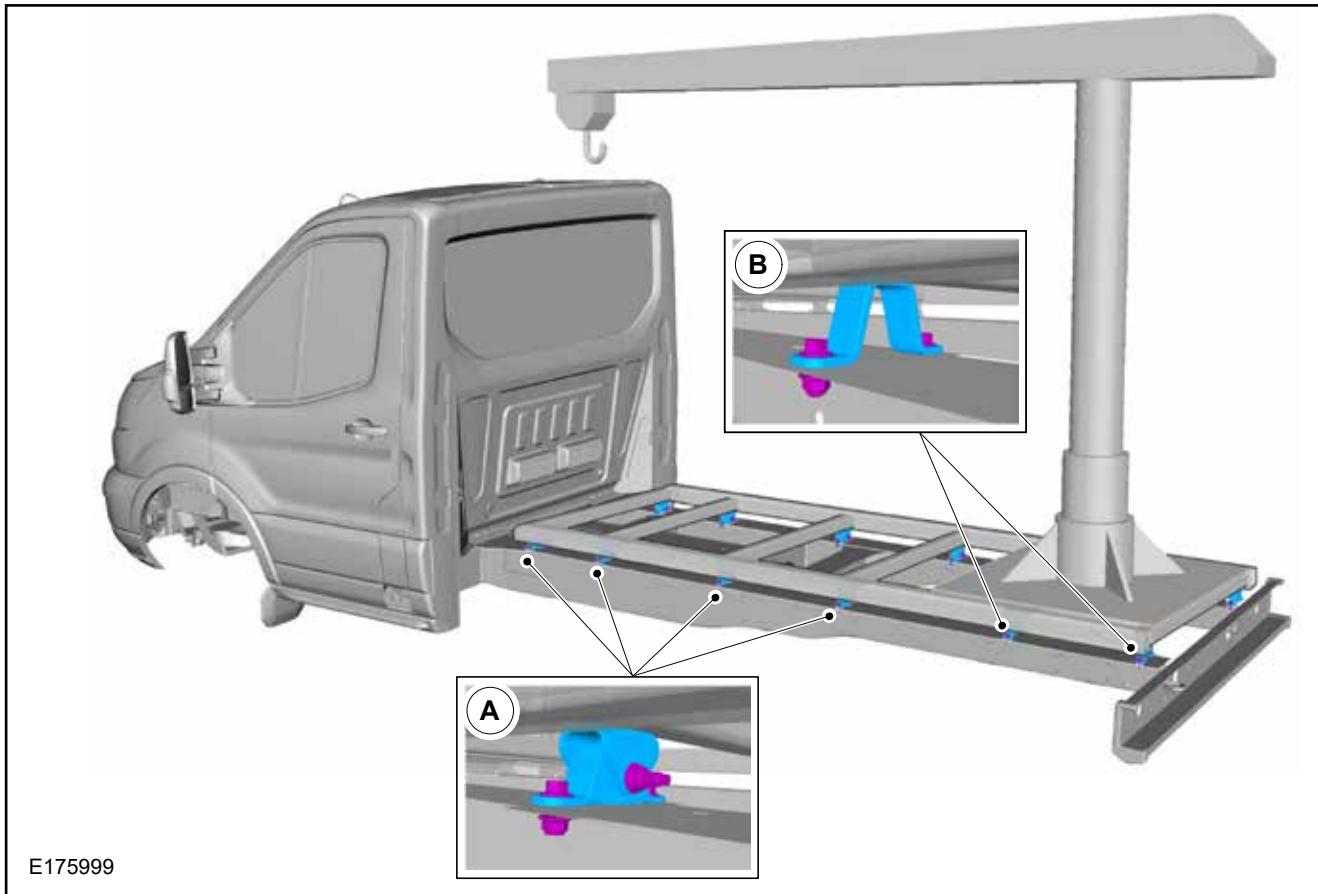
-  **Safety devices must ensure the legs are deployed when operating the lifting equipment.**
-  **Safety devices must ensure the legs are stowed and locked away prior to engaging vehicle drive.**

NOTE: It is the Convertor's responsibility to fix with adequate reinforcements from below. For additional information: [Refer to: 5.15 Frame and Body Mounting](#)

Design Principle - Rigid or Torsion Stiff Subframe for Van

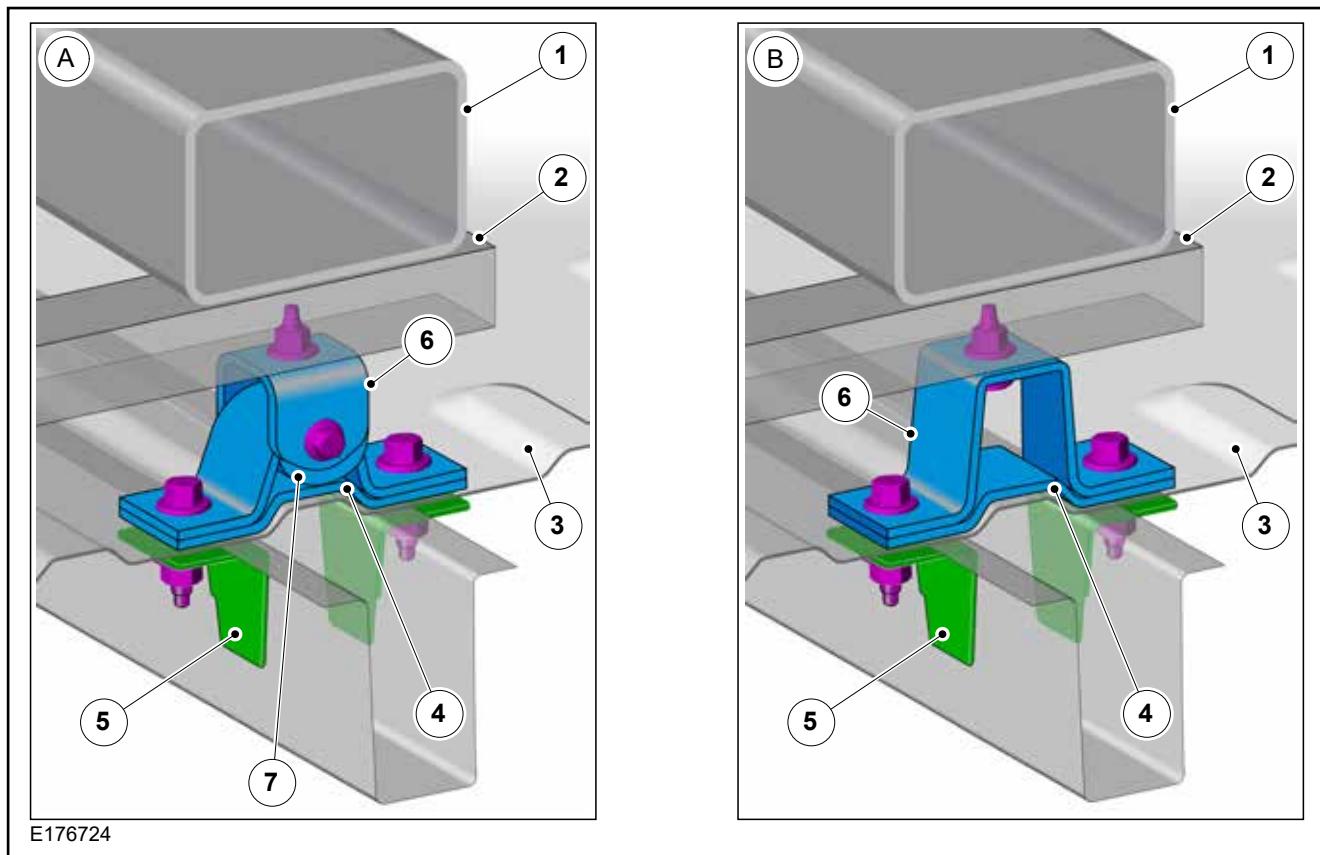


Item	Description
A	Compliant Mount - see 'A' in figure E176724
B	Fixed Mount - see 'B' in figure E176724

Design Principle - Rigid or Torsion Stiff Subframe for Chassis Cab

Item	Description
A	Compliant Mount
B	Fixed Mount

Subframe Mounted on Floor



Item	Description
A	Compliant Mount
B	Fixed Mount
1	Subframe Longitudinal
2	Subframe Outriggers
3	Floor of Vehicle
4	Fix to floor using adequate reinforcements
5	Reinforcement Bracket - Use 2x per attachment location, one each side of the rail
6	Reinforcement Bracket to Sub-frame
7	Captive Compliant Bush

It is recommended to design subframes in the way that there is no adverse strain on the vehicle structure. Use compliant and fixed mounts to attach to the vehicle body. For design principle refer to E176546.

For Van, Bus and Kombi:

- It is recommended to fix every mount with M8 bolt grade 8.8 minimum
- It is not recommended to engineer through the floor fixings to clamp around side members.

[Refer to: 5.15 Frame and Body Mounting](#)

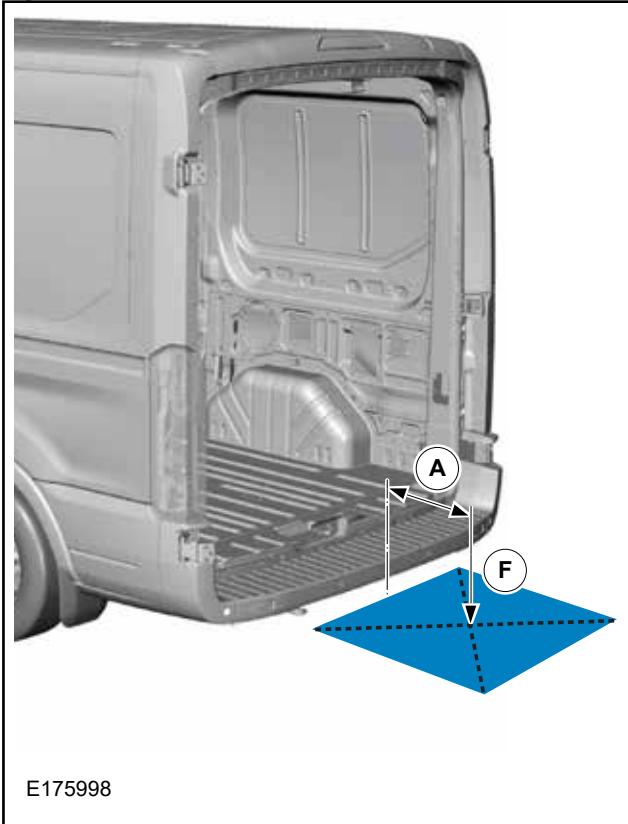
- Please see figure E176546 which show the principle of adequate fixings

- Very stiff sub-frames should not be rigidly mounted to the floor, please refer to figure E176724 for examples of a compliant mount. Compliant bushes should allow up to ±12mm movement at a rate of 100kg per 1.0mm deflection with only the rear pair of mounts being fixed
- Support legs, if required, must be fitted directly to the sub-frame
- Support legs must be designed to prevent any adverse strain on the vehicle structure when operating equipment

For Chassis Cabs:

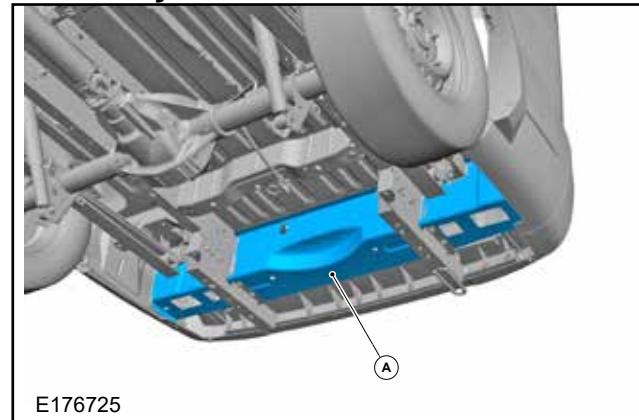
- Subframe ends must be relieved at forward end to minimise local contact stress concentrations, see figure E176724. [Refer to: 5.15 Frame and Body Mounting.](#) (it is recommended to mount the longitudinal brackets with a clearance to the chassis frame top surface.)
- Stiff sub-frames, for example closed section longitudinal rigidly connected with similar section cross members, may damage the chassis frame by preventing its natural flexing. Therefore, appropriate compliant mounts should be used. Please refer to figure E176546
- Each set of brackets must use 2x 10 bolt grade 8.8 minimum
- For safety device on outriggers/legs please refer to Van, Bus and Kombi

Hydraulic Tail Lift



Item	Description
A	600mm from rear of vehicle, Van, Bus, Kombi and Chassis Cab
F	Tail Lift Payload - 600 kg Van, Bus, Kombi / 750 kg Chassis Cab

Underbody Cross member Structure



For Hydraulic under-slung tail lifts on Transit Van, Bus and Kombi vehicles it is recommended to design and/or locate the reinforcing plates in a way that load can be routed into adjacent reinforced underbody cross member structure see (A) in figure E176725.

For Chassis Cab and Skeletal Chassis with tail lift design it is recommended to use a unique body sub-frame for fixing to Chassis Cab structure. For connection between subframe and Chassis Cab body structure, see figure E176724.

Due to the incomplete nature of the Skeletal Chassis Cab, please also refer to [5.1.8 Skeletal Chassis for Camper and Non Camper](#) for structural integrity of the additional body.

For tail lift electrical connections use the Customer Connection Points,

[Refer to: 4.24 Electrical Connectors and Connections](#)

Greater off-sets and/or loads require additional stabilising equipment such as outriggers or ground jacks.

It is the Vehicle Convertor's responsibility to fit a decal to the converted vehicle stating that the equipment must not be used without outriggers/ground jacks in operating position. It is also the Vehicle Convertor's responsibility to guarantee safe functioning of the equipment.

For hydraulic tail lifts as used for general loading or more specialised for wheelchair lifts refer to E176546.

5.3 Racking Systems

5.3.1 Racking Systems

For attaching a racking system, it is recommended to use the marked areas shown in figure E176000.

NOTE: Upper fixing locations are not structural and take a 30 kg maximum load only.

- Frames should be rigid, self-supporting and bolted through the floor, use reinforcements on the underfloor
- It is not recommended to drill through the floor in combination with plastic load floor liners
- For alternatively fixing through the floor to the side members refer to Frame and Body Mounting section of this manual, Figure E176203 Frame Drilling and Tube Reinforcing.

[Refer to: 5.15 Frame and Body Mounting](#)

- Load compartment tie downs can also be used for additional fixing locations.

[Refer to: 5.4 Loadspace](#)

- Ensure proper sealing against ingress of water, salt, dust, after cutting or drilling the body. Use Ford approved sealing and finishing materials, and underbody corrosion protection
- To minimise stress in body side upper area, additional cross brace roof bows are to be used
- If linings are planned for the inside of the load area, all racking through bolts must be designed to be accessible through the lining to the body structure with spreader plate
- No load bearing fixing to the lining only
- For increased crash performance the racking system should be designed with diagonal reinforcements
- Vehicle should be equipped with Ford standard option bulkhead to give best protection to driver and front passengers
- Preferably, there should be a rack each side to balance the vehicle load

For designing glass carrying rack on body side outer, construct internal structure and bolt through the body side to the internal structure, using the recommended fixing locations, see figures E176000 and E176512, or load compartment tie downs.

[Refer to: 5.4 Loadspace](#)

For additional information

[Refer to: 5.14 Corrosion Prevention](#)

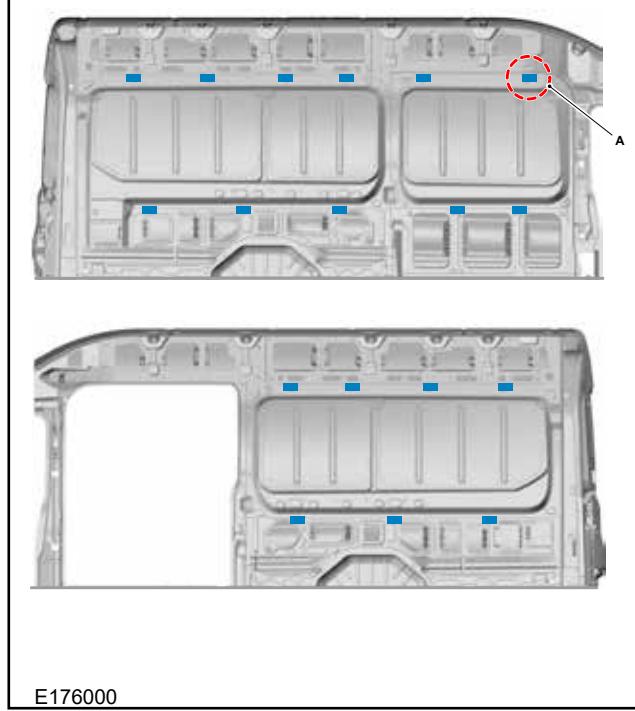
For additional information on Precautionary/No Drill Zones

[Refer to: 4.2 Wiring Installation and Routing Guides](#)

[Refer to: 5.1 Body](#)

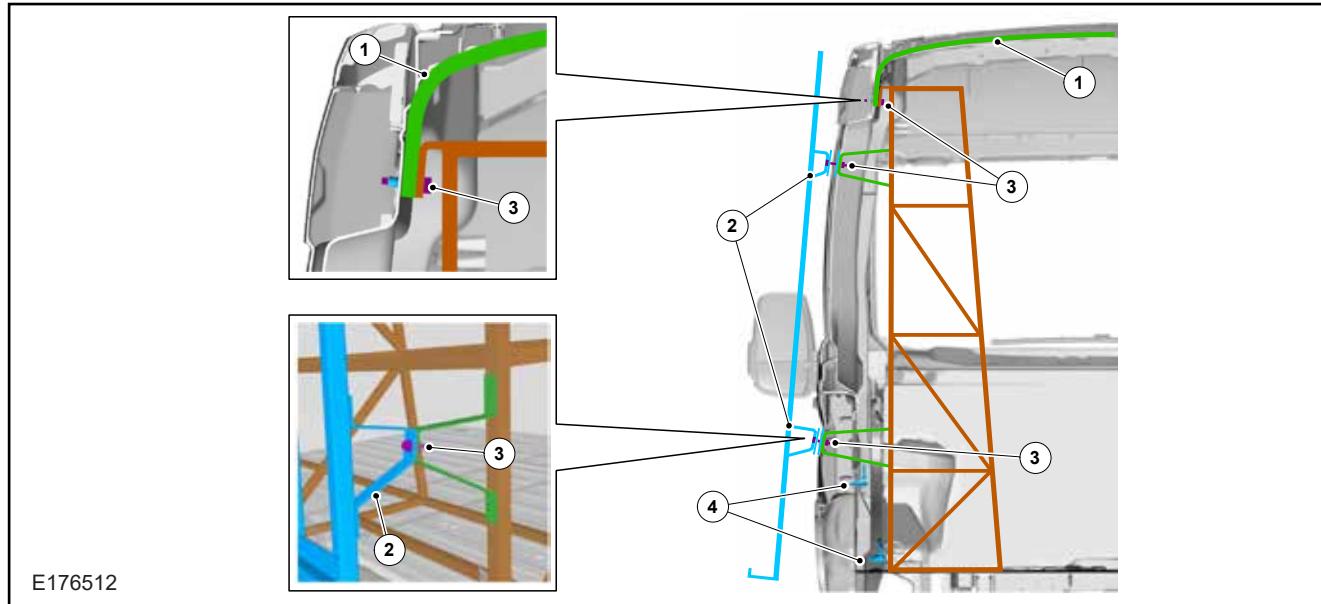
[Refer to: 5.6 Body Closures](#)

Recommended Fixing Locations



Item	Description
A	Low roof vehicles do not have this fixing location.

Glass Racking on Outside of Van



Glass Racking on Outside of Van - Through Fixed to Internal Strong Structure (Recommended Minimum)

Glass Racking on Outside of Van

For designing glass carrying rack on bodyside outer, the following unique requirements are recommended:

- Construct the internal structure and bolt through the body side to the external structure, see figure E176512
- Internal structures should be rigid, self-supporting

and bolted through the floor. Use reinforcements on the underfloor

- Avoid the no-drill zones when selecting fixing locations.
[Refer to: 4.2 Wiring Installation and Routing Guides](#)
- It is recommended to balance the vehicle load.
[Refer to: 1.16 Load Distribution](#)
- Distribute the force equal to the fixed structure

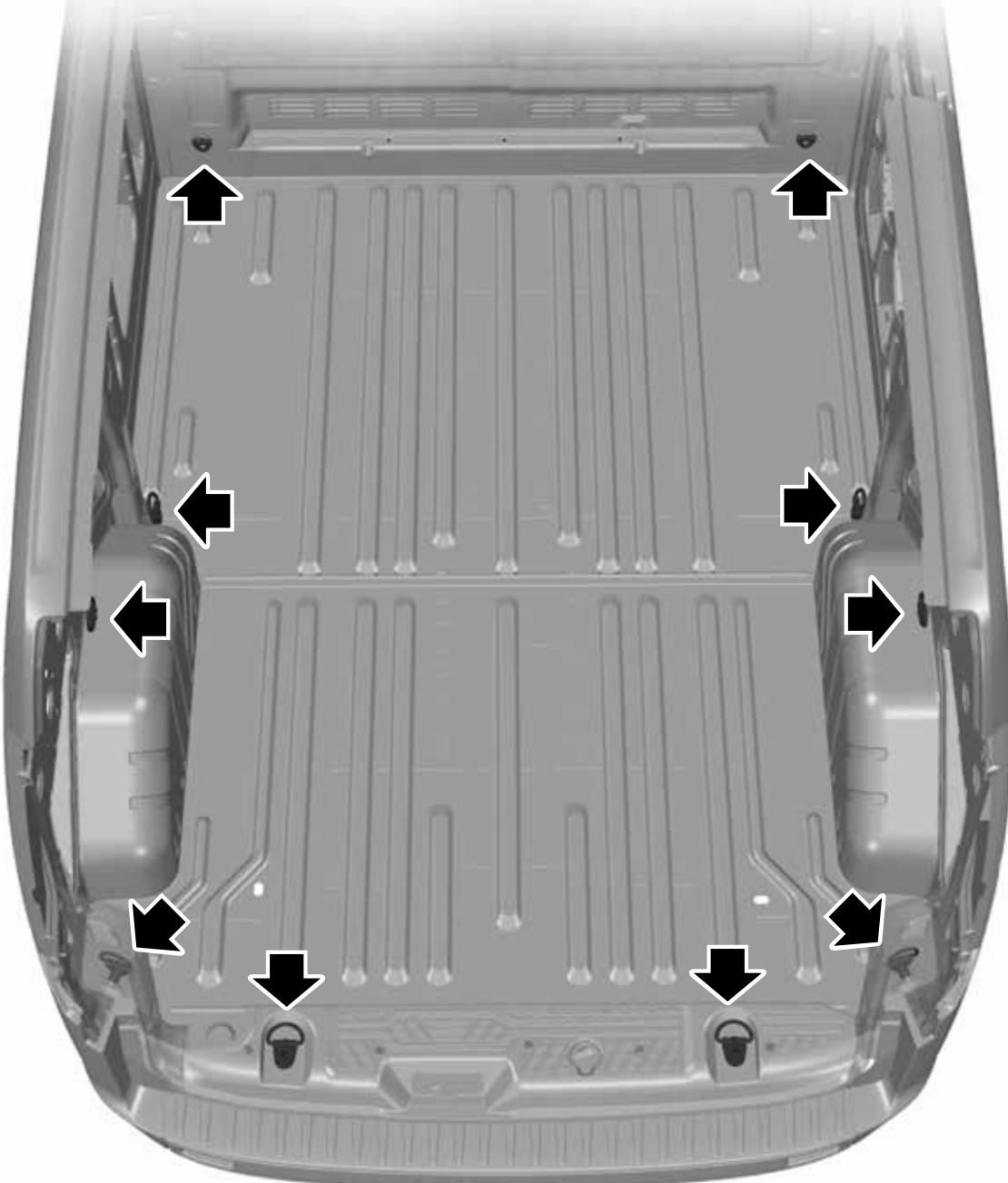
5.4 Loadspace

5.4.1 Load Compartment Tie Downs

All vehicles are fitted with load compartment tie downs, these are all 'D' rings as shown in E146219. Not all vehicles will have all locations shown, it

will depend on the base vehicle. For additional information refer to the Owner's Manual and for additional fixing locations

[Refer to: 5.3 Racking Systems](#)



E146219

5.5 Internal Partitions

5.5.1 Partitions (Bulkhead) - Driver and Front Passenger(s) Protection on Van, Bus

⚠ WARNING: Do not obstruct any of bulkhead vents.

⚠ CAUTION: Bulkheads serve an important function and are legally required in some territories.

It is the Vehicle Convertor's responsibility to ensure local current legislation, governing bulkheads and protective window grilles, is met. It is also the Convertor's responsibility to ensure legal load constraint requirements if using a non Ford standard bulkhead.

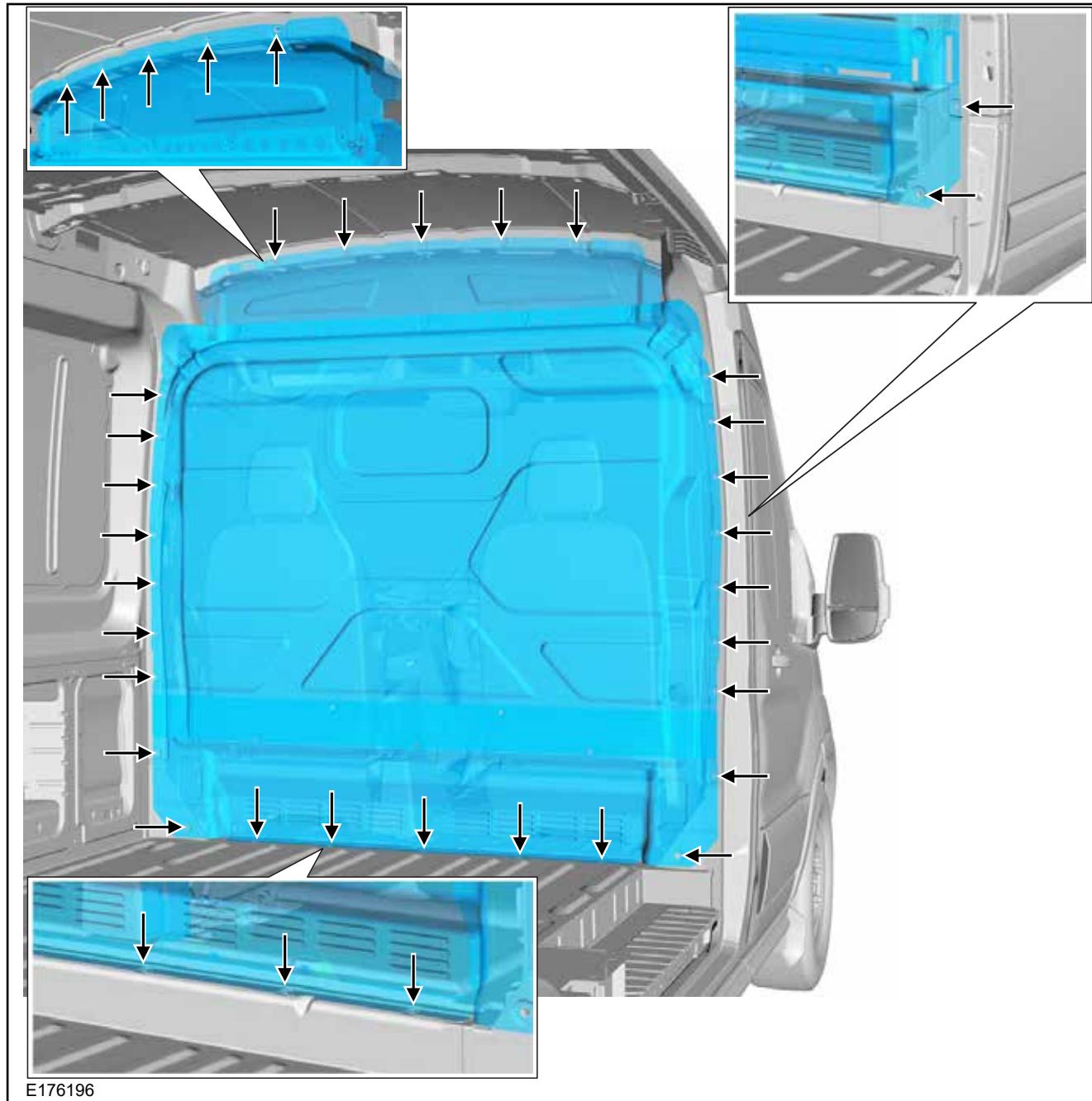
Standard Ford bulkheads do have a clearance between bulkhead and body structure to allow natural body flexing and an air circulation from the cab to the rear load space for ventilation control.

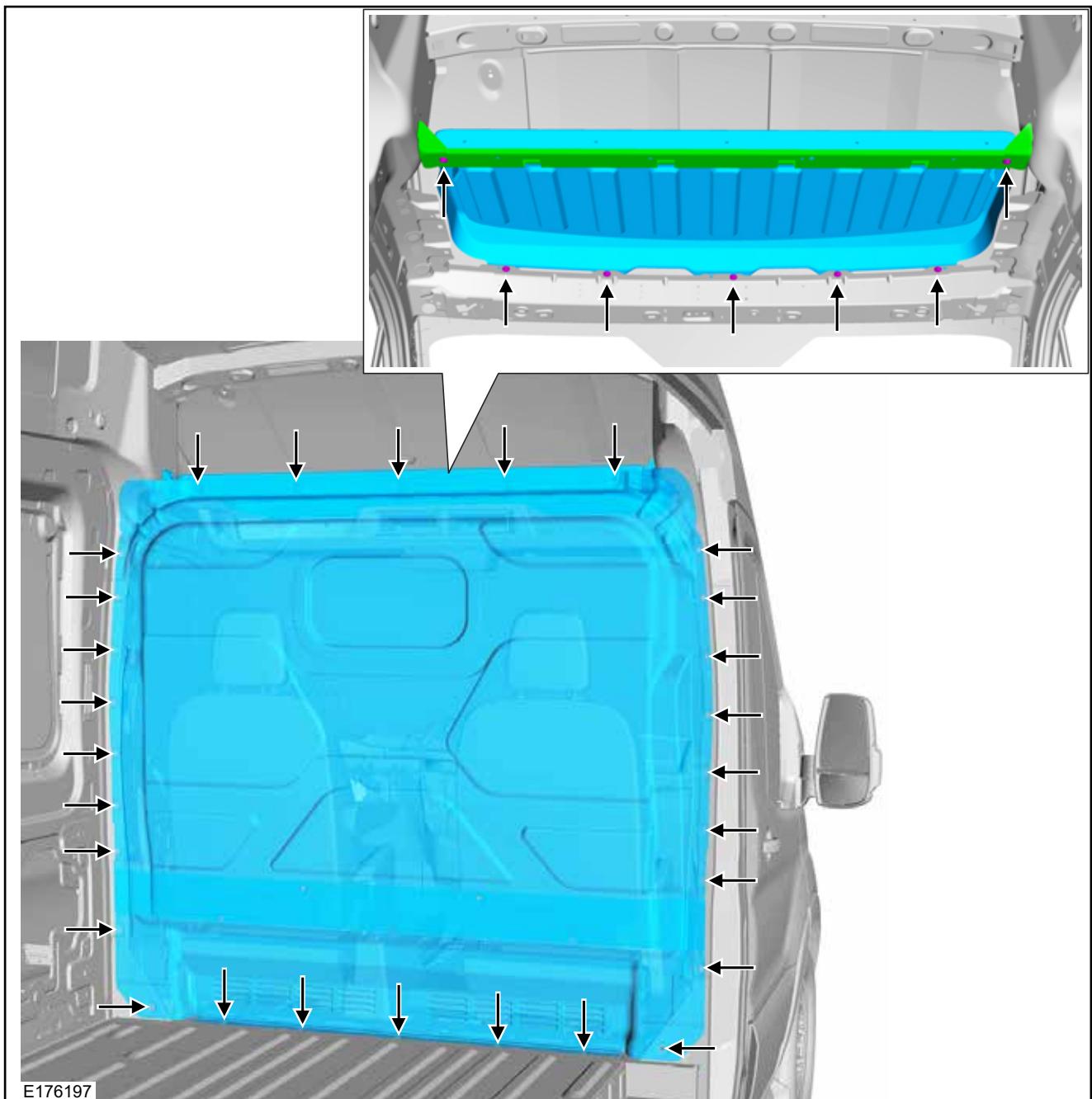
Air circulation and body flexing must also be given consideration when engineering an alternative bulkhead. It is not recommended to restrict driver's or passenger's seat adjustment travel.

The following figure shows the standard bulkhead fixing locations on 'B' pillar. These are standard weld nuts. The standard range of Ford bulkheads can be retro-fitted at these points.

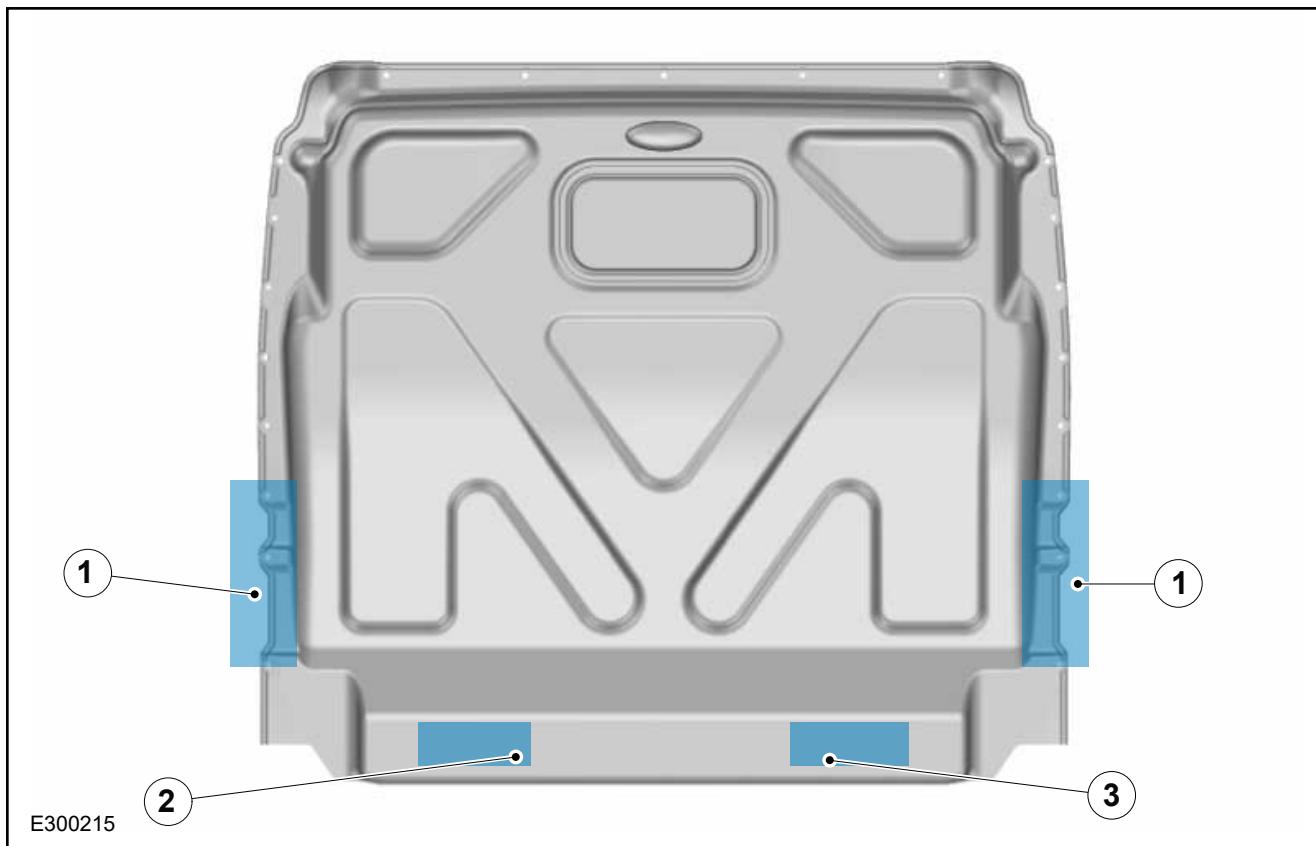
In some territories it is a legal requirement for bulkhead fixings to be tamper proof. For further information check with your local Ford dealer.

Medium Roof Bulkhead Fixing Holes



High Roof Bulkhead Fixing Holes

5.5.2 Polymer Bulkhead



Polymer Bulkhead Vents

Item	Glazing	Side Vents	Under Passenger Seat Vent
1	Unglazed/Glazed	All Vehicles	-
2	Unglazed/Glazed	All Vehicles	
3	Unglazed/Glazed	All Vehicles	

Fixing to Polymer Bulkhead

! **WARNING: Do not obstruct any of bulkhead vents.**

! **CAUTION: It is not recommended cutting into the polymer bulkhead as this could affect the strength and performance.**

NOTE: Prior to attaching any significant load to the polymer bulkhead please check with FPSVHelp@ford.com

NOTE: When fitting anything to the polymer bulkhead the load should be evenly distributed to balance the vehicle load and supported with appropriate fixing points.

If fitting auxiliary brackets to a polymer bulkhead it is recommended to use M5/M6 rivets with appropriate drilled hole size for M5/M6 rivets.

The head of the fixing used should be larger than the drilled hole to disperse the load and to prevent pull through. It is recommended to use a 30 mm diameter washer or collar.

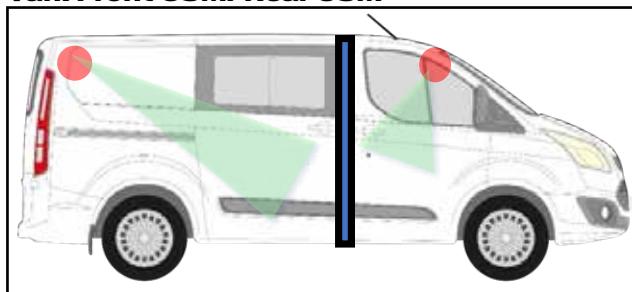
Any rivet or bolt that is visible in the cab area should be finished or capped.

5.5.3 Partitions: Thatcham Alarm

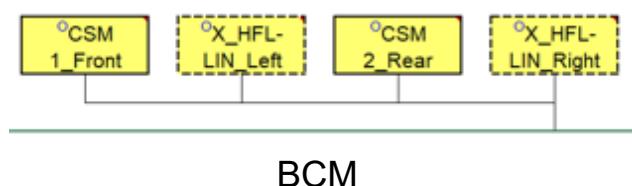
CAUTIONS:

- !** The Thatcham alarm in Van variants features two CSMs (motion sensors), one primary CSM in the front and one secondary CSM in the rear. The CSMs must not be moved from the centreline of the vehicle.
- !** The mounting angle of the CSMs must not be altered during the conversion.
- !** Metal internal sides or floors should be avoided due to higher risk of false alarms.
- !** Clear lines of sight must be maintained between the CSMs.
- !** Thatcham accreditation is only valid for a base vehicle. If the vehicle is converted, re-accreditation may be required from Thatcham. The volumetric alarm will still be operational but not guaranteed to meet Thatcham standards. It will be the responsibility of the convertor/up-fitter to re-validate the fully converted vehicle with Thatcham directly.

Van: Front CSM/Rear CSM



The front and rear CSMs are connected by a common LIN line. The front CSM will be configured by the BCM. Rear CSM flash memory has its own calibrations to be selectable by a call ID on BCM.



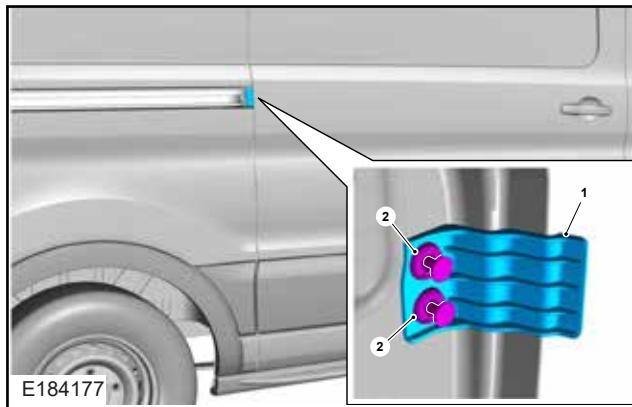
There are 2 main locations for the CSM to cover the front and rear with 2 different CSM modules (one module for front side and one module for rear side) with unique brackets. There are 4 different calibrations for both front and rear CSMs

5.6 Body Closures

NOTE: For further information please contact your National Sales Company representative, or local Ford dealer. If they are unable to help you then please contact FPSV Technical Support at FPSVHelp@ford.com

5.6.1 Sliding Door Gap Reduction on M1 Vehicles

! **CAUTION:** When converting an N1/N2 or M2 vehicle into an M1 vehicle, left and right hand spacer brackets or an equivalent designed part must be retrofitted to the sliding side load doors.



Item	Description
1	Spacer Bracket: Right Hand Side - BK31-A214A46-A* Left Hand Side - BK31-A214A47-A*
2	2 X Clip and Fastener W711712

5.6.2 Security, Anti-Theft and Locking System

! **CAUTION:** To avoid locking system security complications, it is recommended to discuss with your local Ford dealer prior to conversions taking place.

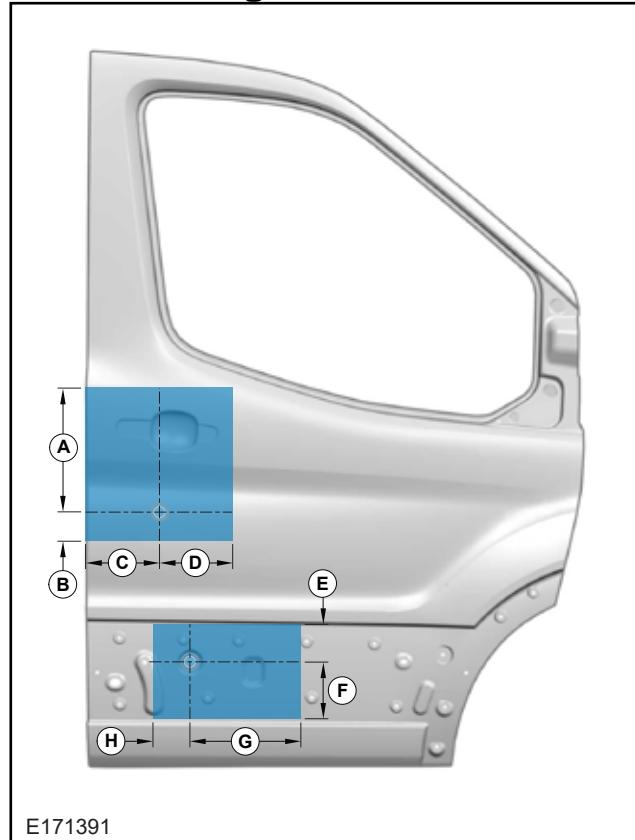
NOTE: It is not recommended to alter the locking system or damage the security shielding around the lock and latch.

When removing and reapplying door seals, take care to fit correctly using the same seals, as this is critical to door closing efforts. Any modification to the sealing flanges or surfaces will require consultation with your local Ford dealer. This may also include air extraction/venting adjustments to assist door close efforts if significant changes to closures are required.

The Body Control Module is designed to work specifically with the Ford Transit lock and latch mechanisms and therefore drives latches to lock and unlock for specific time periods. Additional power locking functionality should be based around the use of additional Ford Transit latch mechanisms. Additional latches can be driven via relays connected in parallel with existing latches.

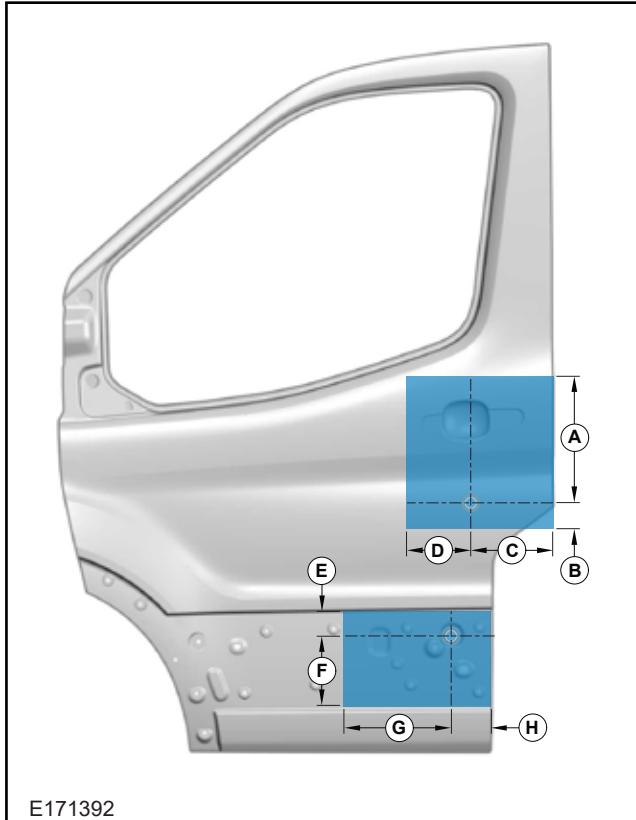
The following figures outline the areas in which it is not advisable to drill.

No Drill Zone - Right Hand Side Door



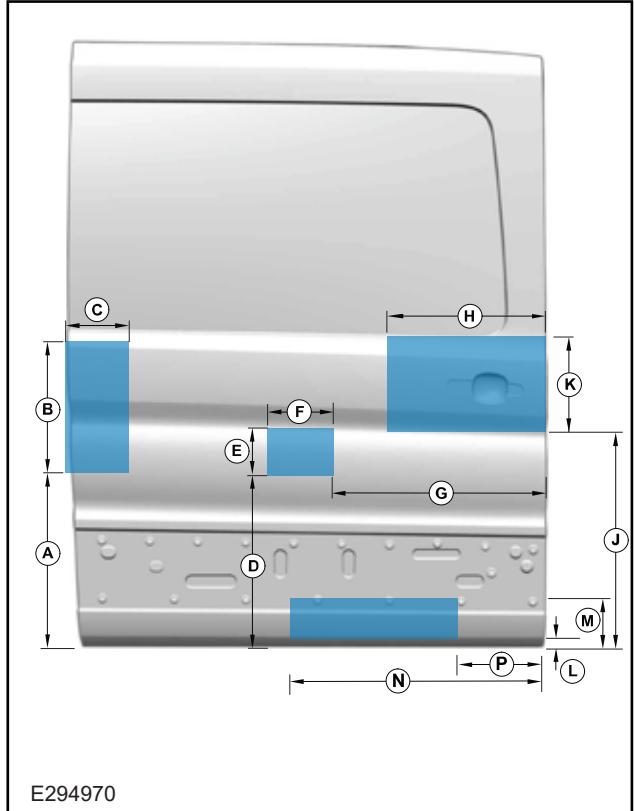
E171391

Item	Description
A	300 mm
B	55 mm on RHD vehicles / 35mm on LHD vehicles
C	190 mm
D	150 mm
E	100 mm
F	140 mm
G	200 mm
H	70 mm

No Drill Zone - Left Hand Side Door

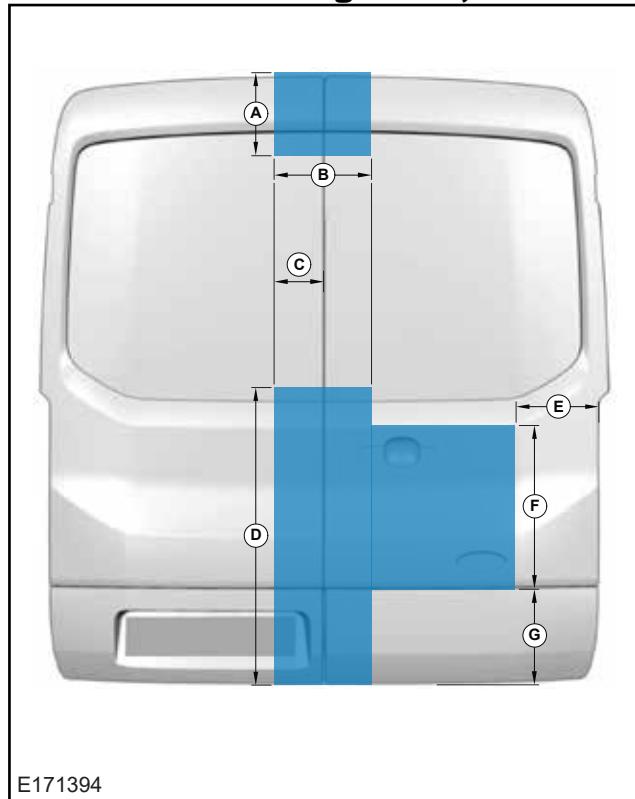
E171392

Item	Description
A	300 mm
B	35 mm on RHD vehicles / 55 mm on LHD vehicles
C	190 mm
D	150 mm
E	60 mm
F	140 mm
G	200 mm
H	90 mm

No Drill Zone - Side Sliding Doors (right side door shown, left hand door symmetrically opposite)

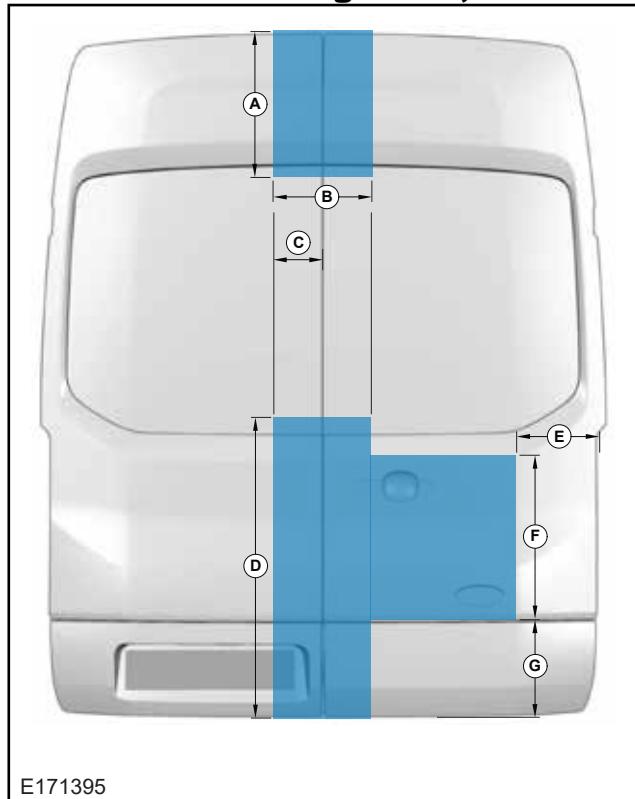
E294970

Item	Description
A	550 mm
B	450 mm
C	150 mm
D	550 mm
E	150 mm
F	200 mm
G	650 mm
H	450 mm
J	770 mm
K	350 mm
L	50 mm
M	200 mm
N	770 mm
P	270 mm

No Drill Zone - Rear Cargo Doors, H2

E171394

Item	Description
A	320 mm
B	340 mm
C	170 mm
D	920 mm
E	200 mm
F	520 mm
G	300 mm

No Drill Zone - Rear Cargo Doors, H3

E171395

Item	Description
A	550 mm
B	340 mm
C	170 mm
D	920 mm
E	200 mm
F	520 mm
G	300 mm

5.7 Interior Trim

NOTE: For further information please contact your National Sales Company representative, or local Ford dealer. If they are unable to help you then please contact FPSV Technical Support at FPSVHelp@ford.com

5.7.1 Load Compartment Interior Lining

Do not damage the lock, hinge, latch or check arm system (electrical cables, release system) when applying interior lining.

Be careful not to damage the weather shield (water shield covering inner door access hole) when removing or applying interior door trim.

WARNINGS:

 **Plan fixing points for other fitments such as racking, to ensure through bolting can be achieved. Fixing to the lining material may be inadequate for normal safe operation of the vehicle.**

 **Varnish or paint wooden interior cargo area panels if exposed to high humidity conditions.**

The additional weight of the linings on doors may require additional reinforcements to the door and pillar at the hinge and check mechanism.

5.7.2 Plywood Lining/Cladding

 **CAUTION: Do not drill into the vehicle before checking the Precautionary/No Drill Zones and electrical wire routing.**

Refer to: [4.2 Wiring Installation and Routing Guides](#)

Refer to: [5.6 Body Closures](#)

Refer to: [5.1 Body](#)

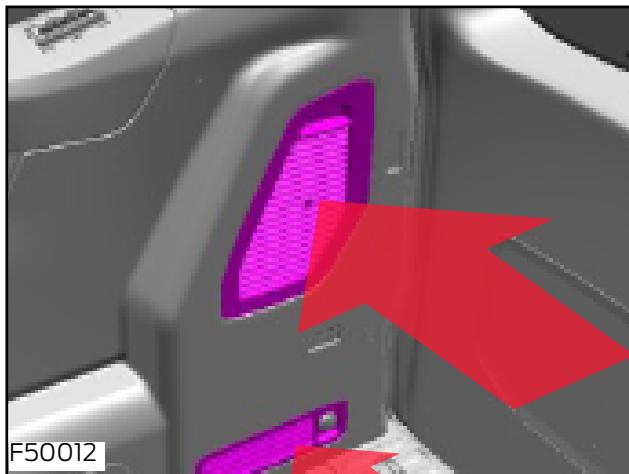
- Panels should be precision cut by machine, not by hand jigsaw, to reduce rough edges and splinters
- Panels should be pre-drilled
- Do not drill through floor panels, use existing load lashing points when securing the panels
- It is recommended, when fitting a plywood floor that it is joint free
- Use aluminium floor trims
- Plywood should be water resistant (WBP, water and boil proof)
- It is recommended to use 9 mm thickness for floors and 6mm thickness for side and door lining

5.7.3 Body Side Vents

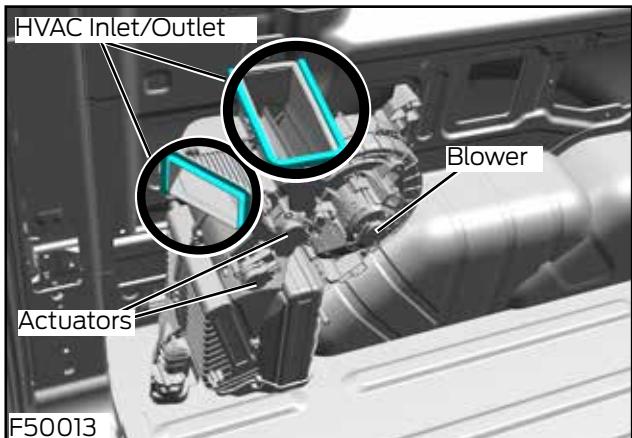
 **WARNING: Movement of air within the vehicle exits internally through holes in the D-pillar/Body side panel then through vents located in the lower part of the body side outer of all Vehicles. These cannot be covered or inhibited in any way.**

Adequate air flow of 201cm² MINIMUM must be allowed collectively through the vents/holes shown in Figure F50012 as an example:

Ensure sufficient air openings for Rear HVAC inlet and outlets shown in Figure F50013. Ensure sufficient clearances to avoid any damage to blower and actuators.



Rear HVAC Air Openings

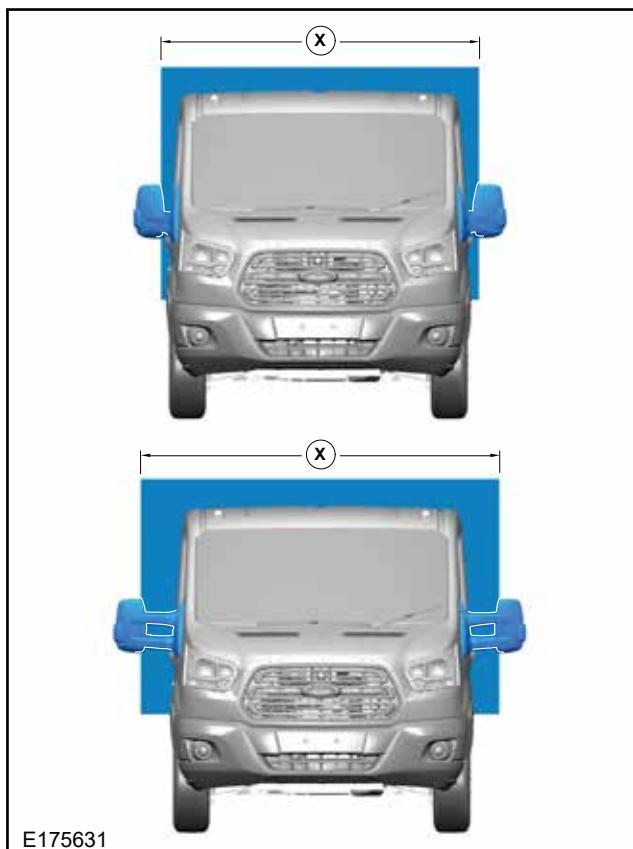


5.8 Rear View Mirrors

5.8.1 Door Mirrors

Short Arm Mirrors are specified on all versions and allow vehicle or trailer maximum widths of up to 2.2m.

Long Arm Mirrors are available as an option on Chassis Cab and Motorhome Chassis variants and covers vehicles or trailer maximum widths of up to 2.438m, in accordance with the regulation for Indirect Vision ECE R46.



5.9 Seats

NOTE: When reassembling the seat and the seat belt, use specified bolts and ensure to apply the specified torque. For torque specifications, please contact your National Sales Company representative, or local Ford dealer. If they are unable to help you then please contact FPSV Technical Support at FPSVHelp@ford.com

NOTE: On E-Transit BEV, If the passenger seat is not fitted (passenger seat delete option) or removed, the standard charger unit cord storage location is lost and the Convertor must provide an alternative storage feature for the cord

5.9.1 Van

 **CAUTION: Do not install seats in the rear cargo area of a van.**

5.9.2 Windowed Van

The body and floor of a windowed van are not equipped with the appropriate reinforcements required for Original Equipment Manufacturers (OEM) rear seats and seat belt systems. Do not install original rear seats or rear seat belts.

For installation of non OEM rear seats, the rear seats and seat belt systems need to comply with the relevant legal requirements and ECE directives or ADR 3,4,5 or applicable local legislation.

[Refer to: 3.7 Exhaust System](#) Vehicle Exhaust Systems - Vans with Bulkheads.

5.9.3 Heated Seats

 **WARNING: The electrical feed for the original heated Ford seat must not be used for other purposes, e.g. other electrical consumers.**

It is not advisable to retrofit heated seats due to potential airbag operation or malfunction (incorrect configuration).

5.9.4 Rear Seat Fixing Positions

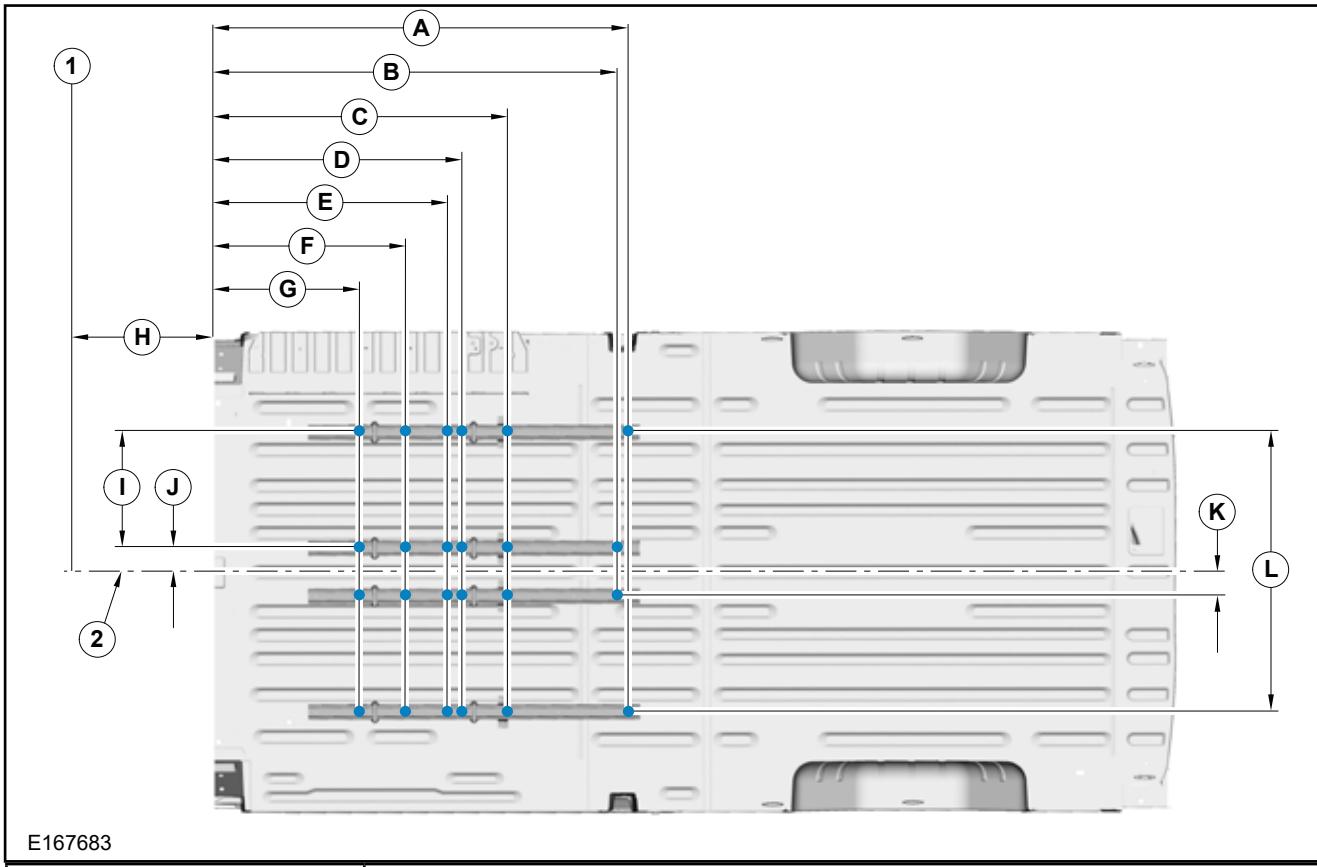
Figure E167683 shows the second and third row seat fixing positions in the floor. These positions are independent of the wheelbase. The fixings are always present but access to the fixing is dependent on floorpan. Access holes in the floorpan may be required to gain access to the fixing.

5.9.5 Fabricless Front Swivel Seats

It is possible to order Camper Donors with fabricless swivel seats to allow a camper convertor trim them with a different fabric to match the remainder of their upfit

NOTE: The camper fabric covering must be the same construction and stitching pattern as the standard Ford seats . The SBM (Seat Belt Minder) pad in the base of the seat must only have one layer of fabric that extends across the whole SBM to ensure the SBM functionality. Do NOT stitch the fabric over the top of the SBM sensor..

Rear Seat Fixing Positions



E167683

Item	Rear Seat Fixing Location (mm)
1	Front Axle
2	Centre line of vehicle
A	1630
B	1504
C	1060
D	895
E	845
F	670
G	520
H	1225
I	425
J	88
K	88
L	1027

5.10 Glass, Frames and Mechanisms

NOTE: For further information please contact your National Sales Company representative, or local Ford dealer. If they are unable to help you then please contact FPSV Technical Support at FPSVHelp@ford.com

5.10.1 Heated Windscreen and Heated Rear Window

WARNING: The base system should not be tampered with (controlled by body control module and multiplex architecture) and no feeds taken from the associated wiring or controller.

These options are not suitable for aftermarket or Vehicle Convertor fit.

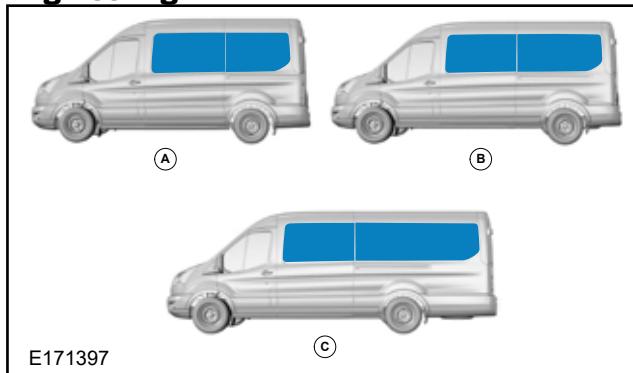
5.10.2 Rear and Side Windows

For windows, it is recommended to specify the base vehicle as a Kombi or Bus body - however, when converting a van, the following should be adhered to:

- Cut the outer panel of the body side and door to within 1mm of the inner panel flange
- Do not cut across panel joints or pillars
- Use approved glass for installation according to legal requirements
- After cutting the outer panel, join the inner panel and the outer panel robustly together.

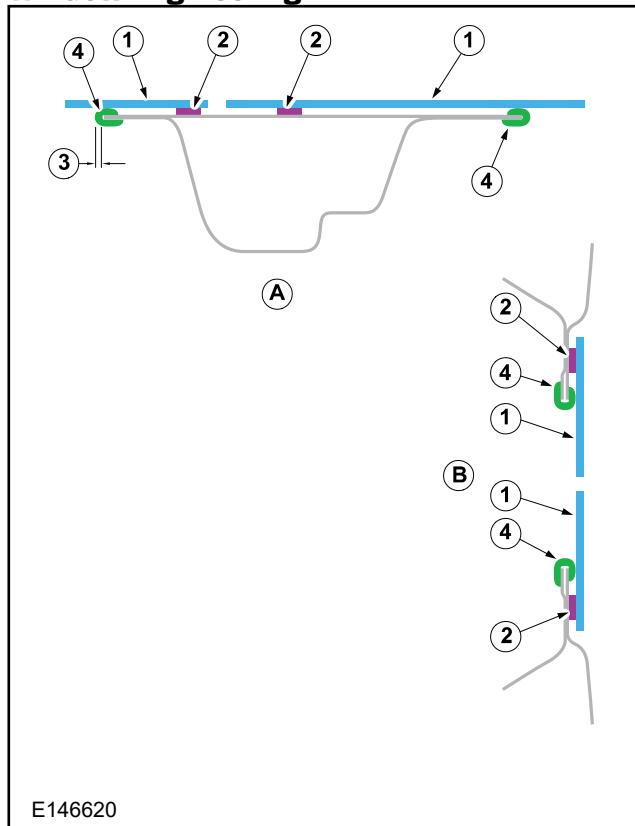
WARNING: For rear seat installation
[Refer to: 5.9 Seats](#)

Typical Van Body Side view for Window Engineering



For vehicle wheelbase and Roof height
[Refer to: 1.14 Package and Ergonomics](#)

Section through Typical Van Body Side for Window Engineering



Item	Description
A	Horizontal Section Through C Pillar
B	Vertical Section Through Side Window (Non Side Load Door)
1	Glass
2	Adhesive
3	Cut outer panel flange flush with inner panel flange edge all round within 0 and 1.5mm
4	Window trim strip

5.11 Airbag Supplemental Restraint System (SRS)

5.11.1 Airbags Deployment Zones

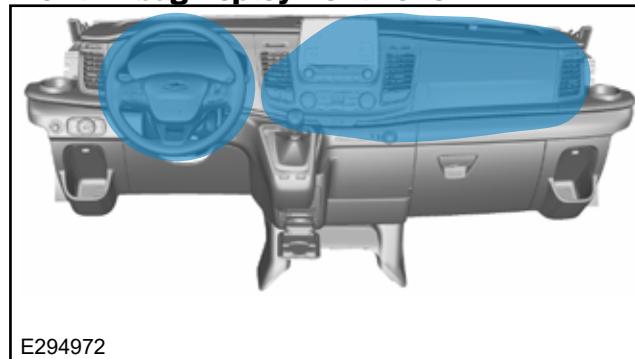
Front Airbag Deployment Zones

WARNINGS:

- ! **Do not place accessories in the deployment zone of the driver and passenger airbags as they may impair airbag deployment.**
- ! **Do not place stickers or decals over the airbag covers as this may impair airbag deployment.**

NOTE: All M1 Vehicles are specified with passenger airbag as standard fitment. Beltminder function for passenger seat is optional fitment.

Front Airbag Deployment Zone



Side and Curtain Airbag Deployment Zones

WARNINGS:

- ! **Do not place accessories in the deployment zone of the side and curtain airbags as they may impair airbag deployment.**
- ! **Do not place stickers or decals over the airbag covers as this may impair airbag deployment.**

NOTE: It is recommended to specify a base vehicle without airbags if planning conversions in this area.

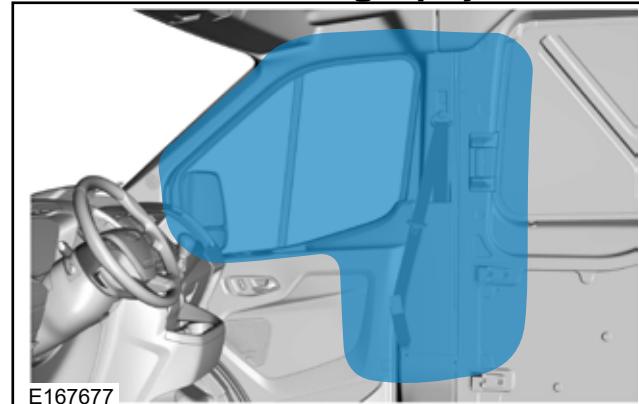
NOTE: All M1 Vehicles are specified with side and curtain airbags as standard fitment.

Side Airbags (Seat Mounted): The side airbags on this vehicle have not been validated for use with swivelling front seats. Do not specify a base vehicle with side airbags if planning to retrofit a swivelling device on the front seats and/or an armrest on the outer side of the front seats; this may affect the function and/or deployment of the side airbags. Ensure any seat covers installed are designed to be used with side airbag equipped seats.

Curtain Airbags: Extensive conversions to the roof and headlining may impair deployment of the curtain airbags. If roof or headlining is to be modified or replaced, do not specify curtain airbags on the base vehicle.

If access to the roof is required, to install roof mounted exterior accessories for example, ensure the unmodified headlining is refitted using the existing mounting points.

Front Side Curtain Airbag Deployment Zone



5.11.2 Restraints Control Module (RCM)

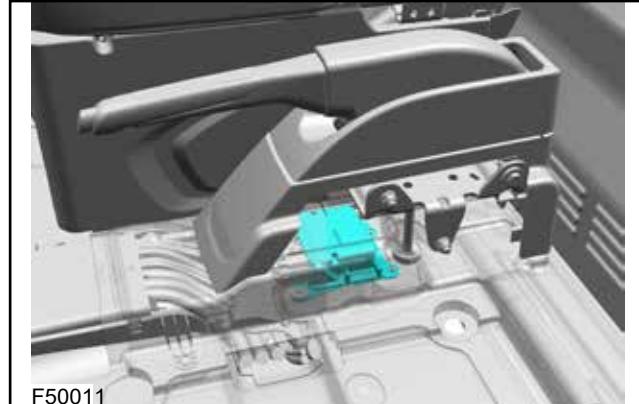
The RCM is located between the front seats, underneath the parking brake console, see figure F50011.

WARNINGS:

- ! **Conversions or reinforcements in the area of the RCM may affect the side airbag deployment timing and result in uncontrolled side airbag deployment.**

- ! **The RCM device is protected by the parking brake and console, to prevent damage from occupants when stepping past the seat to access the rear of the vehicle. The parking brake and console should be maintained in their fitted position to ensure protection for the RCM.**

Restraints Control Module (RCM)



5.11.3 Front, Side and Door Sensors

The airbag sensor for the front airbags is located behind the front grille, see figure E167679.

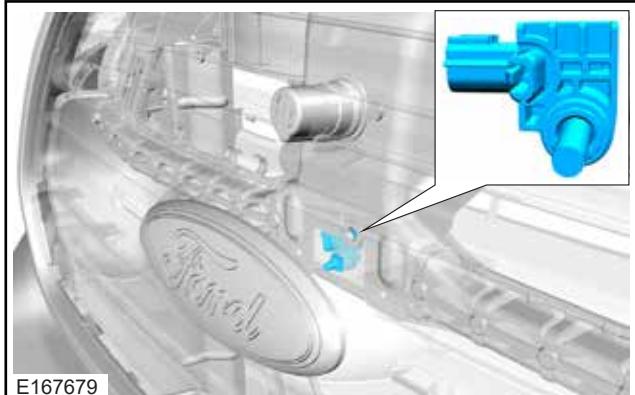
The sensors for the side airbags are located at the bottom of the B-pillars, see figure E145412, and in the front door behind the speaker, see figure F50010.

WARNINGS:

- ⚠️ Conversions or reinforcements in the area of the sensors may affect the side airbag deployment timing and result in uncontrolled side airbag deployment.**
- ⚠️ Drilling or grinding operations in these areas are only permitted when battery cables are disconnected.**
- ⚠️ If the vehicle is specified with side and curtain airbags, ensure any accessories fitted to the doors are clear of the airbag deployment zones and that any holes created in the door trim, inner or outer sheet metal are sealed to retain the integrity of the door cavity. Failure to seal holes in the door trim or sheet metal may affect the sensitivity of the restraints system.**

If the battery is disconnected: [Refer to: 4.5 Battery Systems](#) Battery and Monitoring Sensor section for reconnecting battery.

Front Sensor



Side Sensor



Door Sensor



5.12 Seatbelt Systems

NOTE: For further information please contact your National Sales Company representative, or local Ford dealer. If they are unable to help you then please contact FPSV Technical Support at FPSVHelp@ford.com

5.12.1 Seatbelts

WARNINGS:

! Follow removal and installation procedures for the seatbelt system to ensure correct function of the restraints system.

! Seat Belt Buckles must not be modified in situ on the Seats. If Seat Belt Buckle requires modification or removal, then this must be performed by OEM Seat supplier.

The removal and re-installation of the seatbelt, buckle or any component of the seatbelt system should be avoided. However, if removal and re-installation of the system is required during the conversion, follow the removal and installation guidelines of the seatbelt system as described in the workshop manual.

When removing the seatbelt system, a seat belt webbing forked retainer should be applied to the webbing 200mm below the webbing button stop. This prevents a situation where all the webbing runs back into the retractor and the retractor becomes locked.

When re-installing, fit the retractor to the body first and gently pull the webbing out of the retractor to allow fitment of the D loop; then remove the forked retainer. If the retractor is locked, allow a small amount of webbing to reel back into the retractor to allow the webbing lock to release. Do not attempt to release the retractor by pulling on the webbing with significant force or by manually interfering with the locking mechanism.

5.12.2 B Pillar No Drill Zone

WARNINGS:

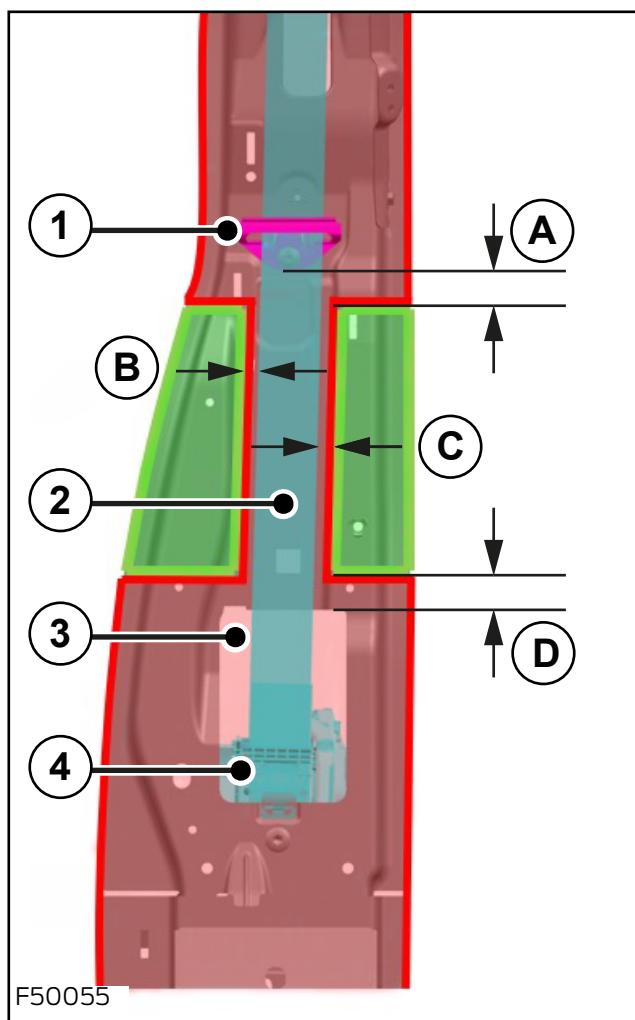
! Do not drill in right hand/left hand side retractor assembly area.

! Drilling is only permitted in the green area indicated.

! Retractor damage: If drilling holes near or above the retractor and anchor pretensioner, the mechanisms must be covered to prevent swarf/debris from falling into the assembly and causing functional issues.

! **Webbing damage:**
1) Any additional hardware fitted must not cut, pinch or interfere with the seatbelt webbing along its entire path (from retractor to D-ring area).
2) Avoid sharp brackets near webbing; all edges must have a minimum radius of 0.5mm.
3) Avoid upfitting parts that may change the belt routing to the occupant.

Front Seat Belt/B Pillar Drill Zone Definition



Item	Description
1	Webbing Guide
2	Seatbelt Webbing
3	Retractor Hole
4	Retractor
A	30 mm Below Webbing Guide
B	15 mm Left of Webbing
C	15 mm Right of Webbing
D	30 mm above Retractor Hole

5.12.3 Seat Belt Reminder

Seat Belt Reminder is a legal requirement for all new vehicles. For front seats (including single and dual passenger seats) a sensor is provided in the seatbelt buckle to sense the seatbelt wearing status of the occupant, in addition to occupant detection mats in the seats. For rear seats the seatbelt buckle sensor only is provided. If a vehicle is modified, these functions must be retained.

NOTE: If factory-fitted wired seats are permanently removed the Instrument Panel Cluster will need to be reconfigured using the Ford Diagnostic Engineering Tool. Please contact FPSVHelp@ford.com for further information.

Chime Deactivation/Reactivation Procedure

The deactivation/reactivation procedure will deactivate/reactivate the audible signal for front seats individually or all the rear seats together.

1. With the vehicle stationary, Key On the ignition
2. Perform 4 buckling and unbuckling actions. The sequence should start and end with ‘unbuckled’.
3. The Seat Belt Reminder tell-tale lamp flashing will confirm successful deactivation/reactivation.

The procedure will not be started or will be cancelled if one or more of the following conditions occur:

- The vehicle starts moving
- The status of another seat belt buckle changes
- 30 seconds elapsed since vehicle is On

NOTE: Any seat belt buckle can be used for the procedure.

NOTE: Additional (non factory-fitted) seats cannot be added to the belt-minder function using this procedure.

NOTE: The Convertor shall not provide the procedure for Seat Belt Reminder de-activation to the owner/operator via handbook or other easily accessible sources.

NOTE: If the seat trim is exchanged (or added in the case of Fabricless seats being ordered), the functionality of the Seat Belt Reminder will need to be successfully tested during trim development. The final seat assembly will need to be verified for function at End-Of-Line. Please contact FPSVHelp@ford.com for further information.

5.12.4 Wireless Beltminder

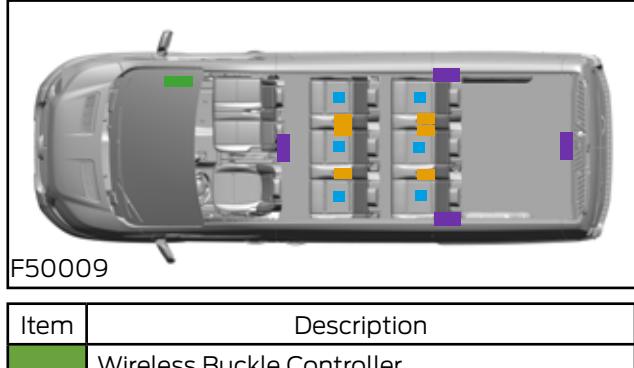
Kombi (M1/N1), Kombi Van and DCIV

The Wireless Beltminder consists of a number of wireless transmitters in the rear seats and 4 antennas which are body mounted; see following figure. The transmitters in the rear seats need to triangulate their position by sensing the field strength of the antennas. The antenna power is calibrated for each body style.

The system will not measure the correct rear seat position for every rear seat if:

- Antennas are re-positioned
- Mounted on different material
- Shielded from the seats by any conductive (metal) material
- Magnets are packaged closer than 70mm to the antennas
-

System Layout LHD Example



Item	Description
Wireless Buckle Controller	
Seat Buckle Switch	
Wireless Buckle Sensor, seat mounted	
Antenna ¹	

¹1x mounted on Headliner, 2x Side Trim, 1x Rear Door

NOTE: For installation and programming of additional Ford Rear Seats which are equipped with a wireless buckle status sensor the only method is by using a Ford diagnostic service tool with the correct level of security clearance. The Ford dealer has the correct tools and level of security to do this if required”

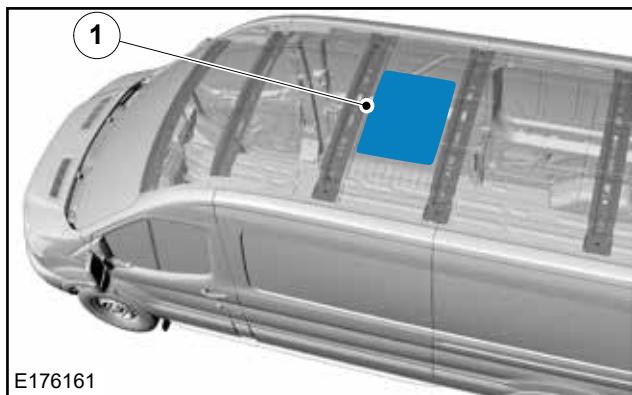
NOTE: For installation of additional non-Ford or 3rd party rear seats which are not equipped with a Ford wireless buckle status sensor, an aftermarket beltminder system has to be used to account for compliance with ECE16 beltminder regulations”

NOTE: A Kombi (M1/N1)/Kombi Van or DCIV donor vehicle without factory installed rear seats does not ship with any wireless or rear seat beltminder hardware. An aftermarket beltminder system has to be used to account for compliance with ECE16 beltminder regulations if rear seats are being added to such a vehicle

Please contact FPSV Technical Support at FPSVHelp@ford.com for further information

5.13 Roof

5.13.1 Roof Ventilation



Item	Description
1	Roof Panel Aperture

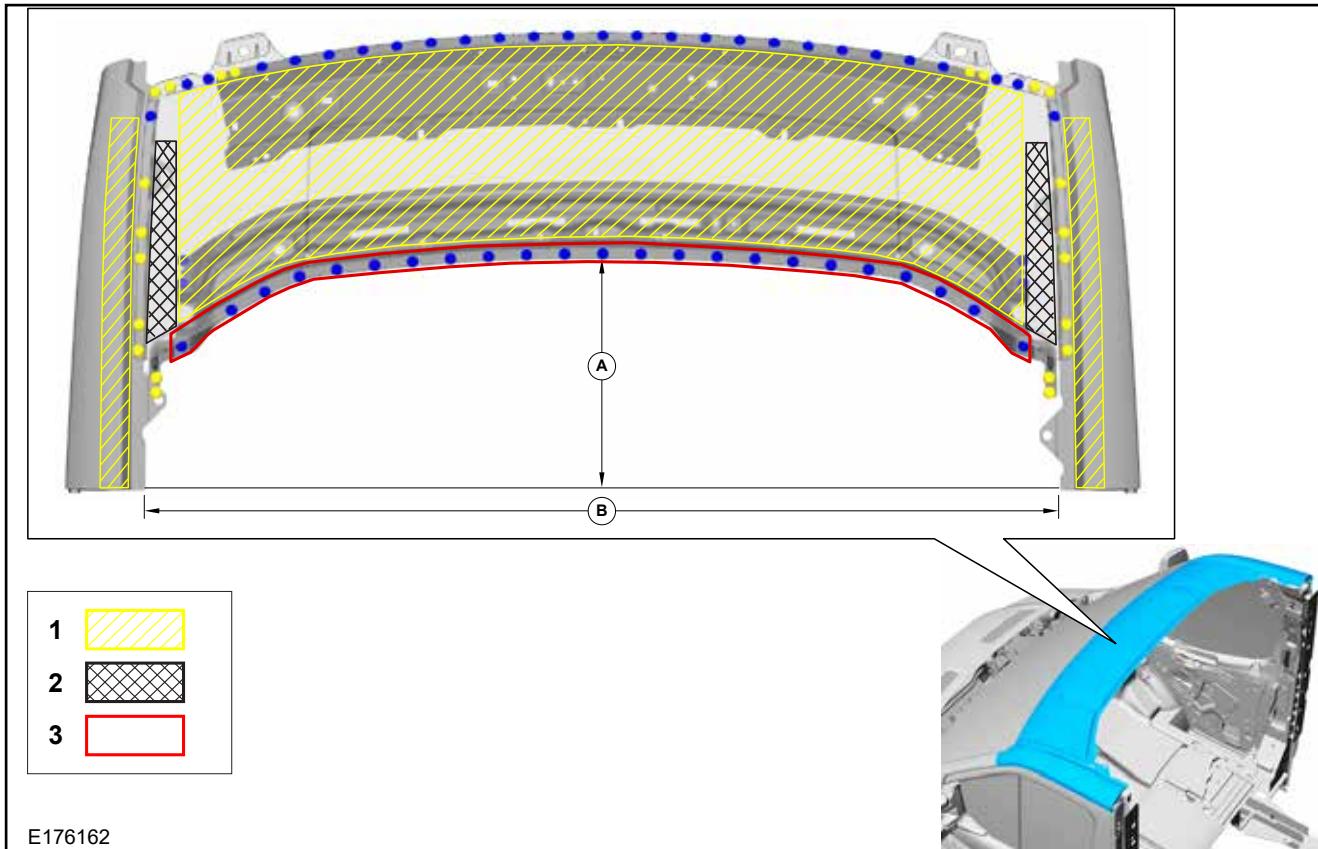
General - Apertures must not cut through roof bows, see figure E176161. Ventilators must prevent direct entry of water and dust. A shut-off system should be available to prevent fume ingress. Interior and exterior projection legal requirements must be maintained.

In case a roof bow is cut or removed, it must be replaced by an appropriate structure providing the equivalent structural integrity and functionality as the original structure. Any legal requirements must be maintained.

Ventilation Units - The roof panel can support up to 1kg on an unsupported area of roof. Loads up to a maximum of 25 kg must be distributed over the full length of the roof rails between the roof bows.

Air Conditioning Units - Units weighing more than 25 kg must be internally supported on cross brace members distributing the load out to the roof rails.

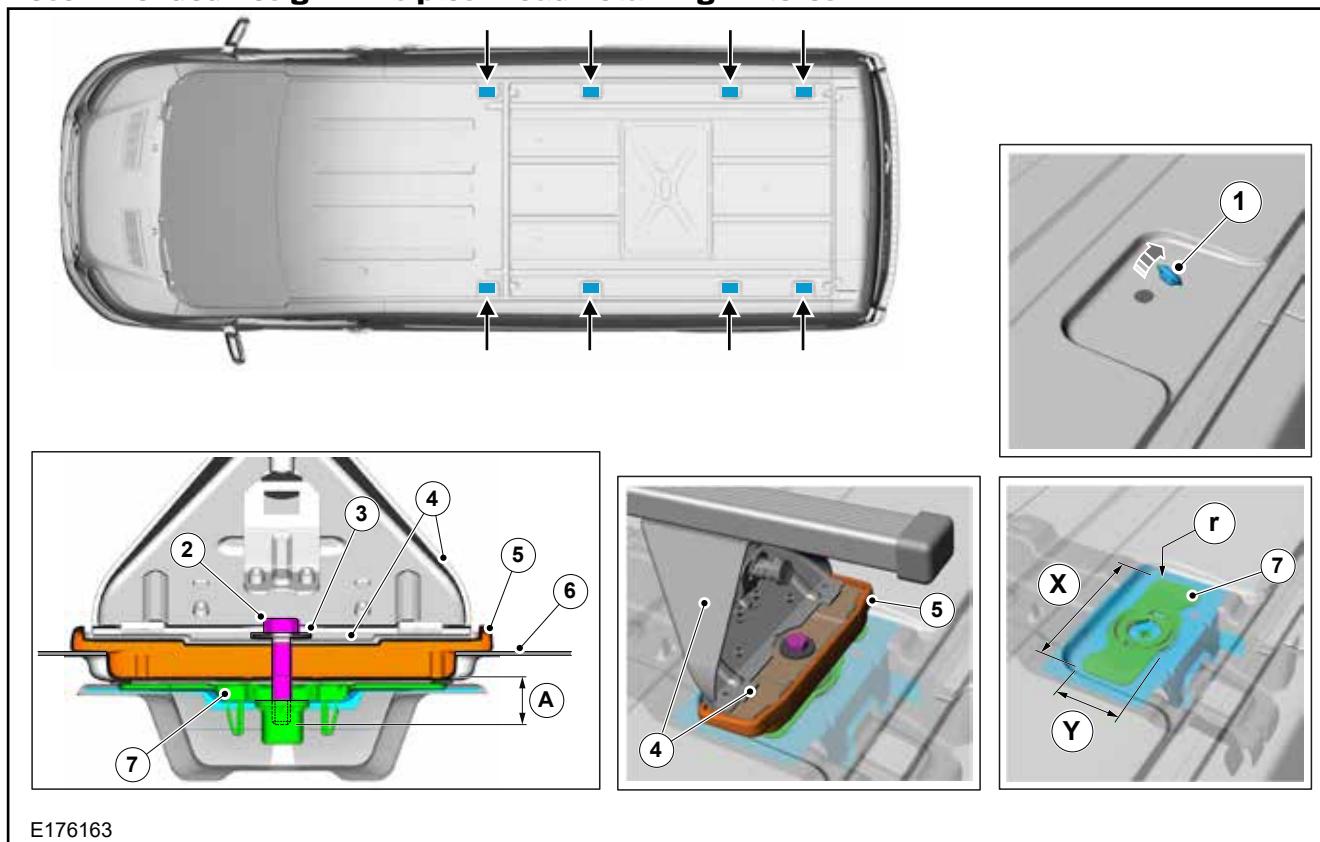
5.13.2 Roof Cut Out - Camper Based Vehicles Only



Item	Description
1	Rivet and self tapping screw area
2	Bolting area
3	Bolting area providing bolts are between blue spot welds
A, B	Maximum roof cut out standard (Transit Motorhome Chassis with roof and back panel removed Shown, for Camper Single Chassis Cab, the same fixing strategy applies).

5.13.3 Roof Racks and Load Carriers

Recommended Design Principles - Load Retaining Fixtures



E176163

Item	Description
1	Plug to avoid water ingress and corrosion
2	M8 Bolt
3	Seal
4	Roof Rack System
5	Seal/Spacer (see E247462)
6	Roof Panel
7	Reinforcement
A	Maximum intrusion 16mm
X	130 mm
Y	47 mm
r	10 mm

⚠ WARNING: Refer to the Owner's Manual for information on Load Carrying and maximum roof loads.

NOTE: Read and follow the manufacturer's instructions when fitting a roof rack.

NOTE: The number of load retaining fixtures vary depending on the vehicle.

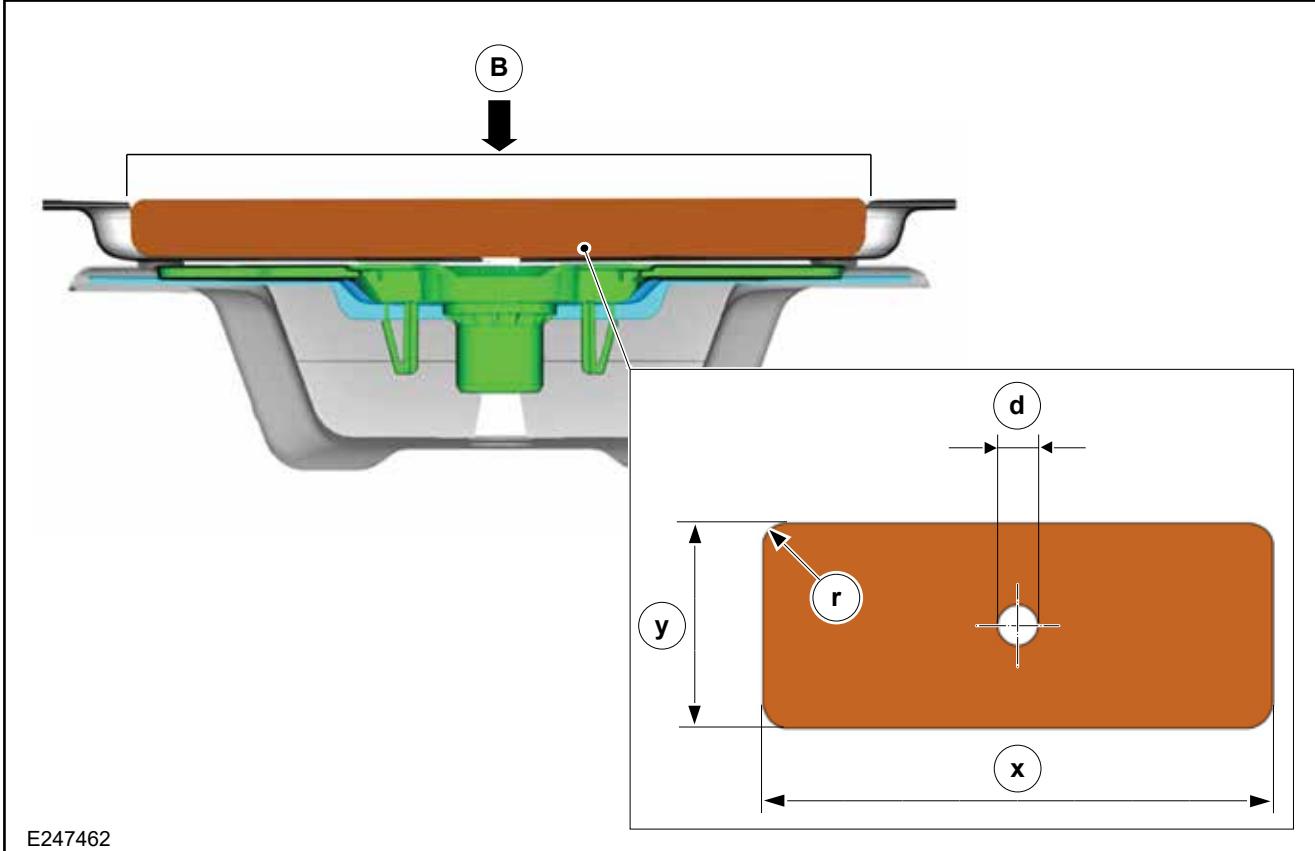
Roof racks may be fitted to all Van, Bus and Kombi variants providing the following is satisfied:

- Load not to exceed 79.3 kg at individual attachment points for local durability
- [Refer to: 1.16 Load Distribution](#) For guidance on centre of gravity information
- Ideally, the bearing surface of the roof rack attached should be the same as the reinforcement

inside the roof, see figure E176163, item 7 and dimensions X,Y and r

- Ensure sealing of surfaces, for example: with EPDM rubber material or equivalent and ensure sealing along the bolt for preventing water ingress into the interior of the vehicle, see figure E176163 items 3 and 5
- The thread size is M8. The maximum intrusion of the M8 bolt into the roof is 16 mm, see 'A' in figure E176163.
- Read and follow the manufacturer's instructions when fitting a roof rack
- When removing the roof rack ensure holes are properly sealed with sealing plugs or equivalent water tight elements

Recommended Spacer Dimensions



E247462

Item	Description
B	Load Bearing Surface – Lateral roof rack beams should be centred fore/aft over the roof mounting points/depressions
X	127 mm
Y	50.8 mm
r	6.35 mm radius x 4
d	10.00 ± 0.15 mm diameter hole (centre of spacer)

NOTE: De-burr all edges.

NOTE: Avoid load application to Class A roof panel surface.

Trimline Tolerance ± 0.5 mm

Material Thickness Low Roof = 9.523 mm.

Material Thickness Medium and High Roof = 14.28 mm.

5.14 Corrosion Prevention

NOTE: For further information please contact your National Sales Company representative, or local Ford dealer. If they are unable to help you then please contact FPSV Technical Support at FPSVHelp@ford.com

5.14.1 General



Extreme heat, such as paint drying ovens, will cause the damage of the High Voltage battery. The High Voltage battery must be removed before using paint drying ovens longer than 45 minutes or with temperatures above 60°C (140°F). Failure to follow this instruction may result in damaging the High Voltage battery, which could cause serious personal injury or death in a fire or explosion.



Do not apply any coating/corrosion prevention treatment to the HV battery pack area and connectors.

Avoid drilling into closed frame body members to avoid the risk of corrosion from swarf.

If drilling is required, however:

- Re-paint metal edges and protect against corrosion after cutting or drilling operations
- Endeavour to remove all swarf from inside the side member and treat to prevent corrosion
- Apply corrosion protection inside and outside of the chassis frame

For Welding:

[Refer to: 5.1 Body](#)

5.14.2 Repairing Damaged Paint

After cutting or reworking any sheet metal on the vehicle, the damaged paint must be repaired.

Ensure all materials are compatible with the relevant Ford specifications and maintain the original performance where possible.

5.14.3 Under Body Protection and Material



WARNING: Do not over-coat or contaminate surfaces of components such as brakes or catalytic converters.

Ensure all materials are compatible with the relevant Ford specifications and maintain the original performance where possible.

Some proprietary products affect the original coatings.

5.14.4 Contact Corrosion

When using different materials with a different electrochemical potential, ensure that materials are isolated from each other to prevent contact corrosion caused by a potential difference.

Use appropriate isolation materials. Where possible, choose materials with low level of electrochemical potential difference.

5.15 Frame and Body Mounting

NOTE: For further information please contact your National Sales Company representative or local Ford dealer. If they are unable to help you then please contact FPSV Technical Support at FPSVHelp@ford.com

5.15.1 Mounting Points and Tubing

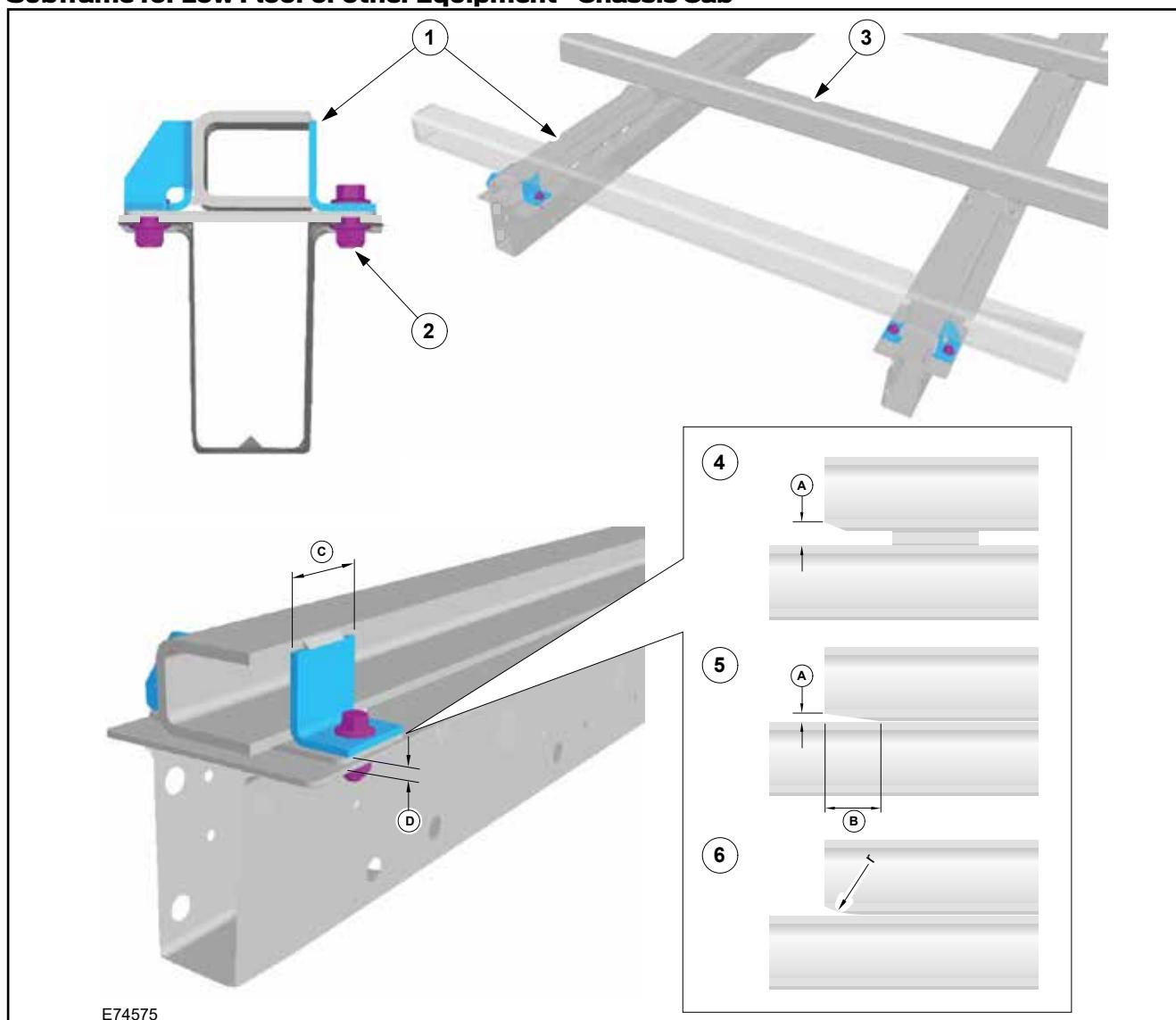
The holes on the frame are a result of the production process. They are not designed for fixing additional

equipment. If additional fixings to the chassis frame are required, please follow the recommendation given in figure E176204. This does not apply to areas of load applications such as spring fixings or damper fixings.

NOTE: After drilling, deburr and countersink all holes and remove chips from the frame. Follow corrosion prevention.

[Refer to: 5.14 Corrosion Prevention](#)

Subframe for Low Floor or other Equipment - Chassis Cab



Item	Description
1	Continuous longitudinal float or body support member
2	Always use both sides of all chassis mounts
3	Crossmembers
4, 5, 6	Relief front end and longitudinal if there is a risk of stress concentration in chassis frame from longitudinal contact
A	5 mm (minimum)
B	50 mm (minimum)
C	50 mm width for all brackets
D	Avoid longitudinal contact if possible which may create stress concentration
r	20 mm (minimum)

5.15.2 Self-Supporting Body Structure

Bodies and structures can be judged as self-supporting providing they maintain the following rules:

- Cross members are used at each chassis mounting point, please [refer to: 5.1 Body - Chassis Frame Body Attachment](#): figures E167667, E167668, E167669 and E167670, also E74576 and E176203 in this section
- Each crossmember has a suitably engineered connection to the body sidewall (3) or to the continuous floor frame (5), shown in figure E74576
- The body sidewall or the continuous floor frame supports any overhang beyond the chassis frame, whether on standard frame or extended frame

Alternatively, the self-supporting body structure can also be designed as shown in figure E74577. This concept is based on a self-supporting structure where the floor is mounted directly onto the top surface of the chassis frame.

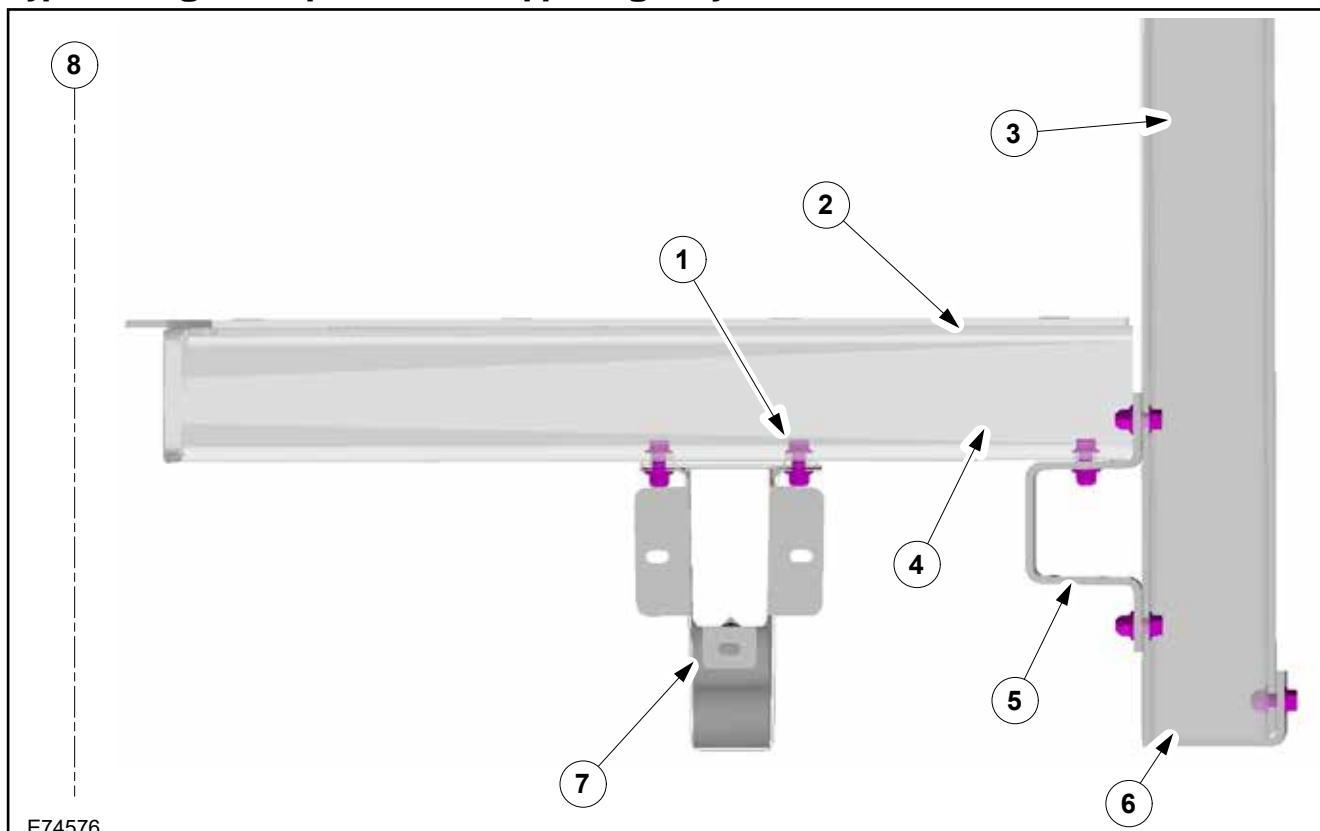
Figure E74577 shows a generic vehicle cross section where the crossmembers and opposing outriggers are flush with the surface of the chassis frame side members.

It is important to the overall function of the vehicle structure that the outriggers are each connected to a continuous longitudinal floor side frame or a structural body side structure assembly.

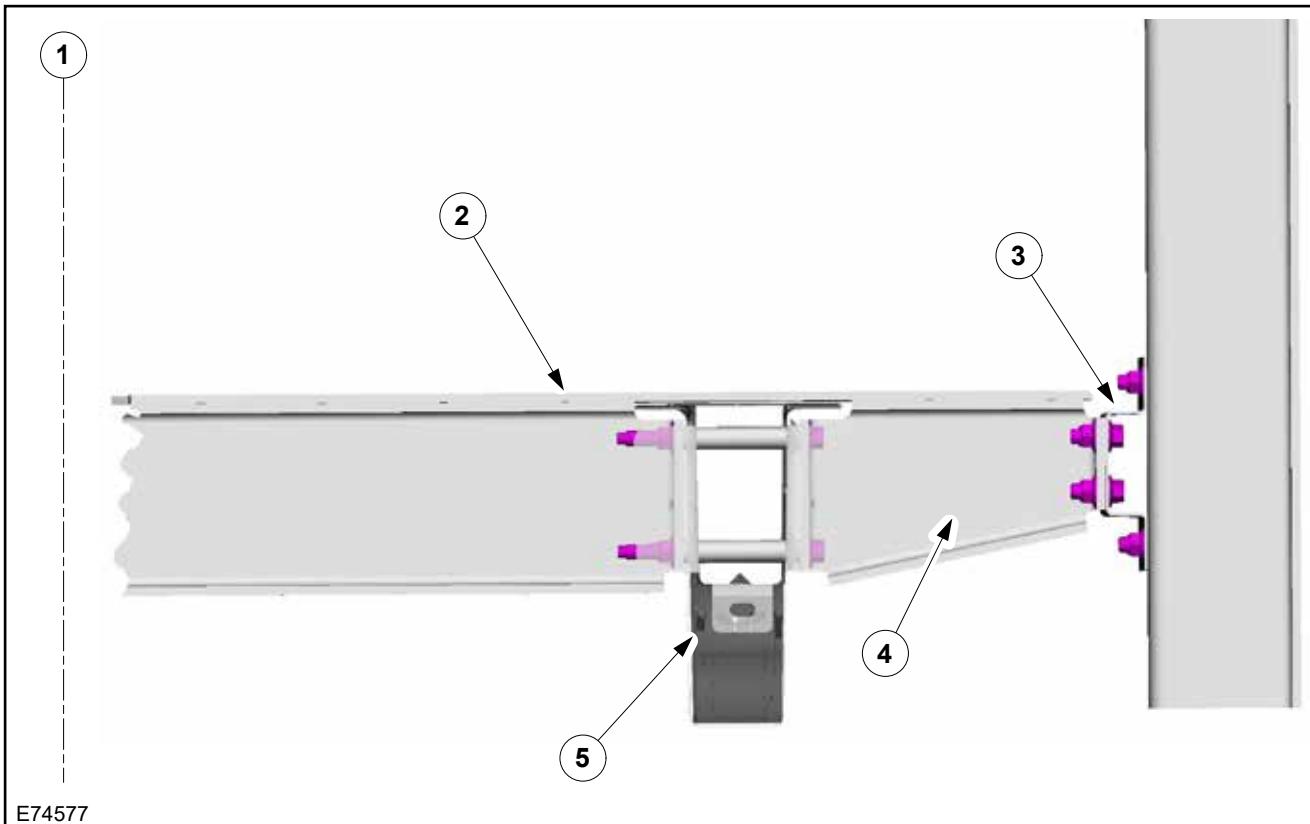
Low floor re-work for guidance only:

- Engineer unique crossmembers and outriggers spaced at approximately 600 mm maximum pitch
- Outrigger moment to be re-acted with crossmember between chassis frame, with common through bolts where possible; see figure E74577 Low floor standard chassis frame
- Drill frame and add spacer tubes, see frame drilling & tube reinforcing; see figure E176204
- Outrigger outboard ends should be attached to load bearing body side/floor edge frame or body side structure (including over wheel support)

Typical Design Principle of a Self-Supporting Body Structure



Item	Description
1	Use all standard locations with 2x M10 fixings
2	Floor Panel
3	Body side frames
4	Floor crossmembers
5	Continuous floor U-profile frame
6	Longitudinal L-profile
7	Chassis frame rail of base vehicle
8	Vehicle centre line of base vehicle

Low Floor Standard Chassis Frame

E74577

Item	Description
1	Vertical centre line of vehicle
2	Floor panel
3	Continuous floor edge longitudinal
4	Outrigger
5	Low floor

- Structural wheel box should maintain longitudinal continuity with a rigid attachment to the floor edge frame or to the body side structure
- Floor boards should be substantially attached to crossmembers and outriggers, but not to the chassis frame top surface
- Low floor exhaust heat shields;

[Refer to: 3.7 Exhaust System](#)

5.15.3 Extended Chassis Frame

General:

- Rear overhang extensions are available as Regular Production Option
- Bodies or equipment exceeding the standard extension length must be supported, please refer to figure E74575 low body longitudinal members or figure E74576 self supporting body structures
- It is the Vehicle Convertor's responsibility to mark up the Owner's Manual advising the available payload. Axle plated weights and maximum allowable axle mass, as shown in this manual, must not be exceeded
- The vehicle should be planned for uniformly distributed loads

5.15.4 Non Standard Rear Chassis Frame Extension

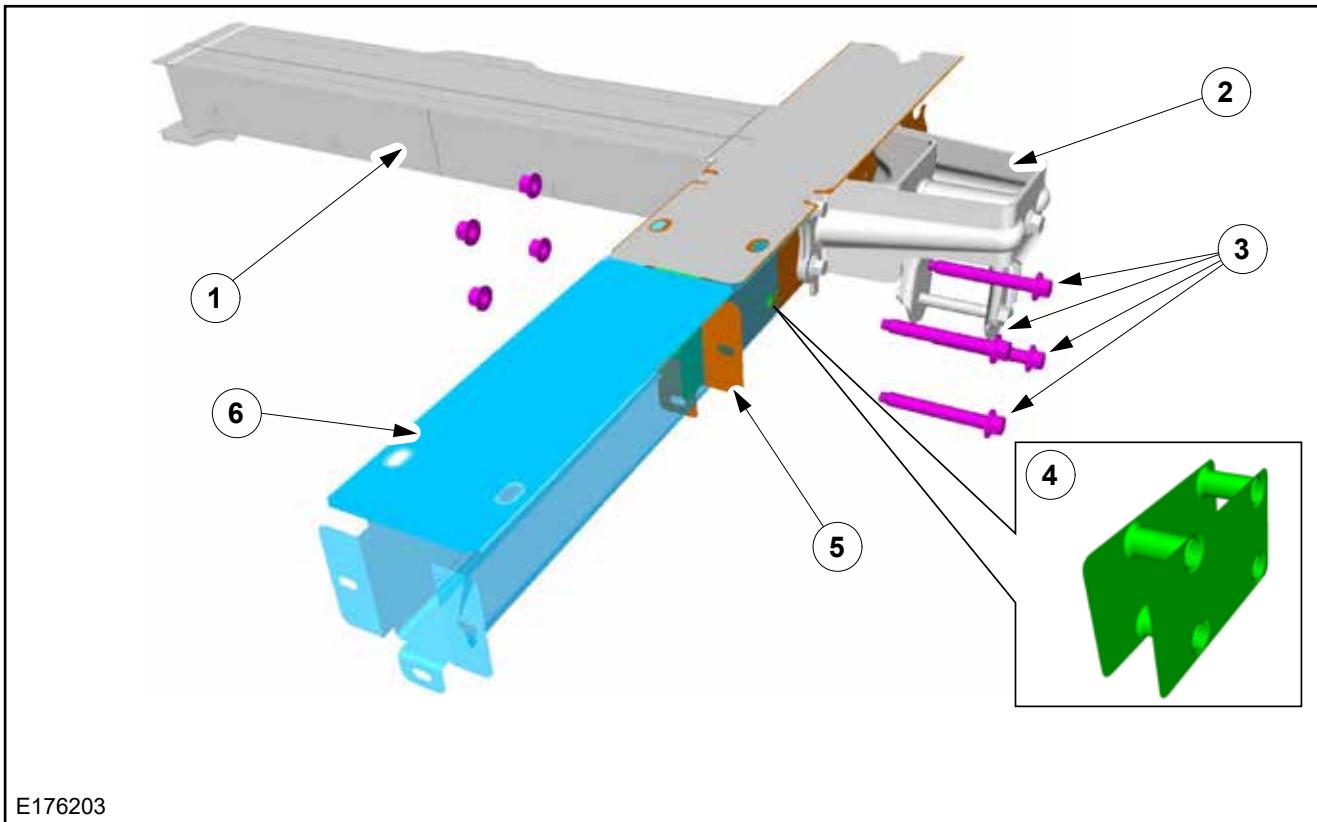
Extensions longer than the standard Regular Production Option must comply with the following guidelines:

- The original rear crossmember and or under-run bar or equivalent must be repositioned at the end of any altered extension to meet legislation, please refer to Figure E176203 Non Regular Production Option rear chassis frame extensions. Also see.

[Refer to: 1.17 Towing](#) figure E167538

- The standard fit under-run bar is bolted on as shown in figure E176203 and figure E167538 as mentioned in previous paragraph
- The altered extension assembly must include a crossmember adjacent to the end of the original chassis frame to replace the relocated under-run bar, see Figure E74577
- Flat-beds and low bodies built onto Non Regular Production Option extensions must have continuous longitudinal members engineered by the Body Builder or equipment supplier, please refer to figure. E74577, to resolve the worst case moments at rear bump stop

Non Standard Rear Chassis Frame Extension



E176203

Item	Description
1	Cross member
2	Rear spring hanger
3	4x M10 bolts
4	Spacer tube assembly
5	Flanges removed
6	New flanges for under-run bar

- Extensions should be secured to the chassis frame sandwiched under the rear spring shackle bracket utilising the 4 bolts and 4 holes in the rear of the chassis frame, totalling 8 per vehicle, see figure E176203
- The 4 rear most existing holes in the chassis frame must be sleeved with tubes to prevent chassis frame collapse, refer to figure E176203. The spacer tubes should, ideally, be part of a welded bracket and tube assembly to hold the tubes accurately in place, avoiding the need to weld the tubes in place, see figure E176203
- Care must be taken when tightening the spring shackle bracket bolts and nuts to the correct torque. For Tightening torques

[Refer to: 1.15 Hardware](#)

- Extensions sleeved over the outside of the chassis frame will necessitate the removal of the under-run bar attachment flanges turned out at the chassis frame ends. The cut edges must be protected against corrosion.

[Refer to: 5.14 Corrosion Prevention](#)

- Drilling of the top flanges turned out is only permissible rearward of the spring hanger

brackets, for continuity of the altered extension closing plate, if required. The diameter of the holes should be 6.0 mm maximum

- It is recommended that the altered extension has a similar closed section, material thickness and properties to the existing chassis frame
- An equivalent open section for the extension assembly is at the Vehicle Convertor's discretion
- Lightening holes in new extension and cross members are discretionary
- Do not weld original chassis frame except as specified when adding reinforcing tubes, please refer to figure E176203
- Do not drill the top or bottom surface of the chassis frame, including the flanges turned out, except as recommended above for continuity of closure
- Any alternative finish such as hot dip galvanizing is at the discretion of the Body Builder providing it does not have a detrimental effect on the original Ford product.

[Refer to: 5.14 Corrosion Prevention](#)

5.15.5 Frame Drilling and Tube Reinforcing

CAUTION: Before drilling, check Precautionary Drill Zone figures earlier in this Section (5.1.4, 5.1.5, 5.1.6)

The chassis frame may be drilled and reinforcing spacer tubes may be welded in place, providing the following is applied:

- Adhere to all details shown in figure E176204
- Locate and drill holes accurately, using a drill guide to ensure holes are square to frame vertical centre line (allow for side member draft angle)
- Drill undersize and ream out to size
- Endeavour to remove all swarf from inside side member and treat to prevent corrosion
- Fully weld each end of the tube and grind flat and square, in groups if applicable. Be aware of side member draft angle
- Apply corrosion protection inside and outside of the chassis frame.

[Refer to: 5.14 Corrosion Prevention](#)

- Holes should be in groups of two, either vertically spaced at 30 to 35 mm from chassis frame top and/or bottom surface, or horizontally at 50 mm minimum pitch, 30 to 35 mm from top and/or bottom chassis frame surface, please refer to figure E176204

- Always use M10 bolts with grade 8.8 minimum
- Do not position tubes at the medium chassis frame height, this may create 'oil canning' of the deep section sidewalls
- Where possible, the outrigger moments should be resolved by matching inner crossmembers between the chassis side members inline with the outriggers, please refer to figure E74577
- A diameter of 16.5 mm is the maximum allowable hole size in the chassis frame sidewall, irrespective of the usage

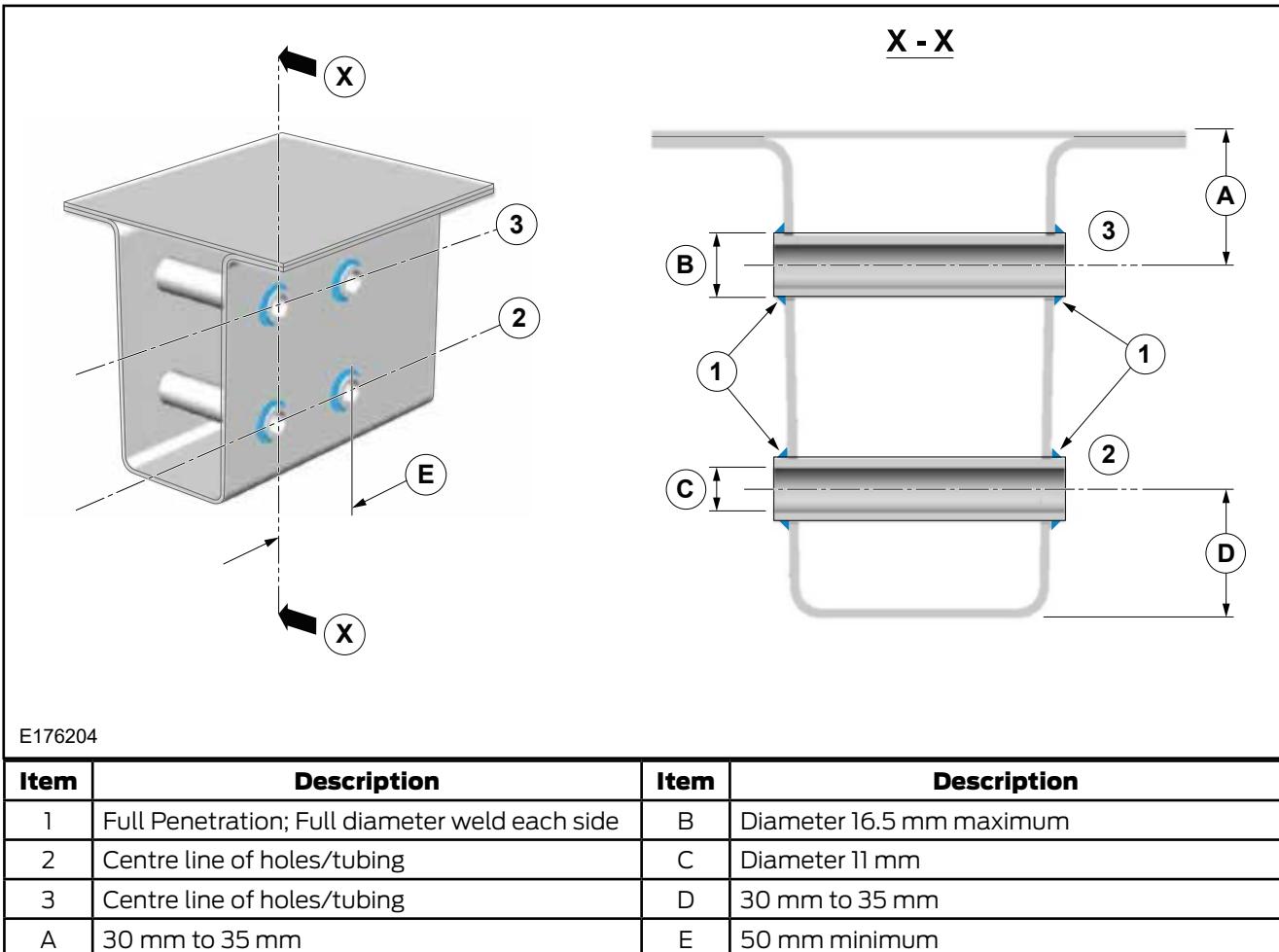
Avoid drilling into closed frame body members to avoid the risk of corrosion from swarf.

[Refer to: 5.14 Corrosion Prevention](#)

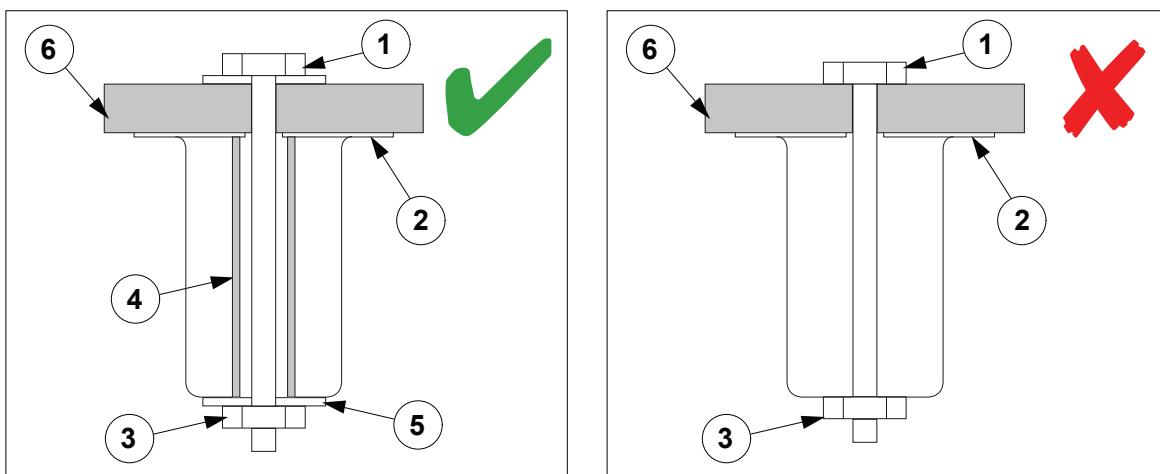
Drilling and welding of frames and body structure have to be conducted following the guidelines.

[Refer to: 5.1 Body Welding](#).

Frame Drilling and Tube Reinforcing



Recommended Frame Drilling and Tube Reinforcing



E196988

Item	Description	Item	Description
1	Screw	4	It is recommended to always use a tube
2	Longitudinal rail	5	It is recommended to always use washers. Size minimum equal to lower rail width.
3	Screw Nut	6	Floor - minimum thickness 37 mm

5.15.6 Ancillary Equipment - Subframe Mounting

Typical subframes and longitudinal members for flatbed and low or dropside bodies, or equipment exceeding the standard or Regular Production Order frame length, should adhere to the following guidelines:

- Flat beds and low bodies mounted on integral longitudinal members, channel or box section metal – not wood – must use both sides of all frame mounting brackets, see figure E74575
- Longitudinal members must be relieved at the front end if they are to contact the chassis frame top surface, to minimise stress concentrations; see figure E74575. However, it is preferable to mount the longitudinal onto the mounting brackets, with a clearance to the chassis frame top surface
- Each set of brackets must use 2 x M10 bolts grade 8.8 minimum
- The rear 2 sets of chassis frame mounting holes/locations should have a full bolt torque with 100% grip. The attachment to the remaining forward chassis frame holes/locations must be precisely located and retained, but allow some relative flexing between the subframe and chassis frame. For example, clamp control devices such as conical washer stacks or machine springs with self-locking fasteners
- Minimum floor heights will require wheel arch boxes to clear the rear tyres, see Vehicle Data sheets for relevant tyre jounce

Pedestal mounted low or dropside bodies – (not illustrated)

For bodies or equipment not exceeding the standard or Regular Production Order chassis frame length.

For flat beds and low bodies raised above the maximum ‘jounced’ tyre position to obtain an uninterrupted flat floor surface see vehicle data sheets.

- Fore and aft longitudinal bracing must be added between the rearmost 2 cross members only
- All chassis frame mounting holes/locations must always be used
- All chassis frame mounting bracket fastenings must have a full bolt torque with 100% friction grip

5.15.7 Water Tank on Camper Vehicles

NOTE: It is recommended that a decal or label is fitted adjacent to the filler aperture identifying the correct fluid to be used, for example: ‘Water only’ for water tanks.

360° Camera	236	Colour Coded Content	8
A		Commercial and Legal Aspects	12
About this Manual	10	Communications Network	118
About this Publication	8	Compliance and Vehicle Type Approval	13
Acoustic Vehicle Alerting System	15	Connector Pin Out Practices	101
Acoustic Vehicle Alerting System (AVAS)	187	Contact Corrosion	295
Adaptive Cruise Control	184	Contact Information	16
Adding Connectors	207	Conversion Effects on Parking Aids	40
Additional External Lamps	173	Conversion Homologation	26
Additional Internal Lamps	180	Conversion Type	18
Additional Lighting for Rear of Vehicle Interior	180	Conversion Type - Reference Tables	22
Additional Loads and Charging Systems	143	Convertor Fit Additional Third Party Batteries	139
Additional Vehicle Signals/Features	206	Corrosion Prevention	295
Aids for Vehicle Entry and Exit	40	Cranking and Warm Cranking	154
Airbags Deployment Zones	288	Customer Connection Points (CCP)	194
Airbag Supplemental Restraint System (SRS)	288		
Air Flow Restrictions	82	D	
Alternative Type Approval	13	Diesel Particulate Filter (DPF)	90
Alternator Characteristics	129	DPF and RPM Speed Control	160
Ancillary Equipment - Subframe Mounting	301	Disassembly Instructions for BLIS & Park Aid	227
Anti-Lock Control — Stability Assist	79	Door Mirrors	284
Audio Head Unit - In Car Entertainment Packs	168	Door Removal or Modification	188
Automatic Transmission	86	Drilling and Welding	14
Auto Wipe and Auto Lamps	186	Driver Field of View	40
Auxiliary Heater Systems	82	Driver Reach Zones	40
		Driveshaft	78
		Dropside Bodies	268
B			
Battery Configurations	138	E	
Battery Monitoring Sensor (BMS)	143	Electrical Connectors and Connections	194
Battery Options	137	Electrically Operated Door Mirrors	173
Battery Protection	146	Electrical System Overview	100
Battery Rules	138	Electrics for Tow Bar	112
Battery Systems	131	Electromagnetic Compatibility (EMC)	27
BEV Side Step	250	Electromagnetic Compatibility (EMC) Awareness	102
BEV Van Floor Drilling	247	Electronic Engine Controls	154
Blind Spot Information & Park Aid installation Kit	226	Emissions Performance & In-Service Compliance	12
BLIS Installation for Chassis Cab/Skeletals	226	End of Life Vehicle (ELV) Directive	29
BLIS Check After Retrofit	230	Engine Cooling	82
BLIS Installation Instructions	227	Engine / E-Drive	80
Body	238	Engine/E Drive Selection for Conversions	80
Body Closures	280	Engine/E-Drive Types	81
Body Control Module (BCM)	122	Engine RPM Speed Controller	156
Body Side Vents	283	E-Transit BEV Vehicles	34
Body Structures - General Information	238	EV Charging	99
Boron Steel Parts	240	EV Training	8
B Pillar No Drill Zone	290	Exhaust Heat Shields	90
Brake Hoses General	79	Exhaust Pipes and Supports	89
Brake System	79	Exhaust System	89
		Extended Chassis Frame	298
		Extensions and Optional	89
		Exterior Lighting	172
C			
CAD Models	11	F	
Calibration and Tachograph Retrofitting	165	Fabricless Front Swivel Seats	285
Cameras	233	Floor Precautionary Drill Zones: Diesel Vans	241
Camper Central Connectors	197	Formulas	61
CAN-Bus System Description and Interface	118	Frame and Body Mounting	296
Cellular Phone	171	Frame Drilling and Tube Reinforcing	300
Central Locking	188	Front Climate Control System	149
Centre of Gravity Height Calculation	61	Front End Accessory Drives	83
Centre of Gravity Height Test Procedure	59	Front End Integrity	267
Centre of Gravity Position	58	Front, Rear & Side Under-Run Protection	40
Changing Vehicle Speed Maximum Setting	160	Front, Side and Door Sensors	289
Charge Balance Guidelines	129	Front Suspension	75
Chassis Cab	253	Front Windscreen Camera	185
Chassis Cab Body for Diesel and E-Transit	51	Fuel Fired Auxillary Heaters	82
Circuit Diagrams	129	Fuel System	91
Climate Control System	149		
Clutch	87		

Fuses and Relays	191	LV Charging System Layout	125
G			
General	79, 295	Manual Regeneration Initiation (A6YAB)	90
General Component Package Guidelines	40	Manual Transmission	88
General Information	125, 194, 269	Minimum Requirements for Braking System	14
General Information for Rear View Camera	233	Mounting Points and Tubing	296
General Product Safety Requirement	13		
General Requirements	231		
General Wiring and Routing	101		
Glass, Frames and Mechanisms	287	No Drill/No Weld Zones - BEV	245
Grounding	102, 211	Noise, Vibration and Harshness (NVH)	37
Ground Points - BEV	218	Non Standard Rear Chassis Frame Extension	298
Ground Points - ICE	211		
Guidelines When Converting Vehicles	133		
H			
Handles, Locks, Latches and Entry Systems	188	P	
Hardware	57	Package and Ergonomics	40
Heated Seats	285	Painting Road Wheels	77
Heated Windscreen and Heated Rear Window	287	Park Aid Sensor Installation Guidance	231
High Current Supply and Ground Connections	133, 196	Park Aid System Check After Retrofitting	232
High Voltage Battery	97	Parking Brake	79
High Voltage Health & Safety Precautions	94	Partitions (Bulkhead)	276
High Voltage System & Electrified Drivetrain	94	Partitions: Thatcham Alarm	279
High Voltage System Overview	96	Plywood Lining/Cladding	283
High Voltage Vehicle Systems	15	Polymer Bulkhead	278
Horn	153	Power and Connectivity Usage Recommendations	131
How to Use This Manual	10	Power Connections	146
HV System Cooling	97	Power Take Off (PTO)	78
HV System De-Energising	97	Precautionary Drill Zones - Cable Grounding	108
Hydraulic Brake - Front and Rear Brakes	79	Precautionary Drill Zones - Chassis Grounding	110
Hydraulic Lifting Equipment	269	Precautionary Drill Zones - High Voltage Cables	105
I			
ICE (Diesel) Vehicles	32	Prec. Drill Zones - HV Mod/LV Cables/Connectors	107
Important Safety Instructions	10	Precautionary Drill Zones — Rear Cargo Area	111
Information and Entertainment System	168	Prevention of Squeaks and Rattles	102
Instrument Panel Cluster (IPC)	152	Product Liability	14
Integrated Bodies and Conversions	251	Pro Power Onboard Chassis Cab	208
Interior Lighting	180	R	
Interior Lights and 12V Sockets	146	Racking Systems	273
Interior Trim	283	Rear and Side Windows	287
Internal Partitions	276	Rear Climate Control System	151
Introduction	10	Rear Seat Fixing Positions	285
J			
Jacking	30	Rear Suspension	76
Jacking Kit	77	Rear View Camera Calibration	235
K			
Kerb Mass Data	79	Rear View Camera Coax Cable Routing	234
L			
Lamps for Wide Vehicles	173	Rear View Camera Connector Changes	233
Lamps – Front and Rear Fog Lamps	172	Rear View Camera Exterior Mount	235
Lamps – Hazard / Direction Indication	172	Rear View Camera Installation Kit	233
Legal Obligations and Liabilities	13	Rear View Camera Interior Mount	234
Legislation	162	Rear View Mirrors	284
Lifting	32	Recommended Main Load Area Dimensions	45
Lighting Loads	172	Relays	192
Load Compartment Interior Lining	283	Relocation of GNSS/5G Antenna	181
Load Compartment Tie Downs	275	RKE/TPMS Receiver	189
Load Distribution	58	Repairing Damaged Paint	295
Loadspace	275	Restraints Control Module (RCM)	288
LV Charging System (12 V)	125	Restraints System	14
		Retrofit a Digital Tacho, DSRC & Speed Sensor	162
		Reverse Brake Assist	235
		Reversing Lamps	172
		Road Safety	14
		Roof	292
		Roof Cut Out - Camper Based Vehicles Only	292
		Roof Racks and Load Carriers	293
		Roof Ventilation	292

S

SBG and Load Shedding - Functionality	147	Water Tank on Camper Vehicles	301
Seat Belt Reminder	291	Welding	239
Seatbelts	290	Wheel Clearance	77
Seatbelt Systems	290	Wheels and Tyres	77
Seats	285	Whole Vehicle Type Approval Regs - EU only	12
Security, Anti-Theft and Locking System	280	Windowed Van	285
Self-Supporting Body Structure	297	Windscreen Wipers	192
Sensor and Sensor Holder Painting Requirements	231	Wireless Beltminder	291
Sensor Positions and Tolerances	231	Wiring Harness Information	101
Side Marker Lamps	179	Wiring Installation and Routing Guides	101
Single and Twin Battery Systems	143	Wiring Specification	103
Skeletal Chassis for Camper and Non Camper	263	Wiring Splicing Procedures	102
Skeletal Chassis for Camper Body, Diesel Engines	55	Wiring through Sheet Metal	104
Skeletal Chassis for Non Camper Body	53	WLTP Procedures	12
Sliding Door Gap Reduction on M1 Vehicles	280	WLTP Calculation Inputs	41
Smart Regenerative Charging (SRC)	127		
Spare Wheel	77		
Speakers	170		
SVO Harnesses and Aftermarket Kits	193		
Springs and Spring Mounting	75, 76		
SRC Override	127		
Standard Battery Guard (SBG) & Load-Shedding	146		
Start-Stop Logic	154		
Suspension System	74		
SYNC Radio and SYNC Radio with DAB	169		

T

Tachograph	161
Tachograph and DSRC Harness Mounting	162
Tank and Dry Bulk Carriers	268
Terminology	12
Test Functionality	128
Third Button on Key Fob	189
Third Party +12V PTO for Loads Exceeding 175A	141
Third Party High Power Mode	127
Tipper Bodies	268
Tow Bar Requirements	63
Tow Bar Types (for AUS and NZL specification vehicles)	69
Tow Bar Types (for EU specification vehicles)	63
Towing	63
Trailer Tow Connectivity	115
Trailer Tow Electric Wiring Kit (C1DAD)	112
Tyre Manufacturers	77
Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)	77
Tyre Repair Kit	77

U

Under Body Protection and Material	295
Unused Connectors	102
Vehicle Integration System (JRSAB)	201

V

Van	285
Vehicle Dimensions Key	44
Vehicle Duty Cycle Guidelines	28
Vehicle Interface Connector	199
Vehicle Ride and Handling Attributes	28
Vehicles with Roof Mounted Units for Diesel and E-Transit	51
Vehicle Transportation Aids and Vehicle Storage	38

W

Warranty on Ford Vehicles	12
Water Leakage Prevention	102

